
AL ADWAA
Gem
2500 سؤال كلمات وقواعد
40 قطعة - 125 ترجمة
هدية مجانية
1st SEC
FIRST TERM
TREASURE ISLAND
NEW HELLO!
2025

Contents

Module 1

Unit 1 Getting away

Unit 2 Supporting the community

Module 2

Unit 3 Improving lives

Unit 4 Making new friends

Module 3

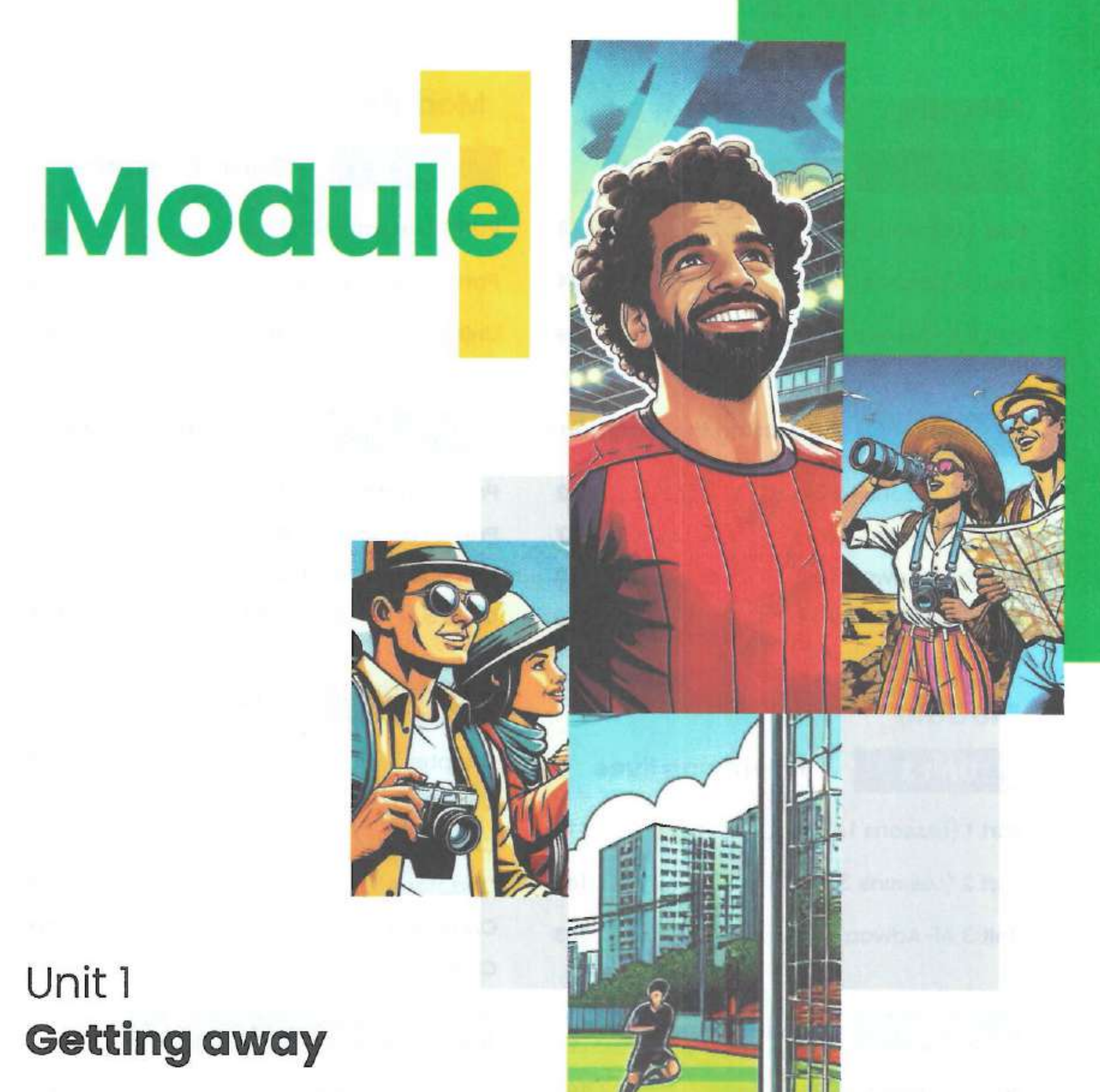
Unit 5 Communication

Unit 6 Learning from literature

Story Treasure Island

Advanced General Exercises

Module 1

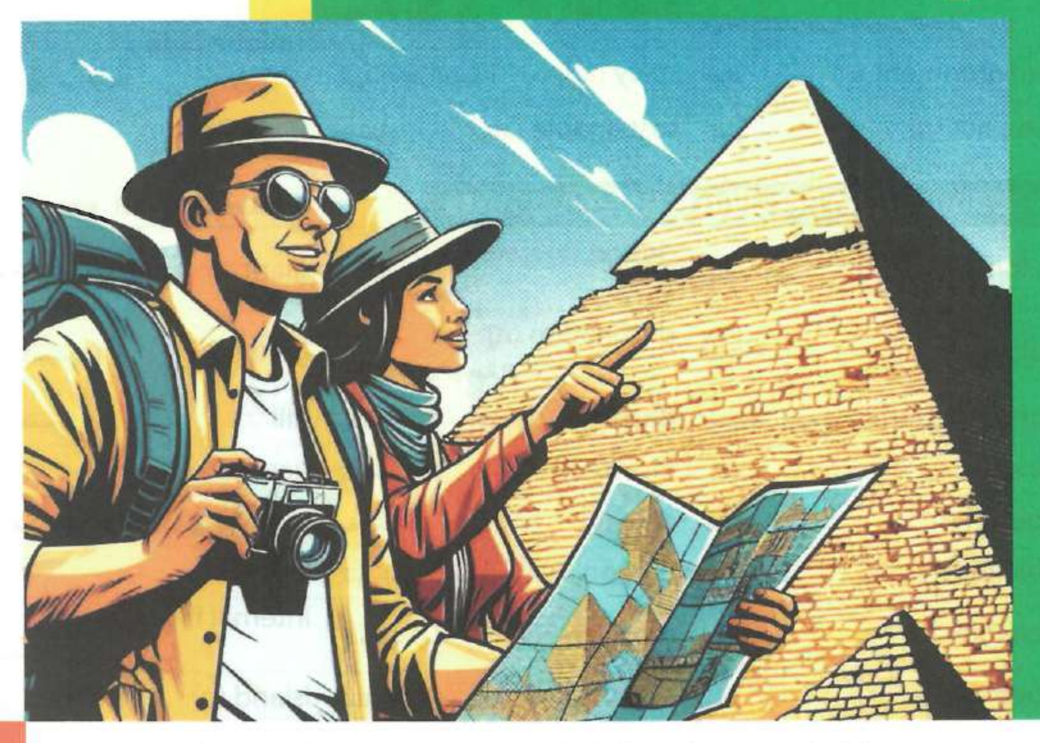


Unit 1
Getting away

Unit 2
Supporting the community

Module Test
Units 1 & 2

Unit 1
Getting away



Objectives

Reading : An article about ecotourism; two blogs about the summer holidays
Writing : An essay on ecotourism
Listening : A story about travelling and what happened when something went wrong
Speaking : Describe an event
Language : Past simple and past continuous
Life Skills : Collaboration

Study... Part 1 | Lessons 1 & 2





Key Vocabulary — المفردات الرئيسية

conservationist (n) الشخص المحافظ على البيئة	isolated (adj) معزول	swell up (v) – ed يتورم
ecotourism (n) السياحة البيئية	lean (v) – ed يميل /يتكئ	trek (v) – ked (n) يترجل /رحلة سيرًا على الأقدام
endangered (adj) مهدد بالانقراض /معرض للخطر	materials (n) مواد (خام)	unique (adj) مميز/فريد من نوعه
environment (n) البيئة	spicy (adj) حريف/حار المذاق	
impact (n) تأثير	sustainable (adj) مستدام	

Vocabulary on Reading & Listening Texts — مفردات نصوص القراءة والاستماع

alone (adj) (adv) وحيد/وحيدًا	design (v) – ed (n) يصمم/تصميم	giant (adj) (n) عملاق
along (adv) بمحاذاة	destination (n) جهة الوصول /وجهة السفر	guide (n) مرشد (سياحى)
annoyed (adj) متضجر/منزعج	develop (v) – ed ينمى/يطور	hill (n) تل/هضبة
avoid (v) – ed يتجنب	disaster (n) كارثة	harm (n) (v) – ed ضرر/يضر
beach (n) شاطئ (بلاج)	dive (v) – d يغطس	including (prep) مشتملًا على
biologist (n) عالم أحياء	dragon (n) تنين (حيوان أسطورى)	insects (n) حشرات
biology (n) علم الأحياء	drop (v) – ped يُسقط	internal flight (n) رحلة طيران داخلية
bite (v) يلدغ	ecosystem (n) نظام بيئى	island (n) جزيرة
book (v) – ed يحجز	educate (v) – d يعلم/يدرس	lemur (n) الليمور (حيوان يشبه القرود)
centre (n) مركز	environmentally friendly (adj) صديق للبيئة	limited (adj) مُقيَّد/محدود
coast (n) ساحل	exist (v) – ed يوجد/يتواجد/يعيش	local (adj) (n) محلى /أحد السكان المحليين
cook (n) طباخ	feed (v) يطعم	luggage (n) أمتعة السفر
coral reefs (n) شعاب مرجانية	fortunately (adv) لحسن الحظ	mainly (adv) بشكل رئيسى/أساسى
damage (n) (v) – d تلف /ضرر/يتلف	fussy eater (n) شخص صعب الإرضاء فى الأكل	natural (adj) طبيعى

observe (v) – d	يراقب/يرصد	provide (v) – d	يمد/يزود	spider (n)	عنكبوت
orangutan (n)	إنسان الغاب	rainforests (n)	الغابات المطيرة	summarise (v) – d	يلخص
path (n)	مسار/ممر/طريق	rebuild (v)	يعيد بناء	teach (v)	يُدرس
pet (n)	حيوان أليف	remote (adj)	بعيد	tourism (n)	سياحة
pink (adj)	وردى اللون	safe (adj)	آمن	turtle (n)	سلحفاة بحرية
properly (adv)	بشكل مناسب	sound (v) – ed	يبدو	volunteer (n) (v) – ed	متطوع/يتطوع
protect (v) – ed	يحمى	souvenir (n)	هدية تذكارية	wildlife (n)	الحياة البرية

Workbook Vocabulary

مفردات كتاب التدريبات

activity (n)	نشاط	effect (n)	تأثير	special (adj)	خاص/مخصوص
advantages (n)	مزايا	encourage (v) – d	يشجع	sunbathe (v) – d	يأخذ حمام شمس
attractions (n)	عوامل/مناطق جذب (سياحى)	plaza (n)	ميدان/ساحة	type (n)	نوع/نمط
carnival (n)	مهرجان/كرنفال	population (n)	السكان/التعداد السكانى	victim (n)	ضحية
council (n)	مجلس	repeat (v) – ed	يكرر/يعيد		
cruise ships (n)	سفن رحلات سياحية	residents (n)	سكان/مقيمون		

Vocabulary Check point 1

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Uncle Saleh is a ....; his work is to protect the plants and animals in the area.
   c a) biologist b) tourist c) conservationist d) geologist
2. Indonesia is a popular .... destination for those who like natural places.
   a) rainforest b) population c) painting d) ecotourism
3. There are many .... animals in the world like the panda.
   a) tiny b) swollen c) endangered d) exotic
4. Tourists like to buy .... when they come to Egypt.
   a) souvenirs b) awards c) rewards d) prices

5. We all know that staying up late has a very bad .... on our health.
a) affect b) effect c) impact d) b & c

6. People who live in .... places find it hard to reach the city.
a) close b) limited c) excited d) isolated

7. In the metro, we shouldn't .... against the doors.
a) lead b) trek c) lean d) observe

8. India is famous for its .... food, which is full of chilli شطة.
a) sweet b) spicy c) good d) along

9. Your injured foot won't .... up if you put ice on it.
a) swallow b) swell c) limit d) stay

10. The club manager says that the .... development will solve all problems.
a) sustainable b) spicy c) limited d) temporary

Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions التعبيرات والمصطلحات وحروف الجر

at least على الأقل	from all around the world من كل أنحاء العالم	keep ... safe يبقى ... آمنًا
blow ... off يُطير (شيئًا)	get ... back يستعيد / يعود	leaning out of يميل إلى الخارج من
catch a flight to يركب طائرة إلى	get to يصل إلى	make a meal (dinner) يجهز وجبة
disappear from يختفى من	give ... to يعطى ... إلى	make notes يدون ملاحظات
do damage to يسبب ضررًا لـ	go back to يعود إلى	be/make sure يتأكد
do something different يقوم بعمل شىء مختلف	go diving يغطس	manage to يتمكن من
educate ... about يعلم ... عن	go on holiday يذهب فى إجازة	popular with معروف / مشهور بـ
famous for مشهور بـ	impact on = effect on تأثير على	protect from/against يحمى من
feed on يتغذى على	important for/to مهم لـ	stay in يبقى فى
find out about يعرف / يكتشف عن	introduce ... to يقدم ... لـ	take (time) to يأخذ وقتًا لكى
for example على سبيل المثال	keep ... as يحتفظ بـ ... كـ	trek into/through يترجل إلى / يشق طريقه بصعوبة

Derivatives

المشتقـات

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
conserve	يحفظ	conservationism/conservation conservationist	الحفاظ على البيئة الشخص المحافظ على البيئة	conservative	محافظ/مقاوم للتغيير
design	يصمم	design designer	تصميم مُصَمِّم	designed	مُصَمَّم
develop	يطور/يتطور	development developer	تطوير/تنمية مطور	developed/developing	متطور/نامٍ
educate	يعلم	education educator	تعليم معلم	educational educated	تعليمى متعلم
endanger	يعرض للخطر	endangerment	التعريض للخطر	endangered	معرض للانقراض
------------------------		environment environmentalist	بيئة مناصر لحماية البيئة	environmental	بيئى
isolate	يعزل	isolation	عزل	isolated	معزول
limit	يحد	limit	حد	limited	محدود
protect	يحمى	protection protector	حماية/وقاية واقٍ	protective	واقٍ
swell	يتورم	swelling	تورم	swollen	متورم
volunteer	يتطوع	voluntourist/volunteer voluntarism	متطوع العمل التطوعى	voluntary	تطوعى

Examples

تعلم أن تستخدم ما تحفظ. لاحظ الأمثلة التالية:

We must conserve our environment for the future. (v)
- A group of conservationists visited the old zoo. (n)
- My father is so conservative that he doesn't like changes. (adj)

The boy isolated his toys from his sister's. (v)
- The isolation of the village makes it hard to deliver goods. (n)
- Murad is isolated in his room because of his disease. (adj)

If you go out in this weather, you endanger yourself. (v)
- The endangerment of some animals may lead to a big problem. (n)
- The students saw many endangered animals in the nature reserve. (adj)

Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	الكلمة	Synonym المرادف	Antonym	المضاد
avoid	يتجنب	avert/stay away from	face/seek	يواجه
develop	يطور / يتطور	promote/progress/flourish/prosper	decline/decrease	يتدهور/يقل
exist	يوجد/يتواجد/يعيش	remain/stay	vanish/depart	يختفى/يرحل
famous	مشهور	well-known/celebrated	unknown/ordinary	غير معروف/عادى
fortunately	لحسن الحظ	luckily/happily	unfortunately/unluckily	لسوء الحظ
giant	عملاق	colossal/gigantic	tiny/minute	ضئيل الحجم
isolated	معزول/نائ	remote/outlying/deserted	close/open	قريب/مفتوح
limited	محدود	restricted/definite	unrestricted/unlimited	مطلق/بلا قيود
natural	طبيعى	normal/ordinary	abnormal/unnatural	غير عادى
remote	بعيد	distant/outlying/isolated	near/close	قريب
sustainable	مستدام	continual/lasting/permanent	temporary/unsustainable	مؤقت
unique	مميز/فريد من نوعه	exceptional/special	normal/ordinary	عادى

Vocabulary Check point 2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Manchester is famous .... its football teams in the Premier League.
   a) for b) with c) of d) at
2. The course is designed to help students develop their speaking skills.
   The antonym of the word "develop" is "....................".
   a) decline b) increase c) promote d) continue
3. The charity depends on unemployed volunteers who give much time and effort.
   The adjective of the word "volunteer" is ....
   a) voluntourist b) voluntary c) voluntarism d) voluntarily
4. Wearing a hat protects you .... the sun in hot places.
   a) for b) with c) from d) in
5. Hunters can't .... deep into snowy woods.
   a) trek b) take c) trick d) track
6. The lizards are classed as an .... species.
   a) endanger b) endangerment c) endangered d) danger
7. The harmful rays of the sun can .... severe damage ضرر شديد to our skin.
   a) make b) lose c) do d) take

8. Clubs offer a wide range of .... and sporting activities.
   a) education b) educate c) educator d) educational
9. It was a unique achievement – no one has ever won the championship five times before. The word "unique" can be replaced with ....
   a) special b) common c) normal d) ordinary
10. The sustainable growth is the only solution. The antonym of the word "sustainable" is ....
   a) lasting b) permanent c) temporary d) continual

Reading Text

Ecotourism – is this the future?

What is ecotourism?

Ecotourism is about providing holidays to places which are often endangered and isolated. The holidays are designed to have a limited impact on the local environment and to educate tourists about conservation.

Egypt is developing ecotourism to protect the environments along the Red Sea coast. Tourists can stay in hotels built[1] of environmentally friendly natural materials. When tourists go diving, they are taught how to avoid damaging the fish and keeping the special coral reefs safe.

Madagascar is famous for its ecotourism and wants to protect its ecosystem (the animals and plants in its environment). 80% of the animals, and 90% of the plants that live there don't exist anywhere else[2] in the world. Lemurs, for example, only live in Madagascar.

The Galapagos Islands in Ecuador are famous for the unique animals, such as the giant turtles which live there. Ecuador makes sure that tourism is[3] sustainable. Only a limited number of people can visit the islands each year, so the animals and their environment are safe.

The Komodo National Park in Indonesia is a popular ecotourism destination. Much of Indonesia's endangered wildlife, including the Komodo dragon, can only be found here. The National Park is also famous for its beach with pink sand.

Notes on some sentences: ملاحظات على بعض الجمل:

١- لاحظ حذف ضمير الوصل مع verb to be فى حالة المبنى للمجهول، وأصلها hotels which were built.
٢- تستخدم anywhere else مع الجملة المنفية بمعنى (فى أى مكان آخر).
٣- الأسماء التى لا تعد مثل tourism تعامل معاملة المفرد.

Workbook Text

A popular problem!

Venice is famous for being a city with many canals[1], colourful carnivals, amazing plazas and historic buildings. However, the city is a victim of its own beauty. Venice has a population of only 55,000 but the city is visited by twenty million tourists[2] every year. This tourism creates a lot of jobs for the local population, but also causes many problems.

Many of the 59,000 tourists a day enjoy riding on boats along the canals, but the large cruise ships can damage the historic buildings. The narrow streets can be very crowded and it is difficult for local people to move around the city.

The local council are trying to find a solution which keeps both the tourists and local residents happy. They are also trying to encourage tourists[3] to visit other beautiful sites around Venice.



Notes on some sentences: ملاحظات على بعض الجمل:

١- يأتى بعد famous for فعل مضاف إليه ing أو اسم أو ضمير.

٢- لاحظ أن كلمة million تأتى مفرد إذا سبقها رقم.

٣- إذا جاء بعد الفعل try حرف الجر to يتبعها مصدر الفعل ويكون معناها يحاول.

Listening Text



Scan & listen



Luca's Holiday

Luca : Last summer, I decided not to go on holiday to Greece with my friends, but to do something different.

Klara : So, where did you go?

Luca : Well, as I am studying biology, I thought I'd go to Indonesia to find out more about the orangutans there. So, I booked a holiday with an ecotourism company and went to Borneo.

Klara : What was it like?

Luca : A bit of disaster[1] although I did love the rainforests. When we got to Jakarta, we caught an internal flight to Borneo. But my luggage never arrived, so I had to buy new clothes. The next morning, we took a boat up the river to the orangutan centre. And while I was leaning out of the boat to take photos, I dropped my camera!

Klara : Oh, no! Did you manage to get it back?

Luca : No way! The river is really deep, so I just had to leave it. But I was very annoyed. But at least, I had my phone. It took two days to get to the centre, so while we were sitting on the boat, the guide told us all about the orangutans and what the conservationists are doing there. It sounded really exciting. When we arrived, the guide introduced us to the people working there[2]. And then, we had dinner.

Klara : What was the food like?

Luca : It was mainly rice and vegetables, but they were very spicy. I don't like spicy food, so I only ate the rice. By the end of the week, I was eating the vegetables and fish though as I was so hungry.

Klara : Well, I am glad to hear you're not such a fussy eater anymore. What did you do every day?

Luca : We got up at about six every morning as that is when the sun rises, had breakfast and then trekked into the forest to learn about orangutans from the people who were looking after them.

Klara : Did you feed them?

Luca : No, they're wild animals, not pets. We just observed them, made notes and took photos[3]. We also learnt about other animals, birds and insects in the rainforests. Unfortunately, at the end of the first week, a spider bit me while I was sleeping and my arm swelled up.

Klara : So, what happened?

Luca : I had to go to a hospital, but as the nearest hospital was 200 kilometres away, I had to go by a helicopter. I stayed there for a week all alone and then went back to the centre. But as soon as I got back, I was ill. One of the tourists was making the dinner that night and he wasn't a good cook, he didn't clean the fish properly and everybody was sick. I am staying at home this summer.



Notes on some sentences:

ملاحظات على بعض الجمل:

١- تأتى a bit of قبل الأسماء غير المعدودة بمعنى قليل من.

٢- تم حذف ضمير الوصل من هذه الجملة، وأصلها ... people who work.

٣- فى حالة عطف الأفعال على بعضها تكون كلها فى نفس الزمن.

Notes on Vocabulary

لاحظ الفرق بين الكلمات التالية:

1	beach	البلاج (الجزء الرملى عند حافة البحر)	By nine o'clock, the beach was already crowded with people.
	shore	شاطئ البحر أو البحيرة	The boat was about a mile from the shore when the engine suddenly stopped.
	coast	ساحـــل	Marina is located on the north coast of Egypt.
	bank	ضفة النهـر أو القنـاة	They walked home along the river bank.
2	include	يشمل / يتضمن (بعض المكونات) وليس كل المكونات - يأتى قبلها الكل وبعدها الجزء.	The room price includes breakfast.
	contain	يحتـوى على شىء بداخله	The thieves stole a purse containing banknotes.
	consist of	يتكـون مـن (كل المكونات الأساسية)	The buffet consisted of several different Indian dishes.
3	teach	يعلـم (شخـص / شىء)	Mr Reda teaches us English.
	learn	يتعلـم شىء	My son has learnt many languages abroad.
	teach/learn (how) to + inf.		- I have taught my children (how) to play the piano. - My children learnt (how) to play the piano.
4	arrive in	يصل إلى مكان كبير (مدينة / دولة / قارة).	- He arrived in Alexandria yesterday.
	arrive at	يصل إلى مكان صغير / محدد	- He arrived at Alexandria airport yesterday.
	reach + object	يصـل إلى (بـدون حرف جـر).	He reached the airport early yesterday.
	get to	يصـل إلى (مكـان صغيـر أو كبيـر).	They got to Cairo yesterday.
5	endangered (adj.)	مهـدد بالانقـراض / معـرض للخطـر	Many rare animals are endangered nowadays.
	in danger	فى خطـر	Many animals are in danger nowadays.
	endanger (v)	يعـرض للخطـر	Smoking endangers our health.

6	sound (v) + adjective = يبـــدو appear/seem + adjective	He sounds/appears/seems happy today.
	sound (n) صوت/ضجة/حس	I tried to open the door without sound as my father was asleep.
	sound (adj.) سليم/معقول	- I was happy to see that my mother was in a sound state of health. - He always gives me some sound advice.
7	drop + object – يسقط أو يرمى شيئًا – يخفض – ينزل من وسيلة مواصلات – يُسقط من قائمة/يحذف	- While I was walking, I dropped my mobile. - The government should drop the prices. - Can you drop me off here, please? - It was not good to drop my name from the guest list.
	fall لا يأتى بعدها مفعول (يقع/يسقط)	While I was walking, I fell and broke my leg.
8	In the end, ... = Finally, ... فى النهاية/أخيرًا (بعد طول انتظار)	In the end, the problem was solved by our great teacher.
	At the end of + noun, ... فى نهاية شىء ...	At the end of the lesson, the teacher asked us some questions.
	By the end of + noun, ... قبل نهاية شىء ...	By the end of the year, we will have finished our study.
9	everyday + noun صفة بمعنى يومى (كلمة واحدة)	Everyone should work hard to provide his everyday needs.
	every day ظرف بمعنى كل يوم (كلمتين منفصلتين)	Students go to school every day except for Fridays.
10	alone (adj) (adv) بمفرده/منفردًا (صفة/ظرف)	He carried the luggage alone.
	lonely (adj) وحيدًا (يشعر بالوحدة) (صفة)	Despite his friends, he feels lonely.
	lone (adj) وحيد (صفة)	The lone survivor of the accident told us what happened.
11	isolated منعزل/معزول	The area is extremely isolated because of the hills that surround it.
	insulated معزول (حراريًا/عن الكهرباء)	Houses in very hot or cold areas should be well insulated.

Vocabulary Check point 3

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The list of the players doesn't .... my name. I am so disappointed.

(b) a) conclude | b) include
c) consist | d) consist of

2. I bought a jacket .... of leather.

a) which made | b) is made
c) made | d) is making

3. Amir didn't have .... else to visit at the end of his journey.

a) anywhere | b) nowhere
c) no place | d) where

4. Dalia is trying .... a flower in thirty seconds.

a) to draw | b) to drawing
c) draws | d) draw

5. Teachers must be aware of the .... language that students use.

a) all | b) every day
c) everyday | d) yearly

6. Some rare species فصائل of animals are .... We must protect them.

a) dangerous | b) in dangerous
c) endangered | d) danger

7. My friend lives in a/an .... village deep in the countryside.

a) isolated | b) insulated
c) created | d) limited

8. Who can forget what Mr Talaat has .... us through his life?

a) taught | b) learnt
c) taught how | d) learnt how

9. Fortunately, we .... the train station in time to catch our train to Luxor.

a) arrived in | b) reached to
c) got to | d) arrived

10. .... the street, there is a very good restaurant.

a) In the end | b) At the end of
c) At the end | d) By the end of

Practise more

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Key Vocabulary, Reading, Listening & Workbook

1. The food is very .... I need water.
   a) cool b) spicy c) sustainable d) sound
2. We should all work together in order not to .... our environment.
   a) predict b) endanger c) protect d) lean
3. Scientists are trying to reduce the .... of plastic on the environment.
   a) impact b) safety c) respect d) development
4. The factory needs some extra .... so that it will be ready to start.
   a) rainforests b) materials c) effects d) reefs
5. Adham's style of playing football is so .... No one is like him.
   a) common b) unique c) adaptable d) isolated
6. The explorers spent the day .... through forests and over mountains.
   a) diving b) trekking c) developing d) racing
7. We should encourage our children to know everything about our .... areas in the desert and Upper Egypt.
   a) swollen b) isolated c) limited d) sustainable
8. It is very important for all of us to find .... solutions for the problems of our country.
   a) sustainable b) terrible c) insulated d) leaning
9. Hams was .... out of the window watching the crowd when she dropped her mobile.
   a) leaning b) swelling c) getting d) making
10. .... are protesting against the plan to remove part of the rainforests.
    a) Conversations b) Conservationists c) Conservations d) Ecotourists
11. Kareema's eyes .... up as a result of her crying after the difficult exam.
    a) swelled b) swallowed c) extended d) refreshed
12. I am very good at studying living things, so it would be wonderful to be a/an ....
    a) biologist b) geologist c) archaeologist d) botanist
13. Pollution has bad effects on the balance of our ....
    a) ecotourism b) economy c) ecotourist d) ecosystem
14. When I arrived home with my friend Ali, I .... him to my family.
    a) produced b) reduced c) concluded d) introduced
15. Scientists try hard to .... the ecosystem everywhere.
    a) protect b) reflect c) defect d) suspect

16. .... means travelling to natural areas with the responsibility of conserving the environment.
a) Ecosystem b) Ecotourism c) Biodiversity d) Curable tourism

17. One of our generous friends .... to help most of his family and friends with their financial problems.
a) trekked b) swelled c) volunteered d) forced

18. Luxor and Aswan have always been a .... for most tourists who visit Egypt.
a) conversation b) conservation c) location d) destination

19. I like diving to see the .... of the Red Sea which are so amazing.
a) coral reefs b) colour reefs c) coral leaves d) moral reefs

20. Our teacher is so friendly and always gives us a .... treatment.
a) cruel b) boring c) special d) giant

21. I was so proud to be part of this .... project that will help many youths in Egypt.
a) tiny b) ordinary c) trivial d) giant

22. Reham hates to stay home .... She gets afraid.
a) along b) mainly c) readily d) alone

23. Mr Ahmed always advises me to .... smoking.
a) protect b) avoid c) keep d) go

24. There are a lot of .... of using the internet wisely.
a) bites b) disadvantages c) advantages d) injuries

25. These bottles are made of .... materials. They can't pollute our environment.
a) friendly environmentally b) environmentally friendly
c) unfriendly environmentally d) non-environmentally friendly

26. We should book the tickets early as there is only a/an .... number available.
a) unlimited b) great c) limited d) huge

Expressions, Idioms, Prepositions, Derivatives, Synonyms & Antonyms

27. When I go to Sharm, I like to .... diving every day.
a) do b) play c) go d) take

28. My mother is the best one to .... meals for us. She is my favourite cook.
a) have b) eat c) repair d) make

29. The manager tried to .... a flight to New York to attend the conference.
a) catch b) miss c) ride d) get off

30. Ramy, let me introduce you .... the manager.
a) for b) at c) to d) in

31. It will take you at .... 20 minutes to get there.
a) less b) lest c) least d) last

32. Hassan .... a note of the doctor's address and phone number.
a) signed b) did c) noticed d) made

33. Although I live with my family, sometimes I feel ....

a) a lone b) only c) lonely d) crowded

34. Hello Madam, I want to tell you that your daughter has just .... to school.

a) reached b) arrived c) got d) contacted

35. We should encourage children to play with toys made of environmentally friendly natural .... Longman

a) matters b) materials c) ingredients d) issues

36. Cycling is a totally .... form of transport. Longman

a) nonrenewable b) recyclable c) sustainable d) temporary

37. How can we encourage ecotourism without .... the places we visit? Longman

a) keeping b) allowing c) harming d) remaining

38. The tourist industry has had a big .... on the local town. (سوهاج - أخميم)

a) impact b) damage c) destruction d) infection

39. .... do their best to protect the wildlife. (الإسكندرية - ادارة وسط)

a) Archaeologists b) Chemists c) Conservationists d) Artists

40. I am travelling to Aswan in three days. It is my next .... (الإسكندرية - المنتزه)

a) community b) destination c) material d) ecotourism

41. Students should be exposed to .... English language not only the formal one. (الجيزة - العياط)

a) every day b) all days c) everyday d) each day

42. The role of a/an .... is to study living things. (القليوبية - القناطر الخيرية)

a) chemist b) biologist c) archaeologist d) artist

Choose the TWO (2) correct answers of the FIVE (5) options:

43. Be careful! The forest is full of giant snakes and spiders. The synonyms of the word "giant" are ....

a) tiny b) minute c) small d) gigantic e) colossal

44. The teacher intended to help students avoid common mistakes. The antonyms of the word "avoid" are ....

a) seek b) deliver c) face d) depart e) decrease

45. The helicopter crashed in a remote desert area. The antonyms of the word "remote" are ....

a) abnormal b) temporary c) unknown d) close e) near

46. ...., the police caught the seller who tried to cheat the tourists.

a) At the end b) Finally c) Endless d) Endlessly e) In the end

47. The Galápagos Islands in Ecuador are famous for their unique animals. 'Unique' is an antonym for .... Longman

a) common b) small c) normal d) strong e) cheap

48. There are fewer people in .... areas than in big cities. Longman

a) remote b) outlying c) populated d) big e) close

B Language

1 The Past Simple Tense زمن الماضى البسيط

The past simple tense is used to talk about actions completed at a certain time in the past.

يستخدم الماضى البسيط للتعبير عن أحداث اكتملت فى وقت محدد فى الماضى.



FORM التكوين

Affirmative الإثبات	فى صيغه الإثبات استخدم: **Subject فاعل + v + d/ed/ied (التصريف الثانى للفعل)** • I/He/They attended the party yesterday.
Negative النفى	أما فى النفى استخدم: **Subject فاعل + didn't + inf. مصدر** • I/He/They didn't attend the party yesterday.
Question السؤال	وفى حالة السؤال استخدم: **Wh- word أداة استفهام + did + subject فاعل + inf. مصدر?** • What did you attend yesterday? **Did + subject فاعل + inf. مصدر?** • Did he attend the party yesterday?
Passive المبنى للمجهول	وفى صيغه المبنى للمجهول استخدم: **Object مفعول + was/were + P.P. التصريف الثالث للفعل** • The party was attended yesterday.

Key words الكلمات الدالة

yesterday	أمس	in the ancient times	فى العصور القديمة
from ... to ...	من عام ... إلى ...	once upon a time	كان ياماكان (ذات مرة)
How long ago ...?	منذ متى ...؟	the other day	منذ فترة قريبة / فى ذلك اليوم / اليوم السابق
ago	منذ	last	السابق
just now	توًا / حالًا	in the past	فى الماضى
once	ذات مرة	in ...	فى عام

Examples

- I ate my food ten minutes ago.
- We lived in Tanta from 2000 to 2010.

USAGE الاستخدام

1 **For completed actions in the past:** أحداث اكتملت فى الماضى.

She studied all her lessons yesterday.

2 **For repeated actions or habits in the past:** أحداث متكررة أو عادات فى الماضى.

When he was in Alexandria, he went to the beach every day.

3 **For retelling situations or stories:** سرد مواقف أو قصص وقعت فى الماضى.

Yesterday, I went out to the café, then I ordered a cup of coffee.

الفرق بين was/were و did فى السؤال والنفى فى الماضى البسيط.

– تستخدم did لعمل سؤال فى الماضى البسيط باستخدام فعل، ولكن يستخدم was/were للسؤال عن صفة أو اسم أو حرف جر:



Did you study your lessons?

What did you study yesterday?



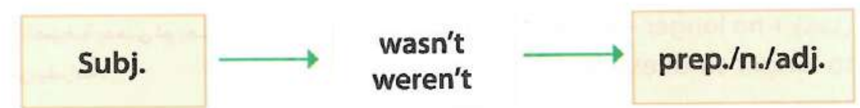
Were you ill last week?

Why was your brother in Alexandria yesterday?

– تستخدم didn't لنفى الفعل فى زمن الماضى ويتبعها مصدر الفعل ولكن تستخدم wasn't/weren't قبل الاسم والصفة وحرف الجر:



I didn't sleep well yesterday.



We weren't tired, so we played again.

Language Check point 4

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Randa .... a call from her friend yesterday.
   (c) a) receives b) was received c) received d) was receiving
2. Ashraf didn't .... the party last week.
   a) attend b) attending c) attended d) be attending
3. I .... on a picnic with my family two days ago.
   a) go b) goes c) went d) was going
4. Ayman read an interesting book ....
   a) yet b) now c) ago d) the other day
5. My money .... during the party yesterday.
   a) stole b) was stolen c) stealing d) stolen

Expressing Past Habits Using Used to: التعبير عن العادات فى الماضى:

used to

Affirmative الإثبات

Subj. فاعل + used to + inf. مصدر

- He used to smoke, but now he cares about his health.

Usage الاستخدام

- For habits and situations in the past that don't exist in the present.

عادات ومواقف كانت تحدث فى الماضى ولم تعد تحدث فى الحاضر.

Negative النفى

Subj. فاعل + didn't + use to + inf.

- He didn't use to smoke, but now he does.

Subj. فاعل + never + used to + inf.

- He never used to smoke, but now he does.

Question السؤال

Did + subj. فاعل + use to + inf.?

أداة الاستفهام + did + subj. فاعل + use to + inf.?

- A: Did he use to smoke?
  A: Yes, he did./B: No, he didn't.
- A: What did he use to do?
  B: He used to smoke.

Other ways to express past habits: طرق أخرى للتعبير عن العادات التى لم تعد تحدث:

1 Subj. فاعل + no longer + present simple

- He no longer smokes a lot.

تستخدم هذه الصيغة بمعنى لم يعد
لم يعد يدخن بشراهة.

2 Subj. فاعل + negative form + any longer/anymore

- He doesn't smoke a lot any longer/any more.

تستخدم هذه الصيغة بمعنى لم يعد يحدث ثانيةً/بعد.
لم يعد يدخن بشراهة ثانية.

3 **It was + (someone's/ صفة ملكيـة) + habit to + inf.**

تستخدم هـذه الصيـغة بمعنـى كانـت عـادة شخـص أنه يفعـل كـذا.

It was his habit to smoke a lot.

كانت عـادته أن يدخـــن كثيـرًا.

4 **Subj. فاعـل + (was/were) + in the habit of + (v-ing)**

تستخدم هـذه الصيـغة بمعنـى أن شخـصًا كانـت له عــادة.

He was in the habit of smoking a lot.

كان منخرطًا فى عـادة التدخـين.

5 **Subj. فاعـل + got into the habit of + (v-ing)**

تستخدم هـذه الصيـغة بمعنـى أن شخصًا انخـرط فى عـادة مـا.

He got into the habit of smoking a lot.

كان منخرطًا فى عـادة التدخـين.

NOTE THE FOLLOWING:

لاحظ التالى

1 عند استخدام بعض الأفعال (be/get/become) قبل used to يصبح الفعل بعدها مضافًا له ing كالتالى:

Subj. فاعل → was/were / got / became → used to → (v-ing) or (Noun) or (Pronoun)

Examples

He was used to smoking.

كان معتادًا على التدخين.

They got used to going to the club.

اعتادوا على الذهاب إلى النادى.

Amal became used to riding horses.

أصبحت أمل معتادة على ركوب الخيل.

The children were used to playing in the garden.

اعتاد الأطفال على اللعب فى الحديقة.

2 لا تستخدم used to عند تحديد وقت للحدث. مثال:

I used to visit my uncle last week. (✗)

I visited my uncle last week. (✓)

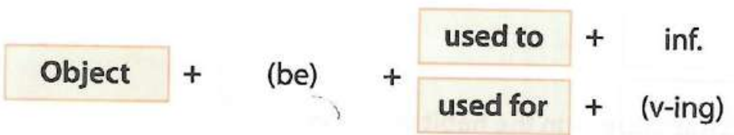
3 يمكن استخدام ظروف التكرار (always/ usually/ often ...) مع الماضى البسيط للتعبير عن مدى تكرار الحدث:

I always went to school early.

دائمًا ما كنت أذهب إلى المدرسة مبكرًا.



4 يمكن استخدام be used to/for بمعنى يستخدم لـ:



- The camera is used to take photographs.
- The camera is used for taking photographs.

تستخدم الكاميرا لالتقاط الصور.

Language Check point 5

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Ashrakat .... drink milk in the morning, but now she doesn't.

(d) a) uses to b) used c) didn't use to d) used to

2. Kareem always .... first at school when he was young.

( ) a) comes b) come c) came d) was coming

3. She doesn't study hard ....

( ) a) any more b) any longer c) no longer d) a & b

4. Ahmed .... eat meat, but he likes it now.

( ) a) used b) used to c) didn't use d) didn't use to

5. Did Reda .... to sleep early when he was young?

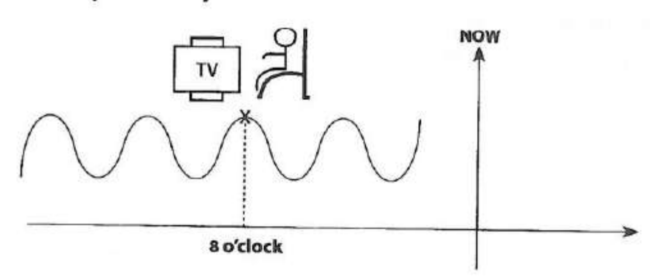
( ) a) used b) using c) use d) be used

2 The Past Continuous Tense زمن الماضى المستمر

The past continuous tense is used to talk about actions in progress at a specific duration in the past.

يستخدم الماضى المستمر للتعبير عن أحداث كانت مستمرة فى فترة محددة فى الماضى.

- I was watching TV at 8 yesterday.



FORM التكوين



Affirmative الإثبات

فى صيغه الإثبات استخدم:

Subject فاعل + (was/were) + v-ing

I/He/She/It + was + v-ing

- He was playing games all day yesterday.

They/We/You + were + v-ing

- They were playing games all day yesterday.

Negative النفى

أما فى النفى استخدم:

I/He/She/It + wasn't + v-ing

- I wasn't playing games all day yesterday.

They/We/You + weren't + v-ing

- They weren't playing games all day yesterday.

Question السؤال

وفى حالة السؤال استخدم:

Was/Were + subject + v-ing?

- Was Samy playing games all day yesterday?
- Were you playing games all day yesterday?

Wh- word + was/were + subject + v-ing?

- Where were you playing all day yesterday?

Passive المبنى للمجهول

وفى صيغه المبنى للمجهول استخدم:

Object + was/were + being + P.P.

- Games were being played all day yesterday.

Key words الكلمات الدالة

while	when	as	just as	all (day, night, ...)
بينما	عندما	بينما	(فى اللحظة التى)	طوال ... (مدة زمنية فى الماضى)

USAGE الاستخدام

1 To show that an action was in progress at a certain time.

حدث كان مستمرًا فى وقت محدد.

- At 6 o'clock yesterday, I was looking at the orangutans.

2 To show that a shorter action happened during another longer action. (with the past simple)

حدث كان مستمرًا وقطعه حدث آخر.

- I was leaning out of the boat when I dropped my camera.

3 To describe two actions that were in progress at the same time.

للتعبير عن حدثين كانا مستمرين فى نفس الوقت دون قاطع.

- Just as I was sleeping, my father was doing his work.

4 To describe the event in progress, at some time between its beginning and its end.
حدث كان مستمرًا فى وقت ما بين بدايته ونهايته.

- From nine to eleven yesterday, I was writing some important essays.

لاحظ استخدامات الروابط التالية:

- للتعبير عن حدثين قطع أحدهما الآخر (الأحدث قطع الحدث الأقدم الذى بدأ أولًا).

While/ As/ Just as/ When	Past continuous	Past simple

- While he was playing the game, it rained.

Past simple	while/ as/ just as/ when	Past continuous

- The phone rang while he was studying his lessons.

- للتعبير عن حدثين استمرا فى نفس الوقت بدون قاطع.

While/ As/ Just as/ When	Past continuous	Past continuous

- As I was studying my lessons, my sister was watching TV.

Past continuous	while/ as/ just as/ when	Past continuous

- He was eating his food just as his mother was ironing his clothes.

Language Check point 6

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Nardeen .... all day yesterday.
   a) was sleeping b) had slept c) is sleeping d) was being slept
   (a)
2. Yesterday from 10 to 12, I .... playing; I was studying.
   a) was b) were c) wasn't d) didn't
3. .... the boys painting the room when you entered?
   a) What b) Did c) Were d) Was
4. The teacher was writing the lesson .... the students were discussing some questions.
   a) while b) during c) on d) because
5. My bike ...., so I went to the supermarket on foot.
   a) was fixing b) were fixing c) was being fixed d) was fixed

Practise more

جدول الأفعال غير المنتظمة
نهاية الكتاب

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. First, Yasser climbed the tree, then he .... afraid to get down.
   a) was become b) was becoming c) has become d) became
2. I was having my lunch when the phone ....
   a) ring b) had rung c) was rung d) rang
3. Ahmed was writing a letter while his brothers .... video games.
   a) was playing b) played c) were playing d) are playing
4. When I was young, I .... on my father's farm.
   a) was worked b) was used to work
   c) have worked d) worked
5. My brother .... his lessons when he heard a cry in the street.
   a) studied b) studying c) was studying d) was studied
6. This picture .... in the nineteenth century.
   a) painted b) was painted
   c) had been painted d) is painting
7. The manager arrived just as we .... our problems.
   a) were discussing b) discussed
   c) have discussed d) used to discuss
8. When I went to my friend's house, he .... his room and asked me to help him.
   a) painted b) had painted c) is painting d) was painting
9. How long ago .... in Luxor?
   a) have you stayed b) have you been staying
   c) did you stay d) both a & b
10. What .... when the lights went out last night?
    a) you were doing b) were you doing
    c) are you doing d) have you done
11. From 6 to 8 last Friday, an important match ....
    a) was watching b) had watched
    c) watched d) was being watched
12. My son .... to stay up late at night, but now he goes to bed at 2 a.m.
    a) didn't use b) used c) isn't used d) wasn't used
13. A knife is used to .... meat.
    a) cut b) cutting c) be cut d) be cutting

14. Did Amany .... to cook the food well?

a) used b) using c) use d) uses

15. Rasheed .... watch Egyptian films, but now he does.

a) used to b) didn't use to
c) wasn't used to d) used to not

16. While we .... lunch, my cousin suddenly arrived.

a) having b) are having
c) were having d) had

17. Just as Nabil was running, he .... to the ground.

a) falls b) fell c) was falling d) fall

18. .... lunch at home yesterday?

a) Were you b) Did you have
c) You had d) Do you have

19. Nora .... late when she was young. She no longer does that now.

a) usually sleeps b) is used to sleeping
c) used to sleep d) is usually sleeping

20. Khaled became used .... up in the early morning.

a) get b) to get c) to getting d) to be got

21. Did you see that? The car .... by the helicopter.

a) was chasing b) was being chased
c) will be chased d) has been chased

22. Our relatives .... and visited my grandfather every day when he was ill.

a) used to come b) were used to coming
c) used for coming d) usually came

23. Sameh .... save money. Now, he does as he wants to buy a car.

a) used to b) didn't use to c) uses to d) is used to

24. Yousef .... sleeps early as he .... to do when he was young.

a) never/is used b) no way/was used
c) no longer/used d) any longer/was used

25. Which of the following sentences is grammatically correct?

a) She didn't met her friends yesterday.
b) He didn't got my email last week.
c) I used to go out last night.
d) We didn't go out last night.

26. Which of the following is NOT grammatically correct?

a) Did you use to sleep early?

b) I was watching the match when you called.

c) Did you liked my present?

d) I used to study my lessons at night.

27. My father travelled to London .... 2005. Longman

a) while b) when c) in d) since

28. My uncle .... as a shop assistant for only fourteen years. Now, he is a worker in a factory. Longman

a) has worked b) had worked

c) worked d) works

29. The Second World War .... from 1939 to 1945. Longman

a) will last b) has lasted c) had lasted d) lasted

30. I enjoyed seeing the view of the Nile while the plane .... Longman

a) lands b) landed

c) is landing d) was landing

31. While I ...., a child suddenly ran in front of my car. Luckily, he was not injured. Longman

a) driving b) drove c) was driving d) am driving

32. When Rana came home, her sister .... the dishes. (الإسكندرية - إدارة المنتزه)

a) was washed b) is washing

c) was washing d) has washed

33. What .... at 8 p.m. yesterday? (الإسكندرية - إدارة وسط)

a) were you doing b) are you doing

c) have you done d) had you done

34. She .... hiding her dad's shoes when she was young. (القليوبية - إدارة القناطر الخيرية)

a) used to b) is used to c) got used to d) use to

35. When I went to the workshop, my car ...., so I had to wait. (الغربية - إدارة المحلة)

a) repaired b) was repairing

c) was being repaired d) had repaired

36. A: Why .... you go to the club yesterday?

B: Because I was busy doing my homework. (الغربية - إدارة المحلة)

a) did b) didn't c) will d) do



Take a test

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Vocabulary

1. The .... of the world has increased rapidly and we think that it is the main reason for too many problems.
a) destination b) ecosystem c) population d) environment

2. There were a lot of .... as a result of the terrible accident on the highway.
a) survivors b) victims c) criminals d) insects

3. Some animals live in very .... parts of the world and people never see them.
a) insulated b) limited c) excited d) isolated

4. My little brother is very .... about his food. He doesn't eat many things.
a) volunteer b) protected c) fussy d) greedy

5. We should protect the natural environment .... the Red Sea coast.
a) a long b) long c) along d) on

6. We don't want to interfere in the .... affairs شئون of other countries.
a) personnel b) inside c) internal d) privacy

7. You must get up early if you want to .... your flight to London.
a) miss b) make c) catch d) drop

8. The .... of technology on the new system of education is very clear nowadays.
a) impact b) affection c) crash d) destination

9. Everyone of us should try hard to .... something different in their life.
a) make b) do c) had d) invent

10. Silver was introduced as the cook who would .... meals for the crew.
a) install b) protect c) repair d) make

11. One of the .... of the new job is having a respectable salary.
a) disadvantages b) materials c) productions d) attractions

12. Nowadays, most people only have a/an .... amount of free time as they work hard to live well.
a) special b) huge c) isolated d) limited

13. I usually take my children in my car and .... them in front of their school.
a) fall b) throw c) bite d) drop

14. I like travelling to the north .... with my friends when we have a holiday.
a) shore b) beach c) coast d) bank

15. The ingredients of the recipe وصفة don't .... tomato or garlic.
a) contain of b) include c) consist d) enclose

Language

16. We usually .... our grandfather when we were on holiday.
a) visit b) visits c) visiting d) visited
17. While Ashraf was trying to catch the bus, he .... his phone.
a) was dropping b) dropped c) has dropped d) was dropped
18. My bag .... yesterday, so I called the police.
a) stole b) was stolen c) steals d) is stolen
19. While I was driving along this morning, I .... about what they had said.
a) was thinking b) was thought c) had thought d) am thinking
20. He .... to prison as a result of his crimes.
a) was taken b) took c) was taking d) had taken
21. Our lunch .... while I was doing my school homework.
a) was preparing b) is prepared
c) was being prepared d) has been prepared
22. Reyad used to .... to work by train when he was young.
a) gone b) go c) went d) going
23. He .... to the beach when he was younger.
a) is used to going b) was going c) always goes d) usually went
24. I no longer sleep late as I .... when I was still a young man.
a) am used b) am used to c) used d) used to
25. My sister .... a gold ring while she was playing in her garden.
a) was finding b) finds c) found d) used to find
26. The water in Lake Nasser .... irrigate vast areas of fields and farms in Egypt.
a) used to b) is used for c) is using to d) is used to
27. They .... TV together all day yesterday as they finished their work.
a) were watching b) have watched c) had watched d) are watching
28. I never .... to play any musical instrument.
a) was learned b) learnt c) have learnt d) was learning
29. A good teacher .... keeping his students at hard work.
a) gets used for b) is used to c) used to d) is used for
30. I found these photos while I was cleaning out my cupboards. This means ....
a) I had found these photos before I cleaned out my cupboards
b) I had already started to clean out my cupboards when I found these photos
c) I was found these photos at the same time that I was cleaning out my cupboards
d) I was cleaning out my cupboards when I found these photos.





Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

active (adj)	نشيط	crowded (adj)	مزدحم	peaceful (adj)	هادئ/آمن/سِلمى
ancient (adj)	قديم (أثرى)	exotic (adj)	غريب	quiet (adj) (n)	هادئ/هدوء
beautiful (adj)	جميل	modern (adj)	حديث/عصرى	relax (v) – ed	يسترخى/يستريح
boring (adj)	ممل	new (adj)	جديد		
busy (adj)	مزدحم/مشغول	noisy (adj)	مزعج	relaxing (adj)	مريح
calm (adj)	هادئ	old (adj)	قديم		

Vocabulary on Reading Texts مفردات نصوص القراءة

actually (adv)	فى الواقع	expect (v) – ed	يتوقع	sail (n) (v) -ed	شراع/يبحر
amazing (adj)	مدهش	fascinating (adj)	ساحر/خلاب	steal (v)	يسرق
away (adv.)	بعيدًا	gardening (n)	أعمال الحديقة	teenager (n)	مراهق
awful (adj)	فظيع	glad (adj)	سعيد	temple (n)	معبد
balcony (n)	بلكونة	grow (v)	يزرع	tiny (adj)	صغيرالحجم (ضئيل)
brilliant (adj)	رائع	hobby (n)	هواية	try (v) (~~y~~ied)	يحاول/يجرب
castle (n)	قلعة	lettuce (n)	نبات الخس	underwater (adj) (adv)	تحت الماء
cheap (adj)	رخيص	resort (n)	منتجع	weather (n)	الطقس

Workbook Vocabulary مفردات كتاب التدريبات

adventure (n)	مغامرة	explore (v) – d	يستكشف	support (n) (v) – ed	دعم/يدعم
break (n)	فسحة/نزهة	on board (adv)	على متن (سفينة أو طائرة)		
distance (n)	مسافة	paradise (n)	جنة	unusual (adj)	غيرمعتاد
eco-trip (n)	رحلة ميدانية بيئية	stressed (adj)	مضغوط/مجهد		

Vocabulary Check point 1

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Staying alone at home after my hard work is so .... for me.
   b a) relaxed b) relaxing c) noisy d) worrying
2. .... were built in the past for protection from enemies.
   a) Museums b) Pyramids c) Castles d) Bridges
3. The clock on the wall of my room is so .... that I find it difficult to sleep.
   a) noise b) quiet c) amazing d) noisy
4. Hurghada and Sharm El-Sheikh are famous for their wonderful .... that attract a lot of tourists.
   a) temples b) resorts c) banks d) gardens
5. Alexandria is an absolutely .... city. We all like it.
   a) amazing b) boring c) new d) awful
6. Salma is a very .... engineer who has a very good reputation.
   a) brilliant b) relaxing c) stupid d) ancient
7. My grandmother is over 80 but she is still very ....
   a) crowded b) active c) exotic d) elderly
8. Although Eman looks 30 years old, she is .... 46 years old.
   a) finally b) musingly c) annually d) actually
9. Children are always trying to .... the world around them.
   a) explain b) explore c) find d) support
10. Luxor and Aswan are our greatest historic cities where there are a lot of ....
   a) pyramids b) lakes c) temples d) stadiums

Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions التعبيرات والمصطلحات وحروف الجر

(be) stuck	عالق (غير قادر على الخروج)	dive with	يغطس مع	walk around	يتنزه
have a holiday	يأخذ إجازة	leave behind	يترك خلفه	live in	يعيش فى
go away	يرحل	tired of	متعب من	loads of	كميات من
go down	ينخفض / تغرب (الشمس)	take photos	يلتقط صورًا فوتوغرافية	on balcony	فى البلكونة
make good use of	يستغل	interested in	مهتم بـ		
busy with	مشغول بـ	over the moon	سعيد جداً		

Derivatives

المشتقات

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
bore	يتسبب فى الشعور بالملل	boredom	ملل	boring bored	ممل شاعر بالملل
calm	يهدأ/يُهدِّئ	calmness	هدوء	calm	هادئ
crowd	يحشد/يدفع	crowd	حشد/جمع من الناس	crowded	مزدحم
fascinate	يفتن/يسحر	fascination	جاذبية/افتتان	fascinating fascinated	ساحر منبهر
pacify	يهدأ/يسكن	peace peacefulness	سلام هدوء	peaceful	آمن
quieten	يهدأ	quiet/quietness	هدوء/سكينة	quiet	هادئ
stick	يُقحم/يلصق	sticker stickiness	ملصق لزوجة	stuck sticky	عالق لزج

Examples

تعلم أن تستخدم ما تحفظ، لاحظ الأمثلة التالية:

- I don't want to bore you with my problems. (v)
  - Ahmed went out because of boredom. (n)
  - The film was boring, so Rehab felt bored. (adj)-(adj)
- The mother tried to calm the baby. (v)
  - The calmness of the place was relaxing. (n)
  - The baby got calm and smiled. (adj)
- The clown fascinated us with amazing tricks. (v)
  - The children watched the show in fascination. (n)
  - The children were fascinated by the clown's tricks. (adj)

Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	الكلمة	Synonym المرادف	Antonym	المضاد
active	نشيط	energetic/dynamic	inactive/lazy/idle	كسول/خامل
amazing	مدهش/مذهل	astonishing/fascinating	believable/ordinary	معقول/عادى
ancient	قديم	old/antique	modern/new	حديث/عصرى
beautiful	جميل	pretty/cute/handsome	ugly/awful	قبيح
boring	ممل	dull/uninteresting	exciting/interesting	مثير
busy	مزدحم	crowded/jammed	empty/free	فارغ/خال

calm	هادئ	peaceful/quiet	nervous/upset/noisy	متوتر/عصبى/مزعج
exotic	غريب	strange/unusual	common/normal	شائع/عادى
fascinating	ساحر/خلاب	charming/interesting	boring/dull	ممل
relaxing	مريح	comfortable/calm	noisy/worrying	مزعج/صاخب/مقلق

Vocabulary Check point 2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. As Mona had too much work to do, she got .... at home finishing it.
b a) stick b) stuck c) worried d) struck

2. I have become so tired .... my daily routine.
a) in b) of c) by d) on

3. I live in a very quiet and .... village. I am happy to live here.
a) peaceful b) exotic c) quietness d) crowded

4. I live .... in my village where I have no problems with people.
a) peacefully b) peace
c) peaceful d) peacefulness

5. My hobby is .... photos of natural views all over Egypt.
a) making b) doing c) producing d) taking

6. Hana got the job she desired, so she was ....
a) above the moon b) over the moon
c) on air d) over the sun

7. Mr Said likes visiting ancient places all over Egypt. The synonym of "ancient" is "....................".
a) modern b) new c) recent d) antique

8. The film was so boring that we left the cinema early. The opposite of "boring" is "....................".
a) excited b) dull c) interesting d) noisy

9. Kamal is interested .... collecting stamps طوابع from all over the world.
a) with b) in c) of d) at

10. My parents took us on a nice trip .... the Nile in a wonderful boat.
a) a long b) by c) beneath d) along

Reading Text (1)

Blog 1: This is me on our hotel balcony in Sharm El-Sheikh. It's brilliant here and there are loads of things to do. I'm over the moon visiting Egypt. The weather's really hot so we spend most of the time in the water.

My sister and I are learning to dive with some other teenagers at the resort. I love diving;[1] it's so relaxing and you can see all these amazing fish[2] in the sea. I want to get an underwater camera so I can take photos of them.

Last week, we were in Luxor and visited the ancient temples there. I'm not usually interested in history, but I actually found them fascinating and am really glad we went there.



Notes on some sentences:

ملاحظات على بعض الجمل:

١- لاحظ الفعل love من الممكن أن يأتى بعده to + inf. أو v-ing دون اختلاف فى المعنى:

I love to dive = I love diving

٢- كلمة fish هنا جمع.

Reading Text (2)



Blog 2: Day 10 of my summer holidays! I'm so bored – all my friends are away or busy with their family and I'm stuck here at home. The weather's awful and there's nothing to do[1].

Last week, I went to stay with my grandparents for a few days, which was nice, but they live in a tiny village with no shops. I was helping Granddad in his garden most of the time. He grows all his own vegetables – he says it's cheaper than buying them.

Maybe I'll try and grow some lettuce in our garden when it stops raining[2]. I was watching a programme on TV this morning about gardening – maybe I'll have[3] a new hobby!



Notes on some sentences:

ملاحظات على بعض الجمل:

١- كلمة nothing تعطى معنى النفى ولذلك لا يأتى معها not.

٢- الفعل stop يأتى بعده v-ing إذا كان بمعنى يتوقف عن.

٣- كلمات التعبير عن الاحتمال يأتى بعدها will + inf. مثل perhaps/ maybe/ probably.

Reading Text (3)

Lara's Holiday

f) We went to Europe to visit my cousins in Portugal.
d) My uncle met us at the airport and drove us to the old part[1] of town. It's very quiet and peaceful.
b) We walked around Lisbon and I took lots of photos.
a) As I was photographing the castle, my little brother started crying[2].
h) He was eating an ice cream and a bird stole it! He was very upset.
g) My uncle decided to take us to a restaurant for lunch.
c) We went to the shops, they are a bit expensive but my mum was happy.
e) We sailed along the river to see the sun going down[3]. It was beautiful and very relaxing!



Notes on some sentences: ملاحظات على بعض الجمل:

١- الفعل drive يأتى بعده شخص بمعنى يقوم بتوصيل شخص بالسيارة.
٢- الفعل start يأتى بعده .to + inf أو v-ing دون اختلاف فى المعنى.
٣- الفعل see بعده مفعول ثم v-ing عند رؤية جزء من الحدث أما عند رؤية الحدث كله نستخدم مصدر الفعل.



Workbook Text

Holidays Adverts

A beach break

Do you want to relax in a quiet and peaceful place? Escape from noisy streets and leave your busy city life behind. Visit this amazing paradise. Enjoy the sunshine on isolated beaches and swim in clean, clear water.

Adventure time

Are you tired of the same old, boring places? Are you looking for an active holiday? Then this is the holiday for you. Day one starts with diving, then day two takes you climbing in the beautiful Alpine Mountains.

Eco-trip

Ecotourism is a new way to travel for a new kind of traveller. You can go trekking through the Andes and explore ancient Machu Picchu with a local guide. You can enjoy peace and quiet or you can meet the local people, all without damaging the environment.

A cruise to remember

Why not take a calm cruise around the Caribbean? On board our modern cruise ship, you can enjoy great food and forget your worries in our relaxing restaurants. We stop at six different islands where you can visit the crowded markets and see many unusual sights.

Video Script



Do tourists usually stop and think about the impact they have on the place they're visiting?

The tourist offices in cities which are popular with tourists think about how tourism affects their cities. They consider the advantages and disadvantages. They try to help local people cope with lots of visitors in the streets of their city.

A good example is Amsterdam in the Netherlands. Twenty years ago, the city's tourism office was spending a lot of money advertising the city, but they don't do this anymore. The city has about 18 million visitors a year and that is more than enough for a community of 1.5 million local people.

In future, people should think more about the environment and local people when they are travelling. For example, they should use public transport if they can, and try not to travel when the roads and trains are very busy with local people travelling to work. There is plenty of space for everyone if we are considerate of each other!

Notes on Vocabulary

لاحظ الفرق بين الكلمات التالية:

1	**child = kid**	طفل صغير	The hotel is ideal for families with young children.
	toddler	طفل يتعلم المشى	Tamara is just a toddler; she can't go up the stairs by herself.
	teenager = adolescent	مراهق	Omar needs a special treatment because he is a teenager.
	youth	شاب	The police had questioned three youths, but then later released them without charge.
	adult	شخص بالغ	The cost of the trip is 100 pounds for adults and 50 pounds for children.
2	**weather**	الطقس (حالة الجو لفترة قصيرة)	What's the weather like today?
	climate	المناخ (حالة الجو لفترة طويلة)	The climate is cooler in the east of the country.
	atmosphere	الغلاف الجوى/الجو العام	These factories are releasing toxic gases into the atmosphere.

3	steal + (something) يسرق (شيئًا)	He stole money from his neighbours, so he went to prison.
	rob + (place/person) يسرق (من مكان أو شخص)	A gang robbed the bank at the corner yesterday.
	rob + (somebody) of (something) يسرق شيئًا (من شخص أو مكان)	They threatened to shoot him and robbed him of all his possessions.
4	find	يجد
	+ (object) + (adjective)	- We found her body hidden in the bushes. - When I reached home, I found my father angry.
	+ (object 1) + (object 2) + to + inf.	Has he found himself/her/ someone a place to live in yet?
	+ that + (subject) + (verb)	The study found that dinosaurs lived on earth 150 million years ago.
5	explore يستكشف (مكانًا)	Scientists are trying hard to explore other planets.
	discover يكتشف شيئًا موجودًا بالفعل ولكن لم يكن معروفًا	Professor Zewail discovered the femtosecond.
	invent يخترع شيئًا لم يكن له وجود	Graham Bill invented the telephone.
6	on board = aboard على متن السفينة أو الطائرة	The crew are the people working aboard (on board).
	abroad بالخارج	I want to travel abroad to do my studies.
	a board لوح /سبورة	The teacher put some notes on a board in the classroom.

Vocabulary Check point 3

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Books about economy can be understood only by .... who are old enough.
   (a) a) adults — b) toddlers
   c) children — d) babies

2. Those who are brought up in a/an .... of love and respect become more successful.
   a) weather — b) atmosphere
   c) climate — d) air

3. Several people on the train were .... of their money.
   a) stolen — b) taken
   c) robbed — d) pirated

4. A lot of things .... from my flat during my absence.
   a) were robbed — b) were stolen
   c) robbed — d) stole

5. When the ship moved, there was a professional crew ....
   a) on abroad — b) on board
   c) on aboard — d) abroad

6. Menna Arafa became a famous actress when she was a/an .... She was 14 years old.
   a) toddler — b) child
   c) baby — d) teenager

7. Do you know who .... the plane?
   a) invented — b) discovered
   c) explored — d) did

8. After discovering America, Columbus began to .... it.
   a) invent — b) explore
   c) discover — d) find out

9. Ali found his exam ...., so he answered all the questions quickly.
   a) to easy — b) easily
   c) easy — d) difficult

10. The .... in Egypt is nice all the year around, so tourists like visiting it.
    a) weather — b) climate
    c) atmosphere — d) surface



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Key Vocabulary, Reading, Listening & Workbook

1. I never go to Alexandria in summer as it is always very ....
a) empty b) peaceful c) relaxing d) crowded
2. Our deserts are full of .... insects and animals which are rare.
a) calm b) exotic c) noisy d) boring
3. Hanan always spends her holiday in her village as she likes the .... there.
a) quiet b) noise c) crowdedness d) stress
4. Amina likes her bedroom where she can .... after hard work.
a) catch b) relax c) get stressed d) expect
5. Green Green is my favourite restaurant; it's really ....
a) crowded b) relaxing c) frightening d) noisy
6. Tamer was happy to find some .... gold coins inside the pot from the time of the pharaohs.
a) quiet b) busy c) modern d) ancient
7. When I found the programmes on TV .... that day, I went out to meet my friends.
a) relaxing b) relaxed c) bored d) boring
8. The latest technology, especially computers and the internet have become an essential part of our .... life.
a) old b) modern c) antique d) crowded
9. Rania got very angry when she .... the truth about her friend's bad behaviour.
a) invented b) discovered c) explored d) found
10. We have to be careful while dealing with ....; their personalities are formed at that age.
a) adults b) ecotourists c) conservationists d) teenagers
11. I was really .... on hearing that my son was badly injured while playing a football match.
a) happy b) bored c) excited d) upset
12. I can't believe that I am .... going to Mecca for pilgrimage الحج. It is my lifelong wish.
a) traditionally b) unfortunately c) actually d) impossibly
13. The thieves .... the bank and took a huge sum of money from it.
a) robbed b) stole c) bought d) borrowed
14. Collecting stamps was my favourite .... when I was young.
a) resort b) hobby c) support d) adventure

15. Films that are full of exciting and dangerous incidents are called .... films.
a) stressful b) awful c) adventure d) relaxing

16. I have seen her .... greatly on stage. She's a brilliant actress.
a) steal b) perform c) escape d) make

17. Ali has come on time and we have been all very surprised as it is .... for him.
a) usual b) expected c) normal d) unusual

18. The true friend is the one who gives .... at both happy and difficult times.
a) frustration b) disappointment c) presentation d) support

19. Your handwriting is so .... that I need a magnifying glass عدسة مكبرة to read it.
a) fantastic b) tiny c) amazing d) beautiful

20. I always advise my students to keep .... before exams.
a) noisy b) calm c) frightened d) stressed

21. We always feel .... when the exams approach تقترب.
a) hungry b) dizzy c) stressed d) grateful

22. My family lives in a house which is only a very short .... from the city centre.
a) distance b) temple c) isolation d) gardening

23. Uncle Adel is the best .... I have ever met. He knows how to care for all kinds of plants.
a) biologist b) teacher c) director d) gardener

24. Ehab's garden is so beautiful that he calls it a/an .... on earth.
a) distance b) gardening c) paradise d) equipment

25. The research is done in .... laboratories, so that scientists can study the marine creatures.
a) underwater b) under water c) underground d) under ground

Expressions, Idioms, Prepositions, Derivatives, Synonyms & Antonyms

26. Hani goes .... on business a lot. We rarely meet him.
a) way b) ways c) away d) a way

27. A lot of young people are interested .... watching football matches in the stadium.
a) at b) on c) of d) in

28. He decided to travel abroad leaving his wife and children ....
a) for b) ahead c) behind d) out

29. I am always worried when my little son is on the .... alone.
a) balcony b) ceiling c) floor d) wall

30. I went to the old company and took my money .... without any troubles.
a) peacefully b) peace c) peaceful d) peacefulness

31. My daughter was very happy when she passed all her exams. It means that she was ....
a) above the moon b) over the moon c) on air d) on the moon

32. Nehad became tired .... her work and thought about changing it.
a) with b) by c) of d) from

33. A teacher should advise his students to benefit from their spare time.
"Benefit from" means ....
a) be over the moon b) make use of
c) be tired of d) have a holiday

34. I'm quite busy; I have .... of things to do today. [Longman]
a) loans b) loads c) lines d) lanes

35. Because of the floods, a lot of people were .... at home. [Longman]
a) stuck b) stocked c) stayed d) spent

36. The place is very fantastic. It is lovely and .... [Longman]
a) relaxed b) relaxing c) boring d) bored

37. I finished the exams so I'm really happy. I am .... (المنيا)
a) over the moon b) stingy c) generous d) critical

38. You don't have to pay for your flights; they are .... in the price of your holiday. (الجيزة - العياط)
a) contained b) concluded c) enclosed d) included

39. Students complain about being .... in their classes for a long time. (أسيوط)
a) struck b) stuck c) studied d) stunned

40. Hani is really .... because of all the problems he's having at the moment. (أبناؤنا بالخارج)
a) enjoyable b) missed c) available d) stressed

Choose the TWO (2) correct answers of the FIVE (5) options:

41. The ancient civilisation of Egypt has always fascinated people all over the world. The antonyms of the word "ancient" are ....
a) new b) historic c) early d) modern e) old

42. I liked the time I spent with the crew .... when I was travelling to Paris.
a) abroad b) on board c) on aboard d) broad e) aboard

43. Cairo is so beautiful. The antonyms of the word "beautiful" are ....
a) ugly b) attractive c) wonderful d) awful e) pretty

44. I always take my young .... to the park every Friday.
a) adults b) grown-ups c) kids d) children e) youth

45. Luxor is one of the most fascinating cities in the world. The synonyms of the word "fascinating" are ....
a) excited b) dull c) charming d) boring e) interesting



Notes on the past simple and past continuous:

ملاحظات على الماضى البسيط والماضى المستمر:

1

يمكن أن يأتى بعد هذه الروابط (v-ing) أو noun ، لاحظ التالى:

While بينما When عندما	+	(v-ing) بدون فاعل	While playing, he fell down. When arriving, I had a shower.
During أثناء	+	(noun) اسم	During my stay in England, I learnt English.
On عند	+	(noun)/ (v-ing)	On seeing the police, the thief ran away.

لابد أن يكون فاعل الجملة الأولى هو نفسه فاعل الجملة الثانية عند استخدام (while + v-ing).

- While staying in Alexandria, I visited a lot of places.

2

من الممكن استخدام زمن الماضى المستمر مع all إذا جاءت بمعنى طوال وجاء بعدها مدة زمنية فى الماضى.

(all day/ all night/ all morning/ all evening yesterday)

- I was watching television all day yesterday.

3

بعض الأفعال لا تستخدم فى الماضى المستمر ولكن تستخدم فى الماضى البسيط حتى مع علامات الماضى المستمر وهى:

١- أفعال الحواس see – hear – smell – taste – touch – feel

٢- أفعال العاطفة love – like – hate – dislike – prefer

٣- أفعال التفكير understand – forget – remember – know – remind

٤- أفعال التملك owe – own – possess – have – belong – want

- When my teacher was illustrating the lesson, I understood it.

4

من الممكن استخدام زمن الماضى البسيط للإشارة إلى حدث تم فى الماضى لم يُذكر وقت وقوعه ولكن معروف (كمعلومة) أنه تم فى الماضى (الماضى البديهى).

- The Chinese built the Great Wall of China to stop the enemies' attacks.

5 While + (حرف جر) = While + subject فاعل + v. to (be) + (حرف جر)

- While on holiday, I had a great time.
  = While I was on holiday, I had a great time.

6

يستخدم الماضى البسيط مع هذه التعبيرات ولكن المعنى يكون مضارعًا.

It's (high) time 'd rather wish Suppose	subject فاعل + التصريف الثانى

Examples

- It's time I travelled abroad. — حان وقت السفر للخارج.
- I wish I attended the party. — أتمنى حضور الحفلة (التى تجرى الآن).

أما إذا وجدنا كلمة دالة على الماضى مع 'd rather/I wish/suppose نستخدم زمن الماضى التـام.

Examples

- I'd rather I had travelled abroad two years ago. — أتمنى لو كنت سافرت للخارج منذ سنتين.
- I wish I had attended the party yesterday. — أتمنى لو كنت حضرت الحفلة بالأمس.

التعبيرات السابقة إذا لم يأت بعدها فاعل تصبح قاعدتها كالآتى:

It's time + (to + inf.) مصدر — I'd rather + inf. مصدر — I wish + (to + inf.) مصدر

Examples

- It's time to travel abroad.
- I wish to attend the party.

7

يمكن استخدام مصدر .did + inf للدلالة على التأكيد.

- I visited him yesterday. = I did visit him yesterday.

8

كلمة for أصلًا كلمة دالة على زمن المضارع التام ولكن من الممكن استخدامها فى الماضى البسيط عند وجود ما يدل على انتهاء الحدث.

- My father worked for this company for 20 years. Now, he has his own company.

استخدام am/is/are أو do/does مع used to:

لنفى الجملة الثانية أو إثباتها هنا يوجد be بعد used to لذا نستخدم am/is/are.

- He used to be clever, but now he isn't.
- She didn't use to be active, but now she is.

- لنفى الجملة الثانية أو إثباتها مع أى فعل آخر نستخدم do/does.

- He didn't use to sleep early, but now he does.
- He used to study hard, but now he doesn't.

Language Check point 4

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. While .... the match, I fell asleep.

(d) a) was watching b) watched c) had watched d) watching

2. Omar was my only Egyptian friend .... my stay in France.

a) on b) when c) while d) during

3. .... hearing a cry for help, many people ran from many places immediately.

a) While b) As soon as c) By d) On

4. I .... as a translator for 10 years. Now, I have my own company.

a) had worked b) work c) was worked d) worked

5. Nora used to be a teacher, but now she ....

a) isn't b) doesn't c) wasn't d) didn't

6. It's high time .... your work.

a) starting b) you started c) started d) you start

7. I'd rather Kareman .... the early bus.

a) caught b) catching c) to catch d) catch

8. I'd rather .... the early bus.

a) caught b) catching c) to catch d) catch



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. For a long time yesterday, my father .... in his office.
a) working b) has worked c) worked d) was working

2. At a quarter to ten yesterday, I .... home with some of my friends.
a) walked b) was walking c) was walked d) had walked

3. During .... in Sharm, I swam in the sea every morning.
a) staying b) stayed c) my stay d) being stayed

4. .... doing my homework, my brother was playing computer games.
a) While I was b) After c) During d) While

5. .... running down the road, I crashed into a tree.
a) On b) As c) As soon as d) By

6. I'd rather you .... out alone late today.
a) not going b) hadn't gone c) didn't go d) not go

7. .... the flight, I felt ill.
a) While b) When c) During d) As soon as

8. .... studying at Oxford, I visited many attractions in London.
a) As b) While c) Just as d) During

9. My uncle .... for the police for twenty years before he retired.
a) works b) worked
c) has worked d) is used to working

10. I wish I .... Amr Diab in Alexandria last week.
a) meet b) to meet c) met d) had met

11. I didn't accept my friend's invitation to dinner as I .... for my exam.
a) revised b) are revising c) was revising d) had revised

12. While we .... on holiday in Alexandria, we met many of our old friends.
a) were being b) are c) have been d) were

13. Suppose you .... a bag of money, what would you do?
a) found b) have found c) will find d) was finding

14. I'd rather .... early every day.
a) sleep b) to sleep c) slept d) had slept

15. I'd rather my son .... hard last year.
a) studied b) had studied c) study d) to study

16. I couldn't go out with my friends because I .... my mother with the housework.
a) was helped b) was helping c) had helped d) helping

17. I was having a shower, so I .... the telephone.
a) didn't hear b) wasn't hearing c) haven't heard d) hearing

18. I hadn't spoken to him much, but he .... to be a very nice man.

a) seeming b) is seeming c) was seeming d) seemed

19. While ...., the baby smiled at the doctor.

a) examining b) was examining
c) being examined d) was being examined

20. While .... dinner, a stranger knocked on the door of my flat by mistake.

a) am having b) having c) I was having d) had

21. It's high time I .... a new pair of jeans.

a) buy b) had bought c) bought d) was buying

22. While ...., the criminal was shot by the police.

a) he was chasing b) being chased c) was chasing d) chasing

23. I wish I hadn't got up late. This means the speaker .... up early.

a) got b) didn't get c) has got d) never gets

24. Salwa always set the table for lunch. This sentence ....

a) is a present habit b) was a past habit
c) always takes place d) never took place

25. While on holiday, I was sent a task to do by my manager. Who was on holiday?

a) The manager. b) The speaker. c) The speaker's kids. d) No one.

26. I worked for the army for a long time. This means ....

a) I no longer work for it b) I still work for it
c) I didn't work for it d) I have always worked for it

27. I met a lot of my old friends .... my cousin's wedding party. (Longman)

a) since b) during c) when d) while

28. I would rather he .... my camera. (Longman)

a) haven't broken b) hadn't broken c) didn't break d) not break

29. I was injured while .... a tree in the garden. (أسيوط - إدارة ديروط)

a) climbing b) was climbing c) climbed d) is climbing

30. We .... in Helwan for five years only. Now, we live in Mansoura. (الغربية - إدارة المحلة)

a) lived b) have lived c) had lived d) live

31. .... at the zoo, I saw many animals. (البحيرة - إدارة أبو المطامير)

a) Why b) Which c) During d) While

32. While I .... ill, I lost a lot of weight and became so thin. (البحيرة - إدارة دمنهور)

a) was b) was being c) am d) had been

33. I would rather .... English hard now. (القليوبية - إدارة القناطر الخيرية)

a) revise b) are revising c) revised d) revises



Take a test

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Vocabulary

1. The thieves have .... a lot of money from different people recently.
   a) robbed b) stolen c) bought d) borrowed
2. The engineers .... an ancient statue while digging a hole to install the equipment.
   a) discovered b) explored c) scanned d) created
3. In some parts of the world, plants and some kinds of trees .... without man's interference.
   a) are grown b) have been grown c) grow d) growing
4. Some people are used to travelling .... every summer to have fun.
   a) abroad b) a board c) on aboard d) board
5. For a man of his age, my grandfather is very .... He is amazing.
   a) energy b) energetic c) activity d) idle
6. I saw a lot of exotic plants during my visit to Al-Azhar Park in Cairo. The word "exotic" here means ....
   a) familiar b) known c) strange d) common
7. Nader is busy .... his homework at the moment.
   a) on b) of c) with d) in
8. It was a .... piece of cake. I felt as if I ate nothing.
   a) tiny b) huge c) big d) massive
9. Ola always dives .... her husband and takes photos underwater.
   a) at b) with c) from d) about
10. We hope to find our needs .... to be able to get them easily.
   a) cheap b) expensive c) resorted d) awful
11. It is very advisable to know what the .... is like to decide what to wear.
   a) weather b) climate c) atmosphere d) sun
12. On getting on the train, we found it so .... that we had to stand all way to our station.
   a) empty b) crowded c) relaxing d) noisy
13. Aunt Nawal is one of my .... relatives who I don't often meet or call.
   a) distant b) distance c) stuck d) near
14. I adore the peace and .... of the countryside.
   a) quite b) quit c) silent d) quiet
15. Try to .... good use of your time. You have a lot of work to do.
   a) have b) do c) give d) make

Language

16. Smoke .... out of the farm yesterday morning.

a) was come b) was coming
c) is coming d) comes

17. .... the meeting, we discussed all the urgent topics.

a) When b) During c) While d) Until

18. .... I was talking on the phone, the lights went out.

a) Since b) During c) While d) After

19. Yousra used to live in Cairo, but now she ....

a) hasn't b) didn't c) isn't d) doesn't

20. I'd rather they .... us about the accident.

a) tell b) have told c) told d) were telling

21. Hesham .... us to the public library when the car broke down.

a) is taking b) had taken
c) was taking d) has taken

22. I .... fast food or fizzy drinks.

a) don't use to b) didn't use to
c) am not used for d) wasn't used to

23. I wish we .... a meeting to discuss our problems.

a) to have b) will have c) had d) are having

24. While .... by his mother, the baby gave a loud cry.

a) having bathed b) he was bathing
c) was bathed d) being bathed

25. My father used to be a heavy smoker when he was young, but now he ....

a) doesn't b) isn't c) hasn't d) won't

26. .... surfing the internet, it disconnected.

a) During b) While I was c) While d) As

27. When I met Ali yesterday, he .... to hospital. I offered to go with him.

a) went b) was going c) had gone d) going

28. I'd rather .... your time again.

a) you don't waste b) you didn't waste
c) not to waste d) you haven't wasted

29. When I saw the wallet, I was sure that it .... to my brother.

a) wasn't belonging b) hadn't belonged
c) didn't belong d) doesn't belong

30. While .... the old town, we came across a group of Japanese tourists.

a) on b) visited c) being visited d) visiting





Writing Skill

للمزيد من الشرح والتدريبات
يرجى الرجوع لملحق المهارات.

Writing tips

To write an essay about tourism, you can focus on the following ideas:

1 The importance of tourism for our country.
2 The well-known attractions in your country.
3 The kinds of tourism.
4 What ecotourism is and why it is so important.
5 How individuals and government can encourage tourists to come to Egypt.

MODEL ESSAY

Tourism

Introduction

It is known that tourism is very important for the state and individuals as well. Tourism helps countries to increase their national income and brings hard currency that helps to improve their economy.

Main body

Tourism is very helpful in exchanging different cultures. However, tourism may have some disadvantages, especially for the country's inhabitants. Streets and roads, towns and cities, all places get very noisy and crowded, so people can't shop or go to their work easily.

There are some kinds of tourism, such as ecotourism, health tourism and business tourism. Ecotourism is the one in which tourists should keep the country they visit clean without doing any damage to the environment.

Conclusion

We all must cooperate to encourage tourists to visit Egypt. The government should build modern hotels, restaurants, good roads and resorts for tourists. In addition, we as individuals should be friendly and respectful towards tourists.



(A) Reading Comprehension

قاموس بالكلمات الجديدة فى
قطع الفهم والتراجم نهاية الكتاب

1 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

(البحيرة - إدارة المحمودية)

Sandy and Sally were best friends. They were together so much of the time that people say that they were like inseparable twins. They did everything and went everywhere together. One day, however, something happened that almost caused their friendship to break. Sandy had already made plans with Sally to watch a film at the cinema. At the last minute, Sandy's mother had an errand to run, and someone had to look after her little sister. Sally was disappointed, but she said that she would still wait for Sandy and watch the film together. The next morning, Sandy heard Sally telling another friend, "The film was wonderful. I saw it last night and it was fabulous." Sandy got upset. She walked past Sally and gave her an angry look. Sally was puzzled. Why was Sandy angry with her? When Sally called out to Sandy, she ignored her. After school, Sally waited for Sandy, as usual, for their walk home together. However, Sandy just walked on alone; Sally ran after her and asked, "What's the matter, Sandy? Why are you avoiding me like this?" Sandy answered angrily, "You broke your promise. Friends aren't supposed to do that. Sally realised what the problem was and laughed. "I watched a different film on the internet, not at the cinema as well-planned. I will never break my promise to you. You are my best friend." Sandy apologised to Sally and they were best friends again.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The phrase "had an errand to run" means ....

a) to go for a ride
b) to go for a walk
c) to solve a problem
d) to do a task

2. When did Sandy and Sally come to be friends again?

a) When Sandy looked angrily at Sally.
b) When Sally lied to Sandy.
c) When Sally laughed at Sandy.
d) When Sally told Sandy the truth.

3. Why did Sandy have to cancel watching the film at the cinema with Sally?

a) To look after her little sister.
b) To make Sandy angry.
c) To go to another film.
d) To go with her mother.

4. "Sandy and Sally were like an inseparable twin". This means that ....

a) they live together
b) they hate each other
c) they can't leave each other
d) they work in different places

5. Good friends ....

a) shouldn't depend on each other
b) shouldn't think badly of each other
c) should live together
d) should break their promises

6. The best title for the passage is "......................".

a) Friends should be strict with each other
b) How to end friendship
c) Friendship could be broken because of doubt
d) Friends should watch shows together

7. The word "inseparable" means ....

a) as one b) dividable c) separable d) controllable

2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Each year, millions of tourists rush to see Venice, the unique city in Italy, before it disappears into the sea. The travellers themselves are probably unaware that their weight is adding to the problem. Venice has suggested imposing a tax on all visitors to help pay for the restoration of the ancient buildings and do research into ways of preventing further sinking. There are 1.6 billion tourists going around the world, and the impact of tourism can be serious. Some say that tourism is destroying the planet, while others say that it benefits countries. New groups of "green" tourists or "eco-tourists" are upset by the effects of mass tourism on coastal regions such as those of the Mediterranean. They suggest that only a few tourists should be allowed. For instance, they don't want people, who visit the Galápagos Islands in Ecuador, to affect the ecological balance.

Local people should enjoy the economic benefits of tourism. In many places, it's tourism that actually supports the local traditions and crafts, as well as the economy. The travel industry—airlines, hotels and cruise companies—should work with local councils and governments to agree upon some rules for planning and development in tourist areas. A lot of little steps can help to ensure that the earth's clean travel destinations remain clean for future generations of tourists.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Why do people visit Venice?

a) Because it's cheap. b) To enjoy the weather.
c) To make it sink. d) Because it's unique.

2. Tourists can destroy Venice and make it sink because ....

a) they pollute the city b) too many people are too heavy
c) they don't respect the nature d) both a & c

3. The main idea of the passage is ....

a) how to visit Venice
b) the pros and cons of tourism
c) restoring ancient buildings
d) the Galápagos Islands

4. Venice has suggested imposing a tax on all visitors to ....

a) gain lots of money
b) import goods
c) help restore the old buildings
d) build another city

5. There are .... opinions about tourism mentioned in the passage.

a) two
b) three
c) four
d) more than four

6. The underlined pronoun "They" refers to ....

a) green companies
b) eco-tourists
c) Venice people
d) Galápagos

7. The airlines and hotels should work with .... for developing tourist areas.

a) local councils
b) governments
c) eco-tourists
d) both a & b

(B) Translation

3 (A) Choose the correct Arabic translation:

1. The government pays great attention to women and provides them with education, jobs and health and social care.

a) تولى الحكومة اهتمامًا عاديًّا بالمرأة وتوفر لها التعليم والوظائف والصحة والرعاية الاجتماعية.
b) الحكومة تدفع اهتمامًا كبيرًا للمرأة وتوفر لها التعلم والوظائف والرعاية الصحية والاجتماعية.
c) تدفع الحكومة اهتمامًا كبيرًا للمرأة وتوفر لها التعليم والوظائف والرعاية الصحية والمجتمعية.
d) تولى الحكومة اهتمامًا كبيرًا بالمرأة وتوفر لها التعليم والوظائف والرعاية الصحية والاجتماعية.

2. Parents should have an effective role in pushing and encouraging their children to participate in their country's progress.

a) ينبغى أن يكون للوالدين دور فعّال فى دفع وتشجيع أطفالهم للمشاركة فى تقدم بلدهم.
b) يجب أن يكون للوالدين دور فعّال فى رفع وتشجيع أطفالهم للمشاركة فى نماء بلدهم.
c) للوالدين دور فعّال فى دفع وإحباط أطفالهم للمشاركة فى تقدم بلدهم.
d) على الوالدين دور فعّال فى دفع وتشجيع أطفالهم للمشاركة فى تأخر بلدهم.

3. There is no doubt that the reform of education is a must even if we spend millions of money on it.

a) هناك لا شك أن توسيع التعليم هو ضرورة حتى لو أنفقنا ملايين من الأموال عليه.
b) مما لا شك فيه أن إصلاح التعليم هو ضرورى حتى لو أنفقنا ملايين الدولارات عليه.
c) مما لا شك فيه أن إصلاح التعليم ضرورة حتى لو أنفقنا ملايين من الأموال عليه.
d) يوجد شك أن إصلاح التعليم هو ضرورة حتى لو أنفقنا الآلاف من الأموال عليه.

(B) Choose the correct English translation:

4. من المحتمل أن تتحقق فى المستقبل سياحة الفضاء والتى ستجذب الكثير من الناس وستحقق أرباحًا خيالية.

a) It is probably that space tourist will be achieved in the future, which will attract many people and make huge profits.

b) It is possible that space tourism will be achieved in the future, which will attract many people and make small profits.

c) It is likely that space tourism will be achieved in the future, which will attract lots of people and make huge profits.

d) It is likely that space tourism will be achieved in the future, which will pull many people and make huge profits.

5. لقد أجبرت مشكلة الإسكان الكثير من الشباب على رفض الزواج بسبب صعوبة الحصول على شقة.

a) The housing problem has forced many young men to refuse marriage because of the difficulty of obtaining an apartment.

b) The overpopulation problem has forced many young men to refuse marriage because of the difficulty of obtaining an apartment.

c) The pollution problem has forced many young men to refuse marriage because of the difficulty of obtaining an apartment.

d) Forced the housing problem many young men to refuse marriage because of the difficulty of obtaining an apartment.

6. بينما كنت أشاهد التلفاز، ركل أخى الكرة فى الشاشة وكسرت، غضب أبى بشدة عند رؤية ما حدث.

a) During I was watching TV, my brother kicked the ball in the monitor and it broke. Dad got over the moon while seeing what happened.

b) While I was watching TV, my brother was kicking the ball in the screen and it was breaking. Dad got furious when seeing what happened.

c) During watching TV, my brother pushed the ball in the screen and it was broken. Dad was getting angry on seeing what happened.

d) While I was watching TV, my brother kicked the ball in the screen and it was broken. Dad got furious on seeing what happened.

(C) Writing

4 Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on the following:

"The advantages of ecotourism in your country"

....

....

....

....

I used more than 4 new vocabulary.	I used the right structure.	I used a topic sentence.	I wrote the conclusion.	I used the right punctuation.

Al-Azhar Corner



1 **Finish the following dialogue:**

Ahmed is returning the TV set he bought.

Assistant : (1)..?

Ahmed : Yes, I want to return the TV set I bought yesterday.

Assistant : Okay. (2)..?

Ahmed : Certainly. My name's Ahmed Ali.

Assistant : What's wrong with it?

Ahmed : (3)..

Assistant : (4)..?

Ahmed : No, thank you. I want my money.

Assistant : Okay. Give me a few seconds, please.

Ahmed : OK. I am waiting.

A Glimpse of Revelation

2 **(A) Choose the correct answer:**

1. .... religions are Judaism, Christianity and Islam.

a) Divine b) Non-divine c) Spiritual d) Worship

2. There are .... religions in the world.

a) no b) two c) four d) various

(B) Answer the following questions:

3. Why do you think culture affects religious practices?

4. When does religion bind society?

The Novel

3 **(A) Choose the correct answer:**

1. My friend Ali has a .... as a result of a deep wound in the past.

a) scare b) scar c) guard d) fear

2. The officer said that the criminal shot the man with a/an ....

a) arrow b) tank c) gun d) rocket

(B) Answer the following:

3. How would the Captain spend his days during his stay in the Admiral Benbow?

4. Who was the man with three fingers? What happened when he saw the Captain?

4 **(A) Translate into Arabic:**

Religion regulates the relationship between mankind and God and among people.

(B) Translate into English:

لدى البشر عقائد مختلفة ترجع إلى اختلاف حضارتهم.

Al-Adwaa Test

Choose the Two correct answers of the Five options:

1. Hams carefully put the tiny flower into the vase. The word "tiny" gives the same meaning as ....
   a) huge b) massive c) small d) big e) little
2. We finished the design on time because we were ....
   a) energetic b) active c) inactive d) unready e) lazy

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

3. Egypt's monuments and historic sites are .... and remarkable. You hardly ever find anything like them.
   a) terrible b) unique c) common d) scarce
4. The marks of the essay .... grammar mistakes, organisation and misspelling.
   a) discover b) conclude c) enclose d) include
5. She has a degree in .... as she likes studying living things.
   a) geology b) biology c) anthropology d) sociology
6. Hossam's father bought some .... birds from New Guinea which exist only there.
   a) exotic b) ancient c) old d) relaxing
7. My wife was very angry because of being .... at home with too much housework.
   a) comfortable b) active c) stuck d) beautiful
8. Miss Samah found it very hard teaching a class full of .... at a secondary school as she was very young.
   a) teenagers b) infants c) babies d) toddlers
9. These flowers will grow in a cold .... They are suitable to be grown in Russia.
   a) weather b) climate c) atmosphere d) day
10. Huda .... from the early morning to the noon. I couldn't see her.
    a) was studying b) is studying c) has studied d) had studied
11. When I was watering the plants, it .... to rain.
    a) began b) begins
    c) has begun d) was beginning
12. .... his leadership of the company, he achieved a lot of goals.
    a) While b) On c) During d) When
13. What .... when I entered the room?
    a) you did b) you were doing
    c) are you doing d) were you doing

14. Tamer would rather .... lunch at home with his family.

a) to have b) having c) have d) had

15. Did you go out last night or you .... busy?

a) did b) were c) have d) are

16. Ali lived in Luxor for 10 years. This means that he ....

a) is still living there b) lives there now
c) never used to live there d) lives in another city now

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Jack lay, quiet and unmoving, for thirty minutes while a stranger repeatedly stabbed him with sharp needles, causing blood to pour steadily out of his leg. Jack was getting a tattoo. His friend Tony had recently got a tattoo, and Jack was so impressed by Tony's bravery. Getting a tattoo because your friends and peers have one is just one of the reasons why a lot of young people in North America get tattoos. Peer pressure, media influence, and personal expression are some of the common reasons for wearing tattoos today. Sometimes, wearing a tattoo can be a sign that you belong to a certain group. Some of these groups wear only brand-name clothes. When one's friends are all doing something, that person is more likely to do the same thing. The media is another big influence behind the popularity of tattoos in North America. Tattoos can be seen on people appearing in commercials selling expensive cars. Famous sports heroes with tattoos are shown in magazines. Fashion models are often seen in magazines and on TV wearing designer clothes that show their bodies tattooed with detailed and colourful patterns. These media images link tattoos to ideas of wealth, success, and status. As a result, many people decide to get a tattoo for its fashion and status value.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17. Jack was stabbed for thirty minutes with needles because ....

a) he was getting a tattoo b) he was getting his ears pierced
c) he was getting acupuncture d) he was getting a nose ring

18. According to the passage, some people get tattoos because ....

a) they like pain b) they think it will wash off in the bath
c) they are religious d) they think it is fashionable

19. Jack thinks people who get tattoos are ....

a) old-fashioned b) cowardly c) brave d) foolish

20. The reason Jack wanted to get a tattoo was ....

a) the influence of friends b) a desire to express himself
c) the influence of the media d) all the previous answers

21. The best title for this passage is ".................".

a) The benefits of tattoos
b) Where people get tattoos
c) The dangers of tattoos
d) Why people get tattoos

22. According to the passage, media images are linked to ....

a) wealth
b) terrorism
c) failure
d) a, b & c

23. The underlined word "His" refers to ....

a) Tony
b) Jack
c) Tony's friend
d) Jack's father

24. Choose the correct English translation:

- إن اكتساب اللغة الإنجليزية من الممكن أن يكون من خلال مشاهدة الأفلام والاستماع للأغانى وكذلك قراءة القصص والكتب باللغة الإنجليزية.

a) The acquisition of the English language can be done through watching films, listening to songs, as well as reading stories and books in English.
b) The obtaining of the English language can be done thorough watching films, listening to songs, as well as reading stories and books with English.
c) The gaining of the English language can happen throw watching films, listening to songs, as well as reading stories and books in English.
d) The winning of the English language can be through watching series, listening to songs, as well as reading stories and books with English.

25. Choose the correct Arabic translation:

- Our need for water in Egypt is expected to increase in the near future, so we must rationalise our use of water or we will face serious problems.

a) من المتوقع أن تقل حاجتنا للمياه فى مصر فى المستقبل القريب، لذلك يجب ترشيد استخدامنا للمياه وإلا فإننا سنواجه مشاكل خطيرة.
b) تتوقع أن تزداد حاجتنا للمياه فى مصر فى المستقبل البعيد، لذلك يجب ترشيد استخدامنا للمياه وإلا فإننا سنواجه مشاكل خطيرة.
c) حاجتنا للمياه فى مصر من المتوقع أن تزداد فى المستقبل القريب، لذلك يجب ترشيد استخدامنا للمياه وإلا فإننا سنواجه مشاكل جادة.
d) من المتوقع أن تزداد حاجتنا للمياه فى مصر فى المستقبل القريب، لذلك يجب ترشيد استخدامنا للمياه وإلا فإننا سنواجه مشاكل خطيرة.

26. Answer the following questions:

1. Why do you think the Captain always asked if there were any sailors who visited the inn?
2. Why did the narrator think that he and his mother were in danger after the Captain's death?
3. Why do you think the narrator asked his mother to leave before the bad people arrived?

27. Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on the following:

"The reasons why people travel abroad"

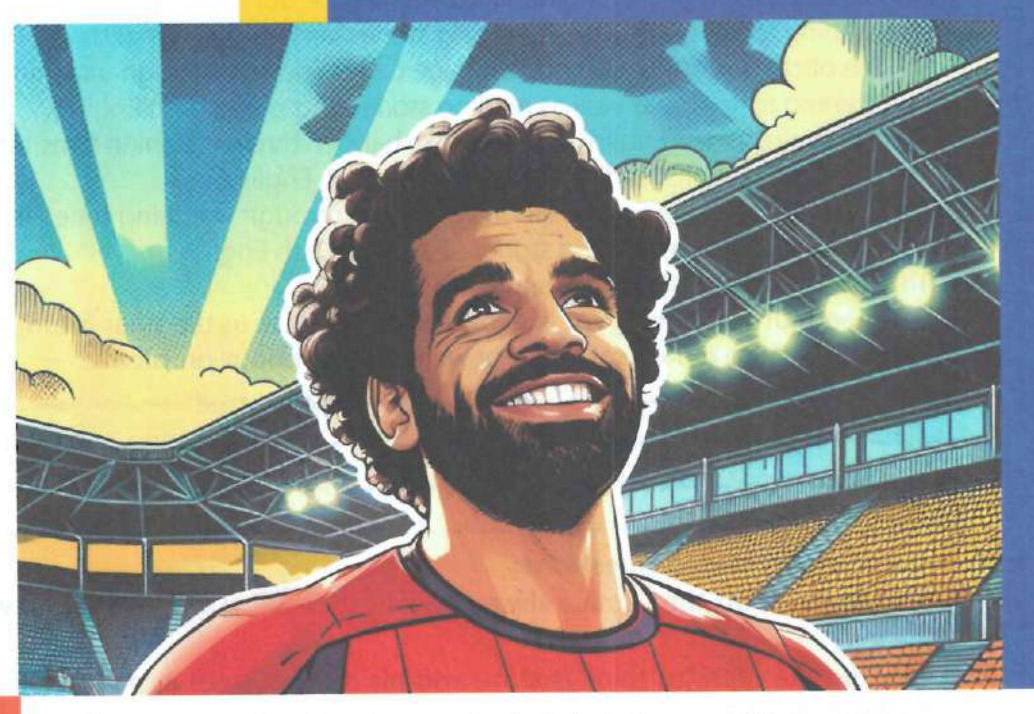
....

....

لمزيد من التدريبات للطلبة الفائقين
الرجوع لنهاية الكتاب ص 365

Assess your progress ★★★★★	< 50%	50 : 64%	65 : 84%	85 : 100%
	Study again	Practise more	Take more exams	Well done!

Unit 2
Supporting the community



Objectives

Reading : A text about Egyptian people who help their communities
Writing : Write a blog on a famous person; a biography of Dr Leelah Hazzah
Listening : An interview with Dr Leelah Hazzah
Speaking : Discussion about helping people; making arrangements
Language : Present and past simple; Present simple passive
Life Skills : Empathy

Study... Part 1 | Lessons 1 & 2





A Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary — المفردات الرئيسية

blood pressure (n) ضغط الدم	prestige (n) احترام (نفوذ/هيبة/وجاهة)	support (n) (v) – ed دعم/مساندة/يدعم
generous (adj) كريم	roar (n) (v) – ed زئير/زمجرة/يزأر	transplant (n) (v) – ed زراعة الأعضاء/ينقل عضوًا
iron (n) (v) – ed حديد/مكواة/يكوى	role model (n) مثل أعلى/قدوة حسنة	
iron levels (n) نسبة مستويات الحديد (فى الدم)	speed (n) (v) سرعة/يسرع	

Vocabulary on Reading & Listening Texts — مفردات نصوص القراءة والاستماع

ability (n) قدرة	generation (n) جيل	recognise (v) – d يتعرف
admire (v) – d يُعجب بـ	grow up (v) ينضج	reduce (v) – d يقلل
amongst (prep) فيما بين/وسط	happen (v) – ed يحدث	regular (adj) منتظم/معتاد
around (adv) حول	happiness (n) سعادة	research (n) (v) – ed بحث علمى/يقوم بعمل بحث علمى
benefits (n) فوائد	health (n) صحة	respect (v) – ed يحترم
blood (n) دم	hometown (n) موطن	save (v) – d ينقذ/يوفر
call (v) – ed يسمى	hunt (v) – ed يصطاد	score (v) – d يحرز
cancer (n) سرطان	illness (n) مرض	share (v) – d يشارك
chance (n) فرصة	income (n) دخل	shopping (n) التسوق
charity (n) جمعية خيرية/العمل الخيرى	injured (adj) مصاب	succeed (v) – ed ينجح
check (v) – ed (n) يفحص/فحص	instead (adv) بدلًا من ذلك	task (n) مهمة
community (n) مجتمع	knowledge (n) معرفة	teenager (n) مراهق
conservation (n) حماية البيئة	long-term (adj) طويل المدى	the World Cup (n) كأس العالم
desire (v) – d (n) يرغب/رغبة	livestock (n) ماشية	track (v) – ed يتتبع
donate (v) – d يتبرع بـ	nickname (n) لقب/كنية	traditionally (adv) تقليديًا
finals (n) نهائيات	persuade (v) – d يقنع	views (n) آراء
fondness (n) ولع/شغف/إعجاب	reason (n) سبب	wish (n) أمنية
founder (n) مُؤسِّس	role (n) دور	

Workbook Vocabulary

مفردات كتاب التدريبات

agreement (n)	اتفاق	great (adj)	عظيم	run past (v)	يسبق (فى الجرى)
compassion (n)	رحمة	intelligence (n)	ذكاء/جهاز المخابرات	soccer (n)	كرة القدم
documentary (n)	فيلم وثائقى	movements (n)	حركات		

Vocabulary Check point 1

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Uncle Galal doesn't eat salty food as it affects his blood ....
   a) pressure b) donation c) colour d) picture
2. It was very .... of your brother to lend you all that money.
   a) greedy b) generous c) mean d) miserable
3. As a result of my daughter's voluntary work in her local ...., she was given an award.
   a) shop b) conservation c) documentary d) community
4. Mai .... her disabled son and wants him to succeed in his life.
   a) transplants b) persuades
   c) supports d) shares
5. After severe wars, the two countries managed to reach a/an ....
   a) disagreement b) benefit c) agreement d) argument
6. It is necessary for all of us to .... money to Cancer Research.
   a) support b) lend c) find out d) donate
7. Zahi Hawass has extensive .... of Ancient Egypt and its history.
   a) knowledge b) foundation
   c) conservation d) news
8. The lion opened its huge mouth and .... in a frightening way.
   a) loaned b) tracked c) supported d) roared
9. My father went to hospital for a kidney .... surgery.
   a) transport b) transplant c) pressure d) support
10. Tourism plays an important role in increasing our national ....
   a) come b) knowledge c) income d) research

Expressions,Phrases&Prepositions

التعبيرات والمصطلحات وحروف الجر

badly injured	مصاب بشدة	(be) called	يسمى/يدعى	get angry with	يغضب من شخص
fond of	شغوف بـ	benefit from	يستفيد من	send ... to	يرسل ... لـ
play a role	يلعب دورًا	benefit of	فائدة لـ	share with /in	يشارك مع/بـ
give ... a chance	يعطى فرصة	find out	يكتشف	take part in	يشارك فى
love-hate relationship	علاقة حب ممزوجة بالكراهية	(be) praised for	يُمدح لأجل	take the chance	ينتهز الفرصة
on the roof of	على سطح	role model to	مثل أعلى لـ	learn from	يتعلم من
sense of purpose	الشعور بالهدف/المسئولية	give ... a nickname	يُعطى لقبًا	move to	ينتقل إلى
(be) admired for	يعجب لأجل	give blood	يتبرع بالدم		

Derivatives

المشتقات

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
admire	يعجب بـ	admiration admirer	إعجاب معجب	admirable admired admiring	مثير للإعجاب معجب معبر عن الإعجاب
benefit	يستفيد	benefit beneficiary	فائدة مستفيد	beneficial	مفيد/نافع
desire	يرغب/يطلب	desirability desire	جاذبية/كون الشىء مرغوبًا فيه رغبة	desirable	مرغوب فيه
donate	يتبرع	donation donor	تبرع متبرع	------------------------	
found	يؤسس	founder foundation	مؤسس تأسيس/مؤسسة	founded	مرتكز على/مؤسس
------------------------		generosity	كرم	generous	كريم
injure	يجرح	injury	إساءة/إصابة	injured	مصاب/جريح
persuade	يقنع	persuasion persuasiveness	إقناع/قناعة إقناع	persuasive	مقنع
regulate	يضبط/ينظم	regulation regulator	نظام/ترتيب مراقب/منظم	regulatory	تنظيمى/تقريرى
------------------------		tradition	تقليد	traditional	تقليدى

Examples

تعلم أن تستخدم ما تحفظ، لاحظ الأمثلة التالية:

My sister benefits from the online videos. (v)
- The internet has lots of benefits. (n)
- My allowance مصروف is no longer beneficial to me. (adj)

Nadeen and Merna admire short stories. (v)
- The admiration of the boss doesn't add to my salary. (n)
- Brilliant students are admired by their teacher. (adj)

The group desired to get on the ship. (v)
- Jim didn't have a desire to kill anyone. (n)
- The treasure was desirable for everyone. (adj)

Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

Word الكلمة	Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد
benefits فوائد	advantages/profits	disadvantages/hindrances عيوب / عوائق
desire رغبة	wish/passion	apathy/disinterest لامبالاة / عدم اهتمام
find out يكتشف	discover/detect	conceal/hide يخفى
generous كريم	open-handed/big-hearted	mean/miserly بخيل
happen يحدث	occur/take place	cease/stop يتوقف
happiness سعادة	pleasure/joy	displeasure/sadness حزن
injured مصاب	wounded/hurt	healthy معافى
long-term طويل المدى	long-lasting/durable/ continuing	short-term/temporary قصير المدى / مؤقت
praise يمدح	appreciate/glorify	condemn/criticise ينتقد / يدين
prestige احترام (نفوذ / هيبة / وجاهة)	esteem/influence	insignificance/unimportance/ disrespect عدم احترام / عدم أهمية
support يدعم	aid/assist	desert/abandon يتخلى عن
reduce يقلل	decrease/cut down	increase/enlarge/expand يزيد / يوسع
take part in يشارك فى	participate in/join	avoid/hinder/block يتجنب / يعيق

Vocabulary Check point 2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The accident was so terrible that it led to my neighbour's bad ....

a) injure b) injury c) injured d) injuring

2. Studying hard is really .... to every student.

a) benefit b) beneficiary c) beneficial d) benefits

3. Teachers and parents ought to be .... for their efforts with their children and students.

a) blamed b) taken c) praised d) insulted

4. My grandfather is the .... of this very respected company.

a) foundation b) founder c) founding d) founded

5. We all should work together to support our country's economy. The synonym of "support" is "....................".

a) desert b) damage c) abandon d) assist

6. Generous people help both their families and poor people. The antonym of "Generous" is "....................".

a) brave b) courageous c) mean d) open-handed

7. It is .... to sleep early and eat healthy food to be much healthier.

a) desire b) desirable c) desirability d) desiring

8. Mr Ashraf found .... that I copied the homework from Akram.

a) out about b) down c) away d) out

9. The long-term vision aims at developing the factory over 20 years period. The antonym of the word "long-term" is "....................".

a) temporary b) durable c) continuing d) sustainable

10. A lot of young people are not ready to get married because they don't have a sense of ....

a) humour b) community c) money d) purpose



People who help

Mohamed Salah is one of Egypt's most famous footballers[1]. He is admired for his speed and ability to score goals. In 2017, he scored the goal to send Egypt to their first World Cup finals since 1990.

Salah has been praised for his kind and generous donations to charity in Egypt. He donated money to his hometown of Nagrig to build a school[2], and he has helped a children's cancer hospital in Cairo.

Salah's desire to help others is because he wants to give young people a chance to succeed. He is a role model to millions of Egyptians who gave him the nickname 'The Happiness Maker'.



Notes on some sentences: ملاحظات على بعض الجمل:

١- عند وجود 's الملكية أو أى صفة ملكية (my - his - their ...) يتم حذف the من صيغة التفضيل.

٢- كلمـة school يأتى قبلها أدوات النكرة (a/an) عند التحدث عن المدرسـة كمبنـى. وتأتى بدون أى أداة إذا كان الذهاب للغرض الأساسى وهو التعليم أو التدريس. I go to school to learn.

Reading Text (2)

Blood donors

Every year on 14th June, countries around the world take part in World Blood Donor Day to share information about the importance of giving blood.

Why should people donate blood?

Donating blood can help people if they have been badly injured[1] or need regular blood transplants because they have a long-term illness.

Giving blood can also have health benefits. All donors have their blood pressure and iron levels checked[2] before donation, so people who donate blood can find out quickly if they have any health problems. Giving blood can save lives and it is easy to do!



Notes on some sentences: ملاحظات على بعض الجمل:

١- الحال يمكن أن يصف الصفة ويأتى قبلها.

٢- الجملة السببية causative (تعنى شخصًا آخر قام بالفعل (وليس فاعل الجملة) تتكون من: فاعل + have + مفعول + p.p.

- I had my eyes examined yesterday.

Listening Text

Scan & listen



A Talk about Conservation

Interviewer : In today's programme we're talking to Martin Drake about Dr Leelah Hazzah, an Egyptian conservation biologist and founder of Lion Guardians, a conservation project in Kenya. Martin, when did Leelah become interested in lions?

Martin : Well, as a child, her father told her stories about how he listened to lions roaring at night when he was sleeping on the roof of their house during the summer(1). But when he explained that there weren't any lions left in Egypt, she decided that when she grew up, she would find out how to save them in other countries.

Interviewer : What happened next?

Martin : She went to America to study conservation biology and then moved to Kenya to research lions amongst the Maasai people. It was there that she saw how quickly lions were disappearing(2). Did you know that sixty or fifty years ago there were about 200,000 lions in Africa, but that number is under 20,000 now?

Interviewer : So why are lions disappearing so quickly?

Martin : There are several reasons. People have built houses in the areas where lions traditionally hunt, so they can't find enough food to eat and, so they attack the villagers' livestock(3), you know, their cows and goats. The villagers get angry with the lions and kill them in order to protect their animals. Another reason is prestige – in Maasai culture, young men get a lot of respect from killing a lion. They are even given a lion name which shows that they are no longer a boy, but a man.

Interviewer : What did Leelah do?

Martin : She lived with the Maasai for a year(4) and listened to their views about lions. She learnt that they have a love-hate relationship with lions; they admire their beauty but hate them for eating their cattle. She also understood the prestige that came from being a lion killer and realised that she needed to persuade the young men that keeping livestock and having a job gave them more prestige than killing a lion, so she started to teach them about the advantages of protecting lions instead.

Interviewer : Is that when she started Lion Guardians?

Martin : Yes. Lion Guardians is an organisation[5] that employs local people to look for lions in order to protect them. Remember, these young men already have the skills needed to track lions in the wild, so they are taught to become lion guardians rather than lion killers. The organisation gives them a job and teaches them to read and write, so they can help conservations with their research.

Interviewer : How successful is the programme?

Martin : Very successful. Maasai men now have jobs, a regular income and a sense of purpose. They get to know the lions they are protecting and even give them names and talk about them with fondness.

Interviewer : And finally, what can other conservationists learn from Lion Guardians?

Martin : The importance of listening to people in the community and to recognise how much knowledge local people have. By working together both the locals and conservations can benefit.

Interviewer : Thank you, Martin. And at 8 o'clock tonight you can see a ...

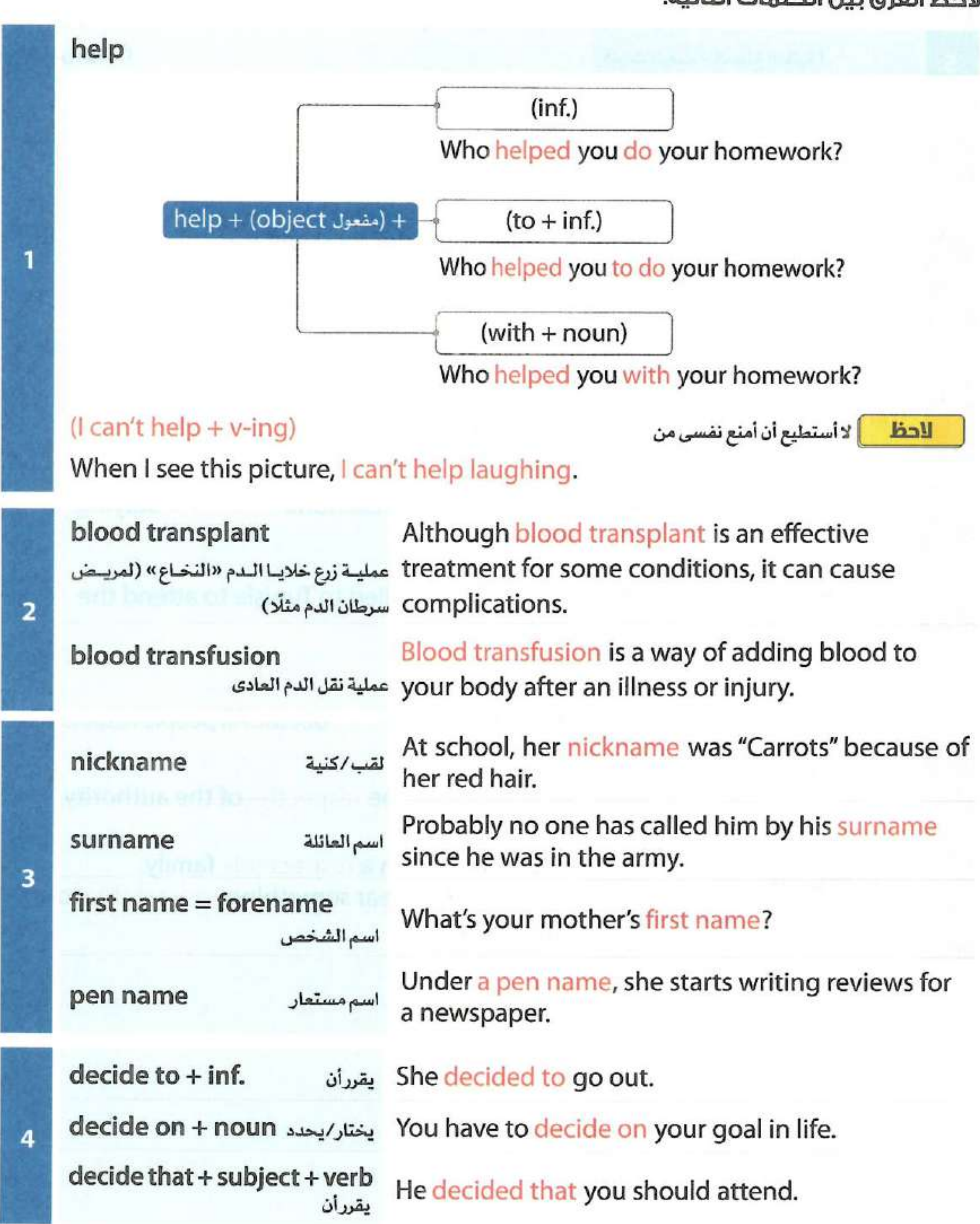


Notes on some sentences: ملاحظات على بعض الجمل:

١- يأتى بعد During اسم.
٢- يمكن أن يأتى بعد How صفة أو حال ويكون معناها (كم) للسؤال أو التعجب.
٣- لاحظ استخدام 's للملكية مع الأسماء الجمع المنتهية بـ s.
٤- يمكن استخدام for مع الماضى البسيط مع وجود ما يدل على انتهاء حدوث الفعل.
٥- هنا نتحدث عن Lion Guardians كمنظمة وتعامل معاملة المفرد مثل The United Nations.

Notes on Vocabulary

لاحظ الفرق بين الكلمات التالية:



1

help

help + (object مفعول) +

(inf.)
Who helped you do your homework?

(to + inf.)
Who helped you to do your homework?

(with + noun)
Who helped you with your homework?

(I can't help + v-ing) — لاحظ: لا أستطيع أن أمنع نفسي من

When I see this picture, I can't help laughing.

2	**blood transplant** عملية زرع خلايا الدم «النخاع» (لمريض سرطان الدم مثلاً)	Although blood transplant is an effective treatment for some conditions, it can cause complications.
	blood transfusion عملية نقل الدم العادى	Blood transfusion is a way of adding blood to your body after an illness or injury.
3	**nickname** لقب/كنية	At school, her nickname was "Carrots" because of her red hair.
	surname اسم العائلة	Probably no one has called him by his surname since he was in the army.
	first name = forename اسم الشخص	What's your mother's first name?
	pen name اسم مستعار	Under a pen name, she starts writing reviews for a newspaper.
4	**decide to + inf.** يقرر أن	She decided to go out.
	decide on + noun يختار/يحدد	You have to decide on your goal in life.
	decide that + subject + verb يقرر أن	He decided that you should attend.

5	**another +** اسم مفرد آخر (للمفرد) (شيء آخر إضافي أو مختلف) تأتي بعد another (الكميات - المسافات - فترات الوقت - المبالغ المالية)	- I like this cake. Can I have another piece? - This pen is broken. Give me another one, please. - I want to stay in this hotel for another 6 days. (فترة من الوقت)
	other + اسم جمع (آخرون) **others +** فعل الآخرون (لا يأتي بعدها اسم، وتفيد الجمع أيضًا)	- Some people like English. Other people don't like it. - Some people like English. Others don't like it.
6	**transplant** يزرع أو ينقل أعضاء من جسم الإنسان لجسم إنسان آخر.	A professional doctor could transplant a kidney into his body.
	transmit يذيع /يبث أو ينقل عبر قنوات تليفزيونية	The match will be transmitted on local channels.
	transport ينقل عن طريق وسيلة مواصلات	The goods are transported by huge ships.
7	**instead of + (noun/v-ing)** بدلًا من	He travelled to Alexandria instead of staying at home.
	instead, + subject + verb بدلًا من ذلك	Instead, he travelled to Tunisia to attend the conference.
8	**respected** محترم /يلقى احترامًا	My friend is a respected doctor. All people respect him.
	respectful محترم /يظهر الاحترام للآخرين	All of us should be respectful of the authority.
	respectable محترم أو مناسب من وجهة نظر المجتمع	- She comes from a respectable family. - Please, try to wear something respectable to the party.

Vocabulary Check point 3

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Hala always helps her daughters .... their homework.
   a) to b) at c) with d) by
2. A lot of people were badly injured in the accident and most of them needed blood ....
   a) pressure b) transport
   c) donate d) transfusion
3. The best thing to do is to decide .... your goal and work hard to achieve it.
   a) on b) to c) for d) that
4. I planned to travel to Sharm El-Sheikh but it was hot, so I decided to go to Matrouh ....
   a) instead of b) too c) either d) instead
5. I told my son that he had .... two hours to finish his task.
   a) other b) others c) another d) else
6. My friend is called Ali Mohamed Hassan. His .... is Hassan.
   a) pen name b) surname
   c) nickname d) first name
7. Some of my close friends went to university, ... didn't.
   a) other b) another
   c) the other d) others
8. White Angels .... a good charity to which we donate our money.
   a) are b) is c) be d) have
9. All donors have their blood pressure .... in hospitals.
   a) check b) checks
   c) checked d) checking
10. Dr Sameer is specialised in heart .... operations.
    a) transport b) transmit
    c) transfer d) transplant

Practice... Vocabulary General Exercises



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Key Vocabulary, Reading, Listening & Workbook

1. One very important piece of advice is to frequently measure iron .... in blood.

a) levels b) systems c) numbers d) grades

2. The car was travelling at a .... of 100 kilometers an hour. The driver got a ticket مخالفة.

a) length b) prestige c) speed d) height

3. I have a very severe headache صداع شديد because of my high blood ....

a) stress b) levels c) donation d) pressure

4. Some people are attracted by the .... of working for a top company.

a) greed b) generosity c) prestige d) sense

5. My father needs a kidney .... surgery and we are waiting for a donor.

a) transport b) transplant c) transform d) transfer

6. I .... the man who I met last week, but I couldn't remember his name.

a) realised b) understood c) organised d) recognised

7. There are a lot of .... of learning foreign languages like getting a better job.

a) cons b) benefits c) disadvantages d) losses

8. The body of cars is made of .... so that it can live longer.

a) levels b) fiber c) pressure d) iron

9. The headmaster gave me the .... of organising the school trip.

a) profession b) work c) task d) location

10. Habiba suffered from many .... problems during her childhood.

a) health b) healthy c) death d) earth

11. I don't think that exams are the best way to measure ....

a) intelligence b) intelligent c) desire d) compassion

12. Ragaa .... the paintings in the gallery so much.

a) admired b) designed c) avoided d) made

13. There are a lot of .... in Egypt that raise money تجمع المال to help the disabled.

a) generations b) locations c) clubs d) charities

14. Donating blood can help people if they need regular blood ....

a) transports b) transmits c) transforms d) transplants

15. Dr Magdy Yacoub is the .... of Aswan Heart Centre.

a) finder b) founder c) foundation d) finding

16. After visiting that disgusting مقزز place, Ramy had no .... to visit it again.
a) desire b) hatred c) design d) prestige

17. Mothers always have a sense of .... towards their families.
a) humour b) model c) purpose d) knowledge

18. Hassan told us about a wonderful .... he saw about rare marine creatures مخلوقات بحرية.
a) documentary b) document c) research d) commentary

19. The company had a .... contract عقد that will last for 30 years.
a) full-term b) half-term c) short-term d) long-term

20. My grandmother's .... grew up without electricity or computers.
a) admiration b) generation c) tradition d) donation

21. We all should .... our parents for all their efforts to raise us well.
a) criticise b) recognise c) deny d) praise

22. Paris is given the .... of "The city of light".
a) pen name b) nickname c) surname d) first name

23. Can you share the screen .... me so that I can see the PDF?
a) from b) about c) for d) with

24. Khaled likes to .... people nicknames. Mine is Mody.
a) make b) give c) show d) lend

Expressions, Idioms, Prepositions, Derivatives, Synonyms & Antonyms

25. The builders have just started to lay the .... of the new school.
a) founded b) founding c) founder d) foundation

26. Mohamed Salah is considered a .... to many young footballers.
a) model role b) benefit to c) role model d) praise for

27. Mr Magdy always .... angry with the students if they do something wrong.
a) gives b) gets c) makes d) does

28. Saleh takes .... several activities in university.
a) part of b) part c) part in d) apart

29. Some hospitals are built with the help of a lot of .... who love the country.
a) donated b) donations c) donors d) donating

30. Marwa gave a presentation about the benefits .... the internet and social media.
a) from b) by c) with d) of

31. I didn't have enough powers of .... to make the child say what had happened.
a) persuade b) persuasion c) persuasive d) persuades

32. Our neighbour is ....; he always buys sweets for our children and helps the needy. [Longman]
a) unkind b) ambitious c) generous d) jealous

33. Iron levels in our blood should be .... regularly. [Longman]
a) checked b) chocked c) shaken d) cheered

34. Blood .... is one of the most common diseases nowadays. [Longman]
a) pleasure b) leisure c) treasure d) pressure

35. The World Blood .... Day is on June 14th. [Longman]
a) Donor b) Owner c) Doer d) Honour

36. If your blood .... is too low or too high, you can feel unwell. (سوهاج - اخميم)
a) pressure b) press c) stress d) treasure

37. My uncle is a great scientist. He is my role .... (الإسكندرية - إدارة وسط التعليمية)
a) medal b) model c) needle d) middle

38. My brother has a strong .... to help care for old people. (الإسكندرية - إدارة المنتزه)
a) desire b) inquire c) inspire d) acquire

39. What makes all the Egyptians admire Mohamed Salah is his .... (الجيزة - إدارة العياط)
a) generous b) generosity c) generously d) genre

40. People who have .... are smart. (القليوبية - القناطر الخيرية)
a) intelligent b) intelligence c) misunderstanding d) stupidity

41. My brother likes to .... in school activities. (الإسكندرية - إدارة وسط التعليمية)
a) fail b) take part c) fill d) take place

Choose the TWO (2) correct answers of the FIVE (5) options:

42. Our teacher always helps us .... our lessons easily.
a) study b) studying c) to study d) to studying e) studies

43. Hosting استضافة the Handball World Cup added to our country's international prestige. The synonyms of the word "prestige" are ....
a) esteem b) influence c) profit d) satisfaction e) displeasure

44. A terrible accident happened on the way to Cairo yesterday. The meanings of "happened" are ....
a) occurred b) took place c) increased d) stopped e) ceased

45. Teachers .... weak students until they become better.
a) support b) assist c) desert d) abandon e) cease

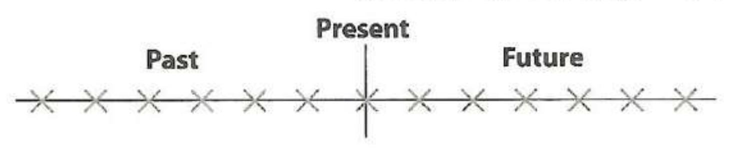
46. She expressed her desire to help all of us. The word 'desire' is a synonym for '......................'. [Longman]
a) sadness b) passion c) wash d) wish e) motion

B Language

1 The Present Simple Tense زمن المضارع البسيط

The present simple tense is used to talk about habits, customs and facts.

يستخدم زمن المضارع البسيط للتعبير عن العادات والتقاليد والحقائق.



FORM التكوين

Affirmative الإثبات

فى صيغة الإثبات استخدم:

Subject فاعل + inf. المصدر/(v. الفعل + s/es/ies)

He/She/It + v. الفعل + s/es/ies
- He eats fish every weekend.

I/They/We/You + inf. المصدر
- I eat fish every weekend.

Negative النفى

أما فى النفى استخدم:

He/She/It + doesn't + inf. المصدر
- Nada doesn't eat fish.

I/They/We/You + don't + inf. المصدر
- My parents don't eat fish.

Question السؤال

وفى حالة السؤال استخدم:

Does (he/she/it) + inf. المصدر?
- Does Mona eat fish?

Do (I/they/we/you) + inf. المصدر?
- Do they eat fish?

Wh-word + do/does + subj. + inf. المصدر?
- What do you eat?

Passive المبنى للمجهول

وفى صيغة المبنى للمجهول استخدم:

Obj. + am/is/are + P.P. التصريف الثالث للفعل
- Fish is eaten every weekend.

Key words الكلمات الدالة

1. Adverbs of Frequency ظروف التكرار

always	دائمًا	frequently	باستمرار	scarcely	نادرًا
occasionally	من حين لآخر	hardly ever	بالكاد	regularly	بانتظام
rarely	نادرًا	often	غالبًا	usually	عادةً
sometimes	أحيانًا	generally	عمومًا	never	أبدًا (للنفى)

Examples

I often travel to my uncle in his village.
Sherein never drinks milk in the morning.

لاحظ التعبيرات التالية التى تستخدم مع المضارع البسيط:

always = at all times usually = as usual = as ever

occasionally = from time to time = now and then/again

Examples

Rasha always sleeps late. = Rasha sleeps late at all times.

I go to the zoo with my children from time to time.

= I occasionally go to the zoo with my children.

2. Adverbs of Time

ظروف زمنية

every/each (week/month/year/...)
in the (morning, afternoon/evening)
at night/at noon/on (Fridays/Sundays/...)
at the weekend/once/twice/three times a (week/month/year/...)
daily/weekly/monthly/yearly = annually

Examples

I go to the gym every week.

Rania goes to the library once a week.

USAGE الاستخدام

1 **For scientific and universal facts:** الحقائق العلمية والكونية.

Metals expand when they are heated.

The sun rises in the east.

2 **For habits, daily routines and permanent situations:**

مع العادات والأنشطة اليومية المتكررة والمواقف الدائمة.

I wake up early every day.

Nora lives in Cairo.

She always sleeps late during holidays.

I work as a teacher.

3 **For future timetables:** مع الجداول الزمنية الثابتة.

The train from Cairo arrives at 5 o'clock tomorrow.

The film starts at 7.30 and ends at 11.30 p.m.

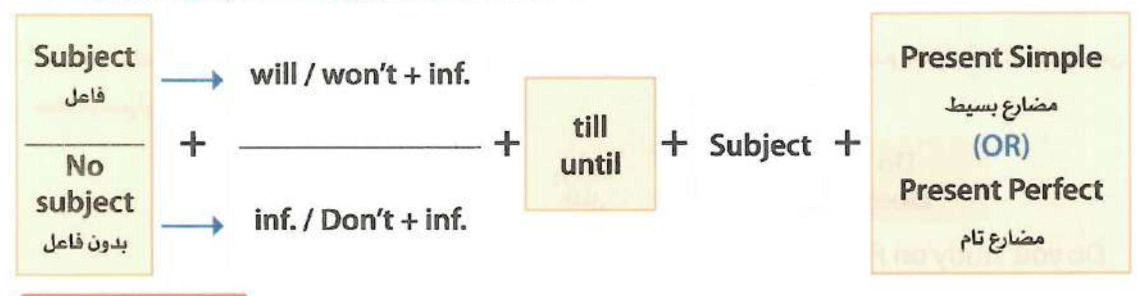
4 **After time conjunctions to express the future.** بعد الروابط الزمنية للتعبير عن المستقبل.

أمثلة الروابط الزمنية:



Examples

As soon as my brother comes/has come, I will tell him everything.
They are going to sleep after the film ends/has ended.
When she sleeps/has slept, turn off the TV.



Examples

I won't go out until I phone/have phoned my friends.
I will wait till my father comes/has come.
Wait until he calls/has called his father to come.
Don't sleep till you finish/have finished studying your lessons.

Language Check point 4

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The River Nile .... through Sudan and Egypt.
   a) run b) ran c) runs d) is run
2. Maged .... plays in the street. He really enjoys playing in the club.
   a) ever b) always c) doesn't d) never
3. I usually .... much time with my friends outside home.
   a) spend b) spending c) am spending d) spends
4. Students .... by their teachers to do well in their exams every term.
   a) encourage b) encouraged c) are encouraging d) are encouraged
5. The shop .... at 10. It opens earlier.
   a) opens b) don't open c) doesn't open d) open

Other ways to express present habits: طرق أخرى للتعبير عن العادات فى الحاضر:

1 **Subject فاعل + (am/is/are) + used to + (v-ing), noun اسم or a pronoun ضمير.**

Amir is used to sleeping early. معتاد على النوم مبكرًا.

2 **It is + (someone's/ صفة ملكية) + habit to + inf.**

It is her habit to study at night. من عادتها أن تذاكر ليلًا.

3 **Subject فاعل + (am/is/are) + in the habit of + (v-ing/noun)**

Adam is in the habit of playing chess on Fridays. آدم منخرط فى عادة لعب الشطرنج يوم الجمعة.

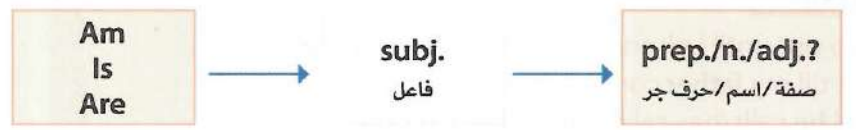
الفرق بين am/is/are و do/does فى السؤال والنفى فى المضارع البسيط.

- تستخدم الأفعال المساعدة do/does لعمل سؤال فى المضارع البسيط باستخدام فعل، ولكن يستخدم am/is/are للسؤال عن صفة أو اسم أو حرف جر:



Do you study on Fridays?

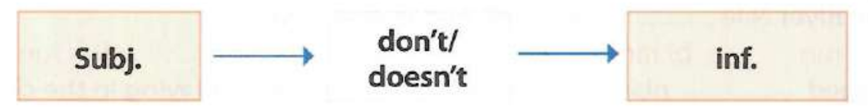
Where does your father work?



Are you busy studying your lessons today?

Is Ahmad at home on Fridays?

- تستخدم الأفعال المساعدة don't/doesn't لنفى الفعل فى المصدر ولكن تستخدم am/is/are + not قبل الاسم والصفة وحرف الجر:



She doesn't like watching football matches.



They aren't happy because of losing the match.

Important Notes

ملاحظات هامة على المضارع البسيط:

١- تأتى ظروف التكرار قبل الفعل الأساسى ولكن إذا كان الفعل الأساسى هو am/is/are تأتى ظروف التكرار بعده:

He usually comes to work early.
He is always proud of his country.

٢- من الممكن أن تأتى (usually/sometimes) فى بداية الجملة أو فى آخرها.

Sometimes, I drive my car to school.

٣- تأتى الظروف الزمنية إما فى بداية الجملة وإما فى نهايتها.

I go to school every day.
Every day, I go to school.

٤- تستخدم never فى النفى ولكنها لا تحذف s/es/ies من الفعل مثل doesn't.

Nora never comes late.

٥- يستخدم المضارع البسيط للتعبير عن المستقبل فى حالة جداول المواعيد الثابتة (timetables) مثل القطارات والطائرات والدروس.

My train leaves at 6 o'clock tomorrow morning.

2 Past Simple — زمن الماضى البسيط

تم شرح زمن الماضى البسيط فى الوحدة السابقة، وللمراجعة السريعة عليه نتذكر ما يلى:

We travelled to Tanta yesterday.	حدث بدأ وانتهى
He often slept late when he was young.	عادة كانت تحدث فى الماضى
First, we met our friends, then we went to the cinema together.	تتابع الأحداث
I didn't see my friend when I went to the party.	نفى الماضى البسيط
How did you win the last football match?	السؤال فى الماضى البسيط
A very good match between Egypt and Nigeria was played yesterday.	المبنى للمجهول

Language Check point 5

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. It is her habit to sleep late. She .... this.
   a) used to b) has been used c) was used to d) is used to
2. Amr .... such hard work, he is always lazy.
   a) is used to b) used to c) isn't used to d) didn't use to
3. I .... articles for my school magazine.
   a) sometimes write b) sometimes writes
   c) write sometimes d) don't write sometimes
4. The weather .... warm, so I don't often wear heavy clothes.
   a) is always b) always is c) was always d) always was
5. A: .... Magdy usually late for school? B: Yes, Sir.
   a) Does b) Has c) Is d) Did



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. In the solar system, all planets .... around the sun in orbits.
   a) moves b) move c) moved d) moving
2. A: .... your parents usually donate blood? B: Yes, they always do so.
   a) Do b) Did c) Does d) Are
3. Water .... into steam when you boil it.
   a) turn b) turns c) is turning d) has turned
4. Akmal .... gets up early. He is always late.
   a) doesn't b) didn't c) never d) won't
5. Many people .... to the stadium to watch the final match yesterday.
   a) go b) went c) have been d) was going
6. As soon as my father .... home, I will tell him to take us on a picnic.
   a) came b) have come c) comes d) come
7. It rarely .... in Egypt except some areas of Sinai.
   a) snow b) snowed c) snows d) is snowing
8. Maya .... to her school in her father's car.
   a) goes usually b) usually goes c) go usually d) usually go
9. Noha no longer .... horror films as she used to.
   a) watches b) watched c) is watching d) watch
10. They .... English novels and books a lot. They rarely do.
    a) don't read b) always read c) didn't read d) never reads
11. Eslam reached home, ... off his dirty clothes and had a shower.
    a) took b) take c) had taken d) takes
12. After I .... my work, I .... to the club.
    a) finish/will go b) will finish/go
    c) had finished/will go d) have finished/went
13. In the past, it .... in Egypt all the winter, and the weather was warm and sunny.
    a) didn't rain b) doesn't rain c) hadn't rained d) hasn't rained
14. Salem is not punctual منضبط فى مواعيده, he .... comes late.
    a) rarely b) hardly ever c) always d) never

15. Amin .... late. He always comes on time.
a) is usually b) is never c) came d) comes

16. Miss Wafaa corrects her students' mistakes on the board ....
a) usually b) as usually c) usual d) as usual

17. Said .... newspapers. He watches the news on TV.
a) is used to buying b) isn't used to buying
c) always buys d) used to buy

18. Nour .... the queue. He respects the rules.
a) never jump b) always jumps c) jumps d) never jumps

19. .... important for young children?
a) Does reading b) Is reading c) Is he reading d) Does he read

20. My father works as a doctor. He .... busy treating patients.
a) always is b) is always c) is always being d) always

21. Monir didn't use to be busy, but now he ....
a) was b) 's been c) does d) is

22. Hurry up; the first lesson .... at 8.30.
a) start b) will start c) starts d) started

23. Everything .... to help the patient yesterday, but he became in a serious case.
a) didn't do b) is done c) were done d) was done

24. The sun .... rises from the west.
a) hardly ever b) always c) never d) no longer

25. Most shops in Cairo .... until 9:00 a.m.
a) opens b) don't open
c) aren't opening d) is opened

26. The plane lands at 5 o'clock tomorrow. This is a ....
a) present habit b) future fact c) timetable d) hope

27. My friend lives in Alexandria. This means ....
a) he doesn't live there
b) it was his place of living one day
c) this is his temporary place of living
d) this is his permanent place of living

28. The final match starts at 10 o'clock. This means ....
a) the final match never starts at 10 o'clock
b) the final match might start at 10 o'clock
c) the final match used to start at 10 o'clock
d) the final match time is set to start at 10 o'clock by a timetable

29. Liverpool is loved by everyone in our family. This means ....

a) everyone in our family loves Liverpool
b) everyone in our family is loved by Liverpool
c) Liverpool players love everyone in our family
d) Liverpool loves everyone in our family

30. We will go to the park after we .... our work.

a) will do b) doing c) had done d) do

31. A: Did you visit your friend in hospital? B: Yes, I .... him yesterday. Longman

a) visited b) have visited c) visit d) will visit

32. My father always .... to work by train when he was young. Longman

a) has gone b) was going c) went d) is going

33. I .... have a toy train when I was a child. Longman

a) used to b) am used to c) used d) was used

34. How often does Adel .... to the school library? Longman

a) goes b) go c) going d) went

35. We will go to the park after we .... doing our work. Longman

a) finished b) finishing c) had finished d) finish

36. I .... to work every morning; it is one of my good habits. Longman

a) used to walk
b) am used to walking
c) walks
d) always walked

37. Lions .... as much as in the past. (الجيزة - إدارة العمرانية)

a) didn't hunt
b) aren't hunted
c) aren't hunting
d) not hunting

38. Nora .... late when she was young. She no longer does now. (الإسكندرية - إدارة المنتزه)

a) is usually sleeping
b) used to sleep
c) is used to sleeping
d) usually sleeps

39. After she .... her homework, she will play tennis. (القليوبية - القناطر الخيرية)

a) write b) will write c) had written d) writes

40. Amr .... a cup of coffee every morning; it's his habit. (المنوفية - إدارة منوف)

a) used to drink
b) is used to drinking
c) drink
d) always drank



Take a test

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Vocabulary

1. Nothing equals mothers' .... towards their children.
   a) cruelty b) documentary c) compassion d) reservation
2. Nowadays, we're in need of a .... salary to lead a normal life.
   a) praised b) role c) respectable d) respectful
3. More .... is needed into the effects of pollution on babies.
   a) search b) reservation c) recovery d) research
4. Mohamed Salah .... many young people to become professional footballers like him.
   a) aspired b) inspired c) respired d) consulted
5. Mr Ahmed has a negative .... about politics. He doesn't like it at all.
   a) scene b) view c) sight d) scenery
6. Damanhour University was .... in 2010. It consisted of 12 colleges at that time.
   a) found b) founded c) published d) designed
7. A love-hate .... is when you have feelings of love and hate for someone or something.
   a) relationship b) fondness c) foundation d) participation
8. Good teachers gain the .... of their students.
   a) recovery b) standard c) respect d) cruelty
9. I watched a wonderful .... about President Sadat, the hero of October war.
   a) documentary b) community c) conservation d) task
10. After the exam, I .... that I had made a lot of mistakes.
    a) relieved b) realised c) summarised d) memorised
11. I saw a lot of familiar faces .... the crowd in the street yesterday.
    a) above b) before c) amongst d) below
12. Our teacher gave us .... chance to improve our marks of the last exam.
    a) another b) others c) other d) the others
13. My daughter was so happy to have the chance to .... that competition.
    a) take place in b) move to c) work out d) take part in
14. My daughter's .... was "the little queen" when she was young.
    a) first name b) surname c) nickname d) pen name
15. Ahmed is a very generous man who is ready to help anyone. The opposite of generous is "......................".
    a) open-handed b) miserly c) healthy d) big-hearted

Language

16. Our teachers occasionally .... us rewards to encourage us.

a) are given b) are giving c) give d) gives

17. The bus to Cairo .... at exactly 7 a.m.

a) leaves b) is leaving c) leave d) had left

18. My cousins and I usually .... our grandparents before their death.

a) visit b) visits c) visited d) have visited

19. I last .... my friend Magda when we were in Alexandria.

a) have seen b) see c) had seen d) saw

20. English .... all over the world by millions of people.

a) is speaking b) spoke c) speaks d) is spoken

21. My grandfather once .... me a present.

a) is giving b) gives c) gave d) is given

22. How long ago .... Hayam visit her uncle?

a) do b) does c) did d) will

23. In ancient times, they often .... camels in travelling.

a) were using b) used c) use d) using

24. Ahmed .... a glass of milk every morning.

a) always has b) had always c) has always d) always have

25. The sun's power .... by solar panels.

a) is collected b) is collecting c) collects d) collected

26. This road .... used any more.

a) didn't b) doesn't c) isn't d) is

27. The rich mud .... reaches Egyptian farmland.

a) don't b) doesn't c) no longer d) any longer

28. Don't go out till you .... your work.

a) do b) does c) did d) is done

29. I .... a meeting to discuss some problems in the company today, and now everything is OK.

a) have b) had had c) had d) am having

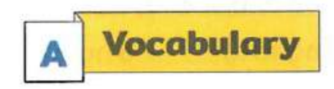
30. Mayada didn't do anything wrong, so she didn't know why she .... yesterday.

a) punished b) was punished

c) am punished d) wasn't punished

Study... Part 2 | Lessons 3 & 4





Vocabulary on Reading Text

مفردات نص القراءة

aim (n)	هدف	hope (n)	أمل	responsibility (n)	مسئولية
amazing (adj)	مذهل/مدهش	hunting parties (n)	جماعات الصيد	safe (adj)	آمن
attack (v) – ed	يهاجم	killings (n)	عمليات القتل	skills (n)	مهارات
biologist (n)	عالم أحياء	local (adj)	محلى	successful (adj)	ناجح
cattle (n)	الماشية	missing (adj)	مفقود	together (adv)	معًا
change (v) – d (n)	يغير/تغيير	monitor (v) – ed	يراقب	track (n) (v) – ed	يتتبع/مسار
disappear (v) – ed	يختفى	movements (n)	حركات	understand (v)	يفهم
employ (v) – ed	يوظف	nearby (adj)	قريب		
guardian (n)	وصى/حام - حارس	organisation (n)	منظمة	villagers (n)	سكان القرى
hunting (n)	الصيد	protect (v) – ed	يحمى		

Workbook Vocabulary

مفردات كتاب التدريبات

appearance (n)	مظهر خارجى	headquarters (n)	المركز الرئيسى	signs (n)	علامات
empathy (n)	مشاركة وجدانية	locate (v) – d	يوجد/يقع فى	tribe (n)	قبيلة
estimate (v) – d	يقدر	paw print (n)	أثر بصمة (مخلب) حيوان	sense (n)	حاسة
experts (n)	خبراء	personality (n)	شخصية	path (n)	ممر/طريق
follow (v) – ed	يتبع/يرصد	recent (adj)	حديث		

Vocabulary Check point 1

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The government is planning to .... a number of youth to solve the problem of unemployment.
   a) save b) follow c) employ d) dismiss
2. A new .... restaurant has opened. We can go and have our dinner there.
   a) nearby b) busy c) missing d) safe
3. I log onto the internet every day to get .... information about currencies عملات.
   a) recent b) modern c) local d) missing
4. It is wrong to judge a person only according to their ....
   a) movement b) appearance c) location d) sense
5. We must .... the pollution levels in our water sources regularly and accurately.
   a) protect b) change c) monitor d) follow
6. Egypt has qualified .... in all different fields all over the world.
   a) headquarters b) villagers c) guardians d) experts
7. Our patients don't have to go abroad to be treated; they are treated in our .... hospitals.
   a) local b) international c) recent d) located
8. Making such beautiful jewellery needs great ....
   a) personality b) estimation c) search d) skill
9. Most young people nowadays have no particular .... in their lives.
   a) attacks b) movements c) personalities d) aims
10. While Waleed was walking in the street, a wild dog.................. him.
   a) attached b) attacked c) attracted d) attended

Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions التعبيرات والمصطلحات وحروف الجر

(be) based in القائم فى/الموجود فى	get together يتقابل/يجتمع	search for يبحث عن
(be) based on قائم على	give a sense of يعطى إحساسا بـ	thanks to بفضل
do research يقوم بعمل بحث	go missing/get lost يتوه/يضل الطريق	worry about يقلق على
interested in مهتم بـ	make sure يتأكد	help in يساعد فى
look for يبحث عن	expert at/on/in خبيرفى	

Derivatives

المشتقات

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
amaze	يدهش	amazement	دهشة/إعجاب	amazed amazing	مندهش مدهش
estimate	يقدر	estimation	تقدير	estimated	مقدر
hunt	يصطاد	hunting hunter	الصيد صياد	hunted	مطارد/ملاحق
locate	يقع فى/يوجد	location	موقع	located	موجود فى موقع
save	ينقذ/يوفر	safety safe	أمان خزينة	safe	أمن
succeed	ينجح	success	نجاح	successful	ناجح

Examples

تعلم أن تستخدم ما تحفظ، لاحظ الأمثلة التالية:

We need to estimate the distance. (v)
- The estimation needs to be accurate. (n)
- The estimated distance is quite accurate. (adj)

The magician amazed us with his tricks. (v)
- I couldn't hide my amazement when I saw the tricks. (n)
- I was amazed at the amazing tricks. (adj) - (adj)

Study hard to succeed. (v)
- Reaching your goal is called success. (n)
- I'm always successful in my work. (adj)

Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	الكلمة	Synonym	المرادف	Antonym	المضاد
amazing	مدهش	astonishing/wonderful		believable/ordinary	معقول/عادى
attack	هجوم	invasion/aggression		defence/resistance	دفاع/مقاومة
disappear	يختفى	vanish/cease		appear/come out	يظهر
employ	يوظف	hire/appoint		fire/discharge	يطرد
hope	أمل	longing/ambition/desire		despair/hopelessness	يأس
missing	مفقود	lost/absent		present/found	حاضر/موجود
understand	يفهم	grasp/comprehend		misunderstand	يسىء الفهم
nearby	قريب	close/near		far/faraway/distant/remote	بعيد/بعيد جدًا

Vocabulary Check point 2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The little child got lost and we all went out to look .... him.
   a) at b) after c) for d) with

2. The film I watched yesterday was based .... a true story that happened in the 19th century.
   a) on b) in c) at d) by

3. The presence of the police gave us a/an .... safety.
   a) advice of b) research on
   c) sense of d) number of

4. Unfortunately, the .... of the factory is too close to a residential area.
   a) location b) located
   c) locate d) locating

5. While going back home, my son suddenly went missing. The meaning of "went missing" is ....
   a) got busy b) got found
   c) existed d) got lost

6. My close friend lives in a nearby village, so I always visit him. The opposite of "nearby" is "..................".
   a) remote b) close c) near d) b & c

7. Thanks .... modern inventions, communication has developed greatly.
   a) with b) for c) at d) to

8. They are .... fascinating research on the ways of using AI الذكاء الإصطناعى in medicine.
   a) making b) giving c) taking d) doing

9. The building of the new train station in Cairo caused .... to anyone who saw it.
   a) amazing b) amazed
   c) amaze d) amazement

10. .... who have working skills are always required for respectable jobs.
    a) Employers b) Employees
    c) Employments d) Employs

Reading Text



Working together

Lions are disappearing all over Africa but there is some hope[1] now after the amazing work of an organisation called Lion Guardians, which is based in Kenya, but Guardians help in nearby Tanzania. The aim of Lion Guardians is to help local people to protect[2] their own livestock and reduce the number of lion killings in the area.

Cattle are important[3] to the villagers but they often go missing or are attacked by lions. Then the lions are killed as villagers worry about losing more livestock.

Lion Guardians is changing this. The organisation works with the community to help both the lions and the livestock and this is done by employing local people. Maasai men are chosen to become guardians as they understand lions and have the skills needed to monitor their movements, find missing livestock and stop hunting parties who kill the lions for sport. They are taught to be field biologists and are given a sense of responsibility.

Lions are monitored every day and the information is sent[4] to the cattle farmers who can then make sure their cows are safe.

Lion Guardians are very successful. They help the future of lions as well as the local communities.



Notes on some sentences: ملاحظات على بعض الجمل:

١- كلمة hope اسم معنوى لا يعد وتعامل معاملة المفرد.

٢- كلمة help يأتى معها inf. / to + inf. / with + n.

٣- كلمة cattle تعامل معاملة الجمع.

٤- كلمة information اسم لا يعد وتعامل معاملة المفرد .



Workbook Text

Maasai Tracking

The Maasai are experts at tracking animals and lions are the most well-known animals that they follow. But how do they do it? The lions are tracked[1] by the Maasai, who use all their senses to follow them.

When a paw print is discovered[2], it is checked to see if it is an old paw print or a recent one. Then the path is followed[3] by the Maasai until the lions are found[4].

While they are tracking the lions, the Maasai are listening and looking for signs to help them discover where they are. In the past, the Maasai might kill a lion when they found one. Today, lions are protected[5] by the Maasai from hunting parties and at the same time the local people's cows are safe. Thanks to[6] the Lion Guardians, everyone is happy![7]



Notes on some sentences: ملاحظات على بعض الجمل:

١-٥- لاحظ استخدام المبنى للمجهول فى المضارع البسيط .

٦- التعبير Thanks to يأتى بمعنى بفضل ويأتى بعده noun أو v+ing.

٧- كلمة everyone تعامل معاملة المفرد.

Video Script



Young people and older people don't always spend[1] a lot of time together. But they can do a lot to help each other.

In some communities, children and teenagers volunteer to support older people. They sit and watch television with them. They help them with their shopping or other tasks around the house.

They listen to their stories about life a long time ago. The older people don't feel so alone, they get the help they need and they can share interesting information about life in the past with the next generation.

But what about the young people? Well, they can learn a lot about the history of their community. They also see that older people were just like them when they were younger.



Notes on some sentences: ملاحظات على بعض الجمل:

١- تستخدم ظروف التكرار مثل ..always/usually/ often بعد don't/doesn't فى الجمل المنفية فى المضارع البسيط.

Notes on Vocabulary

لاحظ الفرق بين الكلمات التالية:

1	work with	يعمل مع	All the nurses in this hospital are qualified to work with children.
	work for	يعمل لدى/يعمل لصالح	- My brother works for a big company in the city. - Egypt always works for peace in the Middle East.
	work in	يعمل فى (مكان/مجال)	- I hope to work in medical research when I'm older. - I work in Al-Salam company which is in October City.
	work on	يعمل على (مشروع/إنجاز)	The writer said that he was working on a new novel.
	work as	يعمل (بوظيفة)	My grandfather worked as a journalist in Al-Ahram Newspaper.

2 Jobs ending with –ist وظائف تنتهى بالمقطع ist –

scientist	عالم	biologist	عالم أحياء
pharmacist	صيدلانى	oculist	طبيب عيون
motorist	سائق سيارة	novelist	روائى
archaeologist	عالم آثار	artist	فنان/رسام

3	as well as بالإضافة إلى (v + ing OR noun تتبعها)	As well as studying English, he studied physics and maths.
	as well as بالإضافة إلى (تربط بين فاعلين، و فعل الجملة يتبع الفاعل الأول)	I, as well as Ali, like eating fish.

4	own يمتلك	He owns a big flat on the Nile bank.
	owe (شخص to شىء) يدين	He owes some money to his friend.
	lend يسلف	His friend lent him some money.
	borrow (شخص from شىء) يستلف	He borrowed some money from his friend.

5		
	recent حديث (من فترة قصيرة)/قريب العهد	This is a recent photo of my daughter.
	modern حديث/عصرى	Do you prefer modern or classical music?

Vocabulary Check point 3

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Ahmed Murad is working .... a new short story to be published soon.
   a) as   b) on   c) with   d) for
2. Menna wants to work .... a doctor to help poor people.
   a) as   b) on   c) with   d) for
3. My brother, as well as I, ... part of the local charity in our neighbourhood.
   a) am   b) are   c) is   d) have
4. I have to pay him the money that I .... to him.
   a) lend   b) owe
   c) borrow   d) own
5. I have to pay him the money that I .... from him.
   a) lend   b) owed
   c) borrow   d) owned
6. Esraa buys her medicine from this .... as he is very clever and friendly.
   a) pharmacy   b) pharmacist
   c) scientist   d) biology
7. The company asked Sara to send them a CV and attach a/an .... photo.
   a) modern   b) recent
   c) recently   d) old
8. They help the future of lions as .... as the local communities.
   a) good   b) better
   c) well   d) best



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Reading & Workbook

1. I want to come first in the final exams. This is my ....
   a) aim b) movement c) skill d) ecosystem
2. The crash was .... by a loud scream and then there was a silence.
   a) located b) followed c) estimated d) changed
3. Another word for "cattle" is "......................".
   a) kettle b) villagers c) paw prints d) livestock
4. Hanan has become a famous doctor but her fame hasn't .... her at all.
   a) attacked b) monitored c) changed d) understood
5. Our teacher has a very strong and also friendly .... in dealing with his students.
   a) responsibility b) sense c) movement d) personality
6. There must be some .... on high ways to help us know where we are.
   a) signals b) signs c) tracks d) headquarters
7. Some factories .... children as young as seven, which is not legal.
   a) donate b) employ c) pretend d) hunt
8. Mr Soliman acts as a .... of our big family. He is the one who takes care of us all.
   a) guardian b) guarder c) spy d) gardener
9. Where is the .... of the firm شركة? I want to meet the manager.
   a) high quarter b) headquarters c) head building d) headman
10. We all can see the slow .... of the clouds across the sky. They are so beautiful.
   a) agreement b) development c) entertainment d) movement
11. Eid said that his wallet .... suddenly and we had to look for it everywhere.
   a) appeared b) disappeared c) tracked d) missed
12. My hometown is .... in the northeast of Cairo.
   a) estimated b) tracked c) located d) aimed
13. The hunter followed the .... of the deer and he could catch it.
   a) paw prints b) tricks c) fingerprints d) tracks
14. Vitamin C provides some .... against minor illnesses like the flu.
   a) production b) deduction c) protection d) introduction
15. There are many .... happening recently in our area but the police haven't arrested the murderers yet.
   a) parties b) killings c) pranks d) plays

16. I asked my assistant to get me the most .... information about the rival company.

a) useless b) recent c) modern d) ancient

17. Patients who are given the new drug will be asked to .... their progress.

a) monitor b) lose c) attack d) achieve

18. I, as well as my wife, ... travelling to Alexandria next week.

a) am b) is c) are d) has

19. Mix all the dry ingredients .... before you add the milk.

a) nearby b) as well as c) together d) individually

20. The increase of committing crimes has disturbed أزعجت all people in our small ....

a) research b) communication c) world d) community

21. Most of people here have .... with the homeless children and try to help them.

a) appearance b) empathy c) ecosystem d) research

22. Scientists .... the headquarters of the Lion Guardians in the Amboseli-Tsavo ecosystem in Kenya.

a) estimate b) hunt c) locate d) aim

Expressions, Idioms, Prepositions, Derivatives, Synonyms & Antonyms

23. Thanks .... the new payment methods طرق الدفع, transferring money is easier.

a) for b) with c) by d) to

24. Brazilian people are interested .... football sport.

a) on b) in c) with d) of

25. .... must respect their workers and share success with them.

a) Employers b) Employees c) Employments d) Employs

26. While we were travelling through the desert, we went ....

a) lost b) missed c) losing d) missing

27. I always .... worried about my daughter when she is out.

a) have b) get c) make d) go

28. Scientists worked .... developing the new vaccine last year.

a) for b) with c) as d) on

29. The tree is .... to be at least 700 years old.

a) estimate b) estimation c) estimates d) estimated

30. My friend's new story is based .... a true situation that had happened to him.

a) on b) in c) at d) into

31. Abdullah came back home to .... sure he didn't forget the door open.

a) get b) do c) take d) make

32. Egypt is .... in the north of the continent of Africa.

a) location b) locate c) located d) locates

33. Khalil was going to his home town when some kind .... helped him fix his car.
a) headquarters b) robots c) criminals d) villagers

34. On the side of the street there is a cycle .... which is made for bikes only.
a) path b) road c) hall d) sense

35. Success in life is based .... hard work and determination. Longman
a) on b) in c) at d) from

36. Our brave armed forces are able to .... our country against any enemy at any time. Longman
a) respect b) attack c) suspect d) protect

37. Scientists .... that smoking reduces life expectancy by around 12 years on average. Longman
a) estimate b) appear c) fabricate d) regulate

38. I think classical songs are .... (محافظة المنيا)
a) amazed b) amazing c) amazingly d) amaze

39. We should encourage people to .... money to charities. (المحلة - الغربية)
a) donate b) borrow c) owe d) own

40. I .... a lot to my parents and teachers as they supported me a lot. (القناطر الخيرية)
a) owe b) own c) debt d) indebted

41. Farmers always look after their .... well. (الأقصر)
a) fertilisers b) kettle c) crabs d) livestock

Choose the TWO (2) correct answers of the FIVE (5) options:

42. She is going to employ more people to improve her work. The synonyms of the word "employ" are ....
a) fire b) hire c) grasp d) appear e) appoint

43. She was left unconscious after an attack in her own home. The antonyms of the word "attack" are ....
a) invasion b) defence c) resistance d) fire e) grasp

44. My uncle is a great expert .... the field of remote sensing.
a) in b) with c) on d) by e) for

45. A group of students .... in the desert while they were trekking there.
a) went lost b) went missing c) got missing d) got lost e) made loss

46. Unfortunately, the new school isn't near; it's .... Longman
a) open b) closed c) far away d) nearby e) remote

47. I recommend watching this film; it's amazing. 'Amazing' here can be replaced with '.....................'. Longman
a) astonishing b) astonished c) wonderful
d) excited e) boring



Present Simple Passive

المبنى للمجهول فى المضارع البسيط

We use the passive when the action is more important than the agent (who or what does it):

نستخدم المبنى للمجهول عندما يكون المفعول أهم من الفاعل، أو الفاعل غير معروف أو لا يراد ذكره.

- The car is washed every Friday.

الجملة هنا تبدأ بالمفعول ولم تذكر من يقوم بالفعل.

- New schools are built by the government.

نستخدم by إذا أردنا ذكر الفاعل آخر الكلام.

يتكون المبنى للمجهول بشكل عام من:



– ومن هنا يتكون المضارع البسيط فى المبنى للمجهول من Object المفعول + am – is – are + P.P.

- Leila always does the homework after school.
  = The homework is always done by Leila after school.

– فى حالة النفى يتكون المبنى للمجهول فى المضارع البسيط من Object المفعول + (am – is – are) not + P.P.

- Amira doesn't watch comic films.
  = Comic films aren't watched by Amira.

– فى حالة السؤال:

Am/Is/Are + object + P.P. ...?

- Are these old cars sold here?

Wh-/am/is/are + object + P.P. ...?

- Where is this organisation based?

لاحظ

– لا تستخدم (has/have) كفعل أساسى فى المبنى للمجهول ويستبدل بفعل آخر حسب المعنى:

- I have a mobile.
- A mobile is (possessed/owned) by me.
- We have breakfast before going to school every day.
- Breakfast is eaten before going to school every day (by us).



Important Notes

ملاحظات هامة على المضارع البسيط:

هناك استخدامات أخرى عديدة لزمن المضارع البسيط ... منها:

1 إعطاء أوامر أو تعليمات (بدلًا من جملة الأمر).

You read the questions first and then you write down your answers in the box.

You give a signal before you turn right or left.

= Give a signal before you turn right or left.

2 قاعدة if الحالة الصفرية والأولى.

If water boils, it evaporates.

If Nada takes a taxi, she will arrive at work on time.

3 سرد ملخص لأحداث روائية فى رواية أو فيلم أو مسرحية.

In the last chapter, Huda meets Ali and agrees to marry him.

4 مع جمل تبدأ بـ (Here & There)

Look! Here comes your father at last.

5 مع الحكم والأمثال.

Action speaks louder than words.

6 ـ من الممكن البدء بـ (Never) وتصبح القاعدة كالآتى:

Never + (فعل مساعد) + فاعل + inf. مصدر الفعل

Never does he tell lies.

لاحظ من المعروف أن always تستخدم مع المضارع البسيط ولكن من الممكن استخدامها مع زمن المضارع المستمر إذا كنا نريد التعبير عن شيء يحدث باستمرار ويتسبب فى ضيق.

The girl is always asking a lot of questions while the teacher is explaining the lesson.

He is always criticising ينتقد my handwriting.

Language Check point 4

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Plants .... by farmers.

a) grow b) growing c) are grown d) grew

2. This road .... very often as it is so dangerous.

a) is used b) isn't used c) doesn't use d) isn't using

3. We .... the email and replied to it.

a) received b) receive c) had received d) were received

4. Today, lions .... by the Maasai from hunting parties.

a) protect b) have protected c) are protected d) were protected

5. When .... this house built?

a) does b) was c) did d) will

Practice... Language General Exercises



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. This popular television programme .... by millions of people every week.
a) is watched b) is being watched
c) has been watched d) was watching

2. This writer is well-known. His books .... by thousands of people.
a) read b) are read
c) are reading d) had been read

3. It is a fact that eggs .... a lot of protein that is useful for our bodies.
a) contain b) contains c) are contained d) is contained

4. Don't forget to come on time when you .... to come for the interview.
a) ask b) are asked c) asked d) are asking

5. The road to school .... last week in celebration of the new year.
a) is paved b) is paving c) was paved d) has paved

6. Nurses .... after patients in hospitals. It's their job.
a) are looking b) looked c) look d) looks

7. A very nice meal .... for us at my grandfather's house every Friday.
a) has been prepared b) was preparing
c) is prepared d) is preparing

8. Health .... by smoking that causes many fatal diseases أمراض مميتة.
a) has affected b) is affected c) affects d) was affected

9. My car .... for any damage from now and then.
a) serviced b) had been serviced c) has serviced d) is serviced

10. The service fee رسوم الخدمة in this hotel .... in the bill.
a) included b) is included c) is including d) includes

11. During the monthly school party, clever students .... nice presents.
a) are giving b) are given
c) were giving d) had been given

12. The flowers .... by our gardener who is very active.
a) are usually watered b) usually water
c) usually are watered d) have usually watered

13. Electric cars .... in Saudi Arabia for the first time in history.
a) make b) are making c) made d) are made

14. The classrooms .... during the school holidays so that the school can look better.
a) is painted b) are painting c) have painted d) were painted

15. Some kinds of mobiles .... in Egypt.
a) are made b) are making
c) have made d) had been made

16. Ali and I always .... our friends on holidays.
a) meet b) are met c) are meeting d) have met

17. Ali and I .... by our friends on holidays.
a) meet b) are met c) are meeting d) have met

18. Remember that after you .... the contract, you won't be able to change your mind.
a) had signed b) will sign c) signed d) sign

19. Kareem .... by dad because his behaviour is bad.
a) is always punished b) is always punishing
c) always punishes d) always is punished

20. Dad .... Kareem because his behaviour is bad.
a) is always punished b) always punishing
c) always punishes d) always is punished

21. How many babies .... in this hospital every day?
a) were born b) was born c) have born d) are born

22. .... any of these houses damaged in the storm last night?
a) Were b) Are c) Did d) Had

23. There was a fight at the party, but nobody ....
a) was hurt b) was hurting
c) is hurt d) didn't get hurt

24. The Earth goes around the sun. This sentence is a ....
a) habit b) timetable c) fact d) hope

25. Mr Fadel told all the students about the surprise. This means that ....
a) all the students told Mr Fadel about the surprise
b) Mr Fadel was told about the surprise
c) all the students were told about the surprise
d) Mr Fadel was told by all the students about the surprise

26. Peter no longer .... as he used to. Longman
a) has smoked b) smoking c) smoked d) smokes

27. Nada .... arrives late; she is really punctual. Longman
a) doesn't b) never c) always d) already

28. Trees absorb carbon dioxide and .... us oxygen. Longman
a) are given b) is giving c) gives d) give

29. Children .... more care, especially at the nursery stage. Longman
a) are given b) to give c) is given d) given

30. Students .... two foreign languages in secondary schools before they join university. Longman
a) teach b) are teaching c) were taught d) are taught



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Vocabulary

1. To cope with developed countries, we need more experts .... different fields.
   a) on b) in c) at d) all mentioned
2. We couldn't recognise Seleem easily as he had changed his .... completely.
   a) appearance b) role c) demonstration d) relation
3. I was so happy and excited when I met a/an .... of Somali desert nomads البدو.
   a) society b) community c) tribe d) association
4. The poor young man was sent to prison as he .... a lot of money to the bank.
   a) won b) gained c) earned d) owed
5. A .... of panic has spread over the country after the explosions انفجارات.
   a) movement b) disappearance c) cattle d) sense
6. .... blood can help people if they have been badly injured.
   a) Dominating b) Donating c) Eating d) Bleeding
7. My boss is very kind-hearted. He showed much .... with the difficult situation which I faced.
   a) admiration b) empathy c) inspiration d) appearance
8. The villagers educated the hunting .... about the animals which mustn't be killed.
   a) criminals b) parties c) companies d) meetings
9. When a lion's paw .... is discovered, it is a sign that a lion is close.
   a) signal b) remark c) print d) signature
10. My young brother works .... an accountant in a large company.
    a) for b) in c) out d) as
11. .... rare animals must be prohibited يُمنع to keep them alive.
    a) Eating b) Fishing c) Hunting d) Guarding
12. The course will help you develop and improve your reading and listening ....
    a) skulls b) risks c) skills d) controls
13. I told Salma that she was doing well and that she was on the right ....
    a) responsibility b) attack c) trek d) track
14. Farida was afraid when a wild dog .... her and she fell to the ground.
    a) attacked b) attached c) killed d) protected
15. Fahd is a good brother who always tries to keep his sister ....
    a) missing b) recent c) safe d) nearby

Language

16. The room .... every afternoon.
a) is cleaning b) is cleaned c) is being cleaned d) cleans

17. If I .... money, I will ask you to lend me some.
a) needed b) need c) am needing d) was needing

18. We know that plants .... energy from the sun to make their food.
a) use b) uses c) are used d) using

19. As it .... in the timetable, the meeting starts at 9 a.m.
a) is shown b) showed c) shows d) show

20. Lots of qualifications and experience .... to get a higher position in the company.
a) are needing b) need c) needed d) are needed

21. The thief .... and taken to prison yesterday.
a) is arrested b) was arresting c) was arrested d) has arrested

22. Mohamed Salah .... all over the world.
a) known b) know c) knows d) is known

23. Chess .... by millions of people all over the world currently.
a) is played b) are played c) play d) is playing

24. Hard currency .... into our country by tourists who come to enjoy our great civilisation.
a) is bringing b) is brought c) has brought d) were brought

25. I .... to go out with my friends after 10 p.m. as it's a family rule.
a) don't allow b) didn't allow
c) am not allowed d) wasn't allowed

26. If I .... tired, I will visit my doctor.
a) feels b) feel c) felt d) had felt

27. Important matters .... hastily بشكل متسرع. We should take our time.
a) aren't discussing b) don't discuss
c) aren't discussed d) are discussing

28. Never .... a liar. Ali is the most polite son.
a) he is b) is he c) does he d) he does

29. I went to hospital and had my eyes examined. It means that ....
a) I examined my eyes by myself
b) maybe I or an oculist examined my eyes
c) no one was there to examine my eyes
d) an oculist examined my eyes

30. The machines .... off by the security men at the end of the day.
a) are turning b) turn c) are turned d) aren't turning





Writing Skill

للمزيد من الشرح والتدريبات
يرجى الرجوع لملحق المهارات.

Writing tips

When we write a biography of a person we are interested in, we can follow these steps:

1. Mention his/her name, date and place of birth.
2. Write his/her job and what they are doing nowadays.
3. Write why you admire him/her (Their achievements).
4. How they helped their countries, families and people.
5. Why you think they are important.

MODEL ESSAY

Someone we are all proud of (Magdi Yacoub)

Introduction

Magdi Yacoub is one of the world's most respected heart surgeons. He was born on November 16, 1935, in Belbis, Alshraqya, Egypt. His father was a general surgeon. He inspired him to become a doctor. At the age of four, he witnessed the death of his aunt due to heart disease. Her death, in her early 20s, inspired him to specialise in heart surgery. He entered the Cairo University College of Medicine at the age of 15 on a full scholarship and graduated in 1957, qualifying as a doctor.

Main body

In 1968, he spent a year as an associate professor أستاذ مساعد at the University of Chicago. He returned to London a year later to resume his work. In 1974, he performed the first open heart surgery in Nigeria. In 1980, he performed a heart transplant on Derrick Morris, who became the longest surviving heart transplant patient. He survived for 25 years after the surgery. In 1995, he founded the UK-based children's charity 'Chain of Hope' which treats children.

Yacoub retired from his work in London hospitals in 2001. He has also devoted significant time to his charity, Chain of Hope. In 2008, he established the Magdi Yacoub Heart Foundation. The foundation was able to establish the Aswan Heart Centre in 2009 to provide free medical services for those in need.

Conclusion

Yacoub is married to Marianne, who is of German descent. They have three children. His oldest daughter, Lisa, works as the UK coordinator for Chain of Hope, while his youngest daughter is a doctor specialising in tropical medicine.



Practice more

(A) Reading Comprehension

قاموس بالكلمات الجديدة فى قطع الفهم والتراجم نهاية الكتاب

1 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

(الشرقية - إدارة القنايات)

A space station is a spacecraft that circles the earth constantly. For an astronaut, it is like a home in space. They can live there for many months. Although we all have adventurous ideas about space, living in a space station is far from easy. One of the problems that astronauts have to face in space is the problem of weightlessness. Not only do the things around the astronaut float, but the astronaut also spends all of his or her time floating in midair. The food eaten by astronauts is sticky, so it sticks to their spoons. A lot of the food is also dehydrated and placed in special packing. This way the astronaut may not receive the taste sensation given by normal food but definitely receives the same amount of required nutrients.

The astronauts on a space station work hard. They study the effects of weightlessness on themselves and on plants and animals. They are also able to alert people on earth to natural disasters such as earthquakes and hurricanes before they happen. In this way, scientists on earth can take special precautions. Space exploration becomes a new era for humans with the universe. During the time that has passed since the launching of the first artificial satellite in 1957, astronauts have travelled to the moon, probes have explored the solar system, and instruments in space have discovered thousands of planets around other stars.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The passage is about ....

a) space war
b) space and science
c) space art
d) space and poetry

2. The underlined pronoun "They" refers to ....

a) scientists
b) people
c) astronauts
d) instruments

3. People travel to space using a ....

a) spacecraft
b) balloon
c) plane
d) space station

4. The food eaten by astronauts is ....

a) sticky
b) artificial
c) starchy
d) loose

5. The word "alert" can be replaced by ....

a) suggest
b) investigate
c) prove
d) warn

6. The food in space is ....

a) tasty
b) tasteless
c) tasteful
d) delicious

7. Infer the meaning of the phrase "required nutrients". It can be ....

a) suitable healthy food
b) certain vitamins
c) fast foods
d) certain fats

2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Man cannot live in society without considering the interests of others as well as their own. The word "society" means a group of people with the same laws and the same way of life. People in society may make their own decisions, but these decisions should not be harmful to others. One man's decisions may so easily harm another person. For example, a motorist may be in a hurry to get to a friend's house. He sets out, driving at full speed. One careless motorist has struck another car. Too many road accidents happen because of the thoughtlessness of selfish drivers. We have governments, the police and the law courts to prevent or punish such criminal acts. But in addition, all men ought to observe certain rules of conduct. Every man ought to behave with consideration for other people.

They ought not to steal, cheat, or destroy the property of others. There is no place for this sort of behaviour in a civilised society. Men in a free society may think as they please. They may even choose their own government. In return for these privileges, they ought not to act selfishly. They always ought to respect the rights of others. The happiness of a community depends on the behaviour of its members.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The main idea of the passage clearly shows that ....

a) every man ought to behave as he likes
b) men ought to act selfishly
c) no one can have his own way all the time
d) many road accidents happen because of careful drivers

2. In a free society, ...

a) people usually want to have their own way
b) a man never considers the interests of others
c) people are told what to think by government rules
d) everyone ought to behave selfishly

3. It is .... to respect the rights of others.

a) right and thoughtless
b) not really necessary
c) very selfish
d) right and thoughtful

4. Members of a civilised society usually ....

a) steal and cheat
b) harm the interests of others
c) behave in a responsible way
d) disrespect the rights of others

5. The underlined word "its" refers to ....

a) happiness
b) behaviour
c) community
d) village

6. There is no place for .... in a civilised society.
a) development b) accidents c) bad behaviours d) happiness

7. To stop criminal acts and punish those who do them, we must have ....
a) governments b) the police c) law courts d) all mentioned

(B) Translation

3 (A) Choose the correct Arabic translation:

1. Many famous Egyptians are admired for their intelligence, creation and their ability to do great charity work.

a) يحظى العديد من المصريين المشاهير بالإعجاب لذكائهم وخلقهم وقدرتهم على القيام بأعمال عظيمة ومادية.

b) يحظى العديد من مشاهير المصريين بالإعجاب لذكائهم وإبداعهم وقدرتهم على القيام بأعمال خيرية عظيمة.

c) يحظى العديد من مشاهير العرب بالإعجاب لذكائهم وإبداعهم وقدرتهم على القيام بأعمال خيرية عظيمة.

d) يحظى العديد من الممثلين المصريين بالإعجاب لذكائهم وإبداعهم وقدرتهم على القيام بأعمال عظيمة وخيرية.

2. Blood donation can help many people who are in bad need of blood after accidents or who have critical cases.

a) يستطيع أن يساعد التبرع بالدم العديد من الأشخاص الذين هم فى أمس الحاجة إلى الدم بعد الحوادث أو الذين يعانون من حالات عادية.

b) لا يمكن أن يساعد التبرع بالدم العديد من الأشخاص الذين هم فى أمس الحاجة إلى الدم بعد الحوادث أو الذين يعانون من حالات حرجة.

c) التبرع بالدم يمكن أن يساعد العديد من الأشخاص الذين هم فى أمس الحاجة إلى الغذاء بعد الحوادث أو الذين يعانون من حالات حرجة.

d) يمكن أن يساعد التبرع بالدم العديد من الأشخاص الذين هم فى أمس الحاجة إلى الدم بعد الحوادث أو الذين يعانون من حالات حرجة.

3. Our parents exert great efforts to please us and provide a happy, secure life for us. We really owe much to them.

a) آباؤنا يبذلون جهودًا كبيرة لإسعادنا وتوفير بيئة سعيدة وآمنة لنا. نحن حقًا مدينون لهم بالكثير.

b) يبذل آباؤنا جهودًا عادية لإرضائنا وتوفير حياة سعيدة وآمنة لنا. نحن بالفعل دائنون لهم بالكثير.

c) يحاول آباؤنا محاولات كبيرة لإرضائنا وتوفير حياة سعيدة وآمنة لنا. نحن حقًا مدينون لهم بالقليل.

d) يبذل آباؤنا جهودًا كبيرة لإرضائنا وتوفير حياة سعيدة وآمنة لنا. نحن حقًا مدينون لهم بالكثير.

(B) Choose the correct English translation:

4. التعليم هو أساس التقدم والتنمية لشعوب ودول العالم سواء المتقدمة أو النامية.

a) Learning is the base for progress and development for the people and cities of the world, whether developed or developing.

b) Education is the basis of progress and development for the peoples and countries of the world, whether developed or developing.

c) Teaching is the basic for progress and development for the groups and countries of the world, whether developed or developing.

d) Education is the basis for applying and development for the groups and countries of the world, whether developed or developing.

5. لكى نعيش الحياة بسعادة وارتياح، هناك سبيل واحد و هو أن يتم منحنا الفرصة الحقيقية للحصول على تعليم جيد.

a) In order to live happily and comfortably, there is only one way that we are given the real opportunity to get a good education.

b) In order to live unhappily and uncomfortably, there is only one way that we are given the real opportunity to get a good education.

c) In order to live happily and comfortably, there is only one way that we are given the false opportunity to get a good education.

d) To live happy and comfortable, there is only one way that we are given the real opportunity to get a serious education.

6. إن مصر فى انتظار جهود العلماء وأهل الفكر والإبداع وتتطلع إلى أبنائها المخلصين لاتخاذ خطوات فعالة للارتقاء بالأمة.

a) Egypt is waiting for the efforts of scholars and the people of thinking and creativity, and looks forward to its loyal sons to take effective steps to advance the nation.

b) Egypt is waited for the efforts of scholars, intellectuals and creativity, and looks forward to its loyal sons to take slow steps to advance the nation.

c) That Egypt is waiting for the efforts of its sons, scholars, intellectuals and creativity, and looks forward to its loyal sons to take fast paces to advance the nation.

d) Egypt is waiting for the efforts of scholars, intellectuals and creativity, and looks forward to its loyal sons to take effective steps to advance the nation.

(C) Writing

4 Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on the following:

"A biography about Dr Leelah Hazzah."

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

I used more than 4 new vocabulary.	I used the right structure.	I used a topic sentence.	I wrote the conclusion.	I used the right punctuation.



1 Finish the following dialogue:

Basant asks her father some questions.

Basant : Hi, dad. How long have you worked at the bank?

Father : (1).. .

Basant : 10 years! (2)..?

Father : I first lived in Cairo.

Basant : (3)..?

Father : Yes, I travelled to the USA.

Basant : Has my brother travelled with you?

Father : (4).. . I went alone.

Basant : Do you like your job?

Father : Yes, I like it very much.

A Glimpse of Revelation

2 (A) Choose the correct answer:

1. Bad acts of people are because ....
   - a) they follow the rules of a true religion
   - b) they don't follow the rules of a true religion
   - c) all people are originally bad
   - d) a religion states rituals only, no morals
2. Every religion has its ....
   - a) holy places b) texts c) rituals d) all mentioned

(B) Answer the following questions:

3. What does a religion include?
4. How does a religion affect the society?

The Novel

3 (A) Choose the correct answer:

1. The investigators could finally find a .... to the murder.
   - a) clue b) crew c) glue d) lock
2. The rich man has too many .... who do everything for him at home.
   - a) servants b) pirates c) heads d) masters

(B) Answer the following:

3. How did the narrator and his mother escape death?
4. Why were the eight men eagerly searching for the papers in the box?

4 (A) Translate into Arabic:

Supporting the community can have different forms according to the abilities and the skills you have.

(B) Translate into English:

مما لا شك فيه أن الدين الصحيح يؤثر بشكل إيجابى على حياة الناس والمجتمعات.

Al-Adwaa Test

Choose the Two correct answers of the Five options:

1. There was a meeting to discuss a long-term plan. The synonyms of the word "long-term" are ....
   a) continuing b) temporary c) long-lasting d) passing e) short-lived
2. Hazem is .... painting. That's his hobby.
   a) fond of b) interested in c) careless with d) amazed at e) worried about

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

3. I don't know the reason .... his frequent absence these days.
   a) for b) with c) why d) of
4. Drivers mustn't exceed the .... limit on highways.
   a) spot b) speed c) fast d) fear
5. In our company, there are a lot of cameras to .... everything that happens.
   a) prevent b) change c) protect d) monitor
6. The player performed exotic .... after scoring the goal.
   a) appearances b) abilities c) movements d) responsibilities
7. After the accident, he needed blood .... to stay alive.
   a) transplant b) transfusion c) transplantation d) orientation
8. Omar was .... while cutting the meat.
   a) persuaded b) injured c) succeeded d) employed
9. As well as .... abroad to earn money, Said got a university degree.
   a) travel b) travelling c) travelled d) travels
10. Rowaida .... her grandmother as usual.
    a) is visited b) visiting c) was visiting d) visits
11. Yazan .... to sit down until he had apologised to the teacher.
    a) didn't allow b) isn't allowed c) wasn't allowed d) was allowed
12. Ragab came to my house and .... tea with me.
    a) had b) had had c) is having d) has
13. Salah .... the most important goal for Egypt that sent it to the World Cup Finals.
    a) scored b) was scored c) scores d) was scoring
14. Menna .... cheerful. The smile never leaves her face.
    a) is always b) always is c) isn't always d) always isn't

15. In winter, wood .... to heat people's homes in many parts of the world.

a) have been burnt b) burnt c) is burnt d) was burning

16. Yaseen doesn't stay up late any longer. This means he ....

a) used to stay up late b) didn't use to stay up late
c) usually stays up late d) is in the habit of staying up late

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Octopuses are extremely intelligent. They have even learnt a few tricks to get them out of sticky situations. For example, they are afraid of a predator. As octopuses don't have teeth or sharp claws to defend themselves, they hide in the sand on the bottom of the ocean floor. The octopus is like a chameleon because it can change the colour of its skin to match the sand.

Some octopuses like to stay in more shallow water where there are rocks and coral. However, octopuses can squeeze themselves into small spaces between the rocks to get out of reach of predators. Another way an octopus can use to hide is by shooting ink. An octopus uses a part of its body called a syphon to shoot ink into the water. The ink forms a cloud that hides the octopus. It's like a magician doing a vanishing act.

If an octopus is being attacked, it can actually make itself look like a venomous sea snake. It will bury itself in the sand, keeping two arms visible. If an octopus is in trouble, it can break off one of its arms. The arm will then change colours and squirm around the water to distract the predator while the octopus swims away to safety. Amazingly, the octopus's arm will grow back.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17. A .... is an animal that attacks and kills octopuses.

a) prey b) predator c) chameleon d) magician

18. When an octopus is in a sticky situation, that means it's ....

a) easy b) in danger
c) covered in stick d) unable to move

19. The octopus and the chameleon are similar as both ....

a) swim in the same way b) eat the same food
c) catch small fish d) can change their skin colour

20. The octopus can separate one of its arms to ....

a) distract the predator b) renew it
c) catch a prey d) lay eggs

21. The octopus can shoot ink into the water which ....

a) kills the attackers b) helps it hide from the attackers
c) pollutes the water d) attracts preys

22. Octopuses don't have teeth or sharp claws to defend themselves ....

a) so, they are eaten easily
b) however, they have other ways to keep enemies away
c) moreover, they are not brave
d) that's why they are about to extinct

23. The best title for this passage is "................".

a) The Magician Octopuses
b) The Sea World and the Predator
c) The Seabed
d) The Sea Ink

24. Choose the correct English translation:

- يحلم كل منا أن يكون مشهورًا فى يوم ما، ولكن ليس من السهل أن تكون مشهورًا؛ لأن الشهرة نتاج للعمل الجاد والصبر وأيضًا المعاناة.

a) All of us dream of being famous one day, but it is easy to be well-known; because fame is a product of hard work, patience and also suffering.
b) All of us dream of being famous one day, but it is not easy to be famous; because fame comes from hard work, patience and also suffering.
c) Every of us dreams of being famous one day, but it is not easy to be famous; because fame is a product of hard work, patient and also suffering.
d) Each of us dreams of being famous one day, but it is not easy to be infamous; because fame is a product of hard work, patience and also suffering.

25. Choose the correct Arabic translation:

- The huge development of technology turned our society into a big market in which people are competing to win and survive by all means.

a) إن التطور الضخم للهواتف الذكية حول مجتمعنا إلى سوق كبير يتنافس فيه الناس بكل الطرق ليفوزوا ويحققوا أحلامهم.
b) إن التطور الهائل للتكنولوجيا حول مجتمعنا إلى سوق كبير يتنافس فيه الناس بكل الطرق ليفوزوا وينجوا بشتى الطرق.
c) إن تطوير التكنولوجيا حول مجتمعنا إلى بورصة كبيرة يتنافس فيها الناس بكل الطرق ليفوزوا وينجوا بشتى الطرق.
d) إن التطور الهائل للتكنولوجيا ساعد مجتمعنا أن يكون سوقًا كبيرًا يتنافس فيه الناس بشتى السبل ليفوزوا ويفلحوا بكل الطرق.

26. Answer the following questions:

1. The treasure was a good attraction to get a crew for the ship easily. Do you agree? Why?
2. How do you think the blind man reacted to the Captain's death? Why?
3. Why, in your opinion, did Dr Livesey say that they were not safe anymore?

27. Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on the following:

"The role of charities in Egypt"

....

....

لمزيد من التدريبات للطلبة الفائقين
الرجوع لنهاية الكتاب ص 365

Assess your progress ★★★★★	< 50%	50 : 64%	65 : 84%	85 : 100%
	Study again	Practise more	Take more exams	Well done!

Module Test

Choose the Two correct answers of the Five options:

1. I have lost my wallet. Can you help me .... it?
   a) look for b) research for c) look after d) search for e) worry about
2. Mr Atia praised me a lot when I helped the other students. The synonyms of the word "praised" are ....
   a) criticised b) appreciated c) glorified d) condemned e) worried

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

3. We should all try our best in order not to .... our environment.
   a) predict b) save c) protect d) endanger
4. Fahd went to the beach to lie in the sun to ....
   a) sunshine b) sun power c) sunbathe d) sunbath
5. Cities are more .... than villages, so I prefer the latter.
   a) admired b) endangered c) supported d) crowded
6. I hope to travel to a .... place where I feel relaxed.
   a) peaceful b) noisy c) crowded d) dull
7. Blood .... is always high among elderly people.
   a) treasure b) stress c) pleasure d) pressure
8. Comedians are those who have a/an .... of humour and make people laugh.
   a) touch b) sense c) smell d) impact
9. It is the .... of the government to employ the fresh graduates الخريجيون الجدد.
   a) movement b) employment c) loyalty d) responsibility
10. My boss likes Mr Ahmed because he .... hard-working.
    a) is always b) always is c) is never d) never is
11. The police arrested the thief while he .... the scene of the crime.
    a) had left b) was leaving c) was left d) has left
12. Mai .... in Cairo for ten years. Later, she got married and moved to Aswan.
    a) lived b) has lived c) had been lived d) was living
13. .... the flight, I was reading a novel called "*Al-Ayam*".
    a) While b) During c) Just as d) When
14. I wish I .... a better time last year.
    a) have b) had had c) was had d) had
15. Essam used to smoke, but now he ....
    a) isn't b) doesn't c) didn't d) wasn't
16. A: Have you seen Mona lately?
    B: Yes, I .... her when I was on my way to work the other day.
    a) saw b) had seen c) have seen d) was seeing

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Millions of people are attacked by a secret enemy which causes more harm and greater suffering than any other disease. Its name is worry. According to doctors, worry can actually cause organic disease. And even when it does not, it can eat up our energy in many ways, ruin our health and make life miserable.

Worry is a very dangerous enemy. The stress and strain of life may make us worry about silly trifling things. Worry affects nearly everybody in society from teenagers to elderly people. Students worry about their exams. Parents worry about their children. Young men and women worry about their future life. Needless to say, worry is the result of thinking in a wrong way. It is a fact that thinking over worries brings about more worries. We must face life as it is boldly and bravely. The problems a worrier faces are the same that others face. To overcome worry, cultivate different interests, develop contact with a large number of persons and spend your leisure in a useful hobby. When feeling worried, retire to a quiet corner and relax.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17. The problems a worrier faces are ....

a) different from those others face
b) not the same as others face
c) similar to what others face
d) different from what teenagers face

18. The underlined pronoun "it" refers to ....

a) worry
b) life
c) a problem
d) energy

19. The teenagers are ....

a) young people up to 21 or 22 years of age
b) elderly people who suffer from worry
c) usually people who suffer from worry
d) young people who have passed their teens

20. A hobby helps you ....

a) to contact with a large number of people
b) to spend your leisure in a useless way
c) to retire to a quiet corner and relax
d) to overcome worry

21. The synonym of the word "cultivate" is ....

a) grow
b) develop
c) decrease
d) stand again

22. Worry can .... our health.

a) improve
b) destroy
c) prove
d) benefit

23. The best title for the passage is ....

a) Life difficulties
b) The interests of life
c) The cons of worry
d) How to overcome worry

24. Choose the correct English translation:

- يجب على كل طالب أن يعمل بجد ولا يضيع وقته فى الجلوس لساعات أمام التلفاز حتى يحقق كل ما يحلم به فى المستقبل.

a) Every student must work hard and waste his time sitting for minutes in front of the TV in order to achieve everything he dreams of in the future.

b) Every student must work hard and not waste their time sitting for hours in front of the TV in order to achieve everything they dream of in the future.

c) All students must work hard and not waste his time sitting for hours behind the TV in order to achieve everything they dream of in the future.

d) Every student must work hard and not waste his/her time sitting for hours in front of the TV in order to achieve everything he/she dreams of in the next.

25. Choose the correct Arabic translation:

- Without confidence or belief in your own power, you cannot achieve success or happiness.

a) بدون الثقة أو الإيمان بقوتك، يمكنك تحقيق النجاح أو السعادة.

b) بوجود الثقة أو التصديق بقوتك، لا يمكنك تحقيق النجاح أو السعادة.

c) بدون الثقة أو التصديق بقوتك، لا يمكنك تحقيق النجاح أو الفشل.

d) بدون الثقة أو الإيمان بقوتك، لا يمكنك تحقيق النجاح أو السعادة.

26. Answer the following questions:

1. Show that Jim was a good son to his mother.
2. The Captain was lucky when he fell over in the inn. Prove this.
3. From your point of view, was the Captain really quiet and relaxed? Why?

27. Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on the following:

"A review of a charity that helps the community"

....

....

....

....

....

....

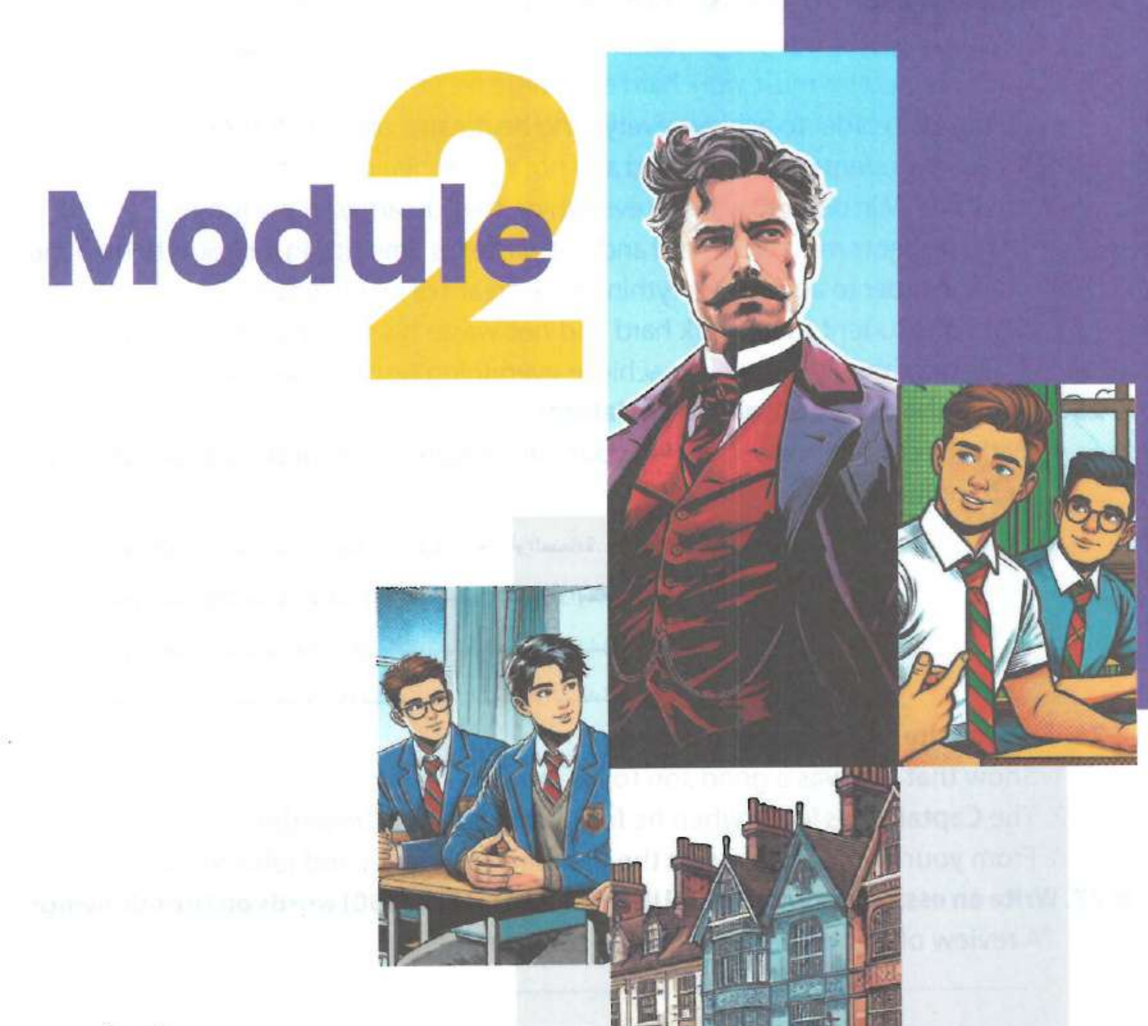
....

....

....

Assess your progress ★★★★★	< 50%	50 : 64%	65 : 84%	85 : 100%
	Study again	Practise more	Take more exams	Well done!

Module 2



Unit 3

Improving lives

Unit 4

Making new friends

Module Test

Units 3 & 4

Unit 3
Improving lives



Reading : An extract from *David Copperfield*
Writing : A paragraph on a book character; A summary of a story
Listening : A talk about the effect of Charles Dickens' books
Speaking : Discussing a topic
Language : Past simple and present perfect
Life Skills : Empathy

Study... Part 1 | Lessons 1 & 2





A Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary — المفردات الرئيسية

debts (n)	ديون	miserable (adj)	بائس	prison (n)	سجن
earn (v) – ed	يكسب (مالًا)	owe (v) – d	يدين لـ	rats (n)	فئران
merchant (n)	تاجر	plump (adj)	ممتلئ الجسم		

Vocabulary on Reading & Listening Texts — مفردات نصوص القراءة والاستماع

arrange (v) – d	يرتب	entertainment (n)	تسلية	penny (n)	بنس بريطانى (عملة نقدية)
borrow (v) – ed	يقترض/يستعير	extract (n) (v) – ed	مقتطف/يستخلص/ينزع	remove (v) – d	يزيل
break (v)	يكسر	factory (n)	مصنع	reward (n) (v) – ed	مكافأة/يكافئ
brilliant (adj)	رائع	floors (n)	طوابق	room (n)	حجرة
building (n)	مبنى	hard (adj)	شاق	spend (v)	ينفق مالًا/يقضى وقتًا
criminals (n)	مجرمون	hate (v) – d	يكره	storyteller (n)	كاتب روايات/قصّاص
deserve (v) – d	يستحق	honest (adj)	أمين	support (v) – ed	يدعم/يعول
die (v) – d	يموت	hurt (v)	يؤذى	terrible (adj)	مريع/سيئ للغاية
dirty (adj)	قذر	improve (v) -d	يحسن	theatre (n)	مسرح
discover (v) – ed	يكتشف	miser (n)	بخيل	tired (adj)	متعب
empty (adj) (v) (~~y~~) – (ied)	فارغ/فاقد الشغف/يفرغ	misery (n)	البخل/البؤس	twins (n)	توءمان
entertain (v) – ed	يسلى	parents (n)	الوالدان		

Workbook Vocabulary — مفردات كتاب التدريبات

character (n)	شخصية	lucky (adj)	سعيد الحظ	similar (adj)	مشابه
childhood (n)	مرحلة الطفولة	machines (n)	آلات	temple (n)	معبد
exactly (adv)	بالضبط	opportunity (n)	فرصة		
hide (v)	يخفى	review (v) – ed	يراجع		

Vocabulary Check point 1

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The young boy felt .... as a result of his exam's bad results.
 a) wonderful b) miserable c) adaptable d) tired
2. The police officer told the .... that he would stay in prison.
 a) assistant b) opportunity c) criminal d) theatre
3. We were all .... by a very wonderful tennis match on TV.
 a) removed b) broken c) deserved d) entertained
4. Mr Mohamed is an honest .... who buys and sells goods at good prices.
 a) customer b) merchant c) criminal d) assistant
5. You need to fill the bottle. It is ....
 a) full b) plump c) empty d) crowded
6. I think that his car is .... to mine; both are comfortable.
 a) similar b) same c) unusual d) dirty
7. Fatma went to the theatre early to be able to book us the ....
 a) buckets b) debts c) buildings d) tickets
8. The mother asked her son to .... his shoes before entering the house.
 a) remove b) break c) move d) empty
9. We need somebody who is completely .... for this job.
 a) dishonest b) miserable c) honest d) cruel
10. The company for which my wife works .... her for her great efforts.
 a) took b) rewarded c) gave d) arranged

Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions التعبيرات والمصطلحات وحروف الجر

become ill	يصبح مريضًا/يمرض	rat race	تنافس شديد	tired-looking lady	سيدة تبدو متعبة
break the law	يخالف القانون	arrange for	يرتب من أجل	find out	يكتشف
make clothes	يصنع ملابس	break the record	يحطم الرقم القياسى	give to	يعطى لـ
pay back	يرد دينًا	reward for	يكافئ على	sit with	يجلس مع
look after	يعتنى بـ	similar to	متشابه مع	spend (money) on	ينفق (نقودًا) على
owe money to	يدين بالمال لـ	die of	يموت بسبب	pay for	يدفع لـ
a problem with	مشكلة مع – فى	take ... away	يأخذ ... بعيدًا	entertain ... with	يُسلى ... بـ
buy ... from	يشترى ... من	take ... home	يأخذ ... للمنزل	know ... for	يعرف شخصًا ... بـ

Derivatives

المشتقات

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
arrange	يرتب	arranger arrangement	معِد/منظِّم ترتيب/تنظيم	arranged	معَد/منظَّم
die	يموت	death dead	موت ميت	dead deadly	ميت مميت (مسبب للموت)
earn	يكسب	earner earning	مصدر دخل/عائل عائد/دخل	earned	مُكتسب/مُستحق
hate	يكره	hate hatred	عداوة كره/بغض	hated	كريه/بغيض
imprison	يسجن	prison prisoner imprisonment	سجن سجين حبس/اعتقال	imprisonable	مستحق للسجن
improve	يحسن	improvement	تحسين	improved	محسن
--------------------------		merchant merchandise	تاجر بضائع	merchantable merchant	صالح للتجارة تجارى
--------------------------		miser misery	بخيل بخل/بؤس	miserly	بخيل/شحيح
owe	يدين	--		owing	مدين
reward	يكافئ	reward	مكافأة	rewarding unrewarded	مجز بدون مقابل

Examples

تعلم أن تستخدم ما تحفظ لاحظ الأمثلة التالية:

- Shaimaa arranges my meetings. She is the best arranger. (v) - (n)
  - There are no arrangements for today. (n)
  - I'm travelling next week; everything is arranged. (adj)
- The horse is going to die. It hasn't drunk water for a week. (v)
  - I'm not afraid of death; everyone will die one day. (n)
  - In the Faculty of Medicine, students study on dead bodies. (adj)
- I want to work to earn money. (v)
  - This shop is our only earner; I'll not sell it. (n)
  - A pound saved is a pound earned, so we should save money. (adj)

Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

Word الكلمة		Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد	
arrange	يرتب / ينظم	organise/tidy	disarrange/disorder	يبعثر
borrow	يستلف	obtain/hire	lend/return/pay	يقرض / يدفع / يرد
dirty	قذر	unclean/soiled/contaminated	clean/spotless/clear	نظيف
empty	فارغ	vacant/blank/unoccupied	full/occupied/filled	مملوء
hard	شاق / صلب	tough/solid/strong	soft/delicate	رقيق / مرهف
hate	يكره	dislike/detest/loathe	love/adore/like	يحب / يعشق
honest	أمين / مخلص	trustful/sincere/candid	dishonest/deceitful/insincere	خائن / غير أمين
miserable	بائس	unhappy/sad/depressed	cheerful/happy	سعيد / مبتهج
plump	ممتلئ الجسم	chubby/fleshy/well-fed	thin/skinny/lean	نحيف
tired	متعب	exhausted/fatigued/weary	active/lively/fresh	نشيط
terrible	فظيع	horrible/awful	terrific/nice/wonderful	جميل / رائع

Vocabulary Check point 2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I am very sad as I owe a lot of money .... many people.
a) from b) to c) by d) with

2. Shoppers complain about poor quality .... and high prices.
a) merchants b) merchandise c) merchantable d) merchant

3. The champion managed to .... his own record in the last race.
a) miss b) owe c) break d) take

4. I am not used to hating anyone whatever they do. The antonym of "hate" is "..................".
a) detest b) dislike c) enjoy d) adore

5. As I had a lot of work yesterday, I was very tired. The word "tired" is the same as "..................".
a) active b) exhausted c) lively d) happy

6. Losing all her wealth on the stock market made Miss Nadia miserable. The antonym of the word "miserable" is "..................".
a) worried b) cheerful c) depressed d) unhappy

7. Tourism is the most important .... of hard currency for Egypt.

a) earner b) earning c) earned d) earn

8. My father died .... lung cancer as a result of heavy smoking.

a) with b) out c) of d) by

9. It is hard to work and look .... children at the same time.

a) after b) up c) for d) around

10. The floor was dirty and looked bad. The synonym of the word "dirty" is "..................".

a) wide b) clear c) spotless d) unclean

Reading Text

David Copperfield

'This is Mr Quinion, David,' Mr Murdstone said. 'You're going to work for him at Murdstone and Grinby, the bottle merchants, in London. You'll earn enough money to pay for your food, and I've arranged a place for you to live.'

I was ten years old and I was going to go to work. And it was hard work. I went to a dirty old house near the river where rats lived under the floors. There my job was to wash empty bottles with three other boys, and I hated it.

One morning, a plump man came to see me with Mr Quinion.

'Ah, Master Copperfield!' the man said 'This is Mr Micawber,' Mr Quinion told me. 'You will be living at his house.'

And that evening, Mr Micawber took me home(1). His wife – a thin, tired-looking lady – was sitting with a baby. The baby was one of twins, and they had a boy of four and a girl of three(2).

I soon discovered that the Micawbers were poor and that Mr Micawber owed money to several people. One morning the police came and took Mr Micawber away to prison because of his debts(3). I went to see him there the next Sunday.

'If a man earns twenty pounds a year and spends nineteen pounds, he'll be happy,' he said. 'But if he spends twenty pounds and a penny, he'll be miserable.'

Notes on some sentences: ملاحظات على بعض الجمل:

١- كلمة home لا تأخذ حرف جر مع الأفعال ... return - get - go - come - reach - arrive - take - be.

٢- عند تحديد العمر نستخدم of مع السن of four = aged four.

٣- because of بمعنى بسبب ويأتي بعدها اسم، أما because بمعنى لأن ويأتي بعدها جملة.





Charles Dickens

Today millions of people know Charles Dickens for the brilliant books that he wrote. He was a great storyteller. But Dickens didn't only want to entertain people with his books, he also wanted to change their opinions about the world they lived in(1). He hoped his readers would then do(2) something to make the world a better place.

Dickens was most interested in helping poor children because of his own difficult childhood. When he was 12 years old, Charles' father was sent to prison. Like David Copperfield, he had to leave school and work to support his family instead. The Poor Law of 1834 removed support for most poor people so their lives were hard. When he wrote *David Copperfield* between 1849 and 1850, Dickens wanted to show us that not all poor people were bad. Like his father, Mr Micawber went to prison because he had no money but after he left prison(3), he wanted to help David because he was a good man. In Dickens' books, people who worked hard were also often rewarded. For example, at the end of the book, David Copperfield becomes a successful writer(4).

Dickens also wanted to say that rich people needed to do something to help the poor. In *David Copperfield*, a man called Mr Wickfield helps David by giving him a room. Dickens thought that people like Mr Wickfield were honest and good and deserved to be rewarded. Other people in the book, on the other hand, were bad and had an unhappy end.



Notes on some sentences: ملاحظات على بعض الجمل:

١- الجملة هنا أصلها the world which they lived in ويمكن حذف which لوجود فاعل بعدها.

٢- لاحظ أن مع وجود hoped بعدها فاعل نستخدم .would + inf أما إذا كانت فى المضارع نستخدم .will + inf

٣- الرابط after يأتى بعده ماضٍ بسيط أو ماضٍ تام والحدث الآخر يكون ماضيًا بسيطًا.

٤- استخدام المضارع البسيط فى سرد أحداث القصة.

Workbook Text

David Copperfield and Children in the 1800s

The book character David Copperfield went to work when he was ten years old. In the 1800s[1], it was not unusual for children to work at this age in England. Poor parents did not have the money to send their children to school. They often needed their children to earn money or they could not pay their debts. Factories liked to have children working for[2] them because they did not need to pay them as much as they paid adults. The children could also do some things the adults could not do. For example, they were small so they could go under machines when they broke. The children were often miserable. They worked very long hours and most of them had no opportunity to improve their lives. However, some children learned a skill when they worked. They were the lucky ones, as these new skills helped them to get better jobs when they were older.



Notes on some sentences: ملاحظات على بعض الجمل:

١- لاحظ هذا التعبير وهو وضع حرف s بجانب العام ويرمز لفترة ١٠ سنوات.

٢- لاحظ هذا التعبير v-ing + شخص + have بمعنى لديه شخص يقوم بـ.

Notes on Vocabulary

لاحظ الفرق بين الكلمات التالية:

1	**work** – عمل/مكان العمل (اسم لا يعد) – عمل هندسى أو فنى أو أدبى (اسم يعد)	- I've got so much work to do. - Dickens' works reflect the suffering of poor people.
	job وظيفة/مهنة (اسم يعد)	When she left college, Wafaa got a job as an editor.
	career الحياة العملية أو المهنية للفرد	She manages to successfully combine family life and a career.
	profession مهنة (المهنة بوجه عام)	He left the teaching profession in 1965 to start his own business.
2	**miss** تفوته مواصلات/يفتقد شخصًا	- Soliman missed the train as he got up late. - I missed my uncle very much.
	lose يخسر/يفقد شيئًا/شخصًا	Our national team lost the last match.

3	machine	ماكينة/آلة	The factory bought a new machine to increase its production.
	tool	أداة يدوية	The carpenter uses a lot of tools such as a hammer.
	instrument	أدوات (قياس/طبيب/موسيقية)	The piano is my favourite musical instrument.
4	pay	مرتب/أجر/يدفع	It is not a good job, but the pay is good.
	wage	أجر يومى أو أسبوعى	His wage is 200 pounds a day.
	salary	أجر شهرى (غالبًا من شركة أو مؤسسة)	The salaries of the government are not enough.
	fee	أتعاب/رسوم	Lawyers' fees have become sky-high nowadays.
5	a room	حجرة	I phoned to book a room in the hotel.
	room	مكان/فراغ/متسع - (اسم لا يعد)	The table takes up too much room.
6	win	يفوز/يكسب - (مكانة/شيئًا)	- The team is training well hoping to win the next match. - Working hard will win them a place in the finals.
	beat	يهزم/يتغلب على (شخص أو فريق)	I always beat you in chess.
	gain	يكتسب/يحصل على شىء معنوى مفيد (خبرة - معرفة - معلومات - شهرة - الوزن - السرعة)	I gained a lot of weight while I was on holiday.
	earn	يكسب (قوتًا أو رزقًا) مقابل عمل	How much do you earn, if you don't mind me asking?
7	hard (adj)	صعب/خشن/نشيط أو حماسى	- You'll have to make some hard decisions to solve this problem. - After months without rain, the ground was too hard to plough. - Success in sports requires hard work and a great deal of determination.
	hard (adv)	بجد	She has worked hard all her life and has become a great person.
	hardly (adv)	بالكاد (تفيد النفى)	I hardly know your friend. I met him only once.

8	the poor = poor people الفقراء the + adj. = adj. + noun	- Poor people should have a stable earner to support their families. - The poor need our support.

Vocabulary Check point 3

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Farid always .... anyone at chess. He is brilliant at it.
   a) wins b) beats c) gains d) earns
2. To achieve your goals, you have to be patient and ....
   a) work hard b) hard work
   c) work hardly d) hardly work
3. During exams, there is no .... for mistakes to get the full marks.
   a) a room b) rooms c) room d) rooming
4. The .... of private schools are sky high for most people nowadays.
   a) wages b) fees c) salaries d) pays
5. Many young people now dream of a successful .... in politics.
   a) work b) location c) career d) machine
6. The violin is my favourite musical ....
   a) tool b) machine c) gadget d) instrument
7. My monthly .... is paid directly into my bank account.
   a) wage b) salary c) fees d) fare
8. My father .... his living by working as an engineer.
   a) gains b) wins c) earns d) beats
9. Maysa has to .... home before 2 p.m. to make lunch.
   a) return to b) get to
   c) arrive to d) go
10. A: I want to photocopy these sheets. B: This stationer's مكتبة has a copying ....
   a) machine b) tool
   c) instrument d) machinery



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Key Vocabulary, Reading, Listening & Workbook

1. Those who are in heavy .... are always worried about their future.
   a) theatres b) advances c) profits d) debts
2. It is .... working in such a bad and unfriendly atmosphere.
   a) wonderful b) miserable c) adaptable d) tired
3. The businessman's bodyguard stole a lot of money, so he was sent to .... for 10 years.
   a) person b) prison c) imprisonment d) court
4. The secretary will phone the clients to .... a meeting.
   a) make b) arrange c) destroy d) owe
5. The oil which is .... from olives is used for cooking.
   a) extracted b) rewarded c) plumped d) removed
6. My uncle is a famous cotton .... who trades with a lot of multi-national companies.
   a) doctor b) mechanic c) driver d) merchant
7. Some young men were arrested and taken to prison for .... the law.
   a) breaking b) making c) obeying d) removing
8. Working for about 15 hours without a break makes anyone ....
   a) relaxed b) calm c) tired d) tiring
9. Hams and Hana are identical .... They are very alike.
   a) twins b) adults c) twice d) tunes
10. Giving young children .... when they behave well is a good thing.
   a) awards b) rewards c) tickets d) penalties
11. I like babies with .... cheeks. They look cute.
   a) giant b) tiny c) pump d) plump
12. Those who .... more than they earn should learn how to manage their expenses نفقات.
   a) pass b) spend c) work d) save
13. I consider myself a .... man to have such a good family.
   a) tired b) funny c) tricky d) lucky
14. All neighbours decided to .... Mr Gamal from the WhatsApp group because he's rude.
   a) support b) approve c) remove d) reward
15. The poor young man was sent to prison as he .... a lot of money to the bank.
   a) won b) gained c) earned d) owed
16. Abdulrahman always .... us with many jokes all evening.
   a) entertains b) trains c) removes d) depresses

17. Mostafa is hardworking, but he is not very ....
- a) dirty
- b) brilliant
- c) miser
- d) stupid

18. Polio شلل الأطفال is a disease that can occur in ....
- a) childhood
- b) entertainment
- c) removal
- d) debts

19. Most respected companies always look for .... employees to work for them.
- a) miser
- b) empty
- c) honest
- d) dishonest

20. The .... have a safety device which switches the power off if there is a fault.
- a) tools
- b) instruments
- c) machines
- d) wires

21. Those who commit terrible crimes .... to be punished severely.
- a) remove
- b) deserve
- c) reserve
- d) serve

22. When the .... came for Salah to score a goal, he was ready.
- a) offer
- b) community
- c) property
- d) opportunity

23. I asked my manager for a .... rise or I will resign.
- a) price
- b) fee
- c) pay
- d) bay

24. Charles Dickens was a great .... who wrote many novels and books.
- a) poet
- b) doctor
- c) storyteller
- d) musician

25. Korean people never feel ....; there are lots of hobbies in their lives.
- a) empty
- b) wonderful
- c) arranged
- d) rewarding

26. I .... our old days when we sat at the sea chatting till dawn.
- a) lose
- b) long
- c) suppose
- d) miss

27. Dr Habiba finds her work with disabled people very .... She likes it very much.
- a) awards
- b) comments
- c) rewarding
- d) rewards

28. The workers' .... are paid every Thursday in this company.
- a) meals
- b) fees
- c) salaries
- d) wages

Expressions, Idioms, Prepositions, Derivatives, Synonyms & Antonyms

29. To be successful, you should try not to have problems .... other people.
- a) at
- b) for
- c) about
- d) with

30. Yaseen looked very tired after finishing his hard work. It means that he was a ....
- a) tiring-looking man
- b) looking-tired man
- c) tired-looking man
- d) tired-looked man

31. The team's victory today has .... them a place in the final.
- a) reached
- b) gained
- c) won
- d) taken

32. Kareem is a .... He has no desire to spend money even on his children.
- a) miserable
- b) misery
- c) miser
- d) miserly

33. The thief was sentenced حكم عليه to 5 years' ....
- a) imprison
- b) imprisonment
- c) prison
- d) imprisonable

34. There was an expression of pain and .... on his face.
- a) miserable
- b) misery
- c) miser
- d) missing

35. Messi is known .... his intelligence in playing football.
a) with b) at c) for d) from

36. Mothers are the best to look .... their families.
a) after b) up c) for d) into

37. Nowadays, everyone is rushing to be better or more successful than everyone else. That is what we call ....
a) break the law b) pay back c) break through d) rat race

38. We should fight greedy .... who raise prices illegally. Longman
a) buyers b) shoppers c) customers d) merchants

39. I helped a .... -looking lady cross the street. Longman
a) tire b) tried c) tired d) tiring

40. He is a ....; he refuses to give his sons money, even for the basic requirements. Longman
a) miser b) winner c) generous man d) wise person

41. We should .... the quality of our local products so they can be exported in large numbers. Longman
a) rise b) arise c) improve d) remove

42. Actors and actresses often .... a lot of money. (سوهاج - أخميم)
a) gain b) do c) earn d) beat

43. They have denied that they .... money to the company. (العمرانية - الجيزة)
a) owe b) own c) pay d) borrow

44. My friend worked harder to earn more money and pay his .... (أسيوط)
a) dates b) debts c) doubts d) drops

Choose the TWO (2) correct answers of the FIVE (5) options:

45. The place was terrible. 'Terrible' is an antonym for "..................". Longman
a) bad b) terrific c) awful d) huge e) wonderful

46. Many young men .... money from tourism, so we have to encourage tourists to come to Egypt.
a) earn b) do c) make d) gain e) win

47. Can I borrow your car for the weekend? The antonyms of the word "borrow" are "..................".
a) dislike b) lend c) disorder d) organise e) return

48. .... should be helped by all people in society, especially the government.
a) Disabled b) The disabled c) Disabled people
d) The disabled people e) Disability

49. I asked my father to go out with me, but he was very tired. The adjective "tired" gives the same meaning as ....
a) active b) fresh c) weary d) lively e) exhausted



Past simple and present perfect الماضى البسيط والمضارع التام

The Past Simple Tense زمن الماضى البسيط — تم شرحه فى الوحدة الأولى

The Present Perfect Tense زمن المضارع التام

The present perfect tense is used to express: يستخدم زمن المضارع التام للتعبير عن:

Repeated actions in the past - often with quantity words.

- I have eaten three sandwiches.



Duration - from past to now.

- I have lived here since 2000.



FORM التكوين

Affirmative الإثبات	فى صيغة الإثبات استخدم: Subject فاعل + (have/has) + P.P. التصريف الثالث للفعل He/She/It + has + P.P. • He has painted the house. I/They/We/You + have + P.P. • They have painted the house.
Negative النفى	أما فى النفى استخدم: He/She/It + hasn't + P.P. • He hasn't painted the house. I/They/We/You + haven't + P.P. • They haven't painted the house.
Question السؤال	وفى حالة السؤال استخدم: Has/Have + subject + P.P.? • Has he painted the house? • Have they painted the house? Wh- word + has/have + subject + P.P.? • How long have they painted the house?
Passive المبنى للمجهول	وفى صيغة المبنى للمجهول استخدم: Obj. + has/have + been + P.P. • The house has been painted.

Key words الكلمات الدالة

Expression التعبير	Usage الاستخدام	Examples
already بالفعل	تستخدم بين (has/have) & P.P. أو فى نهاية الجملة	I have already passed my driving test. I have passed the driving test already.
just حالًا/توًا	تستخدم بين (has/have) & P.P.	He has just finished studying his English lessons.
ever من قبل	تستخدم للسؤال عن التجارب الشخصية السابقة وبعد صيغة التفضيل ومع الجمل المنفية بـ not	Have you ever met Mohamed Salah? It is the most difficult question I have ever answered. I haven't ever eaten Chinese food.
never أبدًا/مطلقًا	تستخدم للنفى وفى جمل المقارنة وتأتى بين (has/have) & P.P.	I have never played squash before. I have never seen a player faster than Ronaldo.
yet حتى الآن	تستخدم فى النفى أو الاستفهام وتستخدم بين (has/have) & P.P. أو فى نهاية الجملة /وتأتى فى نهاية السؤال	She hasn't revised her lessons yet. Amr hasn't yet sent the files. Has she finished cooking the food yet?
lately/recently حديثًا/مؤخرًا	تستخدم فى الإثبات والاستفهام وغالبًا ما تستخدم lately فى النفى.	He has sent me a letter lately/recently. Have you heard from Noha lately/recently? I haven't been sleeping well lately.
so far/ up till now حتى الآن	تستخدم فى الإثبات والنفى	She hasn't had any problems so far. I have sent my brother three letters up till now.
over ... / throughout ... على مر/ مدار	يأتى بعدها مدة زمنية	Egypt has changed over the last years. She has improved her English throughout the years.
How long منذ متى	تستخدم فى الاستفهام	How long has he had that car?
in the last .../ in recent ... فى ... الأخيرة	يأتى بعدها مدة زمنية	Education has developed a lot in the last 5 years.
for لمدة	يأتى بعدها مدة زمنية	I have lived in Alexandria for 10 years.
since منذ	يأتى بعدها بداية الفترة الزمنية	She has worked as a nurse since 2010.

تستخدم since/for مع تعبيرات مختلفة، لاحظ التالى:

Since	For
4 o'clock	6 hours
2000	3 years
yesterday	a/several/many/ 10 (week/month/year)
last (week/month/year)	
April/May/August	the last (week/month/year)
Monday/Friday	ages
then	a long time/a short time
spring/winter/summer	a while/a decade/a century
his arrival/childhood/birth (عبارة اسمية)	as long as ... can remember
the age of	long
the 1970s (الحقب الزمنية)	

Examples

- I have started to study English since 1995/for 28 years.
- She has been taught how to swim since last year/for the last year/for a year.
- My brother Osama has worked in tourism since his graduation.

USAGE الاستخدام

1 **For actions that started in the past and continue till now.**
للتعبير عن أحداث بدأت فى الماضى وما زالت مستمرة.
- Manar has lived in Alexandria since she was a child.

2 **For actions which have happened very recently or finished and there is an effect on the present.**
للتعبير عن أحداث تمت حديثًا أو انتهت منذ فترة وتترك أثرًا.
- I have just finished reading the novel by Charles Dickens.
- He can't play the match because he has broken his leg.

3 **For actions that happened in the past without mentioning the time.**
للأحداث التى تمت فى الماضى دون تحديد وقت حدوثها.
- My wife has polished her shoes.

لاحظ: فى حالة تحديد وقت حدوثه نستخدم الماضى البسيط.
- My wife polished her shoes yesterday.

4 **For questions and answers about people's experiences.**
للأسئلة والإجابات عن التجارب الشخصية للأفراد.
- Have you ever been to Aswan? – No, I've never been there.

Language Check point 4

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I haven't received a reply to my email ....
   a) already   b) yet   c) just   d) for
2. We haven't had ice cream .... ages.
   a) since   b) for   c) yet   d) ago
3. We .... from Ibrahim since 2010.
   a) didn't hear   b) hadn't heard
   c) haven't heard   d) don't hear
4. Oh! I .... my passport. What should I do?
   a) lose   b) had lost
   c) have lost   d) have been lost
5. For centuries, the wind .... to sail ships.
   a) were used   b) is used
   c) has been used   d) has used





ملاحظات هامة على المضارع التام:

1 – إذا جاء مع (since) فعل واحد فى الجملة يوضع فى زمن المضارع التام البسيط أو المستمر.

(مضارع تام) → since → (بداية الفترة الزمنية)

My daughter hasn't slept well since **yesterday**.

Since → (بداية الفترة الزمنية) → (مضارع تام)

Since **yesterday**, my daughter hasn't slept well.

– أما إذا جاء مع (since) فعلين ... أى ربطت بين جملتين تصبح القاعدة كالآتى:

(مضارع تام) → since → (ماضٍ بسيط)

We **haven't seen** him since he **was** in Alexandria.

Since → (ماضٍ بسيط) → (مضارع تام)

Since he **was** in Alexandria, we **haven't seen** him.



2 تستخدم (yet) للتعبير عن نفى حدوث الفعل حتى ذلك الحين مع توقع حدوثه لاحقًا.

- I haven't eaten at a Chinese restaurant yet. (I expect to do it later).

أما عند استخدام (never) فهى تعبر عن نفى حدوث الفعل حتى ذلك الحين مع عدم توقع حدوثه لاحقًا.

- I have never eaten at a Chinese restaurant. (I don't expect to do it later).

3 من الممكن استخدام (already) فى السؤال للتعبير عن الدهشة.

- Have you finished cooking the food already? How fast!

4 لاحظ التعبيرات التالية:

for the last + مدة زمنية , since last + مدة زمنية

- I haven't met my colleagues for the last week.
- I haven't met my colleagues since last week.

لاحظ الجملة التالية:

- I haven't met my colleagues since the last meeting.

5 لاحظ التعبيرات التالية:

(has/have) been to + (place) ذهب إلى مكان وعاد

- He has been to London. (He came back.)

(has/have) gone to + (place) ذهب إلى مكان ولم يعد

- He has gone to London. (He is still there.)

(has/have) been in + (place) يمكث فى مكان

- He has been in London. (He is living there.)

Language Check point 5

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Since Mostafa ...., he hasn't found work anywhere.
   a) graduated b) has graduated c) has been graduated d) was graduated
2. Yara hasn't gone to school .... the last two weeks.
   a) since b) for c) when d) on
3. Have you done the experiment ....? You are really clever.
   a) yet b) already c) ago d) since
4. They .... the cinema. They are at home now.
   a) have been to b) have gone to c) were gone d) has been to
5. Have you .... watched a Korean film?
   a) never b) still c) yet d) ever



جدول الأفعال غير المنتظمة نهاية الكتاب

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I haven't met my friends .... a long time.
a) for b) until c) when d) since

2. I haven't met my friend since he .... abroad a year ago.
a) travelled b) had travelled
c) has travelled d) travels

3. Scientists .... ways to isolate genes already.
a) will develop b) have developed
c) had developed d) has developed

4. The team .... the report yet, but they will try to finish it soon.
a) have finished b) haven't finished
c) finished d) can't finish

5. My keys .... I can't open the door.
a) are losing b) have lost
c) have been lost d) were being lost

6. This is the most interesting book I ....
a) have never read b) read
c) ever have read d) have ever read

7. I .... the book you were looking for. Here it is.
a) find b) will find c) was finding d) have found

8. A: Would you like something to drink? B: No, thanks. I .... some lemonade.
a) just had b) am just having
c) have just had d) had just

9. My old car .... for sale on OLX for two months.
a) is offered b) has offered
c) has been offered d) was offering

10. My sister is shocked. She .... the game in the last second.
a) 's losing b) 's lost c) 'd lost d) 'd lose

11. A: Where is Ali? B: He...................... just now.
a) has left b) left c) had left d) was leaving

12. .... the last two weeks, we have prepared for our graduation party.
a) Since b) At c) For d) While

13. She has been in Damanhour .... the day of her arrival from Upper Egypt.

a) for b) yet c) already d) since

14. I moved to Cairo. Since then, I .... my friends.

a) haven't seen b) hasn't seen c) saw d) hadn't seen

15. .... I started my profession, I have met a lot of excellent students.

a) When b) Since c) After d) Before

16. Mourad .... to his village. He is still there.

a) had been b) has gone c) has been d) had gone

17. Mohamed is the most intelligent child I have .... seen.

a) never b) lately c) ever d) yet

18. A: Have you seen the new film? B: Sure, I .... it yesterday. I can't miss such a good one.

a) see b) 've seen c) 'd see d) saw

19. I have visited my uncle ....

a) three times ago b) three times last week

c) three times this week d) yesterday

20. Mum .... to the shops. Let's see what she bought for us.

a) is being b) is going c) has gone d) has been

21. Your car .... It's ready to use now.

a) has already repaired b) was being repaired

c) hasn't been repaired yet d) has already been repaired

22. We ate a lot yesterday, but we .... much so far today.

a) have eaten b) haven't eaten c) didn't eat d) hadn't eaten

23. The ceiling السقف was white, and now it is yellow. Someone .... it.

a) had painted b) has been painted

c) has painted d) had been painting

24. Ola was in Marina for the summer. This means that ....

a) she spent every summer in Marina

b) she spends this summer in Marina

c) she spent part of the summer in Marina

d) she spent all the summer in Marina

25. My father has gone to England for two years. This means that he ....

a) is in England now b) is back now

c) will be back soon d) won't go there

26. My uncle has been to Paris. This means ....

a) he is coming back tomorrow
b) he is still in Paris
c) he has returned from Paris
d) he will stay there for a long time

27. .... typed yet? Longman

a) Had the report been
b) Has the report been
c) Has the report
d) Had the report

28. I am over the moon; I .... a medal for writing poetry. Longman

a) was winning
b) won
c) had won
d) have won

29. What .... is still a secret; you needn't worry. Longman

a) has been said
b) has said
c) have you said
d) had been said

30. Hatim .... a taxi driver for 10 years; he hasn't changed his career. Longman

a) had been
b) is
c) was
d) has been

31. I haven't met my uncle .... he moved to a new city. (الجيزة - إدارة الدقي)

a) for
b) yet
c) ago
d) since

32. Wonderful! Have you completed the report ....? (البحيرة - إدارة دمنهور)

a) already
b) yet
c) ago
d) yesterday

33. I lived in Ashmoun in 2015. This means that I .... there since 2015. (المنوفية - إدارة أشمون)

a) lived
b) have lived
c) haven't lived
d) didn't live

34. A: Has the road been paved? B: Yes, it .... last week. (البحيرة - إدارة المحمودية)

a) paved
b) was paved
c) has been paved
d) has paved

35. I haven't seen Aya .... the last time we met in Cairo. (البحيرة - إدارة أبو المطامير)

a) for
b) since
c) ago
d) which



Take a test

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Vocabulary

1. All he needs is a/an .... to show his ability.
   a) opportunity b) solution c) admittance d) necessity
2. I asked my mother to try to .... the dirt from my clothes.
   a) reward b) entertain c) support d) remove
3. We were very .... with the good weather on our holiday. It was so good.
   a) unlucky b) dirty c) tired d) lucky
4. We must stop those who do .... acts by sending them to prison.
   a) expected b) moral c) legal d) criminal
5. How much is the entrance .... of the Egyptian Museum?
   a) wage b) fee c) salary d) pay
6. The gang was arrested for carrying and trading in .... weapons.
   a) deadly b) dead c) dying d) die
7. After losing her job a year ago, she got in .... to be able to support her family.
   a) debate b) debt c) profit d) date
8. The play that I attended in the .... was one of the best plays ever.
   a) cinema b) stadium c) television d) theatre
9. Luxor and Aswan are our great historic cities where we can see many ancient .... and tombs.
   a) villas b) temples c) cinemas d) factories
10. A famous footballer .... a lot of poor families and buys them all their needs.
    a) supports b) gains c) earns d) owes
11. I admire most of the .... of our great writer Naguib Mahfouz.
    a) work b) jobs c) careers d) works
12. A person who is .... is slightly fat in a nice way.
    a) thin b) overweight c) plump d) obese
13. The words "earn" and "lose" are ....
    a) adverbs b) adjectives c) synonyms d) antonyms
14. We need to fill in all the gaps in the window. There are lots of .... in this area.
    a) rats b) debts c) merchants d) prisons
15. The dentist decided to .... my tooth which was totally decayed.
    a) distract b) track c) trek d) extract

Language

16. Adam has lived in his village since he ....

a) retired b) was retiring c) has retired d) had retired

17. Have you done your work alone ....? I can't believe it!

a) yet b) already c) ever d) just

18. This is the best story I .... read all my life.

a) still have b) had ever c) have never d) have ever

19. I don't think the food .... cooked yet.

a) has been b) had been c) has d) will be

20. This is the third time my Facebook account .... this year.

a) has hacked b) was hacked
c) was hacking d) has been hacked

21. Saad Zaghloul .... into exile المنفى twice.

a) has sent b) was sent c) will send d) sent

22. .... The boss needs it urgently.

a) Had the report been printed?
b) Has the report already printed?
c) Will the report be printed?
d) Has the report been printed yet?

23. There has been a traffic jam in the square .... two hours.

a) since b) for c) yet d) ago

24. I have studied English .... the age of six.

a) since b) for c) yet d) ago

25. Ashraf .... much weight recently.

a) gained b) has gained c) is gained d) gains

26. Mona has bought that car since she .... to learn how to drive.

a) starts b) had started c) will start d) started

27. A: Have you ever visited the Pyramids? B: Yes, I .... there last year.

a) have gone b) have been c) went d) had gone

28. A: Where is your father? B: He .... to the supermarket.

a) has gone b) has been c) was d) had gone

29. Ahmed has .... to many countries, but he hasn't visited England yet.

a) been b) gone c) visited d) went

30. I haven't seen you for a long time, Ali. Where have you ....?

a) been b) had gone c) been being d) gone





Key Vocabulary — المفردات الرئيسية

community (n) مجتمع	food bank (n) بنك الطعام	youth association (n) جمعية (اتحاد) شباب
culture (n) ثقافة	voluntary work (n) عمل تطوعى	

Vocabulary on Listening Text — مفردات نص الاستماع

emotional connection رابط عاطفى	plan (n) (v) – ned خطة /يخطط	solution (n) حل
main (adj) رئيسى	planning (n) التخطيط	surprise (n) (v) – d مفاجأة/يفاجئ
paint (n) (v) – ed دهان/يرسم/يدهن	solve (v) – d يحل	touch (v) – ed يلمس

Workbook Vocabulary — مفردات كتاب التدريبات

admit (v) – ted يعترف	dreamer (n) حالم	nowhere (adv) لا مكان
adult (n)/(adj) شخص بالغ	the Egyptian Red Crescent الهلال الأحمر المصرى	reader (n) كتاب قراءة/قارئ
around (adv) حول	experience (v) – d (n) يجرب/خبرة	stepfather (n) زوج الأم
break (v)/(n) يكسر/راحة	grow up (v) ينضج	trick (n) (v) – ed خدعة/يخدع
common (adj) معتاد/شائع	later (adv) فيما بعد	trust (v) – ed يثق
disabled (n) معاق	marry (v) ~~(y)~~ -ied يتزوج	unusual (adj) غير معتاد

Vocabulary Check point 1

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The police are still trying to .... the crime.
a) answer b) solve c) touch d) remove

2. This wonderful picture was .... by a local Egyptian artist.
a) painted b) grown up c) broken d) planted

3. Most young people believe in serving their local ....
a) bank b) country c) solution d) community

4. Zainab tried to .... the man who robbed her.
a) return b) volunteer c) describe d) plan

5. To .... your mistakes is the first step to be successful later.
a) deny b) trick c) admire d) admit

6. There are a lot of different .... in Egypt because it's visited by many people from all over the world.
a) solutions b) cultures c) debates d) lectures

7. When we know that a person is a liar, we can't .... a word they say.
a) trust b) break c) experience d) paint

8. The thieves could get into the house by a ....
a) surprise b) disability c) trick d) track

9. Both children and .... can watch this film as it is suitable for all ages.
a) babies b) grown c) cultures d) adults

10. Since her retirement from the company, she has done .... work for a charity.
a) cultural b) voluntary c) admitted d) disabled

Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions — التعبيرات والمصطلحات وحروف الجر

as much as	بقدرما	put ... into	يضع ... فى	write down	يدون
do a great job	يقوم بعمل عظيم	make a difference	يصنع اختلافًا	married to	متزوج من
do work for	يقوم بعمل من أجل	send ... to	يرسل إلى	make suggestions	يقدم اقتراحات
give ... back to	يرد ... إلى	play a trick on	يخدع	go wrong	يخطئ/يسوء
most of ...	معظم	stop ... from	يوقف ... من	tell a story	يروى قصة
return to	يعود إلى	unusual for	غير معتاد لـ	(something) in common	(شيء) مشترك

Derivatives — المشتقات

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
admit	يعترف	admission	اعتراف/إقرار	admissible	مسموح/مقبول
--------------------------		culture	ثقافة	cultural cultured	ثقافى مثقف/متحضر
dream	يحلم	dream dreamer	حلم شخص حالم	dreamy	حالم/غامض/كثير الأحلام
disable	يُعجِّز	disability	إعاقة	disabled	ذو احتياجات خاصة

associate	يرتبط/يتحد	association	اتحاد/منظمة	associated	مترابط
volunteer	يتطوع	volunteer	متطوع	voluntary	تطوعى
trick	يخدع/يحتال	trick trickery trickster	خدعة مراوغة/تحايل مخادع/محتال	tricky/trick	مخادع

Examples

تعلم أن تستخدم ما تحفظ، لاحظ الأمثلة التالية:

- The spy جاسوس doesn't want to admit getting information. (v)
- The admission of the spy will spoil يفسد the relationship between the two countries. (n)
- All your reasons are admissible and the case القضية has been delayed تأجلت. (adj)
- History is part of the culture of countries. (n)
- Dr Mohamed is a cultured person; he reads a lot. (adj)
- Cultural activities help the young generation know about their traditions. (adj)
- We can't associate the high quality with brands only. (v)
- Losing weight is associated with doing exercise. (adj)
- The youth association asks for our rights. (n)

Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	الكلمة	Synonym المرادف	Antonym	المضاد
admit	يعترف	confess/acknowledge	deny/renounce	ينكر
culture	ثقافة	civilisation/art	ignorance	جهل
lucky	محظوظ	fortunate	unlucky/unfortunate	غير محظوظ
main	رئيسى/أساسى	major/essential	minor/trivial	غير هام/تافه
trust	يثق	believe/place confidence in	doubt/disbelieve	يشك/لا يصدق
unusual	غير معتاد	uncommon/unconventional	usual/conventional/common	معتاد
voluntary	تطوعى	willing/free	involuntary/unwilling	غير تطوعى

Vocabulary Check point 2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Professor Yacoub has made a .... to our people's lives.
   a) different b) differentiate c) difference d) differently
2. Tom was born with a/an ...., but his parents could help him.
   a) disable b) disabled c) ability d) disability
3. The students are asked to write .... what the teacher says.
   a) out b) down c) into d) up
4. I was very lucky to win the final match and get the prize. The synonym of "lucky" is "....................".
   a) unwilling b) fortunate c) doubt d) unlucky
5. I don't respect those who .... tricks on their friends or other people.
   a) give b) take c) play d) have
6. My son has .... a great job when he came first in the final exams.
   a) done b) made c) taken d) won
7. Collect the stones from the rice as .... you can.
   a) much so b) much as c) much d) good as
8. The gang عصابة admitted breaking into the bank. The antonym of "admit" is "....................".
   a) deny b) confess c) trust d) acknowledge
9. I was prepared to take on يقبل بـ the job with all its .... troubles.
   a) associate b) association c) associated d) associates
10. A lot of our work .... wrong as a result of carelessness.
    a) took b) went c) made d) had

Listening Text



The Structure of a Short Story

Let's talk about how to write a great short story. It's important to plan your story. It should have four parts. At the start, we find out when and where the story is happening and we meet the main character. Don't spend too much time describing[1] places and people – your characters need to do something from the start.

In the second part of the story, the main character has a problem or something goes wrong. It's a good idea to have two or more problems. After that, the problem or problems are solved and everything is OK again. In this third part of the story, there should be a surprise for the reader. Finally, we find out what the characters do next, so, what happens to them when things are OK again.



Notes on some sentences: ملاحظات على بعض الجمل:

١- لاحظ استخدام v + ing بعد التعبير spend time.

Workbook Text (1)

David Copperfield Summary

David Copperfield grew up with his mother and his stepfather, Mr Murdstone. Then David's mother died and Mr Murdstone took him to live with Mr and Mrs Micawber. David had to leave school and work in a factory. Then Mr Micawber went to prison and David had nowhere to live. Without a home to live in, David visited Aunt Betsey and she took him to live with her friend, Mr Wickfield. A man called Uriah Heep also lived with Mr Wickfield and his daughter, Agnes, but David didn't trust him. Some time later, Uriah Heep played a trick on Aunt Betsey and took her money and David worked hard to help her. When David found Uriah Heep, he admitted that he took Aunt Betsey's money and David made him give it back to her. Then David went travelling around Europe.

When David returned to England, he married Agnes and he became a successful writer.

Workbook Text (2)

Voluntary Work and Organisations

Tarek : In my opinion, the Egyptian Food Bank (EFB) is making the world a better place because it helps people who haven't got enough money for food, and it teaches all of us to think more.

Samira: I have experienced the work of Tomorrow's Dreamer Youth Association. In my opinion, it shows young people that they can make a difference, and it teaches them about other cultures and communities. They are doing a great job by helping to educate a lot of young people.

Maher : The Egyptian Red Crescent helps a lot of people every day. When there is a big health problem, we always see the doctors from the Red Crescent on TV. But they also work with communities to stop health problems from happening. One day, I want to do some voluntary work for them.

Video Script



People have always told stories.

Thousands of years ago they told stories about dangerous places to hunt so the people in their community wouldn't go there. Older people told stories about the people who came before them. They couldn't write the stories down and they didn't want to lose them, so, they painted pictures to tell stories.

If you put your message into a story, people will remember it because they'll feel an emotional connection to the people and places in the story. They may even decide to do something to help the people in the story or people like them.

They say a picture can tell a thousand words, but the words in a story can touch a thousand lives.

Notes on Vocabulary

لاحظ الفرق بين الكلمات التالية:

1	later	فيما بعد	I'm going out for a bit. I'll see you later.
	latter	الأخير	I met Ali and Samy; the latter seemed exhausted.

2	make + (object) + inf. يجعل (be) made + to + inf.	- I like him because he makes me laugh. - Sameh was made to wash his father's car.
	make + (someone/ something) + adj. يجعل	He wants to make the world better.
	force + (object) + to + inf. يجبر/يجعل	- She forced her daughter to sleep early.
3	community مجتمع (مجموعة محدودة من الناس لهم نفس الثقافة والاهتمامات غالبًا)	The metro station will serve the whole community.
	society مجتمع (مجموعة كبيرة من الناس بثقافات واهتمامات مختلفة)	Technology has different effects on modern society.

Vocabulary Check point 3

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. .... on, you will probably wish that you had worked harder.
   a) Latter b) Late c) Later d) Latest
2. The thief made the old man .... out all his money.
   a) to take b) taking c) to taking d) take
3. I don't like to spend much of my time .... television.
   a) watch b) to watching c) watching d) to watch
4. Rasha .... lunch early when her children were hungry.
   a) made to make b) was made to make
   c) was made to be made d) was making to make
5. English and Chinese are so important, but the .... seems to be more difficult.
   a) later b) latter c) latest d) late
6. Noha spends the weekend .... how to play chess.
   a) learning b) to learn c) learn d) both a & c
7. People from all over the Arab world live in Egypt and have positive participation in ....
   a) community b) society c) group d) association
8. I feel we are one family in this street. It's a wonderful ....
   a) community b) society c) school d) organisation



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Key Vocabulary, Listening & Workbook

1. Youth .... is a group of young people who do things together.
   a) nation b) participation c) negotiation d) association
2. People from many different .... will get together during the conference.
   a) solutions b) experiences c) cultures d) machines
3. The contributions we make to charities are ...., not compulsory إجباري.
   a) obligatory b) voluntary c) volunteer d) prohibited
4. During Ramadan, we can find most people donate to the Egyptian .... to feed the needy.
   a) water bank b) food shortage c) food bank d) bank food
5. The project is still currently at the .... stage. We haven't started it yet.
   a) planning b) associating c) playing d) painting
6. As a/an ...., my elder son should take care of his two sisters.
   a) kid b) adult c) old man d) storyteller
7. Students need to have .... for life after school.
   a) banks b) plans c) planes d) communities
8. The .... reason for learning English is to get a better job in the future.
   a) minor b) main c) later d) mean
9. I wouldn't stay .... these old rocks. There could be some insects under them.
   a) about b) a round c) around d) far
10. Students are asked not to .... anything in the laboratory during the experiment.
    a) stop b) trust c) touch d) clutch
11. The walls of my house are very dull and need to be ....
    a) painted b) broken c) touched d) removed
12. Children can't easily live with a .... in the same house. Father's warmth is irreplaceable لا يعوض.
    a) stepmother b) granny c) grandfather d) stepfather
13. Atta is a very reliable person and so we can .... him to help us.
    a) trust b) trick c) admit d) make
14. We found some .... notes on grammar in an old book. We haven't seen them before.
    a) voluntary b) common c) unusual d) known

15. My neighbour .... stealing the money from my flat after the police arrested him.

a) avoided b) refused c) dreamed d) admitted

16. Maha is a/an ....! I always tell her to concentrate on what can really happen.

a) dreamer b) trickster c) solver d) volunteer

17. In my ...., people generally smile back if you smile at them.

a) experiment b) planning c) experience d) disability

18. The government is working on finding an urgent .... to the high prices.

a) association b) solution c) admission d) community

19. The wall will need two more coats طبقات of ....

a) bee b) plant c) paint d) paintbrush

20. Children need to .... things by themselves in order to learn from them.

a) expert b) experience c) experiment d) expire

21. There should be an emotional .... between parents and children.

a) experiment b) disability c) experience d) connection

Expressions, Idioms, Prepositions, Derivatives, Synonyms & Antonyms

22. Our manager's name is always .... with the achievements in the company.

a) associated b) association c) associating d) associate

23. My father was a very .... man who knew much about everything.

a) cultural b) cultured c) culture d) cultures

24. I am very good at .... stories to my children that make them amused.

a) saying b) doing c) telling d) asking

25. Doctors and nurses .... a tiring job in case of emergency.

a) make b) do c) play d) give

26. Her .... of the events that evening was most amusing.

a) describe b) descriptive c) description d) describes

27. The inventions and discoveries of our great scientists .... a difference to our lives.

a) did b) made c) had d) played

28. Ramzy used to play .... on his friends.

a) tours b) tracks c) treks d) tricks

29. Although he has a ...., he became first in the swimming competition.

a) disable b) disabled c) disability d) disabilities

30. Don't let anyone stop you .... achieving your goal.

a) from b) to c) at d) about

31. Eating biscuits in Eid al-Fitr is very .... among the Egyptians.

a) common b) unusual c) worrying d) published

32. The Egyptian Red .... is an organisation that works on saving people in crises أزمات.

a) Tour b) Track c) Community d) Crescent

33. Mazen's words to our helpful professor .... our feelings.

a) solved b) touched c) surprised d) removed

34. The manager met two candidates; the .... seemed ambitious and efficient. Longman

a) later b) latter c) end d) third

35. Don't .... much time playing video games with your friends; it's a waste of time. Longman

a) store b) think c) save d) spend

36. I listened carefully to the lecturer and .... down important notes. Longman

a) wrote b) sat c) broke d) neglected

37. Can you .... suggestions for keeping the environment clean? Longman

a) do b) make c) think d) rise

38. Taking part in this discussion is .... You won't be paid for it. (الأقصر)

a) private b) gradually c) common d) voluntary

39. I believe everything he says. I really .... him. (الشرقية - منيا القمح)

a) treat b) doubt c) trust d) cheat

40. Rural .... have particular customs in common. (الجيزة - العمرانية)

a) commodities b) communities c) interests d) attitudes

Choose the TWO (2) correct answers of the FIVE (5) options:

41. The young man was fortunate enough to survive the accident. 'Fortunate' is an antonym for "....................". Longman

a) unlucky b) unnecessary c) unfortunate d) busy e) bossy

42. Dahab does a lot of voluntary work for a charity. The word "voluntary" equals in meaning the words ....

a) unwilling b) free c) involuntary d) willing e) compulsory

43. Rana played minor roles in various fields before she became a famous actress. The antonyms of the word "minor" are "....................".

a) unimportant b) major c) secondary d) trivial e) main

44. Shaimaa .... a very clever businessman who is very respected.

a) marry b) married to c) married d) is married to e) is marry to

45. Do your .... perfectly باتقان and nobody can criticise you.

a) job b) work c) career d) profession e) solution

46. Some people eat unusual food to have fun. The synonyms of the word "unusual" are "....................".

a) common b) unfamiliar c) usual d) normal e) abnormal

B Language

Extra Points
نقاط إضافية على المضارع التام

1 يستخدم المضارع التام بعد التعبيرات This is the first/second/... time.

- This is the first time I have made this silly mistake.

2 عند وجود دليل على انتهاء الفعل تمامًا بلا أثر فى الحاضر نستخدم الماضى البسيط.

- My friend has worked for this company for twenty years. (He is still working.)
- My friend worked for this company for twenty years before retiring last year.

3 عادة ما نستخدم المضارع التام عند ذكرنا للموضوع للمرة الأولى ولكن الماضى البسيط نستخدمه لتوضيح تفاصيل ما حدث.

- There has been a serious accident on the road to Cairo. It happened at 9 this morning when a lorry went out of control and hit a car.

4 من الممكن استخدام مدة زمنية بعد (since) بشرط استخدام (ago) بعد المدة الزمنية since + a period of time + ago.

- I have lived in this town since 10 months ago.

5 من الممكن استخدام (since) كأداة ربط يأتى بعدها سبب أو تعليل.

- He was arrested since he stole my money.

6 للسؤال عن وقت بداية الحدث نستخدم:

Since when + (has/have) + subject + (P.P.) ...?

- **A:** Since when have you married Noha? **B:** Since 2002.

7 للسؤال عن المدة التى استغرقها الحدث نستخدم:

For how long + (has/have) + subject + (P.P.) ...?

- **A:** For how long have you married Noha? **B:** For 20 years.

8 يستخدم زمن المضارع التام للتعبير عن حدث تم وما زال أثره فى الحاضر أما إذا كان الأثر فى الماضى فيستخدم زمن الماضى التام.

- My car is very clean because I have washed it.
- My car was very clean because I had washed it.

9 يستخدم زمن المضارع التام مع التعبيرات التى تدل على أجزاء (اليوم – الأسبوع – الشهر – العام) بشرط إذا كانت هذه الفترة الزمنية لم تنتهِ وقت الكلام مثل:

this (morning/afternoon/evening)/today/tonight/this (week/month/year)

I have watched a film tonight. (ما زالت الليلة ممتدة ولم تنتهى بعد فى وقت الكلام)

أما إذا كانت قد انتهت وقت الكلام فنستخدم الماضى البسيط.

I watched a film tonight. (الليلة انتهت وقت الكلام)

10 لاحظ التعبيرات التالية:

It's + مدة زمنية + since + subject + (last) past simple ماضٍ بسيط

It's two years since I met my friend Ali.

Subject + last + past simple + ... + when + subject + past simple

He last visited the Eiffel Tower when he was in France.

Subject + past simple + (a moment ago - a short time ago – just now)

She finished washing up a moment ago.

Subject + (has/have) + never + (P.P.) + ... + before

I have never been to China before.

Subject + superlative (has/have) + ever + P.P.

He's the most intelligent person I've ever met.

لاحظ

عند وجود ما يدل على استمرار الفعل وعدم انتهائه مع كلمات for – since – all نستخدم المضارع التام المستمر:

(has – have) + been + v-ing

Hams has been working for three hours and she hasn't finished yet.

I have been playing football all day. I am really so tired.

11 لاحظ هذه المقارنة بين المضارع التام والماضى البسيط:

Present Perfect	Past Simple
- I have been to Mansoura and Tanta. (وقت غير محدد)	- I went to Mansoura a week ago. (وقت محدد فى الماضى)
- Have you been busy this morning? (ما زلنا فى فترة الصباح ولم تنتهِ)	- Were you busy this morning? (انتهت فترة الصباح وأصبحت ماضيًا)
- Have you had a nice time? (عاد من الخارج حالًا)	- Did you have a nice time? (عاد من الخارج قبل وقت من السؤال)
- He has been a teacher for 20 years. (مازال مدرسًا)	- He was a teacher for 20 years. (لم يعد مدرسًا)

Language Check point 4

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. It's more than 20 years .... I travelled abroad.
a) while b) before c) when d) since

2. .... has Naser been a teacher?
a) How long ago b) When
c) Since when d) How far

3. The dishes are clean! Who .... them?
a) had washed b) washed
c) was washing d) has washed

4. The dishes were clean! Who .... them?
a) had washed b) washing
c) was washing d) has washed

5. It is the first time I .... an actor.
a) have ever met b) have never met
c) ever meet d) never met

6. Mr Fadel .... a teacher for more than 25 years now.
a) has been being b) has been
c) was d) was being

7. It is an hour .... Mahdy phoned to ask me to go with them.
a) for b) when c) since d) while

8. My father last had his car washed .... he was in Cairo.
a) since b) while c) for d) when

9. My kids are really pleased as this is the first time they .... the Pyramids.
a) visited b) have never visited
c) have ever visited d) were visiting

10. I am sorry for coming late, sir. I .... the toilet.
a) have been to b) have gone to
c) have been d) was being in



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Since when .... ill?
   a) is your father b) has your father been
   c) was your father d) your father was
2. A: Have you cooked the food, Mum? B: Yes, I .... it an hour ago.
   a) have b) cooked c) have cooked d) has cooked
3. It's two weeks since he .... abroad.
   a) travelled b) has travelled c) travels d) travel
4. My father .... in this company for 20 years.
   a) works b) has worked c) had worked d) is working
5. Marwan hasn't played tennis .... he was young.
   a) for b) when c) since d) after
6. I have .... tried seafood and I have no desire to try it.
   a) just b) ever c) lately d) never
7. They have .... cleaned the room. You needn't clean it again.
   a) ever b) never c) already d) hardly
8. It .... for three hours. The street is very muddy.
   a) is raining b) had rained c) has rained d) rained
9. I have .... read a good book like this before.
   a) ever b) never c) yet d) before
10. His father .... He can't help crying.
    a) had just died b) just dying c) has never died d) has just died
11. The bully .... by the police once already.
    a) is warned b) has warned c) has been warned d) had warned
12. Sara has lived in Cairo .... the age of sixteen.
    a) in b) on c) by d) since
13. Ola looks pale. She .... ill for long.
    a) had been b) has been c) was d) is
14. Our school .... a competition last week. We were very happy.
    a) has won b) won c) is winning d) was winning
15. Ramy .... PlayStation for two hours and he is still playing.
    a) played b) has been played c) has been playing d) is playing
16. Seham .... English all day.
    a) has been studying b) has been studied
    c) had studied d) studied

17. Radwa .... ten letters today. She is still working.

a) has been written b) has written c) wrote d) had written

18. Farouk .... to the market. I will wait for him until he comes back.

a) has been b) has gone c) goes d) had gone

19. .... the death of her husband, I've never seen her smiling.

a) For b) Since c) So far d) When

20. Abdullah wants to know .... I have been a member of this sports club.

a) since how long b) for how long
c) for when d) how long ago

21. I last played football on Monday. This sentence means that ....

a) I didn't play football since Monday b) I haven't played football since Monday
c) I had played football on Monday d) I didn't play football on Monday

22. Marwan is the cleverest student I have ever seen. This means that ....

a) I have seen many clever students like Marwan
b) I have seen many students who are better than Marwan
c) Marwan isn't as clever as the students I have ever seen
d) I haven't seen a clever student like Marwan yet

23. Omar has never .... to school by scooter before. (القليوبية - كفر شكر)

a) been come b) been coming c) came d) come

24. Ahmed is not here, he .... to the club . (الشرقية - كفر صقر)

a) had gone b) goes c) has been d) has gone

25. It is a long time since he .... his village. (الشرقية - كفر صقر)

a) has visited b) visited c) had visited d) visiting

26. It's the first time I .... the temple of Philae. (الجيزة - إدارة العمرانية)

a) never seen b) have ever seen c) ever have seen d) yet seen

27. I haven't seen Mr Smith .... the last conference. Longman

a) for b) since c) ago d) when

28. I have .... been to Italy before. I haven't visited any European countries up till now. Longman

a) never b) ever c) already d) recently

29. I have not seen Ali .... the last time we met in Alexandria. Longman

a) for b) while c) when d) since

30. How long ago .... he come back from South Africa? Longman

a) has b) had c) did d) does

31. We haven't seen each other since we .... in Hurghada. Longman

a) being b) have been c) were d) are

Test yourself Part 2 | Lessons 3 & 4



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Vocabulary

1. I don't think this applicant has the needed .... for the job.
   a) experiment b) trick c) experience d) surprise
2. The little boy doesn't want his mother to marry after his father's death. He doesn't like to have a ....
   a) stepmother b) granny c) grandfather d) stepfather
3. There were two options for me to study, English and history. I chose the ....
   a) latter b) late c) lately d) later
4. The .... entrance to the building is on the other side. You can reach it easily.
   a) main b) mean c) plain d) mane
5. I think that it's a very good .... to improve the reputation of the company.
   a) community b) culture c) association d) opportunity
6. We need to work together to find sustainable .... to our problems.
   a) causes b) reasons c) savings d) solutions
7. To everyone's ...., my favourite team lost the match yesterday.
   a) luck b) surprise c) fun d) madness
8. The government tries hard to provide all facilities for ....
   a) the abilities b) the disability c) disabled d) the disabled
9. It is known that most .... the shops and companies are shut on Fridays.
   a) from b) of c) in d) about
10. There are .... differences between people in Europe and those in Egypt.
    a) cultures b) cultural c) cultured d) culturally
11. When I am tired of something, I find .... to rest except the mosque.
    a) where b) anywhere c) wherever d) nowhere
12. During wars, floods and other disasters, food .... provide help for all.
    a) misers b) pirates c) mutinies d) banks
13. I think something .... wrong with my car. I need to take it to the mechanics.
    a) went b) had c) made d) did
14. Reda and I have some interests in .... We both like reading and fishing.
    a) common b) difference c) success d) expert
15. The local council المجلس المحلى is responsible for future .... in this area.
    a) planning b) drawing c) painting d) admitting

Language

16. Ali won the first prize for reading .... 2011.

a) since	b) in	c) from	d) at

17. Yomna has begun to read short stories .... 2008.

a) since	b) in	c) for	d) at

18. My friend hasn't visited Aswan .... he was young.

a) for	b) when	c) since	d) after

19. Ahmed .... in Qena for ten years. Now, he lives in Alexandria.

a) lived	b) has lived	c) were living	d) had lived

20. Menna .... her close friend Sama just now.

a) has visited	b) visited
c) was visited	d) has been visited

21. The little boy is crying because he .... over and injured his arm.

a) has fallen	b) is falling	c) had fallen	d) was falling

22. We .... to a fantastic journey in Aswan last week.

a) have taken	b) have been taken	c) were taken	d) took

23. Since the computer was used in schools, remarkable progress in education ....

a) has made	b) made
c) was making	d) has been made

24. The court will punish the gang as soon as they .... them.

a) had arrested	b) have arrested	c) arrested	d) will arrest

25. The last time we attended a party was .... we were 20 years old.

a) since	b) while	c) already	d) when

26. The famous player says that he has played football .... as long as he can remember.

a) for	b) when	c) since	d) while

27. Farida has gone to school. This means that she .... there.

a) is still	b) is no longer	c) was	d) won't be

28. Maha is so tired as she .... so hard since morning.

a) has worked	b) will work
c) had been working	d) has been worked

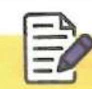
29. When the patient cut his finger, he .... antibiotic.

a) was giving	b) will be given	c) was given	d) had given

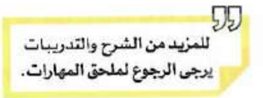
30. Ashraf has been working as a waiter for 3 years. This means that ....

a) he didn't work as a waiter
b) it's 3 years since he left his work as a waiter
c) he still works as a waiter
d) he no longer works as a waiter.





Writing Skill



Writing tips

How to prepare for writing a short story:

1. You should first plan your story. (Time, place, problem and the main characters)
2. Use adjectives and adverbs to describe people and actions briefly.
3. As the story continues, mention the problem and how it was solved.
4. There should be a lesson/moral that we should learn from your story.

MODEL SHORT STORY

A Story of Good Luck

Five years ago, the night train from Cairo to Aswan was full of passengers. One of the passengers was called Maher. He was travelling to Aswan to see his aunt and uncle. Suddenly, the train stopped. Maher looked out of the window and found that they were in the middle of the country and everything was black. His train stopped because there was something in front of it which looked like a man in a big black coat. The man was moving his arms up and down slowly. Maher thought that it was terrifying. Two passengers started to walk towards the man in the black coat but couldn't touch him. Two other men came and said that all the passengers were lucky as the train stopped. There was a terrible crash ahead.

A car accident caused the bridge to collapse on the railway. Luckily, there was a big light on the front of the train and in the middle of the big light, there was a butterfly. When it moved, its wings made a big shadow which looked like a man moving his arms. So, all the passengers were saved thanks to their good luck.



Practice more

(A) Reading Comprehension

قاموس بالكلمات الجديدة فى قطع الفهم والتراجم نهاية الكتاب

1 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

(الشرقية - أولاد صقر)

Sleep has a powerful influence on our lives. The traditional theory about sleep is that our brain needs to rest for several hours to refresh itself and to file in our memory everything that happened to us during the day. If we are not allowed to sleep, we will eventually die.

However, Ray Meddis, a scientist at the university, has a fascinating new theory. He suggests that we don't really have to sleep at all. We sleep only because our brain is programmed to make us do so. According to Dr Meddis, the tiredness we feel at the end of the day is produced by a chemical mechanism in the brain which makes us sleep. We are programmed to feel sleepy at midnight, even if we have spent the day relaxing or doing nothing.

He believes that the unpleasant symptoms we suffer when we don't sleep enough are not because we have not rested, but because we have disobeyed our brain's programming. But he believes that if scientists could turn off the sleep mechanism in our brain, we could live completely normal lives without sleeping. So, is sleeping a waste of time? Even Dr Meddis does not deny the great psychological value of sleep, and he asks us, "If scientists invented a pill which keeps you awake forever, would you take it?"

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Our brain needs to rest to .... in our memory what happens daily.

a) feel b) fresh c) file d) rifle

2. Eventually means ....

a) luckily b) sometimes
c) unluckily d) at last

3. The traditional view is that we sleep because ....

a) we are programmed to do so b) the brain needs to rest
c) the body needs to rest d) the memory needs to rest

4. We suffer from unpleasant symptoms when we don't sleep enough because ....

a) we have not rested b) we feel sick
c) our brain is turned off d) we changed our mind routine

5. The tiredness we feel at the end of the day is produced by ....

a) a chemical organism b) a chemical machine
c) a dynamic process d) our heart and work

6. **The synonym of the underlined word "influence" is ....**
a) effect b) suspect c) respect d) neglect

7. **The main idea of the passage is ....**
a) the theory of sleep
b) sleep and its dangers
c) the bad symptoms of sleep
d) the function of our brain

2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Plants have been used for treating illnesses since primitive times. Paintings in the tombs of the pharaohs show that plants were being used by the Ancient Egyptians for medicinal purposes. Today, some modern drugs are still based on natural herbs. Aspirin, for example, is based on the bark of the willow tree.

Natural remedies are attracting increasing attention all over the world. The advantage of herbal medicine is that the whole plant can be used; the powerful substance in the plant cures the illness, while the contents of the rest of the plant may help to prevent any harmful side effects. In this way, herbal medicines may be safer than chemical ones. Garlic is just one plant that has been used throughout the world as a cure for diseases, as it is used to treat hair problems. Similarly, henna, which is known to be good for hair, can also be used in the treatment of cancer.

If you pay a visit to a herbalist shop in Cairo, you will be struck by the different colours and smells. There are jars full of tree bark, roots, powders, oils and spices. The customer enters the shop and explains his symptoms to the herbalist, who will take notes, study medical reports and check his reference books before writing out a prescription.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. **Natural remedies are attracting attention because they ....**
a) are used in Egypt
b) have side effects
c) are exported from Egypt
d) can treat a lot of diseases

2. **Garlic is an example of ....**
a) natural remedies
b) artificial herbs
c) chemical medicines
d) modern drugs

3. **The pronoun "his" in the last paragraph refers to the ....**
a) herbalist b) shop c) customer d) prescription

4. **Herbal medicine is more effective than chemical medicine because ....**
a) it's cheaper and cleaner
b) it's easily found and easily taken in
c) it cures and protects from side effects
d) many local people benefit from selling it

5. **The main idea of the passage is "..................".**
a) The Herbal Medicine Benefits
b) The Chemical Medicine Disadvantages
c) The Faculty of Medicine
d) Trees Can Cure

6. Which sentence is NOT correct about natural herbs?

a) They're used for treating illnesses since primitive times.
b) They were used in the paintings in the tombs of the pharaohs.
c) They can be fried on fire to be served.
d) Some drugs are still based on natural herbs.

7. The bark of the .... is used to make aspirin.

a) bush tree b) shadow plant c) palm tree d) willow tree

(B) Translation

3 (A) Choose the correct Arabic translation:

1. Terrorism is one of the worst and most complicated problems and has a lot of destructive effects on both citizens and society.

a) الإرهاب يعتبر من أفضل المشاكل وأكثرها تعقيداً، وله الكثير من الآثار المدمرة على كل من المواطنين والمجتمع.
b) تعتبر السياحة من أسوأ المشاكل وأكثرها تعقيداً، ولها الكثير من الآثار المدمرة على كل من المواطنين والمجتمع.
c) الإرهاب من أسوأ المشاكل وأقلها تعقيداً، وله الكثير من الآثار المدمرة على كل من المواطنين والمجتمع.
d) يعتبر الإرهاب من أسوأ المشاكل وأكثرها تعقيداً، وله الكثير من الآثار المدمرة على كل من المواطنين والمجتمع.

2. There are a lot of people who are miserable because they don't have enough money to live a decent life or in a good place.

a) هناك الكثير من الأشخاص الذين يعانون من البخل لأنهم يملكون ما يكفى من المال للعيش أو مكاناً للعيش فيه.
b) هناك الكثير من الأشخاص البائسين الذين لا يملكون ما يكفى من المال ليحظوا بحياة غالية أو مكان جيد للعيش فيه.
c) هناك الكثير من الأشخاص الذين يعانون من البؤس لأنهم لا يملكون ما يكفى من المال ليحظوا بحياة كريمة أو مكان جيد للعيش فيه.
d) هناك المئات من الأشخاص الذين يعانون من البؤس لأنهم لا يملكون ما يكفى من المال للعيش.

3. Research says that we must have a hobby to refresh ourselves and ease the bad effects of work stress.

a) تقول الأبحاث إنه يجب ألا تكون لدينا هواية لإنعاش أنفسنا وتخفيف الآثار السيئة لضغوط العمل.
b) تقول الأبحاث إنه يجب أن تكون لدينا هواية لإنعاش أنفسنا وتخفيف الآثار السيئة لضغوط العمل.
c) الأبحاث تقول إنه يجب أن تكون لدينا هواية لإنقاذ أنفسنا وتخفيف الآثار السيئة لضغوط العمل.
d) الأبحاث تقول إنه يجب أن تكون لدينا هواية لإنعاش أنفسنا وتسهيل الآثار الصعبة لضغوط العمل.

(B) Choose the correct English translation:

4. يلعب الآباء والمعلمون وكذلك الإعلام دورًا هامًا فى تشكيل شخصية الأطفال، وتعديل سلوكياتهم ليكونوا مواطنين صالحين.

a) Parents, teachers and the media play an important rule in forming children's personalities and modifying their behaviour to be good citizens.
b) Parents, teachers and the media play an important role in forming children's personalities and modifying their behaviour to be good citizens.
c) Play parents, teachers and the median important role in forming children's personalities and modifying their behaviour to be good citizens.
d) Parents, teachers and the media make an important role in forming children's personalities and modifying their behaviour to be good citizens.

5. يجب على الحكومة المصرية الاهتمام بتطوير المؤسسات الطبية لكى تتمكن من مواجهة أى خطر فى المستقبل.

a) The Egyptian government must play attention to the development of medical institutions in order to be able to face any danger in the future.

b) Must on the Egyptian government pay attention to the development of medical institutions in order to be able to hinder any danger in the future.

c) The Egyptian government must pay attention to the development of medical institutions in order to be able to face any danger in the future.

d) The Egyptian government must pay attention to the development of medical institutions because be able to face any dangerous in the future.

6. إن إنشاء الكثير من مكتبات المدارس والمكتبات العامة ساهم فى تحسين العملية التعليمية بوجه عام وساعد الكثير من الأطفال والشباب على القراءة بحرية.

a) The establishment of lots of school libraries and public libraries contributed to improving the educational process in general and helped many children and youths to read freely.

b) The establishment of lots of school libraries and public libraries contributed to improving the educational operation in generally and helped much children and youths to read freely.

c) The building of lots of school libraries and public libraries contributed to improving the educational process with a general face and helped many children and youth to read freely.

d) The constructing of lots of school libraries and public libraries contributed to improve the educational process in general and helped lots of children and youths to read freely.

(C) Writing

4 Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on the following:

"How to reduce the number of young people who give up education at early ages"

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

I used more than 4 new vocabulary.	I used the right structure.	I used a topic sentence.	I wrote the conclusion.	I used the right punctuation.

Al-Azhar Corner



1 Finish the following dialogue:

A passenger is booking a ticket to Aswan.

Ticket officer: How can I help you?

Passenger : I want to book a ticket.

Ticket officer: Where are you going?

Passenger : (1).. . When does the train leave?

Ticket officer: (2).. .

Passenger : (3)..?

Ticket officer: Platform 3.

Passenger : (4).. .

Ticket officer: The ticket is 150 pounds.

Passenger : OK. Here you are.

A Glimpse of Revelation

2 (A) Choose the correct answer:

1. There is only one true .... coming from Allah.
   a) order b) prophet c) rule d) religion
2. The straight .... is the shortest one to Allah.
   a) line b) path c) religion d) person

(B) Answer the following questions:

3. Who are Muslims?
4. What do divine religions call for?

The Novel

3 (A) Choose the correct answer:

1. In the past, ships were attacked by .... who were very savage وحشيين.
   a) pirates b) birds c) pilots d) animals
2. The price of oil today is about 100 dollars per ....
   a) barrier b) barrow c) barter d) barrel

(B) Answer the following:

3. Why wasn't Captain Smollett happy about the journey?
4. What were Silver and his men planning for?

4 (A) Translate into Arabic:

I have been a volunteer at a food bank for a year. It is responsible for poor families in remote villages.

(B) Translate into English:

كل ما يُعبد من دون الله من وثن أو حجر أو شجر هى آلهة باطلة .

Choose the Two correct answers of the Five options:

1. Finally, I .... that he was a liar and what he said was wrong.
a) founded out b) invented c) explored d) discovered e) found out

2. The surface of the land is too hard to dig a hole by hand. The antonyms of the word "hard" are "..................".
a) soft b) delicate c) rocklike d) blank e) pure

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

3. The hospital has asked some .... organisations to help raise money.
a) volunteer b) voluntary c) adult d) planning

4. I would like you to .... my name from your mailing list.
a) add b) remove c) put d) stop

5. I think I've .... why they had lied to me about their real identity هوية.
a) discovered b) invented c) explored d) scanned

6. Nowadays, authors care for .... and their interests to sell their books.
a) readers b) tricksters c) associations d) solutions

7. We .... our success to our parents and teachers.
a) own b) owe c) belong d) occur

8. During my last holiday, I have .... a lot of weight as I spent it eating a lot without moving.
a) won b) earned c) gained d) beat

9. We always .... people who work hard.
a) insult b) award c) insist d) reward

10. I am a student in the first secondary grade. I .... English for 10 years.
a) learn b) learnt c) have learnt d) am learning

11. We .... our friends for a year. They are too busy.
a) never have met b) haven't met
c) have met d) haven't been met

12. The teacher has explained the lesson .... the whole week.
a) when b) as long as c) for d) since

13. Noha .... the house for three hours. She looks very tired.
a) has been cleaned b) had been cleaning
c) has cleaned d) was being cleaned

14. My son .... the thief running away a moment ago.
a) have seen b) has seen c) see d) saw

15. My family has lived in Mansoura .... the day I was born.
a) for b) when c) while d) since

16. I can't go to bed now because I .... my homework yet.
a) haven't done b) don't do c) hasn't done d) hadn't done

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Dear Mr Reda,

I hope everything is OK with you. Yesterday, I had a night party with my friends, so I had to stay up very late. Let me tell you that the party was amazing. We had lots of fun there. The food was tasty and fresh; those people are excellent at hosting guests. However, I don't like fish at all; they should have asked me what to eat. Never mind! The video games were up-to-date and I beat them all. My friend's father loves sports, so we enjoyed playing table tennis and volleyball. But let me tell you that all of them liked my outfit. They laughed out loud once they saw me with my fascinating orange shoes, red trousers and checked-colourful shirt. Ahmed and Amgad threw tissues at me. I am always fashionable, as you know. At the end of the day, we had many pictures which you can find in the attachments below. I couldn't find any transport, so I requested a ride. It cost only half the price of my sunglasses which cost 150 pounds. When I got home, I realised that I had forgotten my wallet at my friend's, but my mother solved the problem and the driver was understanding. Anyway, I'm writing to inform you that I will not show up today because I haven't done any tasks yet and I'm tired a little bit because of the dancing.

See you soon, my manager.
Best regards,
Anas

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17. The writer thinks that his friends ....

a) didn't like his appearance
b) liked his appearance
c) made fun of his appearance
d) were ashamed of his shoes

18. The underlined word "up-to-date" means ....

a) old
b) ancient
c) modern
d) fast

19. What is the purpose of this passage?

a) The writer wants to tell a story.
b) The writer is not going to work.
c) The writer is proud of his mum.
d) The writer is showing his abilities.

20. According to the passage, the writer is ....

a) careful
b) punctual
c) careless
d) hard-working

21. How much did it cost the writer to go home?

a) 150 pounds.
b) 300 pounds.
c) 75 pounds.
d) 225 pounds.

22. The writer sent .... in the attachment.

a) his tasks
b) his shoes
c) his photos
d) nothing

23. How could the writer pay for the ride?

a) He paid by Visa card.
b) He asked the driver to return to his friend's house.
c) His mother paid for him when he reached home.
d) The driver didn't take money.

24. Choose the correct English translation:

- إن اختيار الوظيفة المناسبة مهم للغاية لأنك تحتاج إلى الاستمتاع بعملك حتى تحقق النجاح . لكن عليك أن تتأكد أن هذه الوظيفة لن تؤثر على حياتك الشخصية .

a) Choosing the right job is very important because you need to enjoy your work in order to be successful. But you have to be sure that this job will not affect your personal life.
b) Choosing the right job is very important because you need to enjoy your work in order to be successful. But you have to be sure that this job will not effect your personal life.
c) Choosing the right job is very important because you need to enjoy your work in order to be successful. But you have to be sure that this job will not affect your public life.
d) Choosing the right job is very important because you need to enjoy your work in order to be success. But you have to be sure that this job will not affect your personal life.

25. Choose the correct Arabic translation:

- Practising activities at school is very important, so teachers should encourage their students to take part in various activities.

a) تعتبر ممارسة الألعاب فى المدرسة أمرًا مهمًا للغاية ، لذلك يجب على المعلمين تفعيل طلابهم للمشاركة فى الأنشطة المختلفة .
b) تعتبر ممارسة الأنشطة فى المدرسة أمرًا مهمًا للغاية ، لذلك يجب على المعلمين تشجيع طلابهم على المشاركة فى الأنشطة المختلفة .
c) تعتبر ممارسة الأنشطة فى المدرسة أمرًا مهمًا للغاية ، لذلك يجب على المعلمين تدعيم طلابهم على المشاركة فى الأنشطة المشتركة .
d) تعتبر ممارسة الأنشطة فى المدرسة أمرًا عاديًا للغاية ، لذلك يجب على المعلمين تشجيع طلابهم على المشاركة فى الأنشطة المختلفة .

26. Answer the following questions:

1. Why do you think Jim said that Silver was a great sailor?
2. Captain Smollett was a very reliable leader. Do you agree? Why?
3. Was Dr Livesy right to think that Silver was a good one? Why, in your opinion?

27. Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on the following:

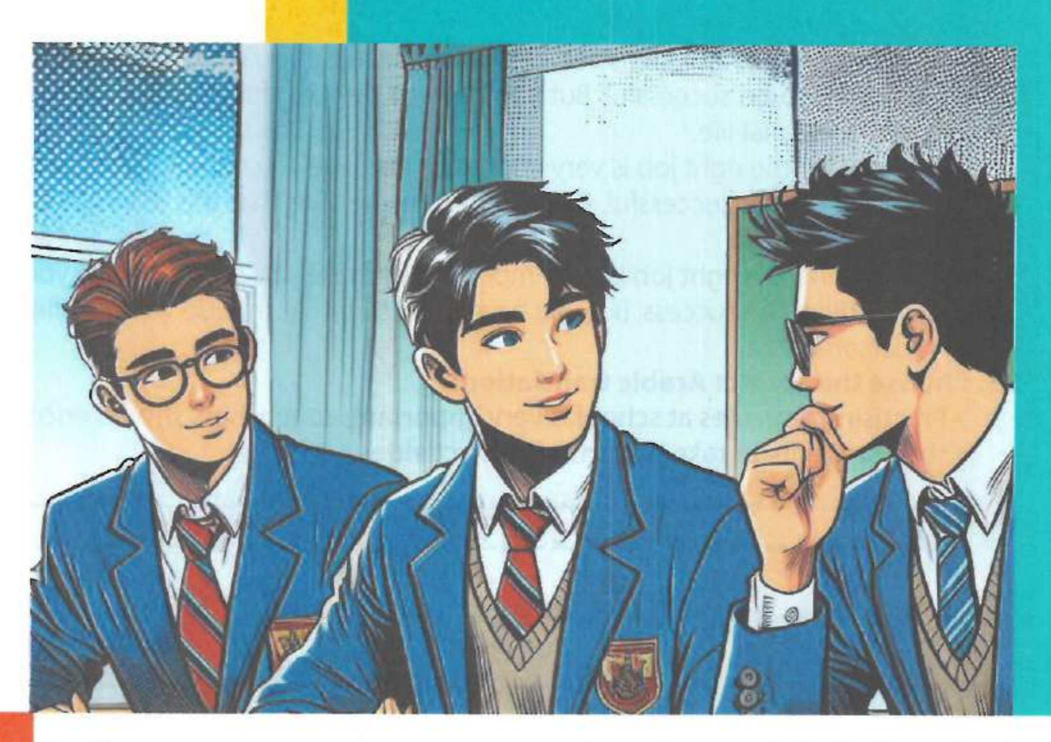
"The advantages of living in a civilised city"

....

لمزيد من التدريبات للطلبة الفائقين
الرجوع لنهاية الكتاب ص 365

Assess your progress ★★★★★	< 50%	50 : 64%	65 : 84%	85 : 100%
	Study again	Practise more	Take more exams	Well done!

Unit 4
Making new friends



Objectives

Reading : A magazine article about moving to a new town
Writing : An email to a magazine's problem page
Listening : A radio phone-in about bullying at school
Speaking : Having a debate
Language : Articles, Countable/uncountable nouns
Life Skills : Respect for diversity; Communication







Key Vocabulary
المفردات الرئيسية

advice (n)	نصيحة	noticeboard (n)	لوحة ملاحظات
connection (n)	صلة / علاقة	take something for granted	يعتبر أمرًا مفروغًا منه - مسلمًا به

Vocabulary on Reading Texts
مفردات نصوص القراءة

article (n)	مقال	friendship (n)	صداقة	stressed (adj)	مضغوط
conversation (n)	محادثة	grade (n)	مرتبة / تقدير	stressful (adj)	مُجهِد
cool (adj)	رائع / هادئ	individual sport (n)	رياضة فردية	team sport (n)	رياضة جماعية
enjoy (v) – ed	يستمتع بـ	join (v) – ed	يلتحق بـ	teammates (n)	أعضاء الفريق
face (v) – d	يواجه	magazine (n)	مجلة	teenager (n)	شخص مراهق
favourite (adj) (n)	مفضَّل	personal (adj)	شخصي	wear (v)	يرتدي
feel (v)	يشعر بـ	personnel (n)	قسم شئون العاملين		
follow (v) – ed	يتبع	relax (v) – ed	يسترخي		

Workbook Vocabulary
مفردات كتاب التدريبات

connect (v) – ed	يتصل	information (n)	معلومات	produce (v) – d	يُنتج
extra (adj)	إضافي	pollute (v) – d	يلوث	pronounce (v) – d	ينطق
inform (v) – ed	يخبر	practice (n)	تدريب	useful (adj)	مفيد

Vocabulary Check point 1

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I have a .... with lots of people in my area, but no one is my friend.
   a) noticeboard b) connection c) friendship d) magazine
2. My .... to you is to sleep early.
   a) advice b) personnel c) conversation d) friendship
3. Take it for .... Ramez is not coming.
   a) granted b) relaxed c) connected d) stressed

4. He will know if he has passed or failed his exams as the exam results are on the ....

a) connection b) conversation c) advice d) noticeboard

5. The teacher punished his class by giving them .... homework.

a) extra b) little c) stressed d) cool

6. This .... is concerned with the news of Egyptian artists.

a) noticeboard b) storehouse c) grade d) magazine

7. It is very difficult to teach a class full of .... who are not adults yet.

a) noticeboards b) teammates c) teenagers d) grades

8. Mona has got the highest .... in the English exam.

a) grade b) degree c) practice d) article

9. Several families .... a lot of hardships as a result of high prices.

a) solve b) face c) wear d) make

10. My children always fight each other, but they are .... now.

a) nervous b) burning c) stressful d) cool

Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions

التعبيرات والمصطلحات وحروف الجر

break-time	وقت الراحة/الفسحة	ask for	يطلب	pass an exam	يجتاز اختبارًا
busy + (v-ing)	مشغول بـ	connect with	يتصل بـ	put ... into practice	ينفذ شيئًا للتجربة
do practice	يتدرب	connected to	مرتبط بـ	spend time with	يقضى وقتًا مع
do team sports	يمارس رياضات جماعية	good at	جيد فى	instead of	بدلًا من
enjoy yourself	أقضى وقتًا ممتعًا	good for	مفيد لـ	move to	ينتقل إلى
feel better	يشعر بتحسن	good to	عطوف على/بارٌ بـ	revise for	يراجع من أجل
feel like	يشعر وكأنه	go out with	يخرج مع	stressed about	مضغوط بشأن
find out	يكتشف	make friends	يكوّن صداقات	talk about	يتحدث عن
give advice	يعطى نصيحة	make it easier	يجعله أسهل		
get easier	يصبح أسهل	on my own	بمفردى	talk to	يتحدث إلى
go online	يدخل على الإنترنت	part of a team	عضو فى فريق		

Derivatives

المشتقات

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
advise	ينصح	advice adviser/advisor	نصيحة مستشار	advisable advisory	مستحسن/مستحب استشاري/نصحي
connect	يتصل	connection connector	اتصال/ارتباط وصلة/موصل	connected	مربوط/موصول
grade	يصنف/يقيم	grade	درجة/رتبة	graded	مصنف/متدرج
grant	يهب/يمنح	grant	منحة/عطاء	granted	ممنوح/متاح
practise	يتمرن/يمارس	practice	تدريب	practising practised	ممارس خبير
relax	يستريح	relaxation	راحة/ارتياح	relaxed relaxing	مستريح/مسترخ مريح
stress	يضغط/يشدد على	stress	ضغط	stressed stressful	مرهق مُجْهِد

Examples

تعلم أن تستخدم ما تحفظ، لاحظ الأمثلة التالية:

My father always advises me to study hard. (v)
- I appreciate my father's advice. (n)
- It's advisable to study hard, as my father says. (adj)

The cable connects the device to the internet. (v)
- There is a connection between the two devices. (n)
- The two devices are connected. (adj)

After work, I like to relax. (v)
- Relaxation means to lie down and do nothing. (n)
- It's a relaxing song; it makes me relaxed. (adj) - (adj)

Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	الكلمة	Synonym	المرادف	Antonym	المضاد
connection	صلة/علاقة	relation/contact		separation/disconnection	انفصال/عدم اتصال
cool	رائع	neat/fashionable		bad/uncool	سيئ
enjoy	يستمتع بـ	appreciate/savour/like		detest/dislike	يشمئز/يكره
face	يواجه	confront/encounter		withdraw/avoid	ينسحب/يتجنب

favourite	مفضل	preferred/popular	unpopular/disliked غير محبوب /مكروه
follow	يتبع	pursue/chase	avoid/neglect يتجنب /يهمل
join	يلتحق بـ/يربط	unite/attach	detach/disconnect/disunite يفصل
relax	يسترخى	calm/rest	irritate/worry يقلق /يتوتر
start	يبدأ	begin/initiate	end/finish ينهى

Vocabulary Check point 2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Karla .... advice to her friend about how to study effectively.
   a) gave b) did c) took d) felt
2. Holidays always give us a chance to feel ....
   a) relaxed b) relax c) relaxation d) relaxing
3. My parents asked me to revise well .... my next exams.
   a) at b) for c) from d) with
4. The internet and social media have made it easier to .... friends.
   a) take b) give c) make d) break
5. All of us should learn how to be good .... old people.
   a) at b) in c) out with d) to
6. I, as a teacher, never make my students .... to help them understand.
   a) stressed b) stress c) stressful d) stresses
7. On applying for a job, you will need to give your address and other .... data.
   a) personal b) personally c) persons d) personality
8. Children must follow their parents' advice. The antonym of the word "follow" is "..................".
   a) pursue b) chase c) unite d) avoid
9. My favourite hobby is reading short stories. The synonym of "favourite" is "..............".
   a) preferred b) disliked c) detached d) neat
10. We enjoyed .... during our last holiday in Aswan.
    a) us b) ourselves c) ours d) selves



New in town

It's day one at a new school in a new town. You've got all the paper and pens[1] you need. You're wearing cool new clothes. But you don't know anyone and you're not sure where to go. Starting at a new school feels[2] so hard because you don't have any friends there to help you. It's very easy to feel stressed[3], but life will get easier. Here's some advice[4] to help you.

Don't take it for granted that other students will start a conversation.

Ask other people questions about themselves. Everyone likes talking about themselves. Try asking them about their favourite subjects or which sports they like and don't ask too many personal questions.

You can only make friends if you spend time with them! The best way to do this is to join clubs or do team sports you like. Go online or look at the noticeboard at your school and find out what's happening. If you're part of a team, your teammates will feel connected to you and that connection could become a friendship.

While you're busy talking to other students, don't forget to study. Remember to do[5] your homework so you don't have any problems with your teachers. Those teachers can also give you some advice on how to make friends and enjoy life in your new town. Talk to them too[6].



Notes on some sentences:

ملاحظات على بعض الجمل:

١- كلمة all يأتى بعدها اسم جمع يعد أو اسم لا يعد.

٢- يمكن أن تبدأ الجملة بـ Gerund وهو v-ing ويكون هو فاعل الجملة.

٣- الفعل feel يأتى بعده صفة وليس ظرف.

٤- كلمة advice اسم معنوى لا يعد وليس له جمع والمفرد منه a piece of advice.

٥- الفعل remember إذا جاء فى صيغة الأمر لابد أن يأتى بعده to + inf.

٦- تستخدم too فى نهاية الجمل المثبتة بمعنى (أيضًا).

Reading Text (2)

Email 1:

To : problems@teen-magazine.com
Subject : Help! I don't have any[1] friends at my new school!
Dear Aunt Carol,

I think it is difficult to make friends.

I don't have any friends at my new school. I am always on my own at break-time. Yesterday, I talked to a girl in my class. I asked her if she wanted to do some homework[2] with me but she said no.

I need some advice about how to make friends. Do you have any[3] advice for me?



Notes on some sentences: ملاحظات على بعض الجمل:

١- لاحظ استخدام any فى النفى سواء كان الاسم معدودًا أو غير معدود.
٢- كلمة homework اسم لا يعد وليس له جمع.
٣- لاحظ استخدام any فى السؤال.

Email 2:

To : problems@teen-magazine.com
Subject : Help! I'm really stressed!
Dear Aunt Carol,

I always work very hard at school, but I'm really stressed about some exams I have next week.

The first two exams are 3 hours long[1] and will be very difficult. The last exam is in a subject I'm not very good at. I've spent a lot of time studying in the library this week, but that hasn't helped me feel better.

I need some advice about how to relax, please.



Notes on some sentences: ملاحظات على بعض الجمل:

١- لاحظ هذا التعبير الذى يقصد به مدة ٣ ساعات (مدة + long).

Notes on Vocabulary

لاحظ الفرق بين الكلمات التالية:

1	look at ينظر إلى	I looked at the sea to relax.
	look for = search for يبحث عن	She looked for a new flat to buy last month.
	look up يبحث عن كلمة فى قاموس أو معلومة فى مرجع	Look the word up in your dictionary if you don't know its meaning.
	look forward to يتطلع إلى	My mother says she's looking forward to meeting you.
	look like يشبه	What did the man look like?
	look out = watch out احترس	Look out! There's a car coming.
	look after = take care of يعتنى بـ	Don't worry, I'll look after the kids tomorrow.
2	wear يرتدى (شكل الملابس كاملًا على الشخص)	We wear light clothes in summer.
	put on يقوم بارتداء (تعبر عن الحدث وليس نوع الملابس)	Put on your shoes. We are late for school.
	dress يرتدى (بدون مفعول)	I got up early, dressed and went to school.
	dress + مفعول يُلبس شخصًا لا يستطيع اللبس بنفسه	My wife dressed our daughter, Noha.
	(be) dressed in = wear يرتدى	She is dressed in a white jacket. = She is wearing a white jacket.
3	life الحياة بوجه عام	There is no life on the moon.
	a life وصف الحياة	We hope to live a better life.
	the life فترة حياة شخص / حيوان / طائر...	The life of blind people is difficult.
4	paper (uncountable noun) ورق (مادة خام)	Dictionaries are usually printed on thin paper.
	papers (n) جرائد / وثائق / أوراق رسمية	- I like to sit in bed and read the Friday papers. - The border guards stopped me and asked to see my papers.
	a paper صحيفة	My father likes to read a paper every day.

5	connected to متصل بـ (شيء يتصل مباشرة بشيء آخر مادى)	The printer is connected to the computer.
	connected with مرتبط بـ/له علاقة بـ (معنويًا)	Doctors believe that a lot of diseases are connected with pollution level.
	contact يتصل بـ/تواصل with/between وهنا تأخذ حرف الجر	- Is there a phone number where I can contact you? - We need contact with the outside world.
6	teenager المراهق	It is difficult to deal with teenagers nowadays.
	teenage (adj.) مراهق	It is difficult to deal with teenage students these days.
	teens سن المراهقة (ما بين ١٣ - ١٩ سنة)	Asmaa was in her teens when she broke her leg.

Vocabulary Check point 3

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I like to read a lot about .... of our famous scientists.
   a) life b) a life c) the life d) living
2. Yesterday, I had to stay home to look .... my sick aunt.
   a) for b) after c) up d) forward to
3. It is very kind of you to .... the little baby while I am washing the dishes.
   a) dress b) wear c) put on d) dress up
4. While walking in the park, I saw a girl in her ...., and she was crying.
   a) teenage b) teenagers c) teens d) tens
5. .... is full of ups and downs.
   a) The life b) A life c) Living d) Life
6. I keep my important .... in a safe in my office.
   a) paper b) papers c) paper's d) papers'
7. Young children need to contact .... people outside their families.
   a) with b) to c) by d) no word
8. .... to the internet is easier than before.
   a) Connect b) Connecting c) Connected d) Connects
9. I went to Luxor on a train. The journey was 5 ....
   a) hour's long b) hours tall c) long hours d) hours long
10. The best advice in my life .... from my grandfather.
   a) was b) were c) are d) have been



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Key Vocabulary, Reading & Workbook

1. Sometimes there is a clear .... between crime and poverty.
   a) communication b) connection c) prediction d) line
2. The headmaster of our school always writes his notices on a .... on the wall.
   a) table b) notebook c) noticeboard d) booklet
3. It is taken for .... that bullying is a bad behaviour which we all must change.
   a) denial b) granted c) refusal d) decided
4. I started walking more frequently on my doctor's ....
   a) connection b) stress c) advice d) magazine
5. Because of the internet, lots of people have lost the art of ....
   a) article b) conversation c) conservation d) magazine
6. Rashed .... his suit on special occasions only.
   a) gets b) puts c) wears d) joins
7. To get well soon, you should .... the instructions of your doctors.
   a) neglect b) ignore c) tell d) follow
8. Ronaldo's .... said that he helped them as a true leader.
   a) teammates b) classmates c) connections d) relatives
9. A good teacher is the one who gives students more .... about topics.
   a) friendship b) frustration c) information d) connection
10. Marwa always .... happy when doing tasks well.
    a) follows b) relaxes c) enjoys d) feels
11. I always .... with a cup of coffee after hard work.
    a) stress b) relax c) cool d) follow
12. Bus drivers must have more .... before they take their driving licence رخصة.
    a) practice b) conversation
    c) respect d) communication
13. I have read a very good .... about education in today's paper.
    a) article b) connection c) noticeboard d) film
14. I always benefit from my teacher's advice as it is really ....
    a) useless b) harmful c) useful d) deadly
15. It is disagreeable to .... anyone late at night for any reason.
    a) contact b) connect c) communicate d) link

16. Judges القضاة shouldn't let their .... feelings influence their decisions.
a) personnel b) personal c) personification d) person

17. In Egypt, most young people .... the army after finishing university.
a) leave b) get in c) join d) go

18. To be healthy, everyone should be able to remain .... under pressure.
a) cold b) nervous c) cool d) angry

19. Very few students passed the final exams with a .... "A" as they were so difficult.
a) grade b) degree c) certificate d) qualification

20. The music of today is very popular with .... It suits their language style.
a) teenage b) teens c) teen aging d) teenagers

21. It has become quite difficult to deal with .... children.
a) teenage b) teens c) teen aging d) teenagers

22. My .... position when I play football is a goalkeeper.
a) favourite b) cool c) stressed d) distant

Expressions, Idioms, Prepositions, Derivatives, Synonyms & Antonyms

23. The teaching profession is very ...., but it's the most important.
a) stress b) pleased c) stressed d) stressful

24. A different group of students clean the school yard after ....
a) time-break b) breakage c) break-time d) periods

25. "Gem" series is known for its .... exercises for all levels.
a) grade b) grading c) grades d) graded

26. Parents are stressed .... their children's education.
a) with b) about c) out d) to

27. .... sport every day is very useful to get healthy bodies.
a) Taking b) Doing c) Going d) Winning

28. I like students who depend on themselves and do their homework ....
a) lonely b) by them c) on my own d) on their own

29. My daughter is always busy .... for the exams.
a) studying b) to study c) to studying d) studied

30. We should all be good .... our families. They are the most important in life.
a) for b) to c) at d) about

31. As a result of modern technology, it has become easier to ....
a) walk online b) make online c) go online d) move online

32. It is .... to get enough sleep before the exam.
a) advice b) advise c) advisory d) advisable

33. I asked my children to .... heavy clothes if they wanted to go out.
a) put b) wear c) dress d) feel

34. I reached the station 10 minutes late, but .... the train was still there.
a) unfortunately b) likely c) unluckily d) fortunately

35. Prepare yourself; please .... your jacket and follow me. Longman
a) put out b) put c) dress d) put on

36. The manager is always busy; it isn't easy to .... him now. Longman
a) contact b) connect c) communicate d) correct

37. The police searched the house to .... the stolen jewellery. Longman
a) look out b) look at c) look for d) search

38. I usually .... my pen-friend by both phone and email. (المنوفية - منوف)
a) commute b) connect c) communicate d) contact

39. Don't think about what I've told you, please take it for .... (الجيزة - العمرانية)
a) grant b) granted c) guarantee d) grain

40. Doctors think that there is a .... between smoking and cancer. (سوهاج - أخميم)
a) communication b) conversion c) connection d) ecosystem

41. It's .... for granted that peace leads to construction and stability. (الإسكندرية - ادارة وسط)
a) taken b) took c) taking d) takes

Choose the TWO (2) correct answers of the FIVE (5) options:

42. It isn't too late. You can .... now. Longman
a) begin b) stop c) make d) start e) do

43. You must relax before any interview. The antonyms of the word "relax" are ....
a) irritate b) chase c) worry d) detest e) calm

44. Sherief must be happy because he has .... his final exams.
a) passed b) succeeded c) failed d) succeeded in e) managed

45. My father managed to do all his work .... No one helped him.
a) lonely b) of his own c) on his own d) only e) alone

46. Policemen face hard situations, and they deal with them. The synonyms of the word "face" are ....
a) confront b) encounter c) withdraw d) irritate e) detest

47. They followed the plan that the manager had worked out. The antonyms of the word "followed" are ....
a) pursued b) chased c) neglected d) succeeded e) avoided

B Language

1 Indefinite articles (a/an)
أدوات النكـرة

تستـخـدم (a/ an) قبل الاسـم المـفرد المـعـدود، ولـكن متـى تـسـتـخدم كل منـهـما؟ لاحـظ الآتـى:

A

• تستخدم قبل الاسم المفرد الذى يبدأ بصوت ساكـن.

a boy/ a house/ a friend/ a table/ a problem/ a car

لاحـظ

1 تستخدم a قبل الاسم المفرد فى الكلمات التى تبدأ بحروف متحركة ولكن تنطق كأنها (u) مثل حروف (e - eu - ew - y).

a unit/ a university/ a uniform/ a union/ a European citizen/ a useful tip/ a ewe نعجـة

2 تستخدم a قبل الاسم المفرد فى الكلمات التى تبدأ بحرف (o) وينطق كأنه (w).

a one-way street/ a one-pound coin

An

• تستخدم قبل الاسم المفرد الذى يبدأ بصوت متحرك.

an apple/ an eagle/ an ice cream/ an orange/ an umbrella

لاحـظ

• تستخدم an قبل الاسم المفرد الذى يبدأ بحرف ساكن غير منطوق ويليه صوت متحرك.

an hour/ an honest man

تستـخـدم (a/ an) فى الحـالات التـاليـة:

A/ An

1 قبـل الاسـم النـكرة الذى يذكـر فى الجملة لأول مـرة.

• When I was in the shop, I saw a boy with his two sisters.

2 قبـل الوظـائف والمـهن والحـرف.

• My father is a carpenter. • She is an engineer.

3 قبـل تعـبيرات الكمـية والأرقـام مـثل:

a pair زوج - a couple زوج - a hundred مـائـة - a thousand ألـف - a quarter ربـع - a dozen دسـتـة

• My son bought a dozen of pens. (This means that my son bought 12 pens.)

4 قبـل اسـم مفـرد عـنـد تعـريف الكـلمـات.

• A teacher is someone whose job is to teach others, especially in a school.

• An egg is a round object with a hard surface, that contains a baby bird, snake, insect, etc.

5 مع تعـبيرات السـرعة والزمـن والنسـبة والمسـافة والسـعـروعـدد المـرات بمعـنـى (فـى: per).

• 100 pounds a kilo (This means that 100 pounds per kilo.)

• 90 kilometres an hour • 3 hours a day • 2 times a week

6 قبل الصفة إذا جاء بعدها اسم مفرد يعد.

اسم مفرد + الصفة + (a/ an)

My father bought a new book. I met an American friend.

أما إذا كان الاسم الموصوف اسمًا لا يعد أو جمعًا لا نستخدم (a/ an).

My father bought new books. He gave me useful advice.

7 مع الاختصارات التى تنطق كحروف منفصلة نستخدم (a/ an) حسب بداية نطق الحرف.

I sent an SMS to my friend yesterday.

I downloaded an MP3 song online last week.

Dad has a DVD, so he always buys CDs.

2 The definite article (the) أداة التعريف

تستخدم (the) فى الحالات التالية:

The

1 قبل الأسماء الفريدة من نوعها (الموجود منها واحد فقط).

the sun the sky the earth

the universe the North Pole

2 قبل الاسم الذى تم ذكره للمرة الثانية.

I read a book. The book was really interesting.

3 قبل صفات الدرجة الثالثة (صيغة التفضيل).

Ali is the tallest boy at his school.

أما فى حالة وجود صفات الملكية (my – his – her – its – our – their – your) أو ('s) للملكية لا نستخدم قبلها (the).

Nora is my best friend at school. Ali is my father's oldest uncle.

لاحظ التعبير التالى:

The (more/ adj صفة + er)..., the (more/ adj صفة + er) ... كلما ...، كلما ....

The more I add sugar to my tea, the more I like it.

The older I get, the smarter I am.

4 قبل أسماء أو اختصارات البلاد التى تحتوى على:

Republic جمهورية / Union اتحاد / Kingdom مملكة / State ولاية /
Federation اتحاد / Emirates إمارات

the Arab Republic of Egypt = the A.R.E.

the Kingdom of Saudi Arabia = the K.S.A.

the United States of America = the U.S.A.

أو قبل أسماء الدول الجمع ... مثل:

the Netherlands هولندا the Philippines الفلبين

5 قبـل أسمــاء الأنهــار والبحـار والمحيطات والقنـوات ومجمـوعـات البحيرات وسلاسـل الجبال الجـمـع والكـتب المقـدسـة والصحارى ومجموعة الجـزر الجـمـع والصـحـف.

- the Red Sea
- the River Nile
- the Suez Canal
- the Pacific Ocean
- the Alps
- the Great Lakes
- the Sahara
- the Quran
- the Times
- the Caribbean Islands

أما إذا جاء الجبل مفردًا أو جاءت البحيرة مفردة أو الجزيرة مفردة ... فلا نستخدم (the).

- Lake Nasser بحيـرة ناصـر
- Kilimanjaro جبـل كلمنجارو
- Everest جبل إفرست
- Seychelles جـزيـرة سيـشـل

6 قبل الآلات الموسيقية إذا جاء قبلها: (play - listen to - learn - teach - study - practise)

- I like listening to the piano with my family.
- Hany enjoys playing the guitar every day.

7 قبـل الاختـراعات والاكتشـافات للحـديث عنها بشـكل عـام.

- The smartphone is one of the most important inventions.

أما إذا جاء اسم الاختراع جمعًا فلا يأتى قبله أداة.

- Smartphones become necessary in our lives.

أما إذا قصدنا الجهاز وليس الاختراع بشكل عام يسبق بـ (a/ an).

- My father bought a smartphone yesterday.

8 قبـل فصائل الحيـوانات أو الطيـور للحـديث عنها بشـكل عـام.

- The lion is very strong.

أما إذا جاء اسم الحيوان أو الطائر جمعـًا فلا نضع أداة.

- Lions are very strong animals.

أما إذا قصدنا عددًا واحدًا من فصيلة الحيوان أو الطائر يسبق بـ (a/ an).

- I saw a lion at the zoo yesterday.

9 قبل الصـفـة للإشـارة إلى الجـمـع.

the rich = rich people الأغـنـيـاء / the poor = poor people الفـقـراء /
the Chinese الصينيون / the disabled = disabled people المعاقــون

- We collected a lot of money to help the poor.

10 مع أسـمـاء الهيئات والمنظمات والمـناخ.

the government/ the police/ the United Nations/ the climate/ the weather/
the press/ the army/ the environment

11 قبل بعض الكلمات التى تفيد الترتيب ... مثل:

first/ second/ third/ only/ last

Mohammed was the last one to arrive.

It is the only chance for you.

12 عندما نقصد شخصًا واحدًا لا يوجد غيره.

the President of Egypt/ the King of Denmark/ the Queen of England

13 مع بعض الأماكن (عادة أماكن التسلية والترفيه والخدمات) ... مثل:

the cinema/ the theatre/ the club/ the library/ the shop/ the post office

14 للإشارة إلى فترات زمنية وخاصة عقد من الزمان (فترة ١٠ أعوام) أو قرن (فترة ١٠٠ عام).

the twenties العشرينيات / the sixties الستينيات / the nineties التسعينيات

I like reading for the great novelists of the 1900s.

My mother hated the fashions of the 1960s.

15 قبل اسم العائلة الجمع للإشارة إلى كل أفراد العائلة.

The Johnsons have lived in this house for many years.

16 قبل ذكر التواريخ إذا بدأنا بالأرقام الترتيبية Ordinal Numbers مثل the 1st/2nd/3rd ...

I married on the 3rd of November, 1990.

17 قبل أسماء الأمراض ... مثل:

the measles الحصبة/ the flu الإنفلونزا/ the mumps النكاف/ the bubonic plague الطاعون الدبلى

If one of the children got the measles, we all got the measles.

لاحظ أن هناك بعض الأمراض لا يأتى قبلها أداة ... مثل:

AIDS/ cancer/ malaria

There are several medications that can be used to treat malaria.

18 عند الإضافة (إضافة اسم لاسم آخر وهو ما يقابل المضاف إليه فى اللغة العربية).

The **growth** of the steel industry is very big in our country.

The **arrival** of our guests was very late.

19 للتخصيص.

The man who stole my money was my neighbour.

My brother lives in the big villa with a black door.

Language Check point 4

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. You must never look at .... sun directly during the eclipse.
   a) a b) an c) the d) no article
2. Hend is .... university student.
   a) a b) an c) the d) no article
3. I'll buy you .... new bag which you saw online.
   a) a b) an c) the d) no article
4. We dream of climbing .... Alps one day.
   a) a b) an c) the d) no article
5. Although my father is .... engineer, I don't like maths.
   a) a b) an c) the d) no article

لا نستخدم أدوات نكرة أو معرفة في هذه الحالات:

No article

1 عند التحدث عن الجمع بوجه عام دون تخصيص.

Children are sometimes noisy.
Vitamins are very important for our bodies.
Men should be patient and hardworking.

2 مع الوجبات بوجه عام دون تخصيص.

breakfast/ lunch/ dinner/ supper

I usually have breakfast at 7 o'clock.

3 مع الأسماء المعنوية بوجه عام.

advice/ freedom/ love/ sadness/ happiness/ beauty/ education/ success

All countries try to develop education.

4 مع الألقاب المتبوعة باسم علم.

King Lear/ Professor Zewail/ President Nasser/ Doctor Magdy Yacoub

5 مع كلمة home بعد أفعال (go – come – return).

Mona returned home early last night.

لاحظ الجمل التالية:

There's a home for the elderly at the end of our street.
Ahmed moved out of the family home a year ago.

6 مع كلمة work إذا جاءت بمعنى مكان العمل.

I usually go to work in my car.

لاحظ الجملة التالية:

The work here is very tiring. (وهنا يقصد طبيعة العمل وليس مكان العمل)

7 قبل الأسماء التى لا تعد والكميات ومنها:

أسماء الطعام والشراب	oil/ water/ milk/ money/ meat/ juice, etc.
المواد الدراسية	English/ Arabic/ science/ history/ physics, etc.
المواد الخام	glass/ wood/ gold/ silver/ paper, etc.
الألعاب الرياضية	football/ tennis/ basketball/ volleyball/ swimming, etc.

8 مع أسماء القارات. **Africa/ Europe/ Asia/ South America**

9 مع أسماء الدول والقرى. **Egypt/Alexandria/ London/ New York Egypt/ Spain/ Italy**

10 مع أسماء اللغات. **English/ French/ Turkish/ Chinese**

أما إذا جاء بعد اسم اللغة كلمة (language) نستخدم (the):

the English **language** / the Turkish **language**

11 مع كلمة space إذا جاءت بمعنى الفضاء.

I like reading about the history of space travel.

أما إذا كان المقصود مكانًا فارغًا فنستخدم قبلها the:

The space between the house and the garage is very big.

12 مع الأماكن الآتية إذا كان الذهاب إليها أو استخدامها للغرض الذى أنشئت من أجله.

I go to school to learn. **(I am a student.)**

He made an accident and was taken to hospital. **(He was a patient.)**

He committed a crime and was sent to prison. **(He was a prisoner.)**

I went to bed early. **(I went to sleep.)**

أما إذا كان الذهاب إليها لغرض آخر ... فنستخدم (the):

I went to the school to meet the headmaster. **(I was a visitor.)**

He went to the prison to visit his friend. **(He was a visitor.)**

My sister is standing by the bed. **(The word "bed" here means a piece of furniture.)**

Language Check point 5

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. There are millions of stars in .... space.

a) a b) an c) the d) no article

2. My father went to .... school as the headmaster wanted to meet him.

a) a b) an c) the d) no article

3. Hatem always goes to .... school wearing a uniform.

a) a b) an c) the d) no article

4. I bought a good basket made of .... plastic.

a) a b) an c) the d) no article

5. .... Egypt is a pioneering country in Africa and the Middle East.

a) A b) An c) The d) No article



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Ali never tells lies. He is .... honest boy.
   a) a b) an c) the d) no article
2. My family members are interested in visiting .... United Kingdom.
   a) a b) an c) the d) no article
3. Nagwa likes playing .... violin before sleeping.
   a) a b) an c) the d) no article
4. Everyone should sleep at least 7 hours .... day to be fit.
   a) a b) an c) the d) no article
5. I like .... physics although it is a difficult subject.
   a) a b) an c) the d) no article
6. We all know that .... brain can't be transplanted.
   a) a b) an c) the d) no article
7. It is .... first time that we have seen the temples of Luxor.
   a) a b) an c) the d) no article
8. Don't move! There is .... snake near you!
   a) a b) an c) the d) no article
9. I work in .... European company located in .... Cairo.
   a) a/no article b) an/no article
   c) a/the d) no article/no article
10. The charity is trying to raise money for .... disabled.
    a) a b) an c) the d) no article
11. My son had a nightmare yesterday. In .... nightmare, he was kidnapped by a gang.
    a) a b) an c) the d) no article
12. I went shopping and bought .... computer for my son.
    a) a b) an c) the d) no article
13. .... computers are necessary for all kinds of jobs all over the world.
    a) A b) An c) The d) no article
14. I have just received .... SMS from my best friend.
    a) a b) an c) the d) no article
15. .... made the world a smaller place.
    a) The planes have b) The plane has
    c) Some planes have d) This plane has
16. .... one-way road is needed to be constructed on the west bank of Aswan.
    a) A b) An c) The d) No article
17. Can you pick .... children up after work, please?
    a) a b) an c) the d) no article

18. When someone had broken into my house, I called .... police.
a) a b) an c) the d) no article

19. The man who stole the car was taken to .... prison.
a) a b) an c) the d) no article

20. They are talking to .... 8-year-old boy called Ali.
a) a b) an c) the d) no article

21. Carpenters use .... glass and .... wood to make windows.
a) no article/the b) a/no article
c) an/no article d) no article/no article

22. .... Great Lakes are in .... North America.
a) The/no article b) A/no article
c) An/no article d) no article/no article

23. The journey to .... Cairo by train takes .... hour.
a) the/an b) a/no article c) no article/a d) no article/an

24. Mr Nidal speaks Italian well. This means that he speaks .... well.
a) an Italian language b) the Italian language
c) Italian language d) an Italian

25. The .... you drive, ... safer you are. Longman
a) slower/- b) slowest/the c) slower/a d) slower/the

26. Nothing in .... life is better than .... peace of mind. Longman
a) a/- b) -/a c) the/- d) -/-

27. I read .... amazing article about .... works of Taha Hussein. Longman
a) -/the b) a/the c) an/the d) an/-

28. Fortunately, I found .... room on .... bus going to my university. Longman
a) no/the b) a/- c) -/the d) a/the

29. I always have .... lunch with my family at home. However, I will never forget .... lunch I had with my friends on the beach last month. Longman
a) the/no article b) no article/no article
c) the/the d) no article/the

30. I'd like .... new information about this project. (القليوبية - إدارة كفر شكر)
a) a b) an c) the d) no article

31. .... supermarket where I did the shopping was very crowded. (الجيزة - إدارة البدرشين)
a) A b) An c) The d) No article

32. France is a country in .... European Union. (المنوفية - إدارة منوف)
a) a b) an c) the d) no article

33. Jim Hawkins as well as the pirates sailed to the treasure island on .... Hispaniola. (القليوبية - إدارة شبين القناطر)
a) no article b) a c) an d) the

34. We have .... lunch in the afternoon. (الشرقية - إدارة فاقوس)
a) no article b) a c) the d) an



Take a test

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Vocabulary

1. Tasneem got a part-time job to earn some .... money.
   a) useful b) extra c) extended d) stressed
2. I read a/an .... about global warming in the newspaper today.
   a) title b) noticeboard c) article d) information
3. Teachers always .... the importance of studying regularly.
   a) stressed b) stress c) stressful d) stresses
4. This film is a .... of mine. I like it so much that I watched it 5 times.
   a) distracted b) favourite c) favour d) personal
5. I like all my .... in the school football team.
   a) teammates b) teenagers c) team sports d) colleagues
6. It is important to learn, but it is more important to put what we have learnt into ....
   a) practise b) mind c) grade d) practice
7. Football is a team sport, but swimming is a/an .... one.
   a) alone b) group c) individual d) pair
8. I saw Mona and Safaa sitting in the corner deep in ....
   a) articles b) advice c) friendship d) conversation
9. .... your shoes quickly and hurry to meet your mum on the stairs.
   a) Dress up b) Take off c) Put on d) Wear down
10. Zizo is going to .... our local sports club to play football there.
    a) practice b) face c) follow d) join
11. The company is proud of its qualified ....
    a) personnel b) personal c) personification d) person
12. I hate using my car during rush hours. This makes me ....
    a) happy b) stressed c) stressful d) dressed
13. In our house, our relationship is based on .... and respect. We are all friends.
    a) teenager b) accusation c) suspect d) friendship
14. Young children are always in need of having contact .... others.
    a) with b) no word c) of d) by
15. Marwan always finds it easy to .... friends at school. He is very sociable.
    a) give b) take c) do d) make

Language

16. I know that .... Everest is the highest mountain in the world.

a) a b) an c) the d) no article

17. I think Omar Khairat is .... best musician in Egypt.

a) a b) an c) the d) no article

18. I hope .... exam we are going to have tomorrow will be easy.

a) no article b) the c) an d) a

19. I often like to listen to .... music when I have free time.

a) a b) an c) the d) no article

20. Dad goes to .... work at 7, so he doesn't have .... breakfast with us.

a) no article/the b) no article/a
c) no article/no article d) the/a

21. What do you know about ....?

a) an ant b) ants c) the ants d) ant

22. My son, Mohammed, plays .... drum very well.

a) a b) an c) the d) no article

23. There were over .... thousand people at the party of the new singer.

a) a b) an c) the d) no article

24. The Egyptian government tries to give due care to .... education.

a) a b) an c) the d) no article

25. To get the job, you need .... experience with the computer.

a) a b) an c) the d) no article

26. I am going to spend .... mid-year holiday in Alexandria with my family.

a) a b) an c) the d) no article

27. I'm .... teacher of English and I often listen to the radio in .... English.

a) the/no article b) a/no article
c) a/the d) no article/no article

28. Mr Hassan is .... better of the two teachers.

a) a b) an c) the d) no article

29. .... more you study, the more you get marks.

a) A b) An c) The d) No article

30. England and France are .... European countries.

a) a b) an c) the d) no article


Watch a video



A Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary — المفردات الرئيسية

bullying (n) تنمر/بلطجة	cheat (v) – ed يغش	phone-in (n) برنامج إذاعى أو تلفزيونى (يُسمح فيه بتلقى الاتصالات)
bully (v) - ~~y~~ied (n) يتنمر/متنمر/بلطجى	nursing (n) التمريض	police officer (n) ضابط شرطة

Vocabulary on Listening Texts — مفردات نصوص الاستماع

behave (v) – d يتصرف	fight (v) يتشاجر/يتعارك	lonely (adj) وحيدًا
continue (v) – d يستمر	hate (v) (n) – d يكره/الكره	nasty (adj) مؤذٍ/ردىء الطبع
copying (n) نسخ	hide (v) يخفى	negative (adj) سلبى
debate (n) مناظرة	hostess (n) مضيفة	radio show (n) برنامج إذاعى
effect (n) تأثير	host (n) مضيف	rucksack (n) حقيبة الظهر
experiences (n) خبرات حياتية	list (n) (v) – ed قائمة/يعد قائمة	scared (adj) خائف/مذعور

Workbook Vocabulary — مفردات كتاب التدريبات

exciting (adj) مثير	drop (v) – ped يُسقِط	soon (adv) سريعًا/حالًا
laugh (v) (n) – ed يضحك / ضحك	social media وسائل التواصل الاجتماعى	

Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions — التعبيرات والمصطلحات وحروف الجر

(be) on the line على الخط (خط التليفون)	different to/from مختلف عن	list in يدرج فى قائمة
a 15-year-old boy ولد عمره ١٥ عامًا	get along well with يتناغم بشكل جيد مع	make ... clear يوضح
add to يضيف إلى	get good marks يحصل على درجات جيدة	nice to لطيف مع
any more = any longer مجددًا/بعد الآن (تفيد عدم تكرار حدث ما)	do nothing لا يفعل شيئًا	on social media على مواقع التواصل الاجتماعى
as far as I'm concerned على قدر اهتمامى	laugh at يسخر من	point at يشير إلى

start conversations with يبدأ محادثات مع	take a photo of يلتقط صورة لـ	take turns to يتبادل الأدوار
sure about متأكد من	take time to يستغرق وقتا لكى	

Vocabulary Check point 1

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A .... used to take our food and money in school by force.
   a) rucksack b) bully c) host d) director
2. Ali's father was a/an .... in the Egyptian navy البحرية.
   a) officer b) pilot c) cheat d) bully
3. Don't look at my answer sheet. That's ....
   a) cheating b) cheat c) cheated d) cheater
4. It is polite to write a thank-you letter to your .... after this kind welcome.
   a) guest b) host c) bully d) cheat
5. The secretary .... wisely, so he is going to be promoted.
   a) behaves b) cheats c) hides d) deletes
6. I think that we should set a date and meet ....
   a) hard b) scarcely c) soon d) lonely
7. The young lady welcomed her guests warmly. She was a very good ....
   a) people b) guest c) bully d) hostess
8. Akmal's name is in the waiting .... for the free operations.
   a) cheat b) list c) lest d) media
9. My colleague is so funny and he always makes me ....
   a) laugh b) fight c) scared d) hate
10. Aya .... kindly with her family over how to spend the holiday.
   a) cheats b) debates c) fights d) controls

Derivatives المشتقات

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
affect	يؤثر على	effect effectiveness	تأثير/أثر فاعلية/كفاءة/جدوى	effective	مؤثر/فعال
behave	يتصرف/يسلك	behaviour	سلوك/تصرف	behavioural	سلوكى
cheat	يغش	cheat/cheater cheating	غشاش/مخادع غش/تضليل	cheated	مظلوم/مخدوع

fight	يحارب/يكافح/يتشاجر	fighting fighter	اشتباك/مكافحة محارب/مكافح	------------------------	
host	يستضيف	hostess host	مضيفة مضيف/حشد	hospitable	مضياف
laugh	يضحك	laugh laughter	ضحك	laughable	مثير للضحك/هزلى
police	يحفظ الأمن والنظام	police policing	شرطة ضبط الأمن والنظام	------------------------	
nurse	يعتنى ب	nurse nursing	ممرضة التمريض	------------------------	

Examples

تعلم أن تستخدم ما تحفظ، لاحظ الأمثلة التالية:

Pollution affects our health badly. (v)
- The effect of pollution leads to severe diseases. (n)
- We need effective laws to reduce pollution. (adj)

Nermeen never cheats in exams. (v)
- Abbas is a cheat; he adds water to the milk he sells. (n)
- I felt cheated when I bought milk mixed with water. (adj)

We should behave wisely in public transport. (v)
- Our behaviour shows how polite we are. (n)
- The manager didn't choose Kamal because of his behavioural problems. (adj)

Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	الكلمة	Synonym المرادف	Antonym	المضاد
continue	يستمر	resume/proceed	stop/cease	يتوقف
exciting	مثير	inspiring/thrilling	boring/dull	ممل
hide	يخفى	conceal/cover	reveal/uncover	يكشف
host	مضيف/مقدم البرامج	presenter/moderator	guest/visitor	ضيف/زائر
nasty	مقرف/كريه	disgusting/offensive	agreeable/nice	مقبول/لطيف
negative	سلبى	bad/harmful	positive/beneficial	إيجابى/مفيد
scared	مذعور	frightened/afraid/fearful	unafraid/bold/brave	غير خائف/شجاع

Vocabulary Check point 2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. As far as I'm ....; the government is working hard to help us live well.
   a) amazed b) concerned
   c) concerning d) frightened
2. The phone rang and I replied, but there was no one .... the line.
   a) at b) on c) in d) with
3. I asked my colleague to .... a photo of me and our manager.
   a) have b) make c) take d) do
4. To answer all the questions, the students took ....
   a) after b) off c) turns d) ahead
5. .... is very important for any area especially the rough ones مناطق الإجرام.
   a) Police b) Polices
   c) Policemen d) Policing
6. Smoking has too many negative effects on our health. The antonym of "negative" is "..................".
   a) positive b) harmful c) bad d) horrible
7. Ayman couldn't hide himself from me. I could see him. The synonym of the word "hide" is "..................".
   a) reveal b) cover
   c) uncover d) adore
8. We all like our teacher as he is clever at .... everything clear for us.
   a) making b) taking
   c) doing d) getting
9. I get angry .... those who treat their kids harshly.
   a) to b) about
   c) of d) with
10. *Treasure Island* is an exciting story; I like it. The synonym of the word "exciting" is "..................".
    a) agreeable b) thrilling
    c) calm d) dull

Listening Text (1)

Scan & listen


Bullying

Radio show host: Good evening, everyone. Welcome to the show. Tonight, we're talking about bullying. Unfortunately, a lot of teenagers are bullied at school, and this can have some very negative effects on them. We're going to talk to a 15-year-old boy[1] called Ali, who is being bullied[2]. Ali ... are you on the line?

Ali: Hi, Seleem. How are you?

Radio show host: I'm well[3], thank you. How are you this evening?

Ali: I'm OK, but last week was really hard. Two boys in my class are bullying me because I am not very good at football. I like to play chess more than football. Last week, they hid my rucksack. It had all my school books in it. I hate going[4] to school now!

Radio show host: Oh, no! That's terrible. Did you tell a teacher?

Ali: No, I didn't. I was too scared. I've just moved to this town, so I don't know the teachers very well.

Radio show host: Well, Ali, I really think you should talk to a teacher. Your teacher can talk to the bullies and make it clear that they shouldn't behave like this. If you do nothing, the bullying will just continue.

Ali: Yes ... you're right ... There's one teacher that I get along well with. I'll talk to him.



ملاحظات على بعض الجمل:

١- هذه صفة مركبة و هى تستخدم أكثر من كلمة متصلين بـ(-) (hyphen) ولا يجمع الاسم داخلها 15-year-old boy.

٢- لاحظ استخدام المبنى للمجهول فى المضارع المستمر .Obj. + am/is/are + being + P.P

٣- لاحظ هذا التعبير وهنا تستخدم well كصفة.

٤- الفعل hate يأتى بعده v-ing أو .to + inf ولا يوجد اختلاف فى المعنى.



Listening Text (2)

Moving to a New Town

Ola : So, do you think moving to a new school in another town is a good thing or a bad thing for teenagers?

Lina: As far as I'm concerned, it's not a good idea. If you move to a new school, you have to leave your old friends behind[1] and it's really difficult to make new friends.

Ola : I'm not so sure about that. I think you can make new friends if you're nice to other people and start conversations with them. For example, I'm sure you would make lots of new friends!

Lina: That's true. It is possible to make new friends, but it takes time. You'll be really lonely for the first few months.

Ola : In my opinion, it's a good experience to have[2] because it makes you stronger.

Lina: I know that it can make people stronger, but I would prefer to just stay with the people I know.



Notes on some sentences: ملاحظات على بعض الجمل:

١- لاحظ هذا التعبير الذى يعنى (يترك خلفه ويرحل).

٢- هنا تم حذف باقى الجملة بعد have والمعنى واضح لأنها ذكرت بين المتكلمين سابقًا.

Workbook Text



Friends

Maged : Hassan is a good friend. Last week, however, he borrowed my phone without asking[1]. Then he dropped the phone. Fortunately, the phone did not break[2] but I was very angry with him. Now he's not talking to me.

Omar : Fawzi always gets good marks at school, but he is not always a good student. He often tries to make us all laugh. Last week, he was talking in a lesson and the teacher was angry with him. He had to leave the classroom. Now he doesn't want to make us laugh any more[3].

Hoda : There is a girl in my class and she always says unkind things about me. My friend tells me that she is also saying things about me on social media. Last week, she took a photo of me without asking. Today she was pointing at me and laughing with her friends. It makes me feel very unhappy.



Notes on some sentences: ملاحظات على بعض الجمل:

١- بعد without يأتى v + ing.

٢- الفعل break هنا بمعنى ينكسر وليس يكسر.

٣- تستخدم any more فى نهاية الجمل المنفية بمعنى لم يعد مرة أخرى.

Notes on Vocabulary

لاحظ الفرق بين الكلمات التالية:

1	**debate** مناظرة (جدال) غالبًا أطراف الجدال مختلفون	The law was passed after a long and sometimes angry debate.
	discussion مناقشة (إعطاء آراء عن شيء مهم)	After a long discussion with her father, she decided not to take the job.
2	**too = as well** في نهاية الجملة المثبتة بمعنى أيضًا	I like English, and he likes it too. I will travel to Paris as well.
	either بمعنى أيضًا في نهاية الجملة المنفية	I don't like English, and he doesn't like it either.
3	**move to** ينتقل إلى	I've just moved to this town.
	move in يسكن في مسكن جديد	We moved in a new house.
	move out ينتقل من بيته	We moved out to live in a new flat.
	move off يبدأ رحلته	I waved to my friends as the bus moved off.
4	**drop v. (ped)** يسقِط شيئًا	My daughter dropped the phone.
	fall v. (fell - fallen) يسقُط	The phone fell on the floor.

Vocabulary Check point 3

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Mr Hekal accidently .... his phone when he was leaning out of the boat.
   a) fell b) picked c) debated d) dropped
2. I don't eat lamb meat لحم الضأن, I can't stand its soup, ...
   a) too b) also c) either d) again
3. What a pity مأساة! People left their homes .... and lived in tents because of the floods.
   a) behind b) across c) away d) off
4. Hana is very clever and Mona is clever ....
   a) too b) either c) neither d) to
5. We left our old house and moved .... a new house in Cairo.
   a) at b) off c) with d) in
6. Did you know? A .... boy took his father's phone and sold it to his friend.
   a) 12 year old b) 12-year-old c) 12-years d) 12-years-old
7. While I was running, I .... and broke my arm.
   a) dropped b) fell c) felt d) picked



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Key Vocabulary, Listening & Workbook

1. The little boy hates school as he suffers from .... by other children there.
   a) bullied b) bullying c) hosting d) pulling
2. Nancy tried to .... during her exams, but she was caught and punished.
   a) behave b) beat c) cheat d) wear
3. I telephoned and expressed my opinion about the loss of our team in a .... that was shown on TV.
   a) phone-in b) phone-up c) phone-out d) phone-by
4. Our survey indicates that one in four children is .... at school.
   a) cheated b) hidden c) bullied d) bullying
5. Those who have cancer always .... it with bravery.
   a) hate b) fight c) host d) affect
6. The child was .... when he saw a wild dog in the street.
   a) nasty b) interested c) scared d) exciting
7. My father's words have .... me and my lifestyle.
   a) affected b) effective c) defected d) effected
8. My father's advice had a strong .... on me and my lifestyle.
   a) debate b) host c) acting d) effect
9. It is easier to have a lot of friends through .... media channels.
   a) society b) sociable c) community d) social
10. Jana hopes to be an air .... when she graduates.
   a) host b) guest c) hostess d) hostage
11. There must be a punishment for those who .... what is on other books illegally.
   a) copy b) remove c) list d) neglect
12. Dalia .... eating meat or chicken when they are not fresh. She will never do.
   a) likes b) prefers c) objects d) hates
13. There has been a lot of .... about the impact of the internet on education.
   a) chat b) passion c) debate d) media
14. The boys put a spider in their friend's clothes for a ....
   a) love b) laugh c) smile d) hate
15. To .... is the last choice when I demand my right.
   a) laugh b) hate c) fight d) host

16. Sama is learning foreign languages and Mido is doing this, ...
a) either b) too c) neither d) also

17. Travelling has many benefits including having new ....
a) experiences b) experiments c) experts d) conversations

18. You have to .... the names of the students alphabetically أبجديًا.
a) list b) contain c) last d) drag

19. If you are .... to your classmates, you'll be punished.
a) lonely b) wonderful c) nasty d) tasty

20. Since my father's death, I have felt very ....
a) laughable b) only c) lonely d) lovely

21. The film was so .... that I watched it twice.
a) negative b) scared c) acting d) exciting

Expressions, Idioms, Prepositions, Derivatives, Synonyms & Antonyms

22. The minister tried to .... it clear when explaining the situation.
a) take b) make c) do d) point

23. Haneen has decided to be a .... because she likes helping people.
a) nurse b) nursing c) nursery d) nurses

24. Haneen has decided to go into .... because she likes helping people.
a) nurse b) nursing c) nursery d) nurses

25. Salma is a true .... who could beat her disease.
a) fight b) fighting c) fighter d) fought

26. I am not sure .... what I saw on the street yesterday.
a) for b) that c) with d) about

27. Customers started to take .... at the checkout خزينة الحساب.
a) turns b) parts c) places d) heads

28. A good teacher is the one who can get .... with his students.
a) up b) together c) away d) along

29. Don't laugh .... the way Sayed walks. It's a disability.
a) in b) at c) on d) about

30. During the school trip, we .... a lot of wonderful photos.
a) made b) took c) listed d) did

31. The medicine I have taken has a positive .... on me.
a) effect b) affect c) effective d) effectiveness

32. Hurry up, the manager of the company is .... the line. He wants to talk to you.
a) at b) off c) on d) in

33. Mr Ashraf is very .... He is generous with his guests.
a) host b) hostess c) hosting d) hospitable

34. Sadly, the rash driver hit a five-...................-old boy while he was crossing the street. Longman
a) years b) year c) year's d) years'

35. I had no friends in my new school, so I felt really .... for the first month. Longman
a) only b) lonely c) alone d) sadly

36. As far as I am ...., honesty is the basis of trade. Longman
a) concerned b) concerning c) concerns d) concern

37. She kept .... at me and laughing with her friends. This made me feel very unhappy. Longman
a) dealing b) listening c) smiling d) pointing

38. This man has spoken for a long time, we need to .... turns to speak. (محافظة المنيا)
a) take b) make c) do d) see

39. When you use your muscles to scare someone, this is called .... (القليوبية - القناطر الخيرية)
a) tolerance b) patience c) bullying d) kindness

40. She needs some advice on how to .... friends. (الأقصر)
a) make b) take c) dig d) do

Choose the TWO (2) correct answers of the FIVE (5) options:

41. What are the negative sides of shopping online? 'Negative' is opposite in meaning to '...................'. Longman
a) cheap b) beneficial c) different d) available e) positive

42. Kareman is .... the old man whose sons hired her.
a) taking b) caring for c) nursing d) taking care e) looking for

43. Don't let that nasty old dog come up here. The synonyms of the word "nasty" are ....
a) thrilling b) exhausting c) disgusting d) agreeable e) offensive

44. Sohaila continued to work after she had her baby. The synonyms of the word "continued" are ....
a) resumed b) concealed c) ceased d) proceeded e) adored

45. Ramy was .... when a black cat went downstairs fast beside his feet.
a) frightened b) scared c) negative d) effective e) nasty

46. I hate .... horror films as they make me frightened and worried.
a) watching b) to watching c) watch d) watches e) to watch

47. Ramadan's way of thinking is different .... his brothers who are businessmen.
a) with b) to c) at d) from e) of

B Language

Countable and Uncountable nouns
الأسماء المعدودة وغير المعدودة

Countable nouns الأسماء المعدودة

هى أسماء لها شكل مفرد ويأتى قبلها (a/an) أو شكل جمع.

Examples

1. Regular plural (add s) الجمع بإضافة s

a car	a dog	an apple
2 cars	2 dogs	2 apples

2. Nouns ending in (s, ss, sh, ch, x, z) (add es)
الجمع بإضافة es للأسماء المنتهية بالنهايات المذكورة.

a bus	a box	a quiz
2 buses	2 boxes	2 quizzes

3. Nouns ending in consonant + y (remove y and add ies)
الجمع بإضافة ies للأسماء المنتهية بـ y مسبوقة بحرف ساكن.

a baby	a city	a story
2 babies	2 cities	2 stories

4. Nouns ending in f/fe (remove f/fe and add ves)
بعض الأسماء المنتهية بـ f/fe تحذف ونضع ves.

a loaf	a wife	a wolf
2 loaves	2 wives	2 wolves

5. Irregular plural الجمع غير المنتظم.

a man	a child	an ox
2 men	2 children	2 oxen
a mouse	a tooth	a goose
2 mice	2 teeth	2 geese
a woman	an oasis	a foot
2 women	2 oases	2 feet

6. No change
هذه الأسماء هى مفرد وجمع فى نفس الوقت.

1 sheep	1 deer	1 fish
2 sheep	2 deer	2 fish

Uncountable nouns الأسماء غير المعدودة

هى أسماء لا تعد ولا تجمع ومن ثم لا يأتى قبلها (a/an) وهذه الأسماء تعامل معاملة المفرد.

Examples

1. Liquids السوائل
water/ coffee/ oil/ milk/ soup/ blood/ tea/ juice/ petrol

2. Gases الغازات
oxygen/ nitrogen/ hydrogen/ carbon dioxide

3. Languages اللغات
Arabic/ English/ French/ Italian/ Spanish/ German

4. Meals الوجبات
breakfast/ lunch/ dinner/ supper

5. School subjects المواد الدراسية
psychology/ statistics/ science/ mathematics/ physics/ chemistry/ biology/ economics

6. Sports الرياضات
football/ dominos/ billiards/ tennis/ gymnastics/ squash/ athletics/ chess

7. Food الطعام
meat/ rice/ butter/ macaroni/ cheese/ sugar/ salt/ bread/ toast/ beef

8. Abstract nouns الأسماء المجردة (غير ملموسة)
happiness/ knowledge/ freedom/ business/ hatred/ education/ honesty/ advice/ luck/ courage/ sadness/ fun/ peace/ progress/ behaviour/ fear/ confidence/ help/ sorrow/ horror/ information/ beauty

يأتى مع غير المعدود فعل مفرد فقط. - Swimming is a popular sport. - That petrol was expensive.	يأتى مع المعدود فعل مفرد أو جمع. - That painting is beautiful. - Those paintings are beautiful.
لا يأتى قبلها (a/an). - This table is made of wood. - We play football every week.	يأتى قبل الاسم المفرد منها (a/an). - Is there a park here? - He ate an apple.

Quantifiers
تعبيرات الكم (المحددات)

(a lot of/ much/ many (كثير) – few – a few – little – a little (قليل) – (some بعض – any أى)

Expression التعبير	Usage الاستخدام	Examples
a lot of + مفعول a lot بدون مفعول	فى الجملة المثبتة (كثير من)	He always drinks a lot of water. He was tired as he worked a lot.
some + عدد/ كمية	فى الجملة المثبتة فى أسلوب العرض والطلب	I have some good friends. Would you like some soup?
any + عدد/ كمية	فى السؤال فى الجملة المنفية	Do you want any money? There isn't any water in the bottle.
many + اسم جمع	فى الجملة المنفية والسؤال من الممكن فى الإثبات مع there are – so – too	How many brothers have you got? I didn't see many films, only a few. There are many books on the desk.
much + اسم لا يعد	فى الجملة المنفية والسؤال من الممكن فى الإثبات مع there is – so – too	How much money do you need? There isn't much furniture here. There is much sugar in the tea.
a few/few + اسم جمع يعد	فى الجملة المثبتة بمعنى قليل للعدد	I have a few books here. يكفى I have few books here. لا يكفى
a little/little + اسم لا يعد	فى الجملة المثبتة بمعنى قليل للكمية	I have a little money. يكفى I have little money. لا يكفى

الفرق بين (little/ a little) و (few/ a few)

a few	قليل ويكفى (مع الأسماء المعدودة)	a little	قليل ويكفى (مع الأسماء غير المعدودة)
few	قليل ولا يكفى (مع الأسماء المعدودة)	little	قليل ولا يكفى (مع الأسماء غير المعدودة)

Mai bought a few bottles of water. اشترت مى القليل من زجاجات المياه (وتكفى).

Mai bought few bottles of water. اشترت مى القليل من زجاجات المياه (ولا تكفى).

Randa bought a little sugar. اشترت راندا القليل من السكر (ويكفى).

Randa bought little sugar. اشترت راندا القليل من السكر (ولا يكفى).

لاحظ

تستخدم كلمة only مع a few/ a little.

I bought only a few books.

She listened to only a little music.



Language Check point 4

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Radwa asked her teacher for .... advice about how to study well.
   a) a b) an c) a few d) some
2. I'm very hungry. Can you give me .... sandwiches, please?
   a) little b) a c) some d) any
3. Ali's father earns .... money, so he is in need of our help.
   a) little b) many c) a few d) much
4. How .... sugar do you need?
   a) long b) many c) much d) often
5. Marwan doesn't like Cairo as there is too much .... there.
   a) voices b) noise c) cars d) shops
6. The sheep .... hungry. The shepherd الراعى didn't feed them for long.
   a) are b) is c) aren't d) isn't
7. Would you like .... tea with the cake?
   a) any b) a bit of c) some d) a few
8. The news .... great today. I'm over the moon.
   a) are b) is c) isn't d) a&b



ملاحظات هامة على المعدود واللامعدود:

1

بعض الكلمات فى ظاهرها جمع ولكنها تعامل معاملة المفرد:

athletics/ politics/ gymnastics/ mathematics/ maths/ news/ economics/ statistics/ physics/ genetics/ classics/ electronics/ means

- Mathematics is my favourite subject.
- Gymnastics helps us to keep fit.
- Statistics is a branch of mathematics.
- The good news is that we passed the test.

2

هناك بعض الكلمات تشير إلى مجموعة. وهذه الكلمات من الممكن أن تكون مفردًا أو جمعًا حسب المقصود منها:

team/ staff/ family/ government/ company/ committee/ army/ couple/ crew/ crowd/ gang/ group/ navy/ population/ university

- The English staff is the best one in our school.

كلمة staff مفرد لأن المقصود بها القسم كواحد من ضمن الأقسام فى المدرسة.

- The English staff in our school are all wonderful.

وهنا جمع لأننا نقصد مجموعة المدرسين فى القسم.

3

تعتبر المبالغ المالية /الفترات الزمنية /المسافات شيئًا واحدًا لذا تعامل معاملة المفرد:

- Ten million pounds is a lot of money.
- Five hours is a long time to do this.

4

بعض الكلمات التى لا تُعد يمكن أن تسبقها الأداة a/an إذا جاءت قبلها الصفة:

- We usually have lunch at 2.00 p.m.
- We had a wonderful lunch at a big restaurant yesterday.

5

هناك كلمات أخرى يمكن أن تكون countable أو uncountable مع اختلاف المعنى مثل:

paper – glass – coffee – time – cold – light – hair – iron – chicken

I'd like some writing paper.	(ورق الكتاب /لا يعد)
I'm going to buy a paper. (= a newspaper)	صحيفة (تعد)
The window's made of unbreakable glass.	(الزجاج/لا يعد)
Would you like a glass of water?	كوب
Have you got any coffee?	القهوة (سائل لا يعد)
Could I have two coffees? (cups of coffee)	فنجان قهوة (يعد)
Do you like chicken? (= chicken meat)	لحم الدجاج
We bought a chicken.	دجاجة
I want to buy a new company.	شركة (اسم يعد)
I hope to have good company.	صُحبة (اسم لا يعد)

6 هناك كلمات مثل trousers/glasses/shoes/gloves تعامل معاملة الجمع. أما إذا جاء قبلها a pair of فتعامل معاملة المفرد.

My trousers are of a good material and they don't cost much.
A pair of trousers is very expensive if it is imported from abroad.

7 من الممكن استخدام ألفاظ التجزئة مع الكميات لتحويلها إلى اسم يعد:

a piece of jewellery	a piece of furniture	a piece of luggage	a piece of information
a slice of cake/cheese	a loaf of bread	a jar of jam	a cup of coffee
a glass of lemonade	a tube of toothpaste	a bar of soap	a sheet of paper
a bottle of milk	a bar of chocolate	a piece of advice	a bag of chips

8 تستخدم many مع so / too
تستخدم much مع so / too / very
تستخدم such مع a lot of

There are so many people in the party.
There is too much pollution in the city.
I met such a lot of people yesterday.

Language Check point 5

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. My trousers .... some holes in them.
a) has b) have c) is d) are
2. Three hundred pounds .... enough for this shirt.
a) are b) have c) is d) were
3. The police .... searching for the murderer.
a) is b) was c) are d) have
4. My glasses .... missing. Please, help me.
a) had b) was c) is d) are
5. Mathematics .... not very easy to understand.
a) are b) were c) is d) has
6. I could get a very important .... of information when I interviewed the scientist.
a) bar b) jar c) slice d) piece
7. There are .... many beautiful flowers in the garden. I'll pick you one.
a) such b) so c) very d) all are correct
8. Ahmad wanted to wash his hands, so I passed him the .... of soap.
a) bar b) slice c) tube d) loaf

Practice... Language General Exercises



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Would you like .... cup of coffee?
a) a b) any c) some d) an

2. I don't have .... furniture. I feel more comfortable with big space.
a) many b) much c) some d) a

3. .... books are very useful, but others are not.
a) Any b) Some c) A lot d) Much

4. Mohamed doesn't have .... money.
a) much b) many c) some d) few

5. Would you like .... tea after the meal?
a) some b) much c) a d) any

6. Fortunately, the news .... as bad as we had expected.
a) wasn't b) weren't c) haven't been d) don't

7. There .... too many passengers on the train. I can't get on it.
a) aren't b) isn't c) are d) is

8. I have found a job in .... clothes factory.
a) an b) a c) no article d) any

9. Can you tell me how .... times you have seen this film?
a) many b) any c) much d) often

10. Would you like to have .... help with this project?
a) a b) an c) the d) some

11. A bag of money .... from my father while he was walking last night.
a) was stolen b) is stolen c) were stolen d) are stolen

12. Three days .... long enough for a good holiday.
a) weren't b) aren't c) haven't been d) isn't

13. I bought a .... of toothpaste last night.
a) sheet b) slice c) jar d) tube

14. I don't have .... luggage; I like to travel light خفيف.
a) many b) some c) much d) a lot

15. My friends managed to get a lot of useful information, but I haven't got ....
a) some b) many c) any d) few

16. One should drink enough .... of water daily.
a) lots b) many c) quantity d) a lot

17. Five million pounds .... too much money for this villa.
a) is b) is being c) are d) are being

18. The money of the clothes .... on that table.
a) was b) were c) has d) had

19. Everyone knows that athletics .... us fit and healthy.
a) keep b) are keeping c) keeps d) a & c

20. My son bought a new pair of shoes which .... very expensive.
a) are　b) were　c) was　d) a&b

21. I want you to enjoy your trip and have .... good time.
a) many　b) a　c) a few　d) any

22. A: .... coffee have you drunk today? B: Two cups.
a) How many　b) How much　c) How　d) How long

23. I was very angry when I found .... in my soup at the restaurant.
a) any hairs　b) no hairs　c) a hair　d) the hair

24. Which one of the following sentences is NOT grammatically correct?
a) We need some water to drink during the journey.
b) He told me an important information about the crime.
c) I saw lots of students waiting for their results at school.
d) I met some kind people while I was in the village.

25. Which one of the following sentences is grammatically correct?
a) My trousers are very expensive and of a good material.
b) Lentils soup are my favourite kind of appetisers.
c) Gymnastics aren't easy sports as they need a lot of practice.
d) Two hours are very long to wait for the doctor.

26. Would you like .... more sugar? Longman
a) many　b) a few　c) some　d) a

27. There are .... books available; we have 4 and we need at least 20. Longman
a) a few　b) few　c) many　d) less

28. All the money I have .... to buy the books I need to buy. What can I do? Longman
a) is enough　b) is sufficient　c) is insufficient　d) are enough

29. I am very busy; I have .... to do today. Longman
a) little　b) many　c) a lot of　d) a lot

30. I need a .... of oil and .... of sugar, please. Longman
a) litre/a kilo　b) bottle/a few
c) kilo/a litre　d) litre/amount

31. Lion Guardians .... an organisation based in Kenya. (البحيرة - إدارة أبو المطامير)
a) are　b) is　c) should　d) could

32. Two weeks .... long enough for a good holiday. (القليوبية - إدارة الخانكة)
a) are　b) is　c) were　d) have

33. My teacher gave me some useful pieces of .... to follow. (أسيوط - إدارة ديروط)
a) advices　b) advise　c) advice　d) advises

34. Physics .... the study of natural laws. (الجيزة - إدارة العمرانية)
a) has　b) are　c) were　d) is

35. Dr Yacoub's desire to help others .... clear in the charitable work he does. (الأقصر - إدارة إسنا)
a) has　b) have　c) is　d) are



Take a test

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Vocabulary

1. I had a/an .... with my brother whether I would have the job or not.
   a) effect b) debate c) belief d) bullying
2. Our company has a .... It is a very ambitious one.
   a) three-year-business plan b) three-year-business plans
   c) three-year's-business plan d) three-years'-business plan
3. Carrying a .... over your shoulder for a long time is likely to harm you.
   a) money b) wallet c) purse d) rucksack
4. Only .... and cruel children treat their parents badly when they get old.
   a) favourite b) facile c) nasty d) kind
5. After a long .... with his family, Ali wasn't persuaded to stay with them in Cairo.
   a) agreement b) fight c) discussion d) quarrel
6. The last time I went to the dentist, I was .... as I fear his medical instruments.
   a) scared b) broken c) amazed d) delighted
7. Hany from Cairo is on the .... He wants to participate in our programme.
   a) row b) line c) queue d) paper
8. The .... staff plays a great role in time of emergencies.
   a) farming b) bullying c) nursing d) advertising
9. Eisa decided not to .... as a cashier; he was feeling bad about it.
   a) behave b) cheat c) leave d) continue
10. My jokes made them .... out loud بصوت عالٍ.
   a) smile b) cough c) laugh d) continue
11. Smoking has a lot of .... effects on our lungs.
   a) positive b) impressive c) negative d) important
12. I couldn't find my shoes and I discovered that my little son was .... them.
   a) heading b) hitting c) heeling d) hiding
13. Captain Hassan Shehata was a guest on a radio .... this morning.
   a) show b) magazine c) article d) theatre
14. After .... to our new flat, I felt lonely as I had few neighbours.
   a) transforming b) camping c) moving d) staying
15. Weekend means sitting on the sofa and .... nothing.
   a) making b) getting c) sleeping d) doing

Language

16. .... exercise keeps your body fit, so you should go to the gym.

a) Many | b) Much | c) A lot | d) Few

17. The police .... to question يستجوب two men about the robbery.

a) want | b) wants | c) has wanted | d) is wanted

18. My family .... arguing over where they'll meet next Friday.

a) is | b) are | c) no word | d) a & b

19. Mariam was playing .... music all evening.

a) a | b) many | c) one | d) no article

20. Most of our furniture .... in Damietta.

a) are made | b) is made | c) makes | d) is making

21. One of the players in our team .... very tall.

a) are | b) is | c) be | d) a & b

22. I was served .... food at the wedding, but it was really delicious.

a) a few | b) few | c) a little | d) a lot

23. If you want to know the news, you can read it in ....

a) much paper | b) paper | c) some paper | d) the papers

24. The train is .... of transport. I really like using it.

a) means | b) the means
c) a means | d) some means

25. There isn't .... traffic on the ring road today.

a) few | b) some | c) much | d) many

26. A: How .... coffees do you want to have? B: Three, please.

a) much | b) many | c) little | d) few

27. .... the government have a plan to renew the High Dam?

a) Do | b) Does | c) Is | d) Was

28. Three hours .... a long time to wait for her to come.

a) is | b) are | c) have been | d) were

29. I am going to buy .... to have my breakfast.

a) some breads | b) many bread
c) a bread | d) some bread

30. My father asked me to buy a .... of jam.

a) tube | b) bar | c) piece | d) jar



Study... Part 3 | Skills



Writing Skill

للمزيد من الشرح والتدريبات
يرجى الرجوع لملحق المهارات.

Writing an email

New message

From .... اسم وعنوان البريد الإلكترونى للمرسِل:

To .... اسم وعنوان البريد الإلكترونى للمرسَل إليه:

Subject .... الموضوع باختصار:

(invitation - congratulation - complaint - apology - request)

Dear ...., اسم المرسَل إليه

How are you? I want to tell you that ....

....

....

.... :موضوع الرسالة

Best wishes,

.... :اسم المرسِل

Send

MODEL EMAIL

Dear Othman,

How are you? I want to tell you about something that's been bothering a lot of us at school. We have too much to do. Between homework, projects, and all our other activities, sometimes it's difficult to deal with all of that at the same time.

This is making things really hard for us. We're feeling stressed and tired all the time. It's hard to concentrate in class, and some of us are having trouble sleeping. Plus, it's creating a lot of pressure to do better than everyone else, which isn't helping anyone.

I want some advice on how to deal with all this stress. Should I talk to someone at school, like an advisor or a teacher we trust? I'm looking forward to hearing from you.

Best wishes,

Amr



Practice more

(A) Reading Comprehension

قاموس بالكلمات الجديدة فى قطع الفهم والتراجم نهاية الكتاب

1 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

(الجيزة - إدارة البدرشين)

Most scientists have faced a lot of difficulties and challenges in their life. However, they have not stopped working to help the world to lead a better life. Thomas Edison lit up the world with his invention of the electric light. Without him, the world might have been a dark place. He invented over 1200 other things. Edison attended school for about two months. His mother taught him a few things, but he was mostly self-educated.

His natural curiosity led him to start experimenting at a young age with electrical and mechanical things at home. When he was 12 years old, he got his first job. He became a newsboy on a train. Then, he set up a laboratory in a baggage car of the train so that he could continue his experiments in his spare time. He was fired when he accidentally set fire to the floor of the baggage car, but he continued to conduct his experiments. Thomas Edison was totally deaf in one ear and hard of hearing in the other, but thought of his deafness as a blessing in many ways. He called himself a "two-shift man" because he worked 16 out of 24 hours. Thomas Edison died and left numerous inventions that improved the quality of life all over the world.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The main idea of the passage can be "......................".

a) Edison's inventions　b) Edison's electric light
c) Edison's life　d) Edison's laboratory

2. Edison considered his deafness ....

a) a disadvantage　b) a blessing　c) a difficulty　d) an obstacle

3. Thomas Edison attended school for ....

a) two weeks　b) two years　c) sixty days　d) sixteen days

4. What is Edison's most important invention mentioned?

a) Electric fire.　b) Electric heater.　c) Electric train.　d) Electric bulb.

5. Edison's lost first job because he ....

a) was a news boy　b) set fire to the floor of the luggage car
c) was a two-shift man　d) set fire in his invention

6. The antonym of the underlined word "accidentally" is ....

a) by accident　b) by chance　c) deliberately　d) automatically

7. According to the passage, Edison invented .... inventions.

a) loads of　b) little　c) all　d) few

2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

A good education has the ability to change the world. When we pay attention to quality education, the results can be transformational for an individual, a community and society at large. The value of investing in education is indisputable: it improves economic development, promotes peace, and lifts people out of poverty.

The right to education is not only the right to access education but also the right to receive an education of good quality. Education must be available and accessible but also acceptable and adaptable. Students must receive a quality education that enables their personalities, talents and abilities and to live a full and satisfying life within society.

The aims of education go far beyond acquiring numeracy and literacy skills. Basic skills also include life skills such as the ability to make well-balanced decisions; to resolve conflicts in a responsibility, critical thinking, creative talents, and other abilities which give children the tools needed to pursue their options in life.

Also, schools should have a sufficient number of trained teachers. All teachers should be paid competitive salaries. There should be an appropriate number of classrooms, accessible to all, with adequate and separate sanitation facilities for girls and boys.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The benefits of a good education can be noticed on ....

a) people and their families
b) people, their community and their society
c) countries, continents and islands
d) poor people and workers

2. When we invest in education, this will ....

a) make people poor and powerless
b) improve economic development and ignorance
c) encourage wars and illegal competitions
d) improve people's income and bring peace

3. The education provided to students must ....

a) enable their abilities and characters to live properly
b) be for free and be online
c) provide good salaries to students and their families
d) activate violence among students to motivate them

4. Education should provide students with the techniques that ....

a) make them join the Faculty of Medicine
b) follow their options in life
c) enrich their argumentative abilities
d) strengthen their flexibility in life

5. In order to ensure a quality education, teachers should ....
a) get paid competitive salaries
b) arrest students who make troubles
c) have power and authority
d) wear formal clothes with much money

6. Educational institutions should have ....
a) sanitation materials and yoga sessions
b) only one classroom for all students
c) large playground with whiteboards
d) enough classrooms and separate toilets

7. The best title for this passage is "................".
a) How Can Education Be Good?
b) Quality Education and Teachers
c) Classrooms and Schools
d) Education Investment

(B) Translation

3 (A) Choose the correct Arabic translation:

1. Many young people use the internet to make new friends and spend hours chatting with them.

a) يستخدم الإنترنت العديد من الشباب لصناعة صداقات جديدة وصرف ساعات فى الدردشة معهم.
b) يستخدم العديد من الشباب الإنترنت لتكوين مجموعات جديدة وقضاء ساعات فى الدردشة معهم.
c) العديد من الشباب يستخدم الإنترنت لتكوين صداقات جديدة وقضاء أيام فى الدردشة معهم.
d) يستخدم العديد من الشباب الإنترنت لتكوين صداقات جديدة وقضاء ساعات فى الدردشة معهم.

2. School libraries contribute much to the development of our children's minds and awareness.

a) تساعد المكتبات كثيرًا فى تنمية عقول أطفالنا ووعيهم.
b) تساهم المكتبات المدرسية كثيرًا فى تنمية عقول أطفالنا ووعيهم.
c) تساهم المكتبات المدرسية كثيرًا فى تنمية عقول رجالنا ووعيهم.
d) تشارك المكتبات المدرسية قليلًا فى تنمية مخ أطفالنا وجعلهم واعين.

3. We have to rationalise the consumption of water, electricity and food to face the increasing rise in prices.

a) علينا ترشيد استهلاك الماء والكهرباء والغذاء لمواجهة الارتفاع المتزايد فى الأسعار.
b) علينا تيسير اشتراك الماء والكهرباء والغذاء لمواجهة الارتفاع المتزايد فى الأسعار.
c) لدينا ترشيد اشتراك الماء والكهرباء والغذاء لمواجهة الارتفاع المتزايد فى الأسعار.
d) لدينا ترشيد استهلاك الماء والكهرباء والغذاء لمقاطعة الارتفاع المتزايد فى الأسعار.

(B) Choose the correct English translation:

4. يجب أن نتعاون جميعًا مع وزارة البيئة للتخلص من الكميات الهائلة من القمامة فى شوارعنا.

a) We must all help with the Ministry of Industry to get rid of the huge amounts of garbage in our streets.

b) We must all cooperate with the Ministry of Education to save the huge amounts of garbage in our ways.

c) We must all cooperate with the Ministry of Environment to get rid of the huge amounts of garbage in our streets.

d) We must all operate with the Ministry of Environmental to provide the huge amounts of garbage in our streets.

5. من الواضح أن الجرائم قد زادت بمعدل كبير هذه الأيام فلا يكاد يمر يوم دون أن نسمع عن جريمة فى التلفزيون أو الإنترنت.

a) It is clear that crimes have increased at a great rate these days. Hardly a day goes by without us hearing about a crime on the television or in the internet.

b) Apparently, crimes have doubled at a great rate these days. Hardly a day goes by without us hearing about a criminal on television or the internet.

c) It is safe that crimes have decreased at a great rate these days. Hardly a day goes by without us knowing about a crime on television or the internet.

d) It is clear that crimes have increased at a great rate these days. Hardly a day goes by without us hearing about a crime on television or the internet.

6. يشكل الوالدان شخصيات أبنائهما منذ بداية طفولتهم فهما يعلمانهم القيم والعادات.

a) Parents shape the personalities of their children from the end of their childhood, as they show them values and habits.

b) Parents shape the personalities of their children from the beginning of their childhood, as they teach them values and habits.

c) Fathers shape the characters of their children from the beginning of their childhood, as they teach them values and habits.

d) Grandmothers shape the personalities of their daughters from the beginning of their childhood, as they learn them values and habits.

(C) Writing

4 Write an email of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words to a new friend you have met recently telling him about your interests and daily activities.

....

....

....

I used more than 4 new vocabulary.	I used the right structure.	I used a topic sentence.	I wrote the conclusion.	I used the right punctuation.

Al-Azhar Corner



1 Finish the following dialogue:

Ali asked Samy about his favourite sport.

Ali : What is your favourite sport?

Samy : (1).. .

Ali : Is football a team or pair sport?

Samy : It is a team sport.

Ali : (2)..?

Samy : We win at football by scoring the most goals.

Ali : (3)..?

Samy : My favourite player is Mohamed Salah.

Ali : Is he a clever player?

Samy : (4).. .

A Glimpse of Revelation

2 (A) Choose the correct answer:

1. Belief in Allah is the .... of faith.
   a) stone b) corner c) cornerstone d) care
2. To believe in Allah is to believe in all of these except his ....
   a) partnership b) existence c) attributes d) lordship

(B) Answer the following questions:

3. What is monotheism?
4. What constitutes faith?

The Novel

3 (A) Choose the correct answer:

1. They saw some low .... and began to climb them easily.
   a) hells b) hills c) wells d) shells
2. A criminal was punished for holding up a man with a ....
   a) gun b) hill c) pun d) sun

(B) Answer the following:

3. What did Jim hear while he was in the barrel?
4. What did Captain Smollett decide to do to take the ship?

4 (A) Translate into Arabic:

Choose your friends carefully and always make friends with those who respect others.

(B) Translate into English:

لا يتعلق مفهوم العبادة بعلاقة المرء بالله فحسب، بل يتعلق أيضًا بتفاعل المرء مع البشر بشكل عام..

Al-Adwaa Test

Choose the Two correct answers of the Five options:

1. Mona doesn't wear dresses ....
   a) no more b) any more c) longer d) any longer e) more
2. There's so much to do and I don't know where to start. The antonyms of the word "start" are "................".
   a) finish b) initiate c) end d) neglect e) pursue

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

3. One of the main jobs of the special forces is to .... the city centre.
   a) police b) nurse c) close d) stop
4. You should accept people who are different to you. .... them is not allowed.
   a) Hosting b) Chatting c) Bullying d) Nursing
5. I have no close .... with other boys at my new school, so I feel lonely.
   a) articles b) conversations c) advice d) friendships
6. Please, do not hesitate to .... me if you want anything.
   a) communicate b) connect c) collect d) contact
7. I told my friends not to .... as I was speaking seriously.
   a) hide b) fight c) laugh d) host
8. We must do our best to prevent .... during exams.
   a) a cheat b) cheated c) cheating d) cheater
9. The final match of the Egyptian team went into .... time.
   a) extra b) lost c) missed d) passing
10. .... oldest lion is roaring in its cage now.
    a) A b) An c) The d) No article
11. There is .... grey rug on the floor of my room.
    a) a b) an c) the d) no article
12. Seham cooked .... pasta with red sauce.
    a) an b) any c) some d) few
13. I was so thirsty and asked for .... of water.
    a) the glass b) pair of glass c) a little d) a glass
14. When I leave school, I want to be .... tour guide.
    a) a b) an c) the d) no article
15. What Mr Osama does .... because he has been very ill recently.
    a) is b) are c) has d) have
16. Walking to .... work is part of my daily routine.
    a) a b) an c) the d) no article

▶ Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Many researchers, engineers and environmentalists are expressing deep concern about changes in the overall climate of the planet. Fossil fuels are being continuously used to produce electricity. The burning of these fuels produces gases like carbon dioxide, methane and nitrous oxides which lead to global warming. Desertification is also leading to warmer temperatures. The hazard of global warming is continuously causing major damage to the earth's environment.

Most people are still unaware of global warming and don't consider it a big problem in the years to come. What most people don't understand is that global warming is currently happening and we are already experiencing some of its effects. It severely affects ecosystems and disturbs the ecological balance, therefore some solutions must be devised.

Alternative energy sources: solar, wind, hydro, geothermal, and biomass need to be seriously pursued. Finding and using renewable sources is one of the methods to combat the ever-increasing global warming effectively since the continuous rise in the temperature of the planet is really upsetting. When sunlight reaches the earth, 30% of the earth's sunlight is sent back into space, while the remaining is absorbed by oceans, air and land. This heats up the surface of the planet. It is caused by anthropogenic activities.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17. Desertification means .... a wide area of trees.

a) clearing b) planting c) irrigating d) spraying

18. The underlined word "its" refers to ....

a) desertification b) global warming
c) environment d) carbon dioxide

19. Burning fossil fuels .... global warming.

a) causes of b) results of c) leads to d) results from

20. The synonym of the underlined word "ecological" is ....

a) environmental b) biological c) chemical d) material

21. Using non-renewable sources of energy is not safe because it ....

a) produces gases like carbon dioxide
b) can be stolen easily
c) can be flamed
d) can't be moved from a place to another

22. According to the passage, we .... the destructive effects of the global warming.

a) will face
b) faced
c) are already facing
d) have never faced

23. The best title for this passage is "..................".

a) National Disasters
b) Global Disasters
c) Trees and Nature
d) Anthropogenic Activities

24. **Choose the correct English translation:**

– العمل الجاد هو الطريق الوحيد لرفع مستوى المعيشة كما يجب أن نقوم باستغلال كل الموارد الاقتصادية المتاحة بدون إسراف.

a) Hard work is the only way to rise the standard of living, and we must make use of all available economic resources without extravagance.
b) Hard working is the only way to raise the standard of living, and we must make use of all online economic resources without extravagance.
c) Working hard is the only way to raise the standard of living, and we must make use of all available economical resources without spending.
d) Hard work is the only way to raise the standard of living, and we must make use of all available economic resources without extravagance.

25. **Choose the correct Arabic translation:**

- Egypt had to call for an international conference aiming at stability in peace process and combating terrorism.

a) كان لزامًا على مصر أن تدعو إلى مؤتمر محلى يستهدف استقرار عملية السلام ومحاربة الإرهاب.
b) كان لزامًا على مصر أن تدعو إلى مؤتمر دولى يستهدف استقرار عملية السلام ومحاربة الإرهاب.
c) اضطرت مصر أن تدعو إلى مؤتمر دولى يستهدف استقرار عملية السلام ودعم السياحة.
d) كان لزامًا على مصر أن تدعو إلى اجتماع دولى يستهدف السلام ومحاربة الإرهاب.

26. **Answer the following questions:**

1. Why do you think the crew were happy when Captain Smollett let them go on the island?
2. What do you think would have happened if Tom had agreed to join the pirates?
3. What do you think made Jim regret going to the island?

27. **Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on the following:**

"The best way to reach success is patience and hard work."

....

....

لمزيد من التدريبات للطلبة الفائقين
الرجوع لنهاية الكتاب ص 365

Assess your progress ★★★★★	< 50%	50 : 64%	65 : 84%	85 : 100%
	Study again	Practise more	Take more exams	Well done!

Module Test

Choose the Two correct answers of the Five options:

1. I am in heavy debt. I .... too many people and I can't repay them.
   a) owe money from b) borrowed money from c) lent money to
   d) lent money from e) owe money to

2. Mai is miserable as she has got low marks in her exams. The word "miserable" gives the same meaning as ....
   a) cheerful b) sad c) happy d) depressed e) pleased

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

3. Raouf discovered that there was a .... between his secretary and the theft السرقة.
   a) debt b) contact c) connection d) work
4. A teacher's advice can .... a difference to a lot of his students' lives.
   a) do b) make c) play d) have
5. All .... should be warned not to raise the prices of goods.
   a) authors b) lawyers c) scientists d) merchants
6. Apples are useful .... our health.
   a) through b) with c) for d) in
7. Take it .... We can overcome نتغلب hardships by working together.
   a) of granted b) for granted c) with granted d) for grand
8. Having too many exams in a short time is ....
   a) stress b) stressed c) stresses d) stressful
9. Development occurs when we pay attention to culture. The opposite of the word "culture" is "..................".
   a) art b) education c) ignorance d) civilization
10. Marwan has .... Alexandria. He looks as if he has had a great time there.
    a) been to b) been on c) gone to d) gone in
11. My father .... abroad for ten years. He intends to retire next year.
    a) had worked b) worked c) is working d) has worked
12. Ali and his family have never travelled since ....
    a) he gets married b) he marries c) his marriage d) married
13. How .... kilos of meat do you need?
    a) long b) many c) much d) often
14. He is a space scientist. Now, he is studying .... moon.
    a) a b) an c) the d) no article
15. Egypt has .... unique location in the world.
    a) a b) an c) the d) no article
16. My father went to .... hospital to visit his friend.
    a) a b) an c) the d) no article

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Interests are important to think about. But it is more important to know about your values. Work values seem to affect one's choice of jobs even more than interests. So, sometimes one may go through a conflict between his interests and his work values. Some people, for instance, might accept jobs that don't fit their work values. That means that something important to them is missing. In other words, they have to do something in their job which doesn't fit their work values.

One work value is working under pressure. Some people like to work that way. Others can't stand it. Suzan loves pressure. She works best when she has to meet a deadline. She loves a job where she has to hurry. She would be bored in a job without pressure. On the contrary, Fatma can't stand pressure. She gets nervous and makes mistakes. Pressure even makes her sick. She won't be able to stay very long in a pressure-cause job. Some occupations are more likely to have time pressure than others. For example, working for a newspaper always has deadlines. All jobs involve some degree of pressure, whether it's hitting targets, meeting deadlines or managing multiple tasks at once – some jobs more than others (surgeons or firefighters, for example). In other words, the ability to work under pressure is a skill highly sought after by employers.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17. According to the writer, our choice of jobs is influenced by ....

a) our education b) work values c) personality d) salaries

18. According to the passage, working under pressure means ....

a) meeting a deadline b) finishing at any time
c) making mistakes d) enjoying our job

19. In most time, pressure leads to ....

a) relaxation b) satisfaction c) freedom d) sickness

20. A very important skill that employers always look for is working ....

a) without pressure b) calmly
c) under pressure d) personally

21. One disadvantage of working under pressure for some people is ....

a) meeting the deadline b) working a lot
c) being lazy d) making mistakes

22. A person should be .... to work under pressure.

a) honest b) nervous c) calm d) stressed

23. The underlined pronoun "it" refers to ....

a) work value b) working under pressure
c) working with no pressure d) job

24. Choose the correct English translation:

- إن الفقر والبطالة هما قنبلة موقوتة، فلو لم نبذل جهودًا غير عادية لاستئصالهما فسنعانى كثيرًا، ولا تستطيع الحكومة أن تقوم بهذا وحدها.

a) Poverty and employment are a time bomb, if we do not make extraordinary efforts to eradicate them, we will suffer a lot.

b) Poverty and unemployment are a time rocket, if we do not make extraordinary efforts to eradicate them, we will suffer a little.

c) Poverty and unemployment are a time bomb, if we do not make extraordinary efforts to eradicate them, we will suffer a lot.

d) Poverty and unemployment are a time weapon, unless we do strange efforts to eradicate them, we will suffer a lot.

25. Choose the correct Arabic translation:

- The government and the individuals should work together to offer more support and help to the handicapped and children with special needs.

a) يجب على الحكومة والشعب العمل معًا لتقديم المزيد من الدعم والمساعدة للمعاقين والأطفال ذوى الاحتياجات الخاصة.

b) يجب على الحكومة والأفراد العمل معًا لتقديم المزيد من الدعم والمساعدة للمكفوفين والأطفال ذوى الاحتياجات الخاصة.

c) يجب على الحكومة والأفراد العمل بشكل منفصل لتقديم المزيد من الدعم والمساعدة للمعاقين والأطفال ذوى الاحتياجات الخاصة.

d) يجب على الحكومة والأفراد العمل معًا لتقديم المزيد من الدعم والمساعدة للمعاقين والأطفال ذوى الاحتياجات الخاصة.

26. Answer the following questions:

1. Why do you think Jim said that he would have to stay on the island forever?
2. Captain Smollett was a very reliable leader. Do you agree? Why?
3. Silver was really a bad man. Do you agree? Prove your opinion.

27. Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on the following:

"The reasons why people travel abroad"

....

....

....

....

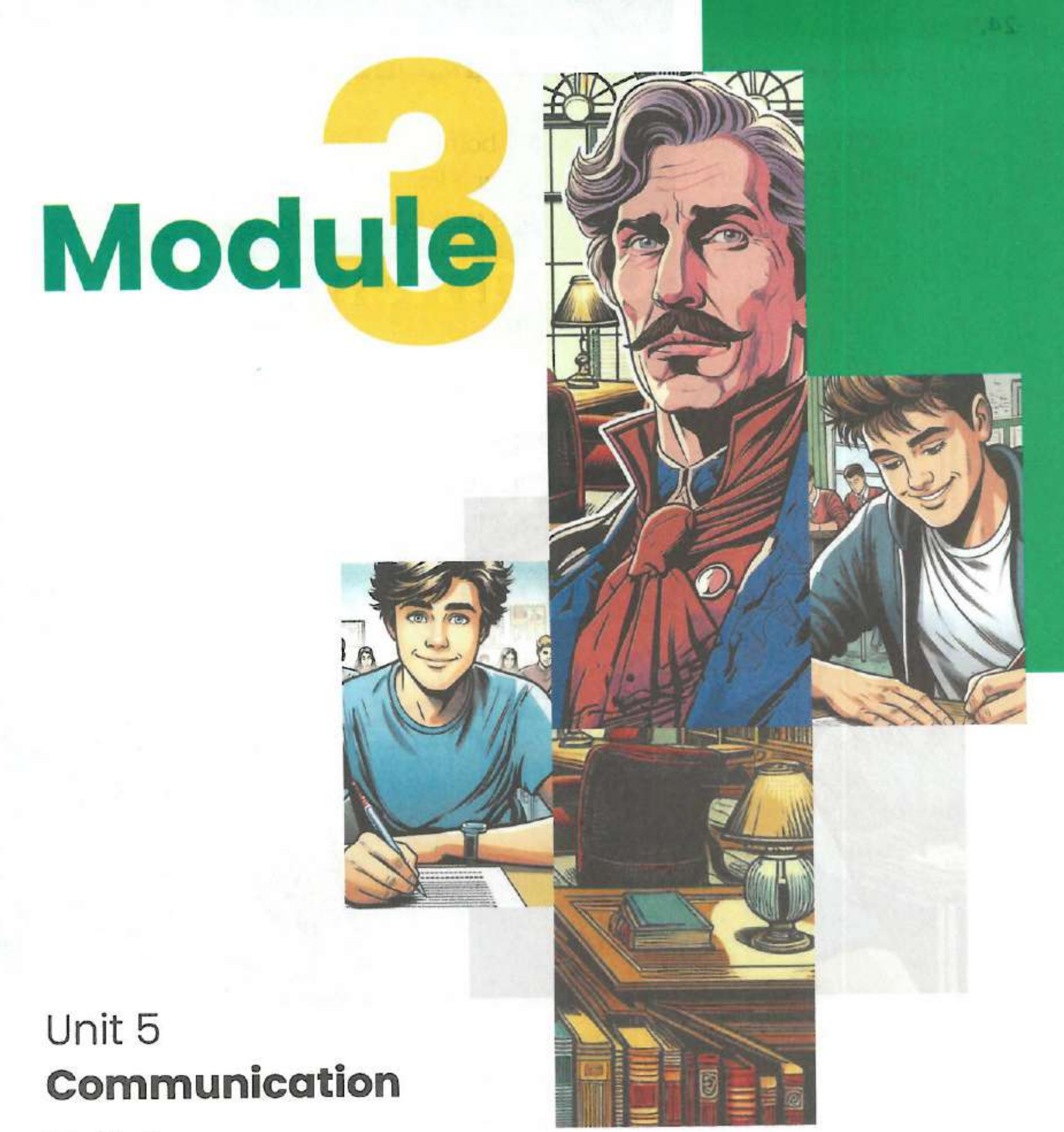
....

....

Assess your progress ★★★★★

< 50%	50 : 64%	65 : 84%	85 : 100%
Study again	Practise more	Take more exams	Well done!

Module 3



Unit 5
Communication

Unit 6
Learning from literature

Module Test
Units 5 & 6

Unit 5

Communication

Objectives

Reading : A science article on how we may communicate in the future

Writing : An essay on IOT; a blog on how to stay safe online

Listening : A radio discussion about the dangers of the internet

Speaking : Give a presentation

Language : Future forms *will, be going to and present continuous*

Life Skills : Self-management; Decision making







A Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary — المفردات الرئيسية

app = application (n) تطبيق حاسب آلى	hack (n) (v) – ed اختراق/يخترق	smartphone (n) الهاتف الذكى
communication (n) نظام الاتصال/تواصل	the internet (n) شبكة الإنترنت	technology (n) تكنولوجيا
connected (adj) متصل	security (n) أمن	

Vocabulary on Reading Text — مفردات نص القراءة

accident (n) حادث	enough (adv) كافٍ/بقدر كافٍ	online (adv) (adj) عبر الإنترنت
business (n) عمل تجارى	flexible (adj) مرن	organisation (n) منظمة
cause (v) – d يسبب	heating (n) التدفئة	petrol (n) بنزين
check (v) – ed يفحص	imagine (v) – d يتخيل	possible (adj) محتمل
control (v) – led يتحكم فى	IOT (internet of things) إنترنت الأشياء	power stations (n) محطات توليد الطاقة
create (v) – d يخلق/ينتج	latest (adj) أحدث	rubbish bin (n) سلة قمامة
criminal (n) (adj) مجرم/إجرامى	lighting (n) إضاءة	safe (adj) آمن
device (n) جهاز	lightning (n) البرق	satellite navigation (sat-nav) (n) نظام الملاحة عن طريق الأقمار الصناعية
disadvantages (n) عيوب/مساوئ	link (v) – ed يتصل/يرتبط	system (n) نظام
driverless (adj) ذاتية القيادة (بلا سائق)	machine (n) ماكينة	tablet (n) كمبيوتر لوحى (تابلت)
electric (adj) كهربائى	major (adj) رئيسى	worldwide (adv) (adj) عالمى/فى جميع أنحاء العالم
empty (v) – ~~y~~ied يفرغ	network (n) شبكة	

Workbook Vocabulary — مفردات كتاب التدريبات

camping (n) التخييم (الخروج فى معسكرات ومخيمات)	particular (adj) خاص	task (n) مهمة/مأمورية عمل
illegally (adv) بشكل غير قانونى	survey (n) دراسة/استطلاع	

Vocabulary Check point 1

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The company profits have increased since the introduction of new ....
   a) heating b) technology c) communication d) internet
2. Global warming is considered a .... problem.
   a) particular b) safe c) recently d) worldwide
3. My mother's sewing .... is old and needs to be fixed.
   a) machine b) device c) tool d) instrument
4. A: What do you know about IOT? B: It's the internet of ....
   a) tablet b) technology c) things d) thanks
5. Adel wasn't sure about closing the door, so he went back to ....
   a) create b) click c) check d) control
6. The internet made .... easier even for isolated countries.
   a) technology b) communication c) instrument d) machinery
7. We have a new computerised .... in the library to search for books easily.
   a) system b) security c) image d) control
8. Do you think this street will be .... at night? I am worried.
   a) connected b) flexible c) safe d) possible
9. It is a .... act to steal from people.
   a) connected b) criminal c) good d) terrific
10. Said is responsible for the .... of a company in Cairo.
    a) accident b) disadvantage c) security d) organisation

Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions التعبيرات والمصطلحات وحروف الجر

(be) known as معروف كـ	connect with يربط بـ/ يتناغم مع شخص	lose money يخسر مالًا
a driverless car سيارة بدون سائق	do/carry out/ conduct a survey يقوم ببحث شامل	make a decision يتخذ قرارًا
as often as I can بقدر ما أستطيع	do the shopping يقوم بالتسوق	on your phone على تليفونك
break into يقتحم	go shopping يذهب للتسوق	on the internet على الإنترنت
by accident بالصدفة	hack into يخترق	outside world العالم الخارجي
collect + (someone) يصطحب/يوصل شخصًا بسيارة	in particular على وجه الخصوص	take control of يسيطر على/يتحكم فى
collect information يجمع معلومات	information about معلومات عن	send messages to يرسل رسائل نصية لـ
communicate with يتواصل مع	listen to يستمع إلى	worried about قلق بشأن
connect to يتصل بـ	live on يعيش على	

Derivatives
المشتقـات

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
apply	يطبق	application applicant	تطبيق/نموذج طلب وظيفة طالب الوظيفة	applicable applied	قابل للتطبيق تطبيقى
communicate	يبلغ/يتصل	communication communicator	تواصل/اتصال محاور	communicative	صَريح/تواصلى
control	يتحكم	control controller	تحكم/قيادة مراقب/مشرف	controlling controllable controlled	متسلط/مسيطر مطيع/مذعن مراقب/موجه
create	يخلق	creation creativity creator	خلق/تكوين إبداع خالق/مخترع	creative	إبداعى/مبتكر
hack	يخترق	hacking (uncountable) hack (countable) hacker	اختراق اختراق مخترق/قرصان	hacked	مُخْتَرقٌ
imagine	يتخيل	imagination imaginings	خيال خيالات/تصورات	imaginable imaginary imaginative	ممكن تخيله خيالى واسع الخيال
-------------------------		crime criminal	جريمة مجرم	criminal	إجرامى
secure	يؤمن	security	أمان/حماية	secure	مأمون/مطمئن

Examples
تعلم أن تستخدم ما تحفظ، لاحظ الأمثلة التالية:

- I can't imagine that we have lost the cup. (v)
  - Films help us use our imagination. (n)
  - The new employee has imaginative thoughts. (adj)
- I want to apply for the job. (v)
  - The applicants are required to fill in 3 applications. (n)
  - The job is applicable to Egyptians only. (adj)
- I communicate with my teacher by WhatsApp. (v)
  - The communication between me and my teacher is easy. (n)
  - Mr Salah has unusual communicative skills. (adj)

Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	الكلمة	Synonym المرادف	Antonym	المضاد
connected	متصل	linked/joined	disconnected/detached	غير متصل / منفصل
control	يتحكم فى	command/dominate	follow/surrender	يتبع / يستسلم
disadvantages	عيوب	demerits/drawbacks	advantages/merits	مزايا
empty	يفرغ	clear/evacuate	fill/occupy	يملأ
enough	كافٍ	adequate/sufficient	inadequate/insufficient	غير كاف
heating	التدفئة	warming/boiling	cooling/freezing	تبريد / تجميد
illegal	غير قانونى	unlawful/banned/ unauthorised	legal/lawful/authorised	قانونى
major	رئيسى	main/primary/leading	minor/secondary/trivial	ثانوى / تافه
safe	آمن	secure/protected	insecure/risky/unsafe	غير آمن / خطير
security	أمن	safety/protection	insecurity/danger	عدم الأمان / الخطر

Vocabulary Check point 2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A good teacher is the one who can .... control of the class.
a) make b) do c) take d) lose

2. Salma is always worried .... her exams.
a) about b) with c) at d) for

3. Mohammed Salah is known .... the happiness maker.
a) of b) to c) as d) about

4. Mothers always .... their shopping on Fridays.
a) go b) play c) make d) do

5. It was a very good surprise when I met my old friend .... accident yesterday.
a) at b) by c) for d) no word

6. Radio is the only means of .... in remote areas.
a) communication b) communicate
c) communicative d) communicator

7. It is illegal to have a gun with you without a special license. The antonym of "illegal" is "..................".

a) lawful b) banned c) unlawful d) minor

8. I asked them to empty the house at once. The synonym of "empty" is "..................".

a) fill b) occupy c) evacuate d) unclear

9. The thieves managed to break .... the house and steal much money.

a) up b) off c) into d) with

10. Five million pounds is enough to solve the problem of our local hospital. The synonym of the word "enough" is "..................".

a) decent b) insufficient c) inadequate d) sufficient



Internet use in Egypt

Every year, more and more[1] people are connected to the internet in Egypt. A recent survey found that around 50 million people use the internet on a computer or smartphone.

In the survey, many people said that they used the internet every day, usually for communication so[2] they could talk to friends or family. Many used apps on their phones so they can listen to music or watch films.

Other[3] people said they never used the internet. This was usually because they did not understand the technology. Many people also said they did want to use the internet when shopping[4]. They were worried about security and the possibility that their computer might be hacked[5].



Notes on some sentences:

ملاحظات على بعض الجمل:

١- لاحظ هذا التعبير الذى يعنى الكثير والكثير.

٢- تستخدم so بمعنى لكى فى هذه الجملة ويأتى بعدها جملة مثل so that.

٣- تأتى كلمة other مع الجمع بينما تأتى another مع المفرد.

٤- يمكن أن يأتى v. + ing بعد when وتكون بمعنى أثناء.

٥- لاحظ استخدام المبنى للمجهول مع الأفعال الناقصة P.P. + be + فعل ناقص + المفعول obj.

Reading Text

The Internet of Things

Linking the world

Communication is no longer about people talking to one another, but about machines talking to machines. This is known as the Internet of Things (IOT). Technology is developing so fast that[1] experts believe everyone will be[2] connected to the IOT in a few years.

Connecting our homes

Many things in our own homes are going to be connected to the IOT. Already, people can control their heating and lighting from their phones, but in the future computers will make the decisions for us. They'll even be able to say when the rubbish bins need to be emptied and control how much water we use!

No more driving

Cars can already connect to the internet using smartphones, but imagine if you can get a driverless car to come and collect you using an app on your phone. All driverless cars will be electric and much cleaner than petrol ones[3]. Experts think our roads will be safer as there will be fewer accidents using driverless cars.

Possible problems

Many people don't think IOT is safe enough[4] yet. Computers collect information about people and businesses which criminals can steal. They use this information[5] to hack into organisations like hospitals, power stations and airports, and cause major security problems.



Notes on some sentences: ملاحظات على بعض الجمل:

١- لاحظ استخدام that صفة/حال so بمعنى جدًا لدرجة أن وتتبع بجملة.

٢- كلمة believe/think يأتي بعدها فاعل ثم المستقبل بـ will.

٣- مع المقارنة comparative يتم استخدام much/ a lot/ far لبيان درجة الصفة، وليس very/ so/ too.

٤- كلمة enough تأتي قبلها الصفة وليس بعدها وتعني (بقدر كاف).

٥- كلمة information مفرد ومن هنا تم استخدام this للإشارة إلى المفرد.

Notes on Vocabulary

لاحظ الفرق بين الكلمات التالية:

1	(be) able to + (inf.) قادر على	Birds are able to fly using their wings.
	(be) capable of + (v. + ing) قادر على	Birds are capable of flying using their wings.
	(have) the ability to + (inf.) لديه القدرة على	Birds have the ability to fly using their wings.
	(someone/something) + enable + (someone/something) + to + (inf.) ... يُمكّن ... من ...	Wings enable birds to fly.
2	electric (adj) كهربائى أى يعمل بالكهرباء (لوصف الأدوات والأجهزة)	Engineers designed electric cars that use batteries.
	electrical (adj) كهربائى أى يتعامل مع الكهرباء (لوصف الأعطال والأشخاص)	My father works as an electrical engineer.
	electricity (n) الكهرباء	We can't do without electricity in our daily life.
	electrician (n) عامل فنى كهرباء	A company needs four electricians to be employed.
	electronic (adj) إلكترونى	The manager sent me an electronic mail yesterday.
3	experience الخبرة (ما يكتسبه الشخص من معرفة ومهارات من خلال عمل معين) (لا تُعد)	They offered me the job because I had a lot of experience in the field of engineering.
	experiences مواقف أو تجارب أو خبرات فى الحياة (تُعد)	Rania had some interesting experiences while she was travelling to many countries.
	experiment تجربة عملية / علمية (داخل معمل)	Teachers usually do simple experiments in the laboratory.

4		
	task مهمة أو عمل صعب أو غير محبوب يقوم به شخص	I was given the task of organising the school trip.
	mission بعثة أو مأمورية ينتقل فيها الشخص من مكان لمكان آخر للقيام بها	He went on a mission to Japan.

Vocabulary Check point 3

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Having healthy food .... us to build our bodies well.
   a) is able to b) enables c) has the ability d) capable of
2. The future is for .... cars not petrol-powered ones.
   a) electric b) electrical c) electricity d) electrician
3. I got a/an .... to install .... systems in my new flat.
   a) electrical/ electricity b) electrical/ electrician
   c) electrician/ electrical d) electric/ electric
4. Some people think that .... on animals should be banned.
   a) experiences b) experiments c) exports d) experience
5. This job requires a lot of .... to get it.
   a) experiment b) experiences c) experts d) experience
6. The first .... of the secretary was to file some letters.
   a) mission b) mask c) task d) trip
7. The exam was .... difficult that we got low marks.
   a) such b) enough c) so d) too
8. The exam wasn't easy .... for us to pass it easily.
   a) such b) enough c) so d) too
9. Mostafa runs so .... that no one can catch him.
   a) quickly b) quick c) quicker d) quickness
10. The information he told me .... very helpful.
    a) were b) are c) have d) was



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Key Vocabulary, Reading & Workbook

1. The application can only be used on a computer .... to the internet.
   a) communicated b) attached c) connected d) hacked
2. It is not easy for anyone to .... into my Facebook account.
   a) hack b) contact c) empty d) control
3. .... help people to communicate with other and also to use the internet easily.
   a) Intelligent phones b) Smartphones
   c) Smile phones d) Start phones
4. Some .... on our phones are used to listen to music and watch videos.
   a) tabs b) viruses c) taps d) apps
5. Nowadays, there is little real .... between parents and their children.
   a) comment b) comparison
   c) application d) communication
6. Mohamed Salah is a .... football player. We are all proud of him.
   a) worldwide b) criminal c) possible d) minor
7. One of the .... of the internet is that it wastes lots of time.
   a) advantages b) merits
   c) accidents d) disadvantages
8. Smoking is one of the .... causes of lung diseases أمراض الرئة.
   a) minor b) major c) illegal d) mean
9. The government pays great attention to the roads .... all over Egypt.
   a) net b) circle c) website d) network
10. Electricity is produced in what we call ....
    a) power stations b) energy stations c) power cut d) solar energy
11. People like to have many electronic .... at their homes.
    a) cars b) bikes c) devices d) carpets
12. You have to bring .... photos of you when you first join the club.
    a) creative b) late c) recent d) secure
13. The .... shows that a large number of people use the internet in communication.
    a) pill b) survey c) app d) bill
14. I am sorry. I didn't mean to step on your foot. It was a/an ....
    a) chance b) opportunity c) incident d) accident

15. It is hard for small .... to compete in the market these days.
a) tablets b) tasks c) businesses d) surveys

16. The compound needs more .... services to be qualified for living.
a) camping b) security c) driverless d) lightning

17. When a computer .... is broken into illegally, this is called hacking.
a) organisation b) system c) internet d) navigation

18. The new city is designed to be suitable for .... cars which move in a smart way.
a) particular b) illegal c) driverless d) lighting

19. A group of students .... a survey of studying behaviour.
a) did b) made c) carried d) both a & c

20. All clothes brands launched .... to sell their collections online.
a) applications b) communications c) developments d) movements

Expressions, Idioms, Prepositions, Derivatives, Synonyms & Antonyms

21. I like cars in general, but I like Mercedes in ....
a) particular b) control c) particularly d) private

22. Khadeja likes to go .... every Friday to buy her needs.
a) application b) camping c) shops d) shopping

23. To solve the problem of pollution, we should use .... cars.
a) electricity b) electrical c) electronic d) electric

24. Our teacher is very .... as he has a very wonderful technique in teaching.
a) create b) creation c) creativity d) creative

25. My computer is connected .... the internet to help me with my work.
a) with b) to c) into d) up

26. It is important to think well before .... any decision.
a) making b) doing c) breaking d) collecting

27. Most of the films I like are about .... people who are not real.
a) imagine b) imaginative c) imagination d) imaginary

28. To get the job, the applicants need to have at least 5 years of ....
a) experience b) experiences c) experiment d) experts

29. I haven't heard the .... news. Can you tell me what has happened?
a) late b) later c) latest d) lately

30. This part of the form is only .... to those who are orphans.
a) applicable b) application c) applicant d) apply

31. Can astronauts live .... the moon?
a) on b) with c) at d) in

32. I like watching the comic films of Ismail Yassin .... particular. Longman

a) on b) of c) with d) in

33. I'm going to .... the shopping. Would you like to come with me? Longman

a) do b) go c) make d) think

34. The prices of .... machines are getting higher. Longman

a) electric b) electrical c) electricity d) electrician

35. Salah's new smartphone has got a lot of computer programmes for .... tasks. (القليوبية - كفر شكر)

a) interest b) miserable c) hacked d) particular

36. This machine has a safety .... which switches the power off if there is a fault. (بنها - الخانكة)

a) device b) instrument c) machinery d) tool

37. It isn't polite to ask strangers .... questions. (الشرقية - كفر صقر)

a) legal b) public c) easy d) personal

38. He has all the latest ...., he has a tablet and a smartphone. (محافظة المنيا)

a) internet b) copy c) security d) technology

39. I have a wonderful .... on my smartphone that helps me learn English. (الشرقية - منيا القمح)

a) machine b) security c) instrument d) app

Choose the TWO (2) correct answers of the FIVE (5) options:

40. It isn't .... to drive a car without holding a licence. Longman

a) legal b) strong c) lawful d) suitable e) illegal

41. What are the .... of online shopping? Longman

a) reasons b) crafts c) disadvantages d) prices e) demerits

42. I can't contact my friend as the line is currently .... (العمرانية-الجيزة)

a) disconnected b) connected c) online d) communicated e) dead

43. I asked my teacher to .... him if I want to inquire about any information.

a) connect to b) contact c) communicate d) communicate with e) contact with

44. This room has under floor heating, isn't it wonderful? The antonyms of the word "heating" are "......................".

a) warming b) cooling c) signing d) deleting e) freezing

45. There is a plan to .... the building in only five minutes in case of emergency.

a) install b) fill c) evacuate d) empty e) clean

46. Turtles .... in water and on land.

a) able to exist b) are able to exist c) are capable to exist d) are capable of existing e) capable of existing

B Language

Future forms طرق التحدث عن المستقبل

هناك العديد من أشكال التعبير عن المستقبل وهى:

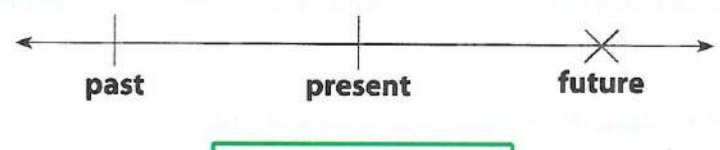
١- المستقبل البسيط .will + inf

٢- .(be) going to + inf

٣- مضارع مستمر (am – is – are) + (v. ing)

٤- مضارع بسيط present simple

1 Subject فاعل + will + inf. مصدر الفعل



USAGE الاستخدام

1 For prediction with no evidence (based on guesswork)

تنبؤ بدون دليل (يعتمد على التخمين).

- He will win the first prize as I think he is clever.

2 For future facts للتعبير عن حقيقة فى المستقبل

- I'll be forty-seven next year.

3 For on-the-spot decision لاتخاذ قرار سريع

- My phone is ringing; I will answer it.

4 Offer & request العرض والطلب

- Will you open the door for me, please?
- I will lend you the money you need. Don't worry.

5 Threat & promise الوعد والتهديد

- I'll get you a nice present.
- I'll call the police next time you come here.

6 We can use "will" with present evidence with adverbs like:

مع بعض الظروف مثل:

(probably – definitely – certainly – surely (I'm sure) – perhaps ...)

- It will probably rain tomorrow.

7 We can use "will" with the following words: مع الكلمات التالية:

promise – expect – predict – hope – think – believe

- I hope that we will live on the moon in the future.

8 With some time conjunctions: مع الروابط الزمنية:

(after/ as soon as/ before/ until/ when/ by the time/ ...)

- When Samir comes/has come, he will eat his dinner.
- We won't send the email until Ali confirms/has confirmed it.

2 be going to

Subject فاعل + (am/ is/ are) going to + inf. مصدر الفعل

USAGE الاستخدام

1 **For future plans, decisions and intentions.** خطط مستقبلية وقرارات ونوايا.

We can use "going to" with the following:

(plan – intend – intention – (have) decided – (have) made a decision – have made up (his) mind)

- I am going to buy some clothes online this afternoon.
- I have decided to travel. I am not going to stay in London.

2 **For predictions with evidence.** التنبؤ بدليل.

- Look at the sky. It is going to rain.
- She is pregnant. She is going to have a baby.
- Nada spends too much time on her phone. She isn't going to pass her exams.

لاحظ

يمكن استخدام be going to للتحذير فى موقف معين.

- Watch out! You are going to fall into the hole.

لكن لاحظ الجملة الآتية:

تحذير عام وليس فى موقف معين.

- Watch out or you will be robbed.

Important Notes

ملاحظات هامة على استخدامات will/ be going to

1

لاحظ الجمل التالية:

promise – expect – predict ... الفاعل + will + inf.

تستخدم will مع المضارع

- He promises he will do his best to come first.

promised – expected – predicted ... الفاعل + would + inf.

أما مع الماضى فنستخدم would

- He promised he would do his best to come first.

أما مع عدم وجود فاعل فنستخدم بعدها (to + inf.).

- He promises/promised to do his best to come first.

2

يتم استخدام will غالبًا للتفاصيل والتعليقات على الحدث.

- I am going on holiday. I will be away for a week.
- I am going to do some walking. Oh, that'll be nice.

3

لاحظ الجمل التالية:

- Liverpool is a very good team. I think it will win the final match.

(تنبؤ قائم على رأى شخصى)

- These players are very big. I think the match is going to be very difficult.

(تنبؤ قائم على دليل مرئى)

4

تكوين المبنى للمجهول فى المستقبل.

Object مفعول +(will/ be going to) + be + P.P. التصريف الثالث للفعل

- Nadia will be punished because of her rudeness.
- The match is going to be played after 5 minutes.

Language Check point 4

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. That's my phone. I .... answer it.
   a) will b) am going to c) shan't d) could
2. I .... in the hospital where I have applied for the training post.
   a) am probably working b) will probably work
   c) am probably going to work d) would probably work
3. Maher expected he .... his exams easily.
   a) would pass b) is passing c) will pass d) is going to pass
4. Shrouq .... this prize; she needs much more practice.
   a) will win b) is going to win c) doesn't win d) won't win
5. A number of trees .... next month in our garden.
   a) will be planting b) are going to be planted
   c) are going to plant d) will plant



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I am sure it .... an exciting match tomorrow.
   a) is going to be b) is c) is being d) will be
2. Rania is travelling to Paris tomorrow. She .... the Eiffel Tower.
   a) will probably visit b) is probably going to visit
   c) is going visiting d) probably visits
3. Tamer promised he .... us when he had enough time.
   a) had visited b) will visit c) would visit d) is visiting
4. I have applied for the job and I hope I .... it.
   a) will get b) am getting
   c) get d) am going to get
5. Look at this careless driver! He .... into the car in front of him.
   a) will crash b) is going to crash
   c) is crashing d) crashes
6. I .... hire يستأجر a car to travel around London as planned.
   a) am going to b) may c) would d) will
7. A: I'm going on holiday to Europe this October. Should I take an umbrella?
   B: Yes, perhaps it ....
   a) is raining b) will rain
   c) probably rains d) is going to rain
8. The ceiling of this room doesn't look very safe. I think it .... down.
   a) will fall b) is going to fall c) is falling d) falls
9. Don't raise your voice in the class or you ....
   a) will expel b) will be expelled
   c) are going to expel d) going to be expelled
10. Look! He .... off his bicycle.
   a) will fall b) is going to fall c) falls d) has fallen
11. The twins .... seventeen next week. What presents will we buy for them?
   a) turning b) turn c) is going to turn d) will turn
12. Be careful or you .... your finger.
   a) will cut b) are going to cut c) are cutting d) cut
13. I want to be the first to congratulate Mona as her birthday .... tomorrow.
   a) is going to be b) is being
   c) will be d) will have been

14. Ramy is studying medicine. He .... the first doctor in the family.

a) will be b) is going to be c) is being d) must be

15. Tomorrow, I .... the match with my friend. I have intended to do that.

a) will watch b) am watching
c) watching d) am going to watch

16. Sally .... her friends soon. That's her plan.

a) is meeting b) is going to meet c) meets d) will meet

17. My brother is saving money, he .... a new bike.

a) is buying b) is going buying
c) will buy d) is going to buy

18. I think my brother .... a programmer. All of us predict that.

a) will be b) is going to be
c) is being d) would be

19. Our team are attacking hard. They .... a goal.

a) are going to score b) will score
c) are scoring d) score

20. Nour is very intelligent. I think he .... the test easily.

a) is going to passing b) will pass
c) is passing d) would pass

21. A: We haven't got any tea. B: OK. I .... some.

a) am going to get b) am getting
c) will get d) would get

22. A: Why are you turning on the television? B: I .... some educational programmes.

a) will watch b) am watching
c) will be watched d) am going to watch

23. Although prices are sky-high in London, I .... there sooner or later. I have made up my mind.

a) am going to live b) will live
c) won't live d) was living

24. It was predicted that our school .... in the competition.

a) would participate b) is going to participate
c) is participating d) will be participating

25. Which of the following sentences is NOT grammatically correct?

a) I promise I will study hard.
b) The sky is cloudy. I think it is going to rain.
c) Be careful or you are falling.
d) Loujee will be 40 next month.

26. Which of the following sentences is grammatically correct?

a) Omar will marry again. He has decided to do that.
b) Ali is studying hard. He will get high marks.
c) I promise, I am going to give you a lot of money.
d) Mona will probably attend the party tomorrow.

27. I .... the match. Longman

a) are going to win
b) are winning
c) win
d) will win

28. My young sister .... 10 next Friday. Longman

a) has been
b) will be
c) is being
d) is going to be

29. I .... to Sharm El-Sheikh as planned. Longman

a) am going to go
b) am going
c) will go
d) go

30. Currently, Ayman is driving at a breakneck speed سرعة جنونية, so he .... a grave accident. (القليوبية - إدارة شبين القناطر)

a) will have
b) is having
c) will be having
d) is going to have

31. Hany .... the office until he has finished all his work. (القليوبية - إدارة كفر شكر)

a) leaves
b) won't leave
c) didn't leave
d) will leave

32. A: What do you intend to study when you join the university? (الشرقية - إدارة فاقوس)
B: I .... engineering.

a) will study
b) am going to study
c) study
d) is studying

33. Don't worry, I will show you how to operate the tablet. This is a/an .... (الشرقية - إدارة القرين)

a) prediction
b) fact
c) request
d) offer

34. My sister-in-law is pregnant. She .... a baby. (الشرقية - إدارة بلبيس)

a) is going to have
b) is having
c) will be having
d) will have

35. Oh, the water is boiling. I .... off the gas. (البحيرة - إدارة المحمودية)

a) will turn
b) am going to turn
c) am turning
d) turn

36. Next month, I .... a new mobile. It is my decision. (الشرقية - إدارة منيا القمح)

a) am buying
b) am going to buy
c) will buy
d) buy



Take a test

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Vocabulary

1. A: Are you going to Al-Fayoum for a .... reason? B: No, just for a holiday.
a) flexible b) particular c) recent d) lighting

2. The telephone lines are down, so .... is very difficult in this area.
a) hunting b) communication c) contact d) conversation

3. The stick I have is ....; I can bend it easily without being broken.
a) hard b) light c) flexible d) stiff

4. .... is a natural phenomenon that produces very strong light in the sky.
a) Lighting b) Thunder c) Tide d) Lightning

5. There was no evidence that the suspect was .... with the crime.
a) contacted b) communicated c) collected d) connected

6. .... was tightened at the airport before the Prime Minister arrived.
a) Security b) Maturity c) Community d) Insecurity

7. I found learning Chinese somehow an impossible ....
a) work b) mission c) task d) profession

8. The word "sat-nav" is short for اختصار satellite ....
a) navigation b) navy c) naval d) nave

9. The new project is expected to .... at least 2000 new jobs for the youth.
a) consume b) create c) control d) develop

10. There have been major new developments in satellite ....
a) psychology b) physiology c) biology d) technology

11. The secret information on my Facebook account was lost in a ....
a) hack b) hacked c) hacker d) hacks

12. A .... hotel has just established a new branch in Egypt.
a) sat-nav b) worldwide c) possible d) latest

13. We can warm up the room quite quickly with this .... fire.
a) electric b) electrical c) electricity d) electrician

14. I have to .... my homework before I hand it in.
a) collect b) create c) check d) calculate

15. During my holidays, I like to go .... as it is cheaper than staying in hotels.
a) visiting b) heating c) climbing d) camping

Language

16. A: Do you have any plans for the weekend?
B: I .... my friends on Saturday morning.

a) will meet b) am going to meet c) meet d) will be met

17. My family promised they .... me out today for passing my exams.

a) would take b) are going to take c) to take d) will take

18. I am going on holiday with my children to Italy. I am sure I .... it.

a) are enjoying b) will enjoy
c) are going to enjoy d) should enjoy

19. It's my birthday next Tuesday. I .... 17.

a) am being b) going to be c) have been d) will be

20. Don't come late again or I .... punish you.

a) are going to b) shan't c) are gone to d) will

21. The tree is broken! It ....

a) is falling b) is going to fall c) will fall d) falls

22. I have planned. I .... lunch with my uncle next Friday.

a) will have b) am having c) am going to have d) would have

23. Amir is filling the bucket with water. He .... the car.

a) will wash b) washes
c) has washed d) is going to wash

24. I expect my son .... high marks in the exam.

a) gets b) will get c) is getting d) will be getting

25. Menna .... to tomorrow's class. That's what I guess.

a) will be come b) won't come
c) isn't going to come d) is going to come

26. Today is Thursday, so tomorrow .... be Friday.

a) is going b) is c) will d) is going to

27. If you are too busy to clean your room, I .... it for you.

a) am going to clean b) are cleaning
c) would clean d) will clean

28. Dad : I'm going out. Do you want to come with me?
Belal: Sure. I .... my jacket and go with you.

a) took b) am taking c) am going to take d) will take

29. Which of the following doesn't express the use of "will + inf."?

a) Prediction with evidence. b) On-the-spot decisions.
c) Future fact. d) Offering help.

30. We .... you next week. I have lots of work at home.

a) don't visit b) are not going to visit
c) are going to visit d) will not visit





Key Vocabulary — المفردات الرئيسية

antivirus software (n) برنامج مضاد للفيروسات	hacking (n) القرصنة (على الإنترنت)	posting photos نشر الصور
click (v) – ed يضغط على (رابط)	link (n) رابط	scam (n) (v) – med احتيال / يحتال (يخدع)
cyberbullying (n) التنمر/التسلط الإلكترونى	lock (v) – ed يغلق/يحبس	uploading personal details رفع بيانات شخصية على الإنترنت
download (n) (v) – ed تحميل/يحمل من الإنترنت	password (n) كلمة المرور	
downloading malware (n) تحميل برمجيات خبيثة/ضارة	phishing (n) التصيد/الاحتيال	

Vocabulary on Reading & Listening Texts — مفردات نصوص القراءة والاستماع

abilities (n) قدرات	data (n) بيانات	horrible (adj) فظيع
account (n) حساب (بنكى/على موقع إلكترونى)	delete (v) – d يمسح	impossible (adj) مستحيل
address (n) عنوان	details (n) تفاصيل	kids (n) أطفال/صغار
advert = advertisement (n) إعلان	embarrassing (adj) محرج	post (n) (v) – ed منشور/ينشر (على الإنترنت)
almost (adv) تقريبًا	employment (n) توظيف	really (adv) حقًا
bank account (n) حساب بنكى	excited (adj) فرحان/مبتهج	rude (adj) وقح/قليل الأدب
bully (v) – ~~y~~ied يتنمر	experience (n) (v) – d تجربة شخصية/يجرب	scary (adj) مخيف
careful (adj) حريص	free (adj) (adv) = for free = free of charge مجانًا	socialise (v) – d يختلط (اجتماعيًا)
change (v) – d يغير	funny (adj) مضحك	surprise (v) – d يندهش
comment (n) (v) – ed تعليق/يعلق	furious (adj) غاضب جداً	ugly (adj) قبيح الشكل
credit card (n) كارت ائتمان	google (v) – d يبحث على محرك البحث (جوجل)	website (n) موقع إنترنت

Workbook Vocabulary

مفردات كتاب التدريبات

allow (v) – ed يسمح	dishonest (adj) مخادع/محتال	steal (v) يسرق
(be) in trouble (v) يكون فى ورطة	document (n) وثيقة	unwanted (adj) غير مرغوب فيه
believe (v) – d يصدق	frighten (v) – ed يرعب/يخيف	

Vocabulary Check point 1

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. No one can gain access to the computer system without entering the ....
   a) crossword b) passport c) password d) past word
2. You can .... all of the company's products from their website.
   a) upload b) upgrade
   c) update d) download
3. .... on "next" when you have finished filling out the form.
   a) Download b) Load
   c) Select d) Click
4. My father was .... when I failed my exam. He decided to punish me.
   a) pleased b) exciting c) furious d) careful
5. Haitham .... some old photos to empty his phone storage.
   a) dated b) deleted
   c) commented d) posted
6. I went to the bank to ask them to close my ....
   a) hacking b) account c) details d) address
7. I think it was .... of them not to call and say that they weren't coming.
   a) wonderful b) rude
   c) scared d) excited
8. To get information about my project, I decided to .... it.
   a) goggle b) google c) log d) download
9. The dog had an infectious disease, so I .... it in a separate room to treat it.
   a) looked b) locked
   c) downloaded d) phished
10. Several people .... on my last post. I was very happy with what they said.
    a) commented b) excited
    c) completed d) clicked

Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions — التعبيرات والمصطلحات وحروف الجر

build friendships يبنى صداقات	delete ... from يمسح من	think about يفكر فى
believe in يصدق/يؤمن بـ	plenty of وفرة من	worried about قلق بشأن
complete/ fill in a form يكمل/يملأ استمارة	keep a note of يحتفظ بملحوظة من	write about يكتب عن
do it online يفعل شيئًا على الإنترنت	look like يبدو كأنه/يشبه	in detail بالتفصيل
get ... for free يحصل على شىء مجانًا	safe place for مكان آمن لـ	make comments on يعلق على
get a job يحصل على وظيفة	stay safe online يبقى آمنًا على الإنترنت	careful about/with حريص على
advert for إعلان لـ	read about يقرأ عن	click on ينقر على
comment about تعليق على	socialise with يختلط اجتماعيًا مع	rude to وقح مع
complete ... with يكمل ... بـ	steal from يسرق من	to conclude/ in conclusion فى النهاية (لتختم موضوع)

Derivatives — المشتقات

Verb	Noun	Adjective
account يمثل/يشرح/يعلل	account حساب/رصيد accountant محاسب accountancy علم المحاسبة	accountable مسئول/ممكن تفسيره
allow يسمح	allowance إجازة/أجر/مصروف	------------------------
care يعتنى	care رعاية/عناية carer راعٍ (مقدم الرعاية)	careful حذر/حريص caring مهتم
embarrass يحرج/يربك	embarrassment إحراج	embarrassed محرج/خجلان embarrassing مخجل/مربك
employ يعين/يوظف	employee موظف employer صاحب العمل employment عمالة unemployment بطالة	unemployed عاطل عن العمل employable قادر على العمل
frighten يخيف	fright خوف/هلع	frightened خائف/مذعور frightening مخيف/مرعب frightful كريه/بغيض
------------------------	fury غضب/سخط	furious غاضب/ثائر
socialise يختلط (اجتماعيًا)	society مجتمع	sociable اجتماعى (شخص) social اجتماعى(متعلق بالمجتمع)

Examples

تعلم أن تستخدم ما تحفظ، لاحظ الأمثلة التالية:

- Dad never embarrasses me. (v)
  - He knows well that embarrassment will harm my feelings. (n)
  - My cheeks get red when I'm embarrassed. (adj)
- I care for my sick father. (v)
  - I give him due care. (n)
  - Ramy is very caring; he never lets his sick father alone. (adj)
- The company plans to employ 100 people per year. (v)
  - The employment process will last for 2 months. (n)
  - A month ago, I was an employee, but now I'm unemployed. (n) - (adj)

Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	الكلمة	Synonym المرادف	Antonym	المضاد
careful	حريص	cautious/concerned	careless/incautious	غير حريص/مهمل
change	يغير	alter/adjust	preserve/remain	يحفظ/يظل
embarrassing	محرج	awkward/uncomfortable	elegant/convenient	غير محرج/مناسب
funny	مضحك	comical/humorous	serious/unfunny	جاد/غير مضحك
furious	غاضب جدًا	very angry/raging/boiling	calm/quiet	هادئ
horrible	فظيع	unpleasant/awful/terrible	attractive/pleasant	جذاب
lock	يغلق	close/shut	open/unlock	يفتح
personal	شخصى	private/individual	public/common	عام/شائع
scary	مخيف	frightening/terrifying	normal/calming	طبيعى/مهدئ
socialise	يختلط (اجتماعيًا)	mix/mingle	dissociate/separate	ينفصل اجتماعيًا
ugly	قبيح	unattractive/awful	beautiful/pretty	جميل

Vocabulary Check point 2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Do you remember any funny stories about work? I want to laugh. The word "funny" is an antonym of ....

a) careless
b) serious
c) humorous
d) attractive

2. You must .... a note of everything you hear from your teachers.

a) draw
b) do
c) safe
d) keep

3. Criminals are those who steal .... other people.

a) of
b) with
c) by
d) from

4. It is advisable for any parent to let their children socialise with others. The synonym of "socialise" is "..................".

a) separate
b) dissociate
c) mix
d) shut

5. To open any file, just click .... the menu icon.

a) for
b) of
c) on
d) at

6. Please, walk quietly so that you don't .... the birds away.

a) frightening
b) frightened
c) fright
d) frighten

7. .... conclusion, tourism is one of the most important sources of income.

a) In
b) On
c) To
d) At

8. Can I hide يخفى my personal information, please? The synonym of the word "personal" is "..................".

a) private
b) individual
c) public
d) both a & c

9. Sanaa wants to change her mobile phone whose screen is broken. The antonym of the word "change" is "..................".

a) impair
b) replace
c) remain
d) alter

10. The coach got furious when the reporter asked him about his choices. The antonym of the word "furious" is "..................".

a) pleasant
b) frightened
c) worried
d) calm

Reading Text



Hassan's Problem

Last week, I was playing online when I saw an advert for a free game. I clicked on the link and wrote my name, address and some bank details. When I tried to download the game, nothing happened. It was a scam!

My dad was furious because they stole money from his bank account and my computer stopped working properly! Don't click on links you don't recognise and never give your personal details on a strange website. Oh, and remember to use antivirus software to stop thieves!

Listening Text





Online Dangers

Hassan : Last week, I was reading about a new online game and saw an advert that said I could get this game for free. All I had to do was complete a form with my name, email address and credit card details. I don't have a credit card, but I sometimes use my dad's card to buy things. Of course, it was a scam. They just wanted the credit card details so they could steal money, but it looked just like a real advert. I think lots of kids would be so excited to get a free game they wouldn't think carefully about it.

Laila : I'm leaving school this year[1] and I want to get a job in a bank. My teacher told me that employers often look online to see what we've posted, so I decided to google my name to see what they might find. It was scary. All the photos and the 'funny' comments I'd ever posted were there and I couldn't delete them. I didn't realise it's almost impossible to remove personal data from the internet.

Saeed : I love reading my friend's social media posts, but some people write really horrible things about other teenagers. One of my friends posted a photo of himself on his new bike and he got lots of rude comments about how he looked and how ugly his bike is[2]. I couldn't believe it! These kids would never, never bully my friend at school, so why do it online? I'm really careful about what I say on the internet now!



Notes on some sentences: ملاحظات على بعض الجمل:

١- استخدام المضارع المستمر للتعبير عن المستقبل مع وجود ترتيب.

٢- لاحظ هذا البناء الذى يعنى إلى أى قدر وفيه تستخدم صفة how + adj ويأتى بعدها جملة.

Video Script



Sometimes teenagers experience bullying because they look different, have different abilities or different opinions and experiences. If you think someone is being bullied, what should you do? Parents and teachers are there to give advice when bullying happens. If you know someone is being bullied, you should tell the teacher. You can also offer to help the person tell their parents. You can keep a note of any bullying you see so that you have plenty of information to tell your teacher. The teacher can then talk to the bully about everything they have done. Be kind to the person who is being bullied. Make sure that they know you support them and do not like the bully's behaviour. Spend time talking and socialising with them to help them build new friendships. Invite them to join your friends. Agree with your friends that you will make it clear to the bully that you do not like their behaviour.

Notes on Vocabulary

لاحظ الفرق بين الكلمات التالية:

1	**allow + مفعول + to + inf.** يسمح لـ...	I allowed him to play here.
	allow + v-ing/noun يسمح بـ	I allowed playing here.
2	**scam** غش - عملية احتيال	The email was only a scam to take my money.
	skim يقرأ أو يتصفح سريعًا لمعرفة الفكرة الرئيسية فقط دون تفاصيل	I usually skim the newspapers in the morning.
	scan يفحص أو يتصفح بدقة للبحث عن شيء محدد	We scanned the list until we found our friend's name.
3	**download ... from** يحمّل أو ينزل من الإنترنت	If I like anything on the internet, I download it onto my computer.
	upload ... to يرفع على الإنترنت	When I finished my research, I uploaded it to the internet.
	unload يقوم بتفريغ الحمولة (سيارة مثلًا)	Ghareeb parked his vehicle and began to unload it.

4	upgrade	يرقى - يصعد (من أقل لأعلى)	You must upgrade your computer version as it is very old.
	update	يحدّث	You must update your computer programs more often.

5	free	حر/مجانى	Choose anyone. You are free.
	free of/from	خالٍ من/ لا يعانى من (مرض)	- Dad is free of/from any disease. - This drink is free of/from alcohol.
	freely	بحرية	Say your opinion freely.

Vocabulary Check point 3

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. You must be careful when you .... files from the internet.
   a) download b) upload c) overload d) upgrade
2. Children under five usually travel .... on trains.
   a) free from b) freely c) free d) freedom
3. I only had time to .... the letter, I haven't read it carefully yet.
   a) scan b) scam c) skim d) skin
4. I told my manager that I would .... the file as soon as I had finished it.
   a) download b) upload c) upgrade d) update
5. You can't allow your children .... up late before exams.
   a) staying b) to staying c) stay d) to stay
6. Never sign things in a hurry to be able to avoid ....
   a) skims b) scams c) scans d) skills
7. From time to time, we must .... the applications on our phones.
   a) upload b) download c) update d) up-to-date
8. Hospitals mustn't allow .... for any reason.
   a) to smoke b) smoking c) smokes d) smoke
9. To find the piece of information I wanted, I .... the whole site.
   a) skimmed b) scammed c) phished d) scanned
10. Could you tell me how .... your daughter is?
    a) cleverly b) cleverness c) clever d) much clever



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Key Vocabulary, Reading, Listening & Workbook

1. The government considers computer ………………… a crime.
   a) education b) hacking c) technology d) employment
2. ………………… photos of other people on the internet needs their permission.
   a) Posting b) Reading c) Blocking d) Locking
3. I always warn my daughters not to ………………… their personal details online.
   a) download b) update c) upload d) join
4. You must ………………… the car when you leave it. It is not safe here.
   a) look b) lock c) unlock d) locker
5. It was …………..; they just wanted the credit card details so they could steal money.
   a) malware b) bullying c) cyberbullying d) a scam
6. Frightening or worrying people by sending them messages on the internet is called ………………… .
   a) security b) antivirus c) cyberbullying d) shoplifting
7. To protect your device, you need to install ………………… software.
   a) antivirus b) antibiotic c) anticipation d) anticlimax
8. To open a new document, ………………… "File", then "New".
   a) click b) lock c) change d) pick
9. Don't tell me the summary of what happened, I want the ………………… .
   a) scams b) briefs c) accounts d) details
10. Salaries are now transferred to the employees' bank ………………… .
    a) maths b) accounts c) boxes d) amounts
11. Someone has tried to trick me into giving confidential سرية information over the internet. This is called ………………… .
    a) software b) malware c) phishing d) scanning
12. Omar put me in a/an ………………… situation yesterday. I was very upset.
    a) embarrassing b) posting c) antivirus d) supported
13. There is a strong ………………… between lung diseases and smoking.
    a) link b) connect c) communication d) website
14. Did you know that ………………… is a computer program or something that is harmful to the computer system?
    a) hardware b) phishing c) malware d) scam
15. Take care! You will ………………… the baby if you wear this mask.
    a) frightened b) lock c) frighten d) support

16. We all were disappointed when Ali proved to be ....
a) furious b) possible c) courageous d) dishonest

17. Our computer teacher told us about some good ways to stop receiving .... emails.
a) wanted b) supported c) unwanted d) honest

18. You need to update your .... software regularly to remove viruses on your computer.
a) malware b) antivirus c) antibiotic d) antibodies

19. Pollution is the .... side of the city life.
a) relaxing b) embarrassing c) dishonest d) ugly

20. The .... we have on our computer should stay safe and secured.
a) hacking b) google c) data d) malware

21. I usually just .... through the newspaper in the morning. I read the headlines.
a) skim b) scam c) scan d) count

22. My schedule is quite .... I have availability to swap appointments يبدل مواعيد.
a) stuck b) crowded c) flexible d) rubbery

Expressions, Idioms, Prepositions, Derivatives, Synonyms & Antonyms

23. Children like to download new games and films .... the internet.
a) to b) of c) from d) by

24. The largest company in our town has 600 ....
a) employers b) employments c) employees d) employable

25. The internet and social networking sites help us to .... friendships.
a) take b) click c) build d) do

26. Ali's father punished him as he was rude .... his teacher.
a) to b) with c) at d) for

27. I encourage my children to .... with people to make friends.
a) social b) sociable c) socialise d) socialising

28. I think that my daughter Rodaina is a .... character. She likes meeting new people.
a) sociable b) social c) society d) socialism

29. There are a lot of .... advertisements on the internet.
a) tricks b) trickster c) tricky d) trickery

30. To remember what the lecturer has said, you should .... a note of everything.
a) do b) get c) think d) keep

31. With this card I can enter the museum .... I don't have to pay anything.
a) freely b) at free c) for free d) with free

32. Unfortunately, an important file was .... by mistake from my computer. (Longman)

a) added b) deleted c) improved d) disappeared

33. We usually end a presentation with "....................". (Longman)

a) To conclude, b) To start with,
c) First of all, d) On the other hand,

34. You need to .... the passage carefully to get all the details that will enable you to answer all the questions. (Longman)

a) scare b) scan c) skin d) save

35. .... means trying to hurt or cause problems to the internet users. (سوهاج - أخميم)

a) Cyberbullying b) Bullying c) Downloading d) Uploading

36. The email looked like it came from my bank, but it was an example of ....

(أسيوط)

a) phishing b) uploading c) downloading d) cyberbullying

37. This is an ideal group for finding support and .... (الجيزة - العمرانية)

a) friend b) membership c) friendship d) friendly

38. Don't .... the door behind you. (الجيزة - العمرانية)

a) look b) lock c) lack d) leak

39. The software downloaded from this website is mostly .... which will damage your laptop. (الجيزة - العياط)

a) apps b) malware c) hardware d) advert

Choose the TWO (2) correct answers of the FIVE (5) options:

40. This game is horrible. "Horrible" is a synonym for "....................". (Longman)

a) active b) impossible c) terrific d) awful e) terrible

41. Children don't like .... animals. (Longman)

a) quiet b) scary c) small d) frightening e) huge

42. Menna .... her father in his appearance and lifestyle.

a) looks like b) likes c) is like d) similar e) alike

43. My teacher sometimes allows .... between sessions.

a) eating b) to eat c) to eating d) us to eat e) ate

44. The secretary asked us to .... the application form and wait for the interview.

a) fill out b) complete c) full d) fill in e) complete in

45. Soaad had such an embarrassing situation which made her cry. The antonyms of the word "embarrassing" are ....

a) careless b) elegant c) awkward d) uncomfortable e) convenient

46. Drivers must be careful when driving especially in city centres. The synonyms of "careful" are "....................".

a) careless b) cautious c) raging d) concerned e) incautious



Future forms طرق التحدث عن المستقبل

3 Present Continuous المضارع المستمر

(am, is, are) + v + ing

I'm travelling to Saudi Arabia next Friday.

USAGE الاستخدام

1 **To talk about actions that you have arranged to do.** أحداث تم الترتيب لها مسبقًا.

I am meeting my friends in the club tomorrow evening.

كلمات دالة على الترتيب:

2 **We can use "present continuous" with the following:**

(arrange – make arrangements – prepare)

Amira is visiting her aunt; she has arranged everything.

لاحظ

١- عدم القدرة على فعل شيء فى المستقبل، يعنى وجود ترتيبات لفعل شيء آخر.

I can't attend your wedding tomorrow. I'm travelling with my father to France.

٢- الترتيب معناه أن هناك اتفاقًا بين طرفين أو أكثر وليس قرارًا فرديًا.

I'm seeing my boss tomorrow at 8 p.m.

- ولكن لو كان الحدث قرارًا فرديًا decesion أو نية intention فالأفضل هو استخدام be going to.

I'm going to see my boss tomorrow to ask him for a pay rise.

٣- عندما يكون الحدث خارج سيطرة الشخص فلا يمكن استخدام المضارع المستمر للتعبير عنه ونستخدم be going to بدلًا منه.

It's getting dark at 5 p.m. ✗

It's going to get dark at 5 p.m. ✓

4 Present Simple المضارع البسيط

يستخدم المضارع البسيط للتعبير عن المستقبل فى حالة المواعيد الثابتة (القطارات/الطائرات/الأتوبيسات/السينما/ البرامج التلفزيونية/الحصص المدرسية).

The train to Tanta leaves at 6:30 tomorrow morning.

The English lesson starts at 2:30.

EXTRA POINTS

1

لاحظ: استخدام be about to + inf. لحدث في المستقبل القريب.

- The audience are in their seats, and the performance is about to start.
- Hurry up. The coach is about to leave.

2

أيضًا من الممكن استخدام be + to + inf. للتعبير عن المستقبل مع الترتيبات الرسمية.

- The Prime Minister is to watch the final match in the stadium.

Language Check point 4

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. This museum .... at 9:00 a.m. tomorrow.
   a) will open b) opens
   c) open d) is going to open
2. I .... my next summer holiday in Marina. I have arranged everything.
   a) have spent b) spend
   c) am spending d) will spend
3. According to the timetable, our exams .... in May.
   a) start b) starts
   c) will start d) are starting
4. Salwa .... to London next week. Her flight leaves at 7 in the evening.
   a) going to fly b) is flying
   c) will have flown d) would fly
5. Adham .... to Tanta tomorrow. He's got the tickets.
   a) will travel b) is travelling
   c) travels d) is going to travel
6. What time .... your plane take off tomorrow?
   a) will b) is
   c) does d) should
7. I .... Samer in his new house next Friday. It will be a surprise for him.
   a) will visit b) am going to visit
   c) am visiting d) visit
8. The patient .... better soon. He takes his medicines on time.
   a) will get b) is going to get
   c) is getting d) gets



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Marwan .... married next week. Everything is arranged.
a) will get b) is going to get c) is getting d) gets
2. I .... John tomorrow morning. He has accepted my invitation and booked a flight.
a) won't meet b) am meeting
c) will meet d) am going to be met
3. Look at the schedule! The first train to Aswan .... at 5:00 a.m.
a) leaves b) is leaving c) is going to leave d) will leave
4. We .... a party for my daughter's success tomorrow. Would you like to come?
a) are having b) going to have c) would have d) has
5. Tomorrow, I .... my friends for dinner. We have already reserved the tables at the restaurant.
a) am meeting b) will meet c) meet d) meeting
6. Dina can't see her friends this afternoon. She .... her mother in the kitchen.
a) is helping b) helps c) helped d) was helping
7. I .... my uncle at the airport at six o'clock. We've set the appointment together.
a) going to meet b) am meeting c) will meet d) meet
8. This bus .... exactly at 10:30 in the morning.
a) will arrive b) arriving c) is arriving d) arrives
9. Susan .... to London next Friday. She's packed her luggage.
a) will travel b) is going to travel c) is travelling d) travel
10. When he arrives, I .... dinner with him. I have just decided.
a) am having b) would have c) have d) will have
11. I hope .... all my dreams in life.
a) I will achieve b) I would achieve c) to achieving d) achieve
12. I hope .... all my dreams in life.
a) will achieve b) would achieve c) to achieving d) to achieve
13. I .... my father what you said. I promise.
a) won't tell b) am not going to tell
c) am not telling d) don't tell
14. Somebody is knocking on the door. I .... and open it.
a) am going b) would go c) will go d) have gone
15. Stop piling up يكدس your lessons. You .... fail.
a) will b) would c) are going to d) will be
16. Are you .... tennis after school today?
a) going to play b) played
c) play d) probably playing

17. I hope I .... that mountain one day.
a) am climbing
b) am going to climb
c) will be climbed
d) will climb

18. Look, the sky is really dark, I .... indoors.
a) will be staying
b) will be stayed
c) stay
d) will stay

19. It is predicted that ordinary people .... on space holidays in the future.
a) are going
b) are going to go
c) will go
d) will be going

20. Everything is prepared for my sister's birthday party next week. This means that ....
a) we will have a party next week
b) we are going to have a party next week
c) we are having a party next week
d) we have a party next week

21. Jana is about to sleep soon. This means that ....
a) she will sleep soon
b) she is going to sleep soon
c) she is sleeping soon
d) she sleeps soon

22. I'm going to attend the conference tomorrow. This sentence shows a/an ....
a) future fact
b) intention
c) threat
d) promise

23. Hatem will join the Faculty of Medicine. This sentence shows a/an ....
a) intention
b) plan
c) prediction
d) fact

24. Tomorrow, the plane .... at 5:00 a.m. (الشرقية - إدارة فاقوس)
a) will land
b) is landing
c) are going to land
d) lands

25. She .... to England next Monday. Everything is arranged. (الجيزة - إدارة العمرانية)
a) is flying
b) flies
c) fly
d) would fly

26. Rana .... to Canada next month. She has made arrangements. (الجيزة - إدارة الدقي)
a) travel
b) is travelling
c) travelled
d) is travelled

27. **A:** .... to Canada tomorrow? **B:** Yes, I have got the ticket and the visa. Longman
a) Do you travel
b) Are you travelling
c) You will travel
d) Are you going to travel

28. We made all the arrangements; we .... a wedding party. Longman
a) are going to give
b) give
c) will give
d) are giving

29. I can't meet you tonight because I .... my brother at the airport. Longman
a) had met
b) am meeting
c) will meet
d) going to meet

30. Rami is travelling at night. This means that he .... Longman
a) decided to travel
b) is likely to travel
c) intended to travel
d) has completed all preparations

31. We made all the flight arrangements; we .... tonight. Longman
a) are going to travel
b) travel
c) will travel
d) are travelling

32. Don't worry, we are about .... this difficult task. Longman
a) to finishing
b) to finish
c) will finish
d) will be finished



Take a test

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Vocabulary

1. It was so .... when few people attended the wedding party.
   a) embarrassed b) wonderful c) amusing d) embarrassing
2. .... means putting photographs online.
   a) Posting photos b) Downloading malware c) Scamming d) Cyberbullying
3. I saw some adverts .... different jobs in Cairo and Alexandria.
   a) with b) for c) on d) from
4. All drivers should really know how to .... a flat tyre اطارفارغ.
   a) buy b) change c) take d) have
5. .... has become a global threat over the last decade. It's like any crime.
   a) Downloading b) Uploading c) Hacking d) Accounting
6. I never .... my students to waste their time. I always encourage them.
   a) let b) make c) allow d) prevent
7. Readers can .... the author's latest novel to read on a computer or tablet.
   a) upload b) unload c) offload d) download
8. Entering the museum is free today. The opposite of "free" is "................".
   a) costless b) private c) normal d) costly
9. I have lost all my personal .... on most of social media websites. I am so frustrated منزعج.
   a) software b) accounts c) responsibilities d) components
10. My brother is an .... in a great company in Alexandria.
   a) account b) accountancy c) accountable d) accountant
11. I have to .... this old version of Windows to enjoy having more programs.
   a) upload b) download c) upgrade d) overload
12. You should give .... of your education and experience on the application form.
   a) components b) documents c) accounts d) details
13. Nesma had a nightmare كابوس in which .... monsters were chasing her.
   a) scary b) scared c) frightened d) pleasant
14. Fame always .... people, but not Sir Magdy Yacoub!
   a) exchanges b) changes c) charges d) challenges
15. What a .... smell coming from the fridge! Maybe the eggs got rotten تعفن.
   a) scary b) horrified c) terrified d) horrible

Language

16. The film .... at 12 p.m. at the cinema.

a) finish
b) finishes
c) will finish
d) is going to finish

17. We .... in the forest next Friday as arranged.

a) will camp
b) are going to camp
c) are camping
d) would camp

18. Amal .... her birthday party next week. She has made a lot of preparations.

a) gives
b) will give
c) is giving
d) is going to give

19. I can't attend your birthday party tonight because I .... my uncle at hospital.

a) will visit
b) going to visit
c) am visiting
d) to visit

20. Tarek! What time .... your friend tomorrow?

a) are you meeting
b) you will meet
c) you are meeting
d) do you meet

21. Amr .... in Boston University. That is his aim.

a) is studying
b) may study
c) will study
d) is going to study

22. The series .... at seven o'clock sharp.

a) starts
b) will start
c) is going to start
d) is starting

23. Reda .... us to his friends as soon as we have arrived.

a) going introduce
b) introduces
c) introduce
d) will introduce

24. Real Madrid is a very good team. It .... the match.

a) would win
b) is going to win
c) will win
d) are winning

25. I can't watch the film in the cinema with you as it .... at 6:30 and I have work at this time.

a) will be started
b) starts
c) is going to start
d) is starting

26. There is no doubt that we .... out of petrol one day.

a) will run
b) are going to run
c) are running
d) would run

27. Mum .... to the dentist on Monday morning.

a) will go
b) going to go
c) goes
d) is going

28. I need to get in shape. I .... on a diet.

a) will go
b) going to go
c) am going
d) have gone

29. Look at the chicken on the edge of the roof. I think it .... fall down.

a) would
b) going to
c) is going
d) is about to

30. Take your umbrella with you .... you will get wet.

a) and
b) so
c) or
d) but





Writing Skill

للمزيد من الشرح والتدريبات يرجى الرجوع لملحق المهارات.

Writing tips

A reflective essay

- It is an essay in which the writer examines his/her experiences in life.

- مقال التدبر يكتب فيه الكاتب عن خبراته وتجاربه فى الحياة وكيفية الاستفادة من هذه التجارب. ويتكون من:

1. Introduction المقدمة:

   It should be more direct to explain what experience that he/she will talk about.

2. The body الموضوع:

   It explains how the writer has changed or what he/she has learned.

   What things caused him/her to change.

3. Conclusion الخاتمة:

   The writer sums up يلخص why the change is beneficial and how it will affect him/her in the future.

A blog

It is a personal website in which a person can write about his/her personal life and make comments.

Example

The problems children might have with the internet.

Children, who are among the most active internet users, are unfortunately prone to a number of threats and problems. If you allow your children to spend much time surfing the web, it's important to know what threats they face to be able to deal with them. The most common problems that face children are loneliness, depression and anxiety. Parents should be aware of what their kids see and hear on the internet. Also, who they meet and what they share about themselves.

You must talk with your children, using tools to protect them and keep an eye on their activities. They must never post or reveal personal information such as, addresses or phone numbers.



Practice more

(A) Reading Comprehension

قاموس بالكلمات الجديدة فى
قطع الفهم والتراجم نهاية الكتاب

1 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Last month, my parents made up their minds to take me to Port Said. They said we were going to have a wonderful time basking in the sun on the beach. We started at 6 o'clock in the morning and reached Port Said at half past eight. Mother suggested we would go shopping for half an hour before going to the beach. We agreed and went to El Nahda Street which was an appropriate place for buying clothes and souvenirs at reasonable prices. It is full of small shops and department stores where you can find almost anything you want there.

She said I needed a pullover for the winter and she needed a skirt. Well, we started walking. There were so many lovely articles that we forgot all about going to the beach. After a long tour, we were able to buy some of our needs. Noon came and we decided to have lunch at a restaurant. Then we resumed the search. Mother saw a marvellous Chinese carpet and stood mesmerised in front of it. She insisted on buying it. Dad refused. So, we went to a cafe and began to discuss the matter logically. As usual, mother won. Fortunately, Dad had a bank cheque in his wallet. So he paid by cheque to purchase it. Dad began to worry about the customs, and indeed we had to queue for three hours. The customs official demanded a large sum of money. Dad didn't have it and so we had to return the carpet. We reached Cairo at midnight. We were completely exhausted when we went home. It was obvious that the trip was not as enjoyable as we had expected.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A suitable title for the passage is "..................".

a) Man proposes and God disposes b) A wonderful day
c) Relaxing at Port Said d) A pleasant trip

2. "Mesmerised" means ....

a) unable to decide b) upright
c) unable to move or speak d) having good memory

3. The parents of the narrator were rich because ....

a) they could buy a skirt and a pullover b) they went to Port Said
c) the father had a bank cheque d) they could afford a Chinese carpet

4. The underlined pronoun "it" refers to ....

a) a Chinese carpet b) a pullover and a skirt.
c) a souvenir d) a case.

5. They spent .... on the beach.

a) all the time b) half an hour c) the afternoon d) no time

6. The mother was ....

a) naive b) sap c) vandal d) persuasive

7. The antonym of the word "resume" is "......................".

a) continue b) cease c) restart d) reopen

2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

There are many periods in a person's life. Each period has its pleasures and pains and the happiest person is the one who enjoys what each period gives him without wasting his time in useless things. Childhood is a time when a child relies on parents who offer him everything he needs, such as food, clothes and money. During this period, there are a few responsibilities. A child finds pleasure in playing in the rain or on beach sand. But a child has pains since he is not free to do what he wishes and he is always told what to do or punished for what he has done wrong.

When a child becomes a young man, he or she starts to earn his or her own living, and becomes free from the discipline and the control of school and parents, and accepts responsibilities. However, if they work hard, they can have the great happiness of seeing themselves make sustainable progress in their professions to build up for themselves their own position in society.

Wisdom and the ability to help other people come with old age. Old people can enjoy seeing their children do great things in life. Also, they may feel the happiness of having passed their life safely. At the same time, they may suffer from loneliness and illness.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. There are .... periods of life mentioned in the passage.

a) two b) three c) four d) five

2. The underlined pronoun "they" refers to ....

a) children b) young people c) grandchildren d) old people

3. A child is not free to do what s/he wishes. The synonym of "wishes" is "..................".

a) desires b) dislikes c) hates d) refuses

4. Young people are usually .... according to the passage.

a) lazy b) wise c) hardworking d) inactive

5. The happiest persons are those who ....

a) spend much time in bed b) waste time
c) enjoy good and bad things d) play all the time

6. There are .... responsibilities in the first period of our life.

a) many b) a lot of c) little d) not many

7. A suitable title for this passage is "..................".

a) Childhood and its trouble
b) Old age and loneliness
c) Periods of life
d) Youth and hardworking

(B) Translation

3 (A) Choose the correct Arabic translation:

1. Scientists make achievements and advances which help us to cope with the changes in our world.

a) يقوم العلماء بإنجازات واكتشافات تعوقنا عن التعامل مع التغيرات فى عالمنا.
b) العلم يقوم بإنجازات واكتشافات تساعدنا على التعامل مع التغيرات فى عالمنا.
c) يقوم العلماء بإنجازات واكتشافات تساعدنا على التعامل مع التغيرات فى عالمنا.
d) قام العلماء بإنجازات واكتشافات تساعدنا على التعامل مع التغيرات فى عالمنا.

2. Modern technology plays an important role in the progress of industry, agriculture, education, medicine and surgery.

a) تلعب التكنولوجيا الحديثة دورًا مهمًا فى تقدم الصناعة والزراعة والتعليم والطب والجراحة.
b) لعبت التكنولوجيا الحديثة دورًا مهمًا فى تقدم الصناعة والزراعة والتعليم والطب والجراحة.
c) التكنولوجيا الحديثة تلعب دورًا مهمًا فى تأخر الصناعة والزراعة والتعليم والطب والجراحة.
d) تلعب التكنولوجيا الأخيرة دورًا مهمًا فى تقدم الصناعة والزراعة والتعليم والطب والجراحة.

3. Our historical monuments are priceless treasures, so we should do our best to protect them.

a) إن آثارنا التاريخية كنوز لا تقدر بثمن، لذا يجب أن نبذل قصارى جهدنا لحمايتها.
b) إن لحظاتنا التاريخية كنوز تقدر بثمن، لذا يجب أن نبذل قصارى جهدنا لحمايتها.
c) إن لحظاتنا القديمة كنوز ليس لها ثمن، لذا يجب أن نبذل قصارى جهدنا لحمايتها.
d) إن آثارنا التاريخية كنوز ليس لها ثمن، لذا لا يجب أن نبذل قصارى جهدنا لحمايتها.

(B) Choose the correct English translation:

4. يجب على كل فرد تعلم مهارات الكمبيوتر والإنترنت لأن الحياة أصبحت معتمدة عليهما بشكل أساسى.

a) Everyone should teach computer and internet skulls because life has become dependent on them mainly.
b) Should everyone learn computer and internet skills because life has become dependent on them mainly.
c) Everyone should learn computer and internet skills because life has become independent on them mainly.
d) Everyone should learn computer and internet skills because life has become dependent on them mainly.

5. سأقابل صديقى أحمد غدًا فى الساعة العاشرة مساءً، لم أره منذ فترة طويلة وأفتقده بشدة.

a) I'll see my friend, Ahmed, tomorrow at 10 in the evening. I haven't seen him for long and I lose him so long.

b) I'm going to meet my friend, Ahmed, tomorrow at 10 a.m. I didn't see him for long and I missed him so much.

c) I meet my friend, Ahmed, tomorrow at 10 p.m. I haven't seen him for long and I'm missing him so much.

d) I'm seeing my friend, Ahmed, tomorrow at 10 p.m. I haven't seen him for long and I miss him so much.

6. المواطنة تعنى أن يتساوى أبناء الوطن الواحد فيما لهم من حقوق وما عليهم من واجبات.

a) Citizen means that the people of the same country are equal in terms of their rights and homework.

b) Citizenship means that the people of the some country are equal in terms of their laws and duties.

c) Citizenship means that the people of the same country are equal in terms of their rights and duties.

d) Membership means that the people of the same country are equal in terms of their truths and duties.

(C) Writing

4 Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on the following:

Your expectations concerning future communications.

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

I used more than 4 new vocabulary.	I used the right structure.	I used a topic sentence.	I wrote the conclusion.	I used the right punctuation.

Al-Azhar Corner



1 Finish the following dialogue:

Ahmed and Ali are talking about their plans for holidays.

Ahmed : Where are you going to spend your holiday, Ali?

Ali : (1).. .

Ahmed : (2)..?

Ali : I will go with my family.

Ahmed : (3)..?

Ali : I'm going to stay there for a fortnight.

Ahmed: Have a nice holiday!

Ali : (4).. .

A Glimpse of Revelation

2 (A) Choose the correct answer:

1. Angels have .... roles.
   a) the same b) no c) similar d) different
2. Angels record the .... of humans if they are on earth.
   a) diaries b) deads c) dears d) deeds

(B) Answer the following questions:

3. How do angels differ from humans?
4. What were angels created for?

The Novel

3 (A) Choose the correct answer:

1. All ships have .... to control wind power during their voyages.
   a) sails b) engines c) swords d) spades
2. When we were camping, we used .... to dig searching for water.
   a) sails b) spades c) swords d) sailors

(B) Answer the following questions:

3. How long did Ben Gun live alone on the island?
4. On what condition would Ben Gun help the group?

4 (A) Translate into Arabic:

The great development in industry has led to an increase in the amount of carbon dioxide and this has led to climate change and global warming.

(B) Translate into English:

توزن أعمال الناس يوم القيامة فمن غلبت حسناته سيئاته كان من الفائزين.

Choose the Two correct answers of the Five options:

1. Lock all the boxes before leaving the room. The synonyms of the word "lock" are ....
   a) secure b) paint c) cover d) shut e) close
2. Mazen spends too much time .... which is bad for him.
   a) on the internet b) on the line c) with the line d) online e) on internet

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

3. The message says I have won a prize, but I don't believe it. I think it's a ....
   a) scam b) click c) link d) change
4. Upload your .... details. Include your name and phone number.
   a) personnel b) personal c) personality d) personally
5. The new modern .... are enabling more people to work from home.
   a) internet b) hacks c) contacts d) communications
6. The police are searching for the three men who entered the country ....
   a) legality b) illegally c) lawfully d) easily
7. I was about to be a victim of ...., but luckily, I gave them wrong information by mistake.
   a) malware b) skimming c) socialising d) phishing
8. The special word you need before you can sign in to a Facebook account is called a ....
   a) key b) secret c) passport d) password
9. The flat has a lot of luxurious ترفيهي .... which are hard to find elsewhere.
   a) advertisements b) disabilities
   c) details d) troubles
10. I've booked five seats for the new play. My family and I .... it in the theatre.
    a) are watching b) will watch c) shall watch d) watch
11. The boys are collecting some dry branches. They .... a fire.
    a) make b) are making c) are going to make d) will make
12. Watch out or you .... into the hole.
    a) will fall b) are falling c) fall d) are going to fall
13. Hassan has decided that he .... Omra in Mecca next month.
    a) will perform b) is performing
    c) is going to perform d) will be performing
14. I don't think I .... able to finish this research on time.
    a) am going to be b) would be
    c) am being d) will be

15. I am having dinner with my colleagues tomorrow. We .... at my house at noon.

a) will be met b) will have met c) are meeting d) meet

16. Nadeen .... a doctor in 57357 Hospital when she finishes university. That's her intention.

a) is being
b) is going to be
c) will be
d) will have been

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

There are some who question whether globalisation is really something new. Companies in Europe and North America, supported by their governments, were opening up the rest of the world, searching for cheap raw materials. They transported these back to their own factories and produced manufactured goods, then sold them at a huge profit. The world became linked by trade and business.

This view is correct, but what it underestimates is the scale and speed of the changes that have taken place in the last thirty years or so. And the key role in these changes is that of computer technology, because it underlies all of them. Thanks to developments in digital technology, for example, it is now possible to move vast amounts of money around the world in seconds. Currency trading now goes on almost 24 hours a day, and it has been estimated that the amount of money traded has gone up by several thousand per cent in the last forty years. Decisions taken in a stock market in one country can have a disastrous effect on countries on the other side of the world, and entire national economies can be destroyed almost overnight.

It affects us all, and it relates not just to areas like trade, business and economics, but also to culture, entertainment, what we eat, how we communicate with each other and even how we see ourselves, our relationships and our lives.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17. Recent changes are different from what has happened before because of ....

a) computer technology
b) transport
c) business
d) culture

18. The world at first became linked by ....

a) technology
b) the internet
c) trade and business
d) currency

19. Economies of different countries can be affected by the decisions of ....

a) trading
b) goods
c) computer technology
d) stock market

20. Globalisation affects everything even the way we .... with each other.

a) connect b) communicate c) entertain d) estimate

21. It is now possible to move vast amount of money around the world in seconds with the help of ....

a) digital technology
b) stock market
c) hard currency
d) means of transport

22. Which sentence is the best summary of what the text says about globalisation?

a) How transport has developed.
b) The effect of stock market on economy.
c) The advantages of globalisation.
d) Computer technology and communication.

23. The underlined pronoun "It" refers to ....

a) communication
b) globalisation
c) culture
d) economy

24. **Choose the correct English translation:**

- تعتبر القراءة من الوسائل الرئيسية والأساسية لنهضة مختلف الشعوب والحضارات.

a) Reading is one of the main and essential means of the renaissance of difficult peoples and civilisations.
b) Consider reading is one of the mean and essential mains for the renaissance of different peoples and civilisations.
c) Reading is one of the main and essential means for the progress of difference peoples and nurseries.
d) Reading is considered one of the main and essential means of the renaissance of different peoples and civilisations.

25. **Choose the correct Arabic translation:**

- I'm travelling to France tomorrow morning and I may stay for two weeks. I'm going to communicate with you through video calls.

a) سأسافر إلى فرنسا صباح الغد ومن الممكن أن أمكث أسبوعين، وسأتواصل معك عبر مكالمات الفيديو.
b) يحتمل أن أسافر إلى فرنسا غدًا فى الصباح وسأمكث أسبوعين، وسأتصل بك عبر التليفون الفيديو.
c) أن أنوى أن أسافر فرنسا بعد أسبوعين، وسأتواصل معك عبر مكالمات الفيديو.
d) أنا أسافر إلى فرنسا الآن ويحتمل أن أمكث أسبوعين، وسأتواصل معك عبر مكالمات الفيديو.

26. **Answer the following questions:**

1. Ben Gun seemed to have suffered a lot on the island. Discuss.
2. Do you think Ben Gun would help Jim return to the ship?
3. Do you believe Ben Gun's story? Why?

27. **Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on the following:**

"What the world would be like without means of communication."

....

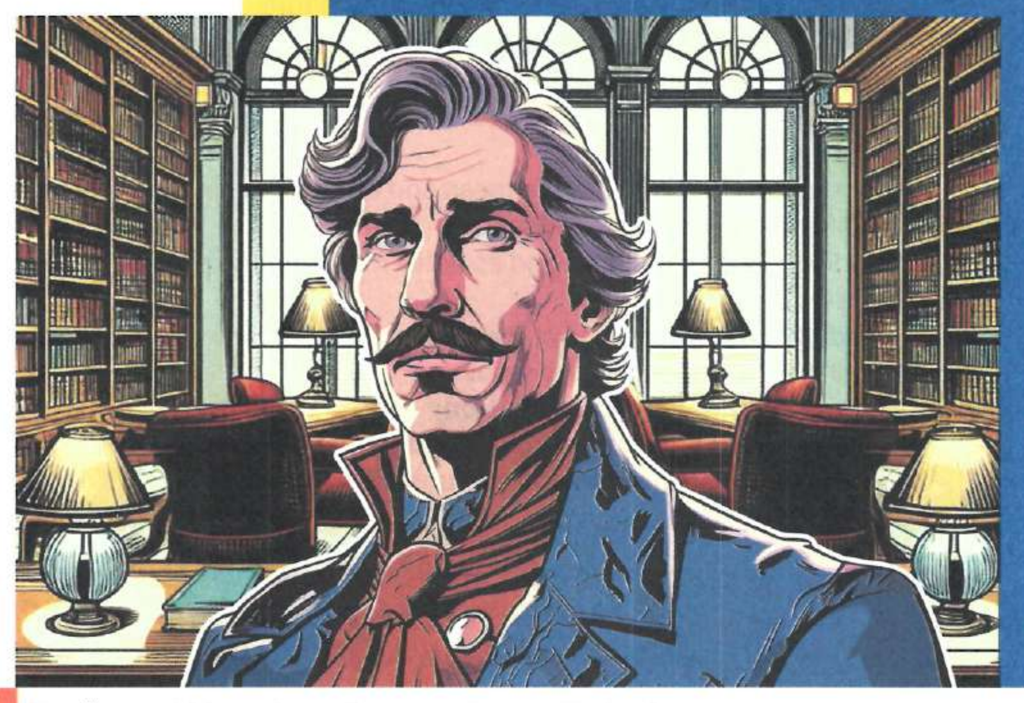
....

لمزيد من التدريبات للطلبة الفائقين
الرجوع لنهاية الكتاب ص 365

Assess your progress ★★★★★	< 50%	50 : 64%	65 : 84%	85 : 100%
	Study again	Practise more	Take more exams	Well done!

Unit 6

Learning from literature





Reading : A biography on Stevenson; A poem, *The Gardener*

Writing : A short review of a poem; A book review

Listening : A conversation about Robert Louis Stevenson

Speaking : Polite requests

Language : Verbs + infinitive or -ing form

Life Skills : Communication; Critical thinking







Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

currant row (n)	صف من العنب/الزبيب	hay (n)	قش/تبن	poet (n)	شاعر
dig (v)	يحفر	novel (n)	رواية		
gravel (n)	حصى	plot (n)	قطعة أرض زراعية	poetry (n)	شعر
literature (n)	الأدب	poem (n)	قصيدة		

Vocabulary on Reading & Listening Texts مفردات نصوص القراءة والاستماع

a bit (adv)	قليلًا	issue (n)	قضية	sailing (n)	إبحار
adventure (n)	مغامرة	kidnapped (adj)	مختطَف	Scottish (n) (adj)	إسكتلندى الجنسية
biography (n)	السيرة الذاتية	kind (n)	نوع	serious (adj)	جاد/خطير
case (n)	حالة/قضية	lawyer (n)	محام	successful (adj)	ناجح
choice (n)	اختيار	line (n)	سطر/خط	suppose (v) – d	يفترض
collection (n)	مجموعة / تنويعة	lock (v) – ed	يغلق/يحبس	tools (n)	أدوات بسيطة
consider (v) – ed	يعتبر/يضع فى الاعتبار	piracy (n)	القرصنة	travel (v) – led (n)	يسافر/رحلة/سفرية
discuss (v) – ed	يناقش	pirate (n)	قرصان	treasure (n)	كنز
discussion (n)	مناقشة	popular (adj)	محبوب	unwell (adj)	مريض/معتل الصحة
form (n)	شكل	publish (v) – ed	ينشر	walk (v) – ed (n)	يمشى/ممشى
full-time (adj) (adv)	دوام كامل	request (n) (v) – ed	طلب/يطلب	warm (adj)	دافئ
gardener (n)	جناينى	rhyme (n) (v) – d	قافية الشعر/يتناغم		
helpful (adj)	مفيد/متعاون	rhythm (n)	الإيقاع	wish (v) – ed (n)	يتمنى/أمنية
improve (v) – d	يحسن	romantic (adj)	رومانسى		

Workbook Vocabulary مفردات كتاب التدريبات

compare (v) – d	يقارن	favour (n)	معروف/جميل	sentence (n)	جملة
joy (n)	فرح	manager (n)	مدير		

Vocabulary Check point 1

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Stevenson was a great .... who wrote many wonderful poems.
   a) poetry b) director c) author d) poet
2. A lot of the writer's books were .... after his death.
   a) published b) improved c) proved d) written
3. I asked my friend to do me a .... while I was abroad.
   a) favourite b) wish c) favour d) discussion
4. .... is the illegal act of copying others' books.
   a) Kidnaping b) Rhyme c) Robbing d) Piracy
5. I think the real .... for man is health not money.
   a) pressure b) adventure c) treasure d) measure
6. The farmer has brought some .... for his animals to eat.
   a) poetry b) hay c) gavel d) treasure
7. You have to consult a .... They know laws best.
   a) lawyer b) doctor c) poet d) gardener
8. The child was .... by a gang who asked his family for a big ransom.
   a) stressed b) stolen c) rhymed d) kidnapped
9. I like reading the .... of El-Sadat by different writers.
   a) autobiography b) autography c) biography d) geography
10. I .... to meet you one day in a final match. It will be amazing, my brother.
   a) 'd better b) wish c) hate d) could

Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions التعبيرات والمصطلحات وحروف الجر

(be) best known for	معروف جيدًا كـ	compare with	يقارن بـ	for a while	لفترة من الوقت
(be) born	يولد	do a favour	يسدى معروفًا	form of	شكل من
a piece of writing	قطعة مكتوبة	do a job	يقوم بعمل / بوظيفة	go for me	يذهب من أجلي
a variety of forms	مجموعة متنوعة من الأشكال	do something for	يفعل شيئًا من أجل	hear about	يسمع عن
arranged in	مرتب / منظم فى	each other	بعضهم البعض	keep the gravel walk	يلزم الطريق المفروش بالحصى
bring ... to ...	يُحضر ... إلى ...	follow rules	يتبع القواعد	What kind of + (n) ...?	ما نوع ...؟
compare ... to	يشبه ... بـ	get away from	يبتعد عن	learn about	يعلم ... عن

make a film ينتج فيلمًا	sail from ... to ... يبحر من ... إلى ...	
popular with محبوب لـ	were made into films حولت إلى أفلام	stay on the path يبقى على الممر
put ... away يضع الشيء فى مكانه	at the age of فى عمر الـ(عدد سنوات)	

Derivatives

المشتقات

Verb	Noun	Adjective
venture يغامر	adventure مغامرة adventurer مغامر	adventurous جرىء/متهور
------------------------------	biography سيرة حياة شخص biographer كاتب سيرة	biographical متعلق بسيرة شخص
joy يمرح	joy مرح/فرح	joyful فرحان/مسرور/مفرح
kidnap يخطف	kidnapping اختطاف/خطف kidnapper خاطف	kidnapped مختطف
------------------------------	law قانون lawyer محام	lawful قانونى/مشروع
------------------------------	literature الأدب	literate متعلم literary أدبى
popularise ينشر/يروج/ينتشر	popularity انتشار/شعبية	popular شائع/شعبى/متداول
------------------------------	poetry الشعر poet شاعر	poetic شعرى (متعلق بالشعر)
------------------------------	seriousness خطورة	serious خطير/عنيف
suppose يفترض/يظن	supposition افتراض/ظن	supposed مفروض/افتراضى/مزعوم
treasure يعز/يبجل	treasure كنز treasurer أمين صندوق treasury وزارة المالية	------------------------------
warm يدفئ/يسخن	warmer سخان/أداة تدفئة warmth دفء/حميمية warming تسخين/إحماء	warm دافئ/ودى/حميم

Examples

تعلم أن تستخدم ما تحفظ لاحظ الأمثلة التالية:

I like adventures. (n)
- I used to be an adventurer when I was young. (n)
- My actions seemed to be adventurous. (adj)

The angry worker planned to kidnap the employer's son. (v)
- The kidnaping was foiled أحبط by the police. (n)
- The kidnapper went to prison. (n)

We must respect the law. (v)
- Lawyers graduate from the faculty of law. (n) - (n)
- Buying a used car is lawful. (adj)

Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	الكلمة	Synonym المرادف	Antonym	المضاد
far	بعيد	remote/distant	near/close	قريب
improve	يحسن/يطور	enhance/develop	decline/damage	يتدهور
joy	فرح	charm/delight	sadness/sorrow	حزن
popular	محبوب	favoured/beloved	unpopular/disliked	غيرمحبوب
serious	خطير	dangerous/severe/tough	safe/facile/calm	آمن
strange	غريب	weird/unusual/bizarre	familiar/common/usual	مألوف/شائع/تقليدى
successful	ناجح	fruitful/favourable/profitable	unsuccessful/hopeless	غيرناجح
warm	دافئ	heated/hot	cold/freezing	بارد
wish	يأمل	desire/aspire	spurn/reject	يأبى/ينبذ

Vocabulary Check point 2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. We should advise our children to always try to help each ....
   a) another b) others c) the other d) other
2. Hana is a very helpful girl who always puts her things .... after using them.
   a) off b) away c) out d) forward
3. My favourite hobby is watching .... movies on TV.
   a) adventurer b) adventurous c) venture d) adventure

4. When my daughter got married, I experienced the tears of joy for the first time. The synonym of the word "joy" is ....
a) grief b) sorrow c) sadness d) delight

5. I was shocked when I compared my results .... my colleagues' results.
a) at b) with c) to d) by

6. I am a .... person. Everyone asks me for help once they see me.
a) helping b) help c) helpful d) helpless

7. Mohammed Salah's .... all over the world is a pride for all Egyptians.
a) popularity b) popular c) popularize d) population

8. Pollution is one of the most serious problems all over the world. The synonym of the word "serious" is ....
a) safe b) simple c) dangerous d) cold

9. The writer's new novel is very successful and has won many prizes. The antonym of "successful" is ....
a) hopeless b) profitable c) popular d) favourable

10. His birthday was a .... occasion on which we were all very happy.
a) joy b) joyfully c) joyfulness d) joyful

Reading Text (1)

Robert Louis Stevenson

Robert Louis Stevenson was born in Scotland in 1850 and died 44 years later in Samoa, a small island in the South Pacific. He was not always well because the weather in Edinburgh was too cold for him. When he was a child, he couldn't always go to school. He studied to become a lawyer at Edinburgh University, but he always wanted to write. At the age of 21, he decided to become a full-time writer.

He often travelled to warmer places to try to improve his health. For a while he lived in France and this was where he met his wife[(1)], Fanny. She was from the United States, so Stevenson also travelled to America with her.

Although he is best known for his novels, like *Kidnapped and Strange Case of Dr Jekyll and Mr Hyde*, Stevenson also wrote many poems and travel books. His first successful novel was *Treasure Island* – an adventure story about pirates. His books are still very popular today and many of them have been made into films[(2)].

Notes on some sentences: ملاحظات على بعض الجمل:

١- لاحظ استخدام ضمير الوصل where وقبله فعل.

٢- الجملة هنا مبنى للمجهول فى المضارع التام .have been P.P

Reading Text (2)

The Gardener

The gardener does not love to talk,
He makes me keep[1] the gravel walk;
And when he puts his tools away,
He locks the door and takes the key.

Away behind the currant row,
Where no one else but cook may go,
Far in the plots, I see him dig[2],
Old and serious, brown and big.

He digs the flowers, green, red, and blue,
Nor wishes to be spoken to[3].
He digs the flowers and cuts the hay,
And never seems to want to play.



Notes on some sentences: ملاحظات على بعض الجمل:

١- لاحظ استخدام make ويليها مفعول ثم .Inf بمعنى يجعل/يجبر.

٢- لاحظ استخدام see ويليها مفعول ثم .Inf بمعنى يرى الفاعل يقوم بالفعل كاملًا.

٣- كلمة nor بمعنى (وليس أيضًا) ويأتى بعدها الفعل ثم الفاعل (ويمكن الاستغناء عن الفاعل فى اللغة الأدبية).

Listening Text



Scan & listen



Robert Louis Stevenson

Teacher : This week we're studying the Scottish writer, Robert Louis Stevenson, in particular his poetry not his novels. Have any of you[1] heard about him or read any of his works?

Nesma : Didn't he write *Treasure Island*? I tried reading it last year, but it was a bit boring[2], so I decided to watch the film instead.

Teacher : Did you like it?

Nesma : Yes, it was really good. I love adventure films and I enjoy reading[3] adventure stories too. I just found *Treasure Island* a bit difficult.

Teacher : Well, it was written a long time ago. He was born in 1850 and *Treasure Island* was published in 1881. And Wafaa, have you read any of his books?

Wafaa : I don't think so. I prefer reading romantic stories and poems.

Teacher : Well, Stevenson wrote poems too. In fact, he wrote all kinds of things. He began writing[4] stories when he was a child and unwell. Unfortunately, Stevenson was often very ill and he finished writing *Treasure Island* while he was ill in bed. He continued to write more books, including a collection of poems called *A Child's Garden of Verses* and he also travelled a lot to get away from the cold Scottish weather.

Nesma : Where did he go?

Teacher : As a young man, he went to Europe, France and Switzerland mainly. In fact, his first book was about his travels in France. He and his family loved sailing[5] and they wanted to sail from America, where they were living, to the South Pacific. The family chose to build a house in Samoa and the Stevenson family[6] lived there until he died in 1894. Now for this week's lesson, I want you to choose a story or poem by Stevenson and bring it to class to discuss. Then...



Notes on some sentences:

ملاحظات على بعض الجمل:

١- التعبير any of you يعامل معاملة الجمع.

٢- كلمة a bit تأتى قبل الصفات والأحوال بمعنى قليلًا.

٣-٤-٥ الأفعال enjoy/begin/love يأتى بعدها v-ing وبدون حرف جر.

٦- لاحظ استخدم the قبل اسم العائلة.

Notes on Vocabulary

لاحظ الفرق بين الكلمات التالية:

	Word	Example
1	**publish** ينشر (كتابًا/مجلة/صحيفة) - يمكن أن يبنى للمجهول	Amina was only 19 when her first novel was published.
	come out يَصدُر (كتابًا/مجلة/صحيفة) - لا يمكن أن يبنى للمجهول	Amina was only 19 when her first novel came out.
2	**biography** سيرة ذاتية لشخص يكتبها شخص آخر	Famous people have different biographies written about them.
	autobiography سيرة ذاتية لشخص يكتبها الشخص نفسه	Saad published his autobiography last year.

3	**(be) born in + (مكان/سنة)** ولد فى ...	- My sister was born in Alexandria. - Ali was born in 2002.
	(be) born on + (تاريخ/يوم) ولد فى ...	His mother was born on 21st August 1979.
	(be) born into ... ولد فى عائلة	Nora was born into a good family.
	(be) born with + (disease) مولود (بمرض)	Madonna was born with a small hole in her heart.
4	**at the age of = aged** فى سن	At the age of 30, Ali got married for the second time.
	in the age of فى عصر	They inherited this house which had been built in the age of their grandfather.
5	**success** نجاح	The company achieved a great success under the new leadership.
	(be) a success يمثل نجاحا/ناجح	Taking part in the competition was a success.
	successful ناجح	You should work hard to be successful.
6	**kidnap** يخطف شخصًا (طمعًا فى فدية)	Two businessmen were kidnapped by terrorists.
	hijack يختطف (عربة/طائرة)	The plane was hijacked by two armed men on a flight from London to Cairo.
	capture يأسر/يقبض على	- The town was captured by enemy troops after 10 days fighting. - She was captured at the airport as she had illegal drugs.
7	**sail** يقود سفينة شراعية/يبحر	The crew sailed around the world.
	set sail يبدأ رحلة بالقارب/السفينة	The group set sail for the island.
	drift يتحرك ببطء فى المياه	The boat drifted out to sea.

Vocabulary Check point 3

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Taha Hussein wrote his .... in his book "Al-Ayam".
   a) biography b) autobiography
   c) geography d) biographical
2. Many babies are born .... different kinds of disabilities nowadays.
   a) in b) of c) into d) with
3. Salma's latest piece of writing was ....
   a) a successful b) successfully
   c) a success d) success
4. The famous actor was .... while he was on his way to the festival.
   a) hijacked b) given
   c) kidnapped d) published
5. A lot of novels and stories are .... every year by many great writers.
   a) published b) come out c) spread d) punished
6. My father died, ... 66 years old.
   a) at the age b) in the age of c) ageing d) aged
7. My novel .... last week. This is the first edition الطبعة أولى.
   a) came b) was come out
   c) came out d) published
8. .... any of you angry about what happened in the class?
   a) Are b) Is c) Have d) a & c
9. I felt .... cold so I took a scarf with me.
   a) away b) a bit c) little d) a few
10. Once we reached the beach, we .... the ship to go fishing.
   a) set sail b) sailed c) drove d) drifted



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Key Vocabulary, Reading, Listening & Workbook

1. I liked most of the characters in your last ....
 a) poem b) novel c) gravel d) adventure
2. On the beach, the children are always busy .... in the sand.
 a) picking b) dragging c) sailing d) digging
3. Ahmed Shawqi wrote a great number of wonderful ....
 a) poets b) poems c) poetry d) novels
4. The path isn't well paved. It is full of ....
 a) barrel b) funnel c) saddle d) gravel
5. I'm interested in English .... with all its wonderful novels, plays and poems.
 a) agriculture b) literature c) culture d) structure
6. Far in the plots, I see him dig. The word 'plots' can be replaced by "....................".
 a) heavens b) rivers c) fields d) deserts
7. Pirla is not a good pianist as she has no sense of ....
 a) rhyme b) rhythm c) verse d) plot
8. .... row is a line of plants that have small fruits.
 a) Current b) Currant c) Fruitless d) Bad
9. A .... is someone who writes poems.
 a) poet b) novelist c) director d) vet
10. Wheat is used to produce .... which is eaten by cattle.
 a) clay b) hay c) pie d) tea
11. The council had useful .... on important cases such as high prices and housing.
 a) tools b) discussions c) gravels d) arguments
12. I usually go .... with my friends using one of the best boats ever.
 a) swimming b) sweeping c) hacking d) sailing
13. The answer is stated clearly in the sixth .... of the passage.
 a) literature b) row c) novel d) line
14. You have a ....; either you do it or leave it.
 a) choice b) poetry c) discussion d) treasure
15. I prefer .... films that are based on a true love story.
 a) romantic b) favourite c) comic d) horror
16. The lion ran away from the zoo, but the police could .... it.
 a) wish b) kidnap c) capture d) hijack

17. The government is trying hard to solve the .... of homeless children.
a) issue b) tissue c) form d) itch

18. Think of the word which .... with "eight".
a) hops b) plots c) narrates d) rhymes

19. The plane was .... and all of the crew were killed.
a) arrested b) hijacked c) kidnapped d) captured

20. I always .... any matter with my parents before making a decision.
a) regret b) remove c) discuss d) improve

21. Nader always wears suits. It is really .... to see him in jeans.
a) familiar b) common c) foreign d) strange

22. .... you won the prize and took the car, what would you do?
a) Lengthen b) Think c) Suppose d) Suspect

23. I prefer reading a specific .... of books which make me excited.
a) treasure b) kind c) sentence d) verse

Expressions, Idioms, Prepositions, Derivatives, Synonyms & Antonyms

24. Our English teacher has always been very popular .... his students.
a) with b) for c) at d) a & c

25. You must .... the rules of the place if you want to stay here for long.
a) seek b) run c) create d) follow

26. Can you .... me a favour and pick my children up from school?
a) take b) give c) do d) play

27. I am a teacher. Teaching is my .... job and I really like it.
a) all-time b) full-time c) temporary d) short-term

28. Many famous footballers were born .... poor families and now they give money to the poor.
a) of b) into c) with d) in

29. Ali had to wait for .... before meeting the boss.
a) a while b) while c) whole d) hall

30. .... the age of modern technology, we can live an easier life.
a) At b) By c) In d) With

31. Don't walk on the plants in the garden. You must ....
a) make the gravels walk b) keep the gravel walk
c) make the gravel walk d) keep the gravels walk

32. Let's go hiking and have an ....
a) adventure b) venture c) adventurous d) adventurer

33. I was born .... Shoubra and grew up in Giza.

a) into　　b) on　　c) in　　d) with

34. Farmers use .... as food for cattle. (Longman)

a) clay　　b) hay　　c) pie　　d) tea

35. Children should realise that everyone .... an important job in society, however simple it is. (Longman)

a) makes　　b) does　　c) supposes　　d) appears

36. We are glad that our new project was a great .... (Longman)

a) succession　　b) succeed　　c) success　　d) successful

37. .... the age of 25, he decided to change his career to earn more money. (Longman)

a) In　　b) With　　c) On　　d) At

38. The crew went to the isolated island to look for the .... (الأقصر)

a) pleasure　　b) leisure　　c) treasure　　d) pressure

39. Literature comes in a .... of forms: poetry, novels, etc. (الجيزة - العياط)

a) various　　b) many　　c) different　　d) variety

40. The young boy was ...., the gang asked for a ransom. (القليوبية - القناطر الخيرية)

a) hijacked　　b) disappeared　　c) plotted　　d) kidnapped

41. .... is a person who sails in a ship and attacks other ships in order to steal from them.

a) Robber　　b) Thief　　c) Pirate　　d) Burglar

Choose the TWO (2) correct answers of the FIVE (5) options:

42. I need to improve my language skills. 'Improve' here can be replaced with '............' (Longman)

a) enhance　　b) types　　c) type　　d) typing　　e) develop

43. The writer's new book .... last week.

a) published　　b) came out　　c) was published
d) was come out　　e) spread

44. The story written by the great writer was .... into a film.

a) turned　　b) made　　c) taken　　d) placed　　e) put

45. We can walk if it's not far. The synonyms of the word "far" are "....................".

a) remote　　b) near　　c) close　　d) safe　　e) distant

46. I could hear strange voices outside the room. The antonyms of the word "strange" are ....

a) familiar　　b) usual　　c) unusual　　d) weird　　e) safe

47. Ryham married .... 32 and now she has 3 children.

a) in the age of　　b) for the age of　　c) aged
d) at the age of　　e) ageing

B Language

1 Verbs followed by (-ing form)

admit (to)	يعترف بـ	involve	يشمل/يتضمن	recommend	يوصى بـ
avoid	يتجنب	resist	يقاوم	fancy	يتخيل (تستخدم للاقتراح)
suggest	يقترح	risk	يخاطر	delay	يؤجل
practise	يمارس	postpone	يؤجل	prevent	يمنع
consider	يعتبر/يفكر	enjoy	يستمتع بـ	escape	يهرب
mind	يمانع	finish	ينهي	forgive	يسامح
imagine	يتخيل	deny	ينكر	miss	يفتقد
understand	يفهم	go	يذهب	dislike	يكره

Examples

The criminal admitted to committing the crime.
He enjoys meeting people from other cultures.
My brother suggested spending the weekend on the beach.

2 Verbs followed by (to + inf.)

decide	يقرر	wish	يتمنى	need	يحتاج
agree	يوافق	swear	يقسم	prepare	يجهز/يعد
promise	يعد	determine	يصمم	attempt	يحاول
hope	يأمل	fail	يفشل	prove	يثبت
plan	يخطط	expect	يتوقع	neglect	يهمل
manage	يتمكن	threaten	يهدد	can't afford	لا يتحمل
refuse	يرفض	arrange	يرتب	deserve	يستحق
seem	يبدو	offer	يعرض	choose	يختار

Examples

- I have decided to play a match with my friends.
- He asked me for some money, but I refused to give him any.
- Do you want to come with me to the party?
- Ali proved to be the cleverest in the class.

Language Check point 4

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Do you mind .... some photos of your wedding on Facebook?
   a) sharing b) to share c) in sharing d) to sharing
2. We're planning .... to Europe for our holiday next year.
   a) flying b) to fly c) fly d) to flying
3. Do you fancy .... on a day trip to Alexandria next week?
   a) to come b) come c) to coming d) coming
4. I dislike .... away from my family for a long time.
   a) to be b) to being c) be d) being
5. Mona offered .... us do the washing up.
   a) to be helped b) helping c) to help d) help

3 Verbs followed by (object + to + inf.)

advise	ينصح	permit	يسمح	tell	يخبر
recommend	يوصى بـ	instruct	يعلم/يخبر	order	يأمر
expect	يتوقع	ask	يطلب	warn	يحذر
encourage	يشجع	persuade	يقنع	teach	يعلم
force	يجبر	allow	يسمح	remind	يُذكر
invite	يدعو	promise	يوعد	request	يطلب

Examples

- He advised me to study and revise regularly.
- I managed to persuade my wife not to travel alone.
- Parents encourage their children to be good citizens.

لاحظ إذا لم يأت بعد هذه الأفعال مفعول يأتى بعدها (v-ing).

(advise – recommend – encourage – allow – permit + (v-ing))

Examples

He doesn't allow smoking in his office.
I often encourage playing football on Fridays.
The company recommends using their buses instead of private ones.

4 Expressions followed by (-ing form)

feel like	يرغب فى	can't stop	لا يستطيع التوقف	(have) difficulty (in)	لديه صعوبة فى
It's worth	يستحق	What/How about ...?	ما رأيك؟ (اقتراح)	(be) busy	مشغول
can't help	لا يستطيع التوقف عن	It's no good	ليس من الصالح	(have) fun	يمرح
can't stand	لا يستطيع تحمل	It's no use	لا فائدة من		

Examples

- This film is worth watching more than once.
- My mother has difficulty (in) climbing up and down the stairs.
- It's no use eating fast food.

5 Expressions followed by (to + v-ing)

look forward to	يتطلع إلى	(be) exposed to	معرض لـ	take to	يعتاد على
object to	يعترض على	own up to	يعترف بـ	owing to	بسبب
contribute to	يساهم فى	(be) used to	معتاد على	prefer (v-ing) to (v-ing)	يفضل ... عن
in addition to	بالإضافة إلى	(be) accustomed to	معتاد على		

Examples

- We look forward to living on a remote island.
- All people object to using horns late at night.

Language Check point 5

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. My father taught us .... people with respect.
   a) treats b) to treat c) treat d) treating
2. It's no good .... to revise your lessons a minute before the exam.
   a) trying b) try c) to try d) tried
3. The teacher persuaded us .... our lessons daily.
   a) study b) studying c) to studying d) to study
4. Ayman advised .... early every day.
   a) to sleep b) sleep c) sleeping d) to sleeping
5. He is looking forward .... his friends.
   a) to meet b) meeting c) meet d) to meeting



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Menna hopes .... the Faculty of Medicine one day.
a) to join b) joining c) joins d) to joining

2. Maged suggested .... to the club today.
a) goes b) go c) going d) to go

3. The girl decided .... a new dress before attending the party.
a) to buy b) buying c) to buying d) buy

4. Ahmed avoided .... his old friends at the wedding yesterday.
a) meet b) to meet c) to meeting d) meeting

5. The teacher threatened .... the lazy student who didn't do the homework.
a) punish b) punishing
c) to punish d) to be punished

6. The old man denied .... my money last week.
a) steal b) to steal c) stealing d) to stealing

7. Ashraf was laughing out loud. He seemed .... over the moon.
a) to be b) being c) to being d) be

8. When you finish .... the report, send it to the manager.
a) writing b) write c) to write d) to writing

9. We look forward .... Egypt a better place.
a) to see b) to seeing c) seeing d) to being seen

10. They couldn't afford .... the house at that high price.
a) buy b) to buy c) buying d) to buying

11. .... attending all today's meetings. I finished my tasks.
a) In addition to b) In addition c) Addition to d) Addition

12. Owing .... hard, my daughter could join the university she liked.
a) study b) to study c) to studying d) studying

13. We had fun .... many historical places during the summer holiday.
a) visiting b) to visit c) to visiting d) visit

14. It is a holiday tomorrow, so we could go .... together.
a) sailing b) to sailing c) to sail d) sail

15. Our national team is expected .... in the next World Cup finals.
a) play b) playing c) to play d) to playing

16. If you stay abroad for a long time, you may risk .... your culture.

a) losing b) to lose c) to losing d) a&b

17. Our teacher never forgives .... the homework.

a) to ignore b) to ignoring c) ignored d) ignoring

18. Kamal missed .... in the streets at night when we were in London.

a) to walk b) to walking c) walking d) walked

19. Sara disliked .... from the handball team, and she felt disappointed.

a) to excluding b) to exclude
c) excluding d) being excluded

20. Mr Omar who lives on the 7th floor always delays .... the bills.

a) being paid b) to pay c) to paying d) paying

21. Mum will enjoy .... with us in the same flat. She hates to live alone.

a) being b) to be c) to being d) a&b

22. Many people in our town objected .... the new bridge.

a) to build b) to building c) build d) building

23. I couldn't neglect .... the gardening for another week.

a) do b) to doing c) doing d) to do

24. What a hot day! I feel like .... for a swim.

a) go b) going c) to go d) to going

25. Alaa couldn't stop .... exercise although his back hurt.

a) do b) to do c) doing d) in doing

26. The salesman .... taking the money from me. He said he hadn't taken it.

a) wanted b) refused c) denied d) admitted

27. My father allowed me .... my friend using his own phone.

a) phoning b) phone c) to phone d) to phoning

28. My father always allows .... our friends using his phone.

a) phoning b) to phone c) to phoning d) phone

29. Which of the following sentences is INCORRECT?

a) My father suggested leaving his new job.
b) I don't really enjoy going to the opera.
c) She accused her neighbour of stealing her money.
d) He objected to visit that frightening place again.

30. Which of the following sentences is CORRECT?

a) I promised helping her with her problems.
b) She agreed bringing her new laptop with her.
c) I recommend taking the train to Aswan.
d) I don't mind to watch this movie again.

31. I hope .... a new car instead of the old one. Longman

a) to buy b) buying c) to buying d) will buy

32. My friend suggests .... the midyear holiday in Luxor. Longman

a) will spend b) to spend c) spending d) spend

33. We .... mixing with bad friends because of their terrible behaviour. Longman

a) prefer
b) wouldn't like to
c) fail
d) avoid

34. We owe much to those who contribute .... the environment clean. Longman

a) in keeping
b) to keep
c) to keeping
d) will keep

35. Taher is very kind; he always .... to help his friends when they are in trouble. Longman

a) refuses b) offers c) minds d) considers

36. I never consider .... abroad not to feel homesick. (القليوبية - إدارة كفر شكر)

a) travelling
b) travel
c) to travel
d) being travelled

37. I prefer studying to .... (البحيرة - إدارة المحمودية)

a) sleeping b) sleep c) sleeps d) slept

38. I can't help .... sweets. (القليوبية - إدارة غرب شبرا)

a) eat b) eating c) to eat d) eats

39. Which book did you choose .... at the library? (الشرقية - إدارة منيا القمح)

a) reading b) to read c) read d) reads

40. He suggested .... the match in that stadium as he had a bad experience there. (المنوفية - إدارة أشمون)

a) to watch
b) not to watch
c) watching
d) not watching



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Vocabulary

1. .... live on attacking and robbing ships at sea.
   a) Parrots b) Robbers c) Burglars d) Pirates
2. Mazen has the ability to write the whole story in ...., he is a talented writer.
   a) rhyme b) rhythm c) verse d) plot
3. .... is a regular repeated pattern of sounds in music, speech, etc.
   a) Verse b) Poem c) Rhyme d) Rhythm
4. The members of the gang were trying to look for the.................... in the island.
   a) pressure b) treason c) treason d) treasure
5. I'm sure I've .... the door well. How is it open now?
   a) improved b) lined c) painted d) locked
6. The writer's new collection of short stories .... last week.
   a) was come out b) came out c) published d) came in
7. The diplomat was .... and two million dollars was demanded for his release.
   a) hijacked b) captured c) kidnapped d) arrested
8. Some animals usually .... holes in the sand to sleep and keep warm.
   a) drill b) dig c) look d) research
9. My husband always buys red roses for me on my birthday. How ....!
   a) romantic b) horrible c) funny d) comic
10. My friend is a very polite person who was born .... a respectable family
   a) into b) on c) in d) with
11. Sara and Israa enjoy running between the .... in their grandfather's farm.
   a) poetry lines b) currant rows c) gravel mountains d) gardener rows
12. Ali is a daydreamer. He always .... actions and imagines scenarios.
   a) thinks b) drags c) supposes d) digs
13. Steve Jobs' success is really a .... of hard work, not a chance.
   a) cause b) case c) reason d) treasure
14. The writer's last novel which was published last year was ....
   a) a success b) succeed c) successful d) a & c
15. The government is doing all the best to solve our .... problems.
   a) helpful b) series c) serious d) popular

Language

16. My son admitted .... his time before the exam.

a) to waste b) wasting c) of wasting d) both a & b

17. The manager arranged .... some of the workers to know their problems.

a) to meet b) meeting c) to meeting d) meet

18. Please, don't bother me. I'm busy .... my homework.

a) to do b) did c) doing d) to doing

19. I can't stand .... around doing nothing.

a) sit b) sitting c) to sit d) to sitting

20. I am exposed to.................... infected because all my family are sick.

a) got b) for getting c) get d) getting

21. My father advised .... early to keep healthy.

a) to sleep b) sleeping c) to sleeping d) sleep

22. Thousands of people .... looking at the Pyramids. They are wonderful!

a) decide b) promise c) dislike d) enjoy

23. I think this nice story is worth .... It is written in a simple language.

a) to read b) to reading c) reading d) read

24. The principal مدير المدرسة .... to using the mobile phone at school.

a) agreed b) refused c) objected d) enjoyed

25. Hala agreed .... to her younger sister.

a) apologise b) to apologise

c) apologising d) to apologising

26. Sameha was busy .... the flat, so she didn't go out with us.

a) cleaning b) with cleaning c) cleans d) to clean

27. The headmaster doesn't allow .... to school late.

a) to come b) coming c) came d) with coming

28. The little girl .... not to lie again and she will never break it.

a) wanted b) enjoyed c) decided d) promised

29. Fadel hopes .... the test the first time.

a) passing b) to be passed c) to pass d) to passing

30. Tamer often .... me to drive his car.

a) lets b) makes c) allows d) denies



Watch a video



A Vocabulary

Vocabulary on Reading Texts — مفردات نصوص القراءة

activities (n)	أنشطة	exciting (adj)	مثير	remember (v) – ed	يتذكر
author (n)	مؤلف	fair (adj)	عادل	season (n)	فصل فى السنة/موسم
candlelight (n)	ضوء الشمعة	grown-up (adj) (n)	راشد/بالغ	seem (v) – ed	يبدو
clear (adj)	صافٍ/واضح	hate (v) – d	يكره	situation (n)	موقف
describe (v) – d	يصف	hop (v) – ped	يقفز على قدم واحدة	subject (n)	موضوع
differently (adv)	باختلاف	length (n)	طول		
dress (n) (v) – ed	فستان/يرتدى ملابس	light (n) (adj)	ضوء/مضيء	verse (n)	بيت (فى قصيدة)
especially (adv)	خصوصًا	quite (adv)	إلى حد ما		

Workbook Vocabulary — مفردات كتاب التدريبات

brief (adj)	مختصر	fun (adj) (n)	ممتع/مرح	toy (n)	لعبة أطفال
broken (adj)	مكسور	repeat (v) – ed	يكرر	lie (v)	يرقد/يستلقى/يكذب
narrate (v) – d	يروى (قصة – حكاية)	summary (n)	ملخص		

Vocabulary Check point 1

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I was sitting at the back and I couldn't hear the teacher well. That wasn't ....
   a) brief b) fair c) broken d) strange
2. Judy was wearing her favourite white .... during the party.
   a) dress b) subject c) suit d) verse
3. I .... to say it, but I think Ali is not the best for the job.
   a) like b) seem c) narrate d) hate
4. My favourite .... at school are history and English.
   a) dresses b) subjects c) verses d) toys

5. It is a fact that most children are full of ....

a) fun b) literature c) poetry d) fair

6. Summer is my favourite .... I like it so much.

a) reason b) verse c) season d) month

7. I don't want to know the details, please give me a .... of the topic.

a) summary b) verse c) subject d) narration

8. I can't write well as a result of my .... finger.

a) repeated b) brief c) narrated d) broken

9. The woman .... the man who robbed her to the officer.

a) solved b) situated c) concluded d) described

10. I have bought a new .... for my little child to play with it.

a) toy b) poem c) joy d) activity

Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions التعبيرات والمصطلحات وحروف الجر

at night	ليلًا	in brief	باختصار	in my opinion	فى رأيى
by day	نهارًا	at different times	فى أوقات مختلفة	have fun	يمرح
go past	يمر أمام	stay in	يبقى فى	by candlelight	على ضوء الشموع
look for	يبحث عن	the other way	على العكس تمامًا	make it easy	يجعله سهلًا

Derivatives المشتقات

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
break	يكسر/يتوقف عن العمل	break breakage	استراحة كسر/حطام	breakable broken	قابل للكسر/هش مكسور/متعطل
clear	يوضح/يظهر	clarity	وضوح/اتضاح	clear	واضح/ظاهر
describe	يصف	description	وصف	describable descriptive	يمكن وصفه تصويرى/وصفى
dress	يلبس/يداوى/ينظف الجرح	dress dresser dressing	ملابس من يساعد الممثلين على ارتداء ملابسهم ضمادة/خليط من السوائل يضاف إلى الطعام	dressed dressy	لابس متأنق/أنيق
narrate	يروى	narration/ narrative narrator	سرد راوٍ/قصاص	narrative	روائى/قصصى
repeat	يعيد/يكرر	repeat repetition	حدث مكرر تكرار/إعادة	repetitive repeated repeatable	متكرر متكرر/معاد يمكن تكراره

situate	يعين/يضع فى مركز معين	situation	حالة/موقع	situated	قائم/واقع فى مكان معين
specialise	يتخصص	special specialist specialty	شيء خاص أخصائى/خبير اختصاص/تخصص	special specialised	خاص/مخصوص متخصص
lengthen	يطول	length	طول	long/lengthy	طويل

Examples

تعلم أن تستخدم ما تحفظ. لاحظ الأمثلة التالية:

I can describe the suspect المشتبه به for you. (v)
- I have the description of the suspect. (n)
- The suspect is easily describable. (adj)
If you break anything you will pay for the breakage. (n)
- Let's have a break. (n)
- The glasses are breakable. (adj)
Hussein Fahmy narrates the story in this film. (v)
- The narrator is called Hussein Fahmy and his narration is unique. (n)
- This is a narrative essay which tells a short story. (adj)

Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	الكلمة	Synonym	المرادف	Antonym	المضاد
brief	مختصر	short/compressed		long/lengthy/detailed	طويل
broken	مكسور	crushed/damaged		intact/complete	سليم/كامل
clear	صافٍ/واضح	apparent/bright/cloudless		ambiguous/cloudy/foggy	غامض/غير واضح/غير صافٍ
describe	يوصف	explain/depict/detail		conceal/hide	يخفى
especially	خصوصًا	particularly/specifically/exceptionally		generally/normally/commonly	عمومًا
fair	عادل	unprejudiced/impartial		prejudiced/partial	متحيز
grown-up	كبير/بالغ	adult/mature		immature/teenager/adolescent	غير ناضج/مراهق
narrate	يروى	portray/recite		conceal/hide/suppress	يخفى
repeat	يكرر	duplicate/do again		stop/cease	يوقف

Vocabulary Check point 2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. It is wrong for children to go to bed .... day.
   a) on b) by c) in d) for
2. Khaled told me the story ....; we didn't have enough time.
   a) in detail b) at brief c) in contrast d) in brief
3. The boy was injured, so his mother put a .... on his wound.
   a) dress b) dressing c) dressed d) dresser
4. My father is a .... in heart surgery. He is a famous surgeon.
   a) special b) specialised c) specialty d) specialist
5. The sky is clear today. It is going to be a nice day. The synonym of "clear" is ....
   a) cloudy b) bright c) hide d) foggy
6. You should be fair to your students. The antonym of "fair" is "....................".
   a) apparent b) crushed c) prejudiced d) justice
7. The article was brief and exciting. The synonym of the word " brief " is "....................".
   a) long b) fun c) hateful d) compressed
8. My house is .... in the middle of the city.
   a) situated b) situate c) situation d) situates
9. I can't describe my situation right now. We can replace the word "describe" with ....
   a) hide b) explain c) damage d) conceal
10. .... my opinion, English is the most important language.
   a) At b) With c) On d) In

Reading Text (1)



Bed in Summer

In winter I get up at night
And dress by yellow candlelight.
In summer quite the other way,
I have to go to bed by day.
I have to go to bed and see
The birds still hopping on the tree,
Or hear the grown-up people's feet
Still going past me in the street.
And does it not seem hard to you,
When all the sky is clear and blue,
And I should like so much to play,
To have to go to bed by day?



Reviews on Bed in Summer

Khaled, 4:04 PM

The words Stevenson has used very clearly describe the situations he's writing about and I really like that. I also think the poem's subject is very interesting because everyone feels differently in different seasons. In my opinion, poets should write about everyday life. However, I think the second verse is too long and its rhythm is too slow.

Hamid, 5:36 PM

I love the language in the poem, especially the way Stevenson describes the light at different times of day. I also think the second verse is great because the rhymes in it are so clever. However, in my opinion, the poem's subject is quite boring because going to bed and getting up aren't very interesting activities. I think poets should write about more exciting things.



Bed in Summer

My favourite poem is Bed in Summer because it describes how I felt when I was young. In summer I had to go to bed when it was light and I hated it. Like the author I wanted to be outside playing and I didn't think it was fair that everyone else was outside having fun[1].

It's a good length for a poem, only three verses and I like the fact that the words rhyme. I don't like poems which don't rhyme. The first two lines rhyme, 'night' and 'light' and then the next two lines rhyme, 'way' and 'day'. This makes it easy[2] to say and easy to remember!

Robert Louis Stevenson was ill when he was a child and stayed in bed a lot. That's why [3] I think he wrote this poem.



Notes on some sentences: ملاحظات على بعض الجمل:

١- لاحظ هذا البناء واستخدام v + ing (having) كحال يصف حركة الناس بالخارج.

٢- التعبير make it easy يعنى يجعل الأمر سهلًا.

٣- التعبير That's why بمعنى لهذا السبب ويأتى بعده جملة.

Notes on Vocabulary

لاحظ الفرق بين الكلمات التالية:

	Word	Meaning	Example
1	quiet	هادئ	We'll have to be quiet so as not to wake the baby.
	quite	إلى حد ما/تماماً	The food in the canteen is usually quite good.
	quit	يغادر (يترك العمل)	Ragheb quit his job after an argument with a colleague.
2	lay – laid – laid	يضع/تضع البيض/يجهز	- He laid his hand on my shoulder. - The flies lay their eggs on uncovered food. - John was laying the table for lunch.
	lie – lay – lain	ينام/يرقد	Don't lie in the sun for too long as it is very harmful.
	lie – lied – lied	يكذب	She lied to her father about her exam results.

Vocabulary Check point 3

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. You mustn't .... on a cold surface for long as it may hurt you.
   a) lay b) lie c) laid d) lain
2. I asked students to keep .... during the lesson.
   a) quite b) quit c) quietly d) quiet
3. I was angry when I discovered that my son .... to me about his exam results.
   a) laid b) lay c) lied d) lain
4. I could answer the test in half an hour as it was .... easy.
   a) quite b) quiet c) quit d) quietly
5. There were people .... in the street when I got out.
   a) run b) to run c) running d) that running
6. The website provides translation to all sections, and this .... it easy to use.
   a) makes b) does c) gets d) becomes
7. Rawan was sick. That's .... she didn't show up.
   a) so b) to c) because d) why



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Key Vocabulary, Reading & Workbook

1. I think the weather will be good today. The sky is ....

a) cloudy b) clear c) gloomy d) fair

2. Can you .... the teacher who teaches you English?

a) seem b) prepare c) describe d) repeat

3. Kareman is injured in her leg, so she can't walk without ....

a) running b) hopping c) repeating d) breaking

4. We didn't find a torch, so we could hardly do the homework by ....

a) sun b) season c) candlelight d) spot

5. I asked my teacher to .... what he said as I didn't get it.

a) hide b) delete c) break d) repeat

6. Children mustn't use the cooker unless .... are there to help them.

a) authors b) grown-ups c) kids d) toddlers

7. Taha Hussein is the .... of "*Al-Ayam*".

a) poet b) publisher c) author d) playwright

8. He lost all his money and he is in a difficult .... at the moment.

a) situation b) subject c) station d) activity

9. Judges must be .... with all people whatever their social ranking is.

a) exciting b) fair c) bias d) unfair

10. The club arranges social and cultural .... for its members.

a) activities b) subjects c) toys d) problems

11. I can't forget going to the amusement park with my cousins. It was a/an .... experience.

a) interested b) clear c) fair d) exciting

12. The students are very worried. The exam .... difficult for them.

a) seems b) describes c) looks d) a and c

13. Babies like .... which make noise when you shake them.

a) activities b) boys c) plays d) toys

14. It will be only a/an .... visit as we really don't have much time.

a) long b) summary c) brief d) especially

15. Well-known actors sometimes .... stories in documentaries.

a) say b) narrate c) dress d) hop

16. I really enjoyed your party, it was really ....
a) lengthy b) fun c) clear d) repetitive
17. Before the new lesson, I give my students a brief .... of the previous one السابق.
a) summer b) situation c) summary d) sum
18. After the baby had slept, his mother .... him down gently on his bed.
a) lied b) lay c) laid d) lain
19. Mum, I want to increase my hair's .... What should I do?
a) length b) hope c) light d) line
20. I met a tourist called Sue who spoke in .... Arabic, it wasn't clear at all.
a) native b) perfect c) broken d) smashed
21. I know the first .... of the song, but I don't know what comes next.
a) verse b) rhyme c) toy d) hop
22. There are no windows in my kitchen, so it's not .... by day.
a) light b) dark c) quiet d) fair
23. .... to take your shoes off before entering the house.
a) Repeat b) Remember c) Remind d) Seem
24. My cat likes to .... on the pillow watching us.
a) dress b) clear c) describe d) lie

Expressions, Idioms, Prepositions, Derivatives, Synonyms & Antonyms

25. It was a very good party. We .... a lot of fun there.
a) had b) spent c) did d) went
26. We have decided to meet each other .... different times.
a) on b) of c) at d) by
27. You have to stay .... bed for 2 weeks so that you get well.
a) on b) at c) in d) all mentioned
28. The sleeves أكمام are too short; can you .... them a little?
a) lengthen b) long c) length d) lengthily
29. I had to dress .... candlelight as the lamp was broken.
a) by b) in c) under d) at
30. In my ...., plastic will disappear when we stop depending on it.
a) idea b) mind c) opinion d) brief
31. I asked Amr to tell me what happened .... to understand everything.
a) in particular b) briefly c) in brief d) in detail
32. We want to do things .... as we don't want to do the same things.
a) differently b) different c) difference d) differences

33. Look .... my key while you're in the street. I think I have lost it there.

a) at b) up c) for d) like

34. Three boys .... past us on mountain bikes minutes ago.

a) went b) made c) did d) took

35. The application .... easy to know the timings of trains.

a) made b) did c) made it d) did it

36. I was ill in bed and I was eager to be outside .... with my friends.

a) play b) played c) plays d) playing

37. I liked that poem because it .... the real feelings of the poet. Longman

a) appeared b) subscribed c) hid d) described

38. I saw some birds .... on the tree. Longman

a) hoping b) hopping c) helping d) heaping

Choose the TWO (2) correct answers of the FIVE (5) options:

39. I never liked long walks, especially in winter. The synonyms of the word "especially" are ....

a) generally b) interestingly c) specifically d) particularly e) amazingly

40. I feel comfortable when I study .... I focus well.

a) at night b) in morning c) in noon d) one day e) by day

41. Yes, I saw the film and the plot was .... good. The characters were amazing.

a) clearly b) quite c) well d) very e) bit

42. We stopped by Ali's house for a brief visit. The synonyms of the word "brief" are ....

a) long b) short c) compressed d) lengthy e) mature

43. The main character narrates the story. The synonyms of the word "narrates" are ....

a) dresses b) repeats c) hops d) portrays e) recites

44. Are you grown-up enough to understand what I'm about to say? The antonyms of the word "grown-up" are ....

a) adult b) adolescent c) teenager d) childish e) mature

45. When the file was damaged, Hatem didn't ....

a) repeat it b) reconsider c) do d) do it again e) again

46. Tell us about your favourite film .... .You've got only 5 minutes.

a) details b) in brief c) especially d) short e) briefly





(١) أفعال يأتى بعدها بـ ing- أو to + inf. دون تغير فى المعنى:

like	يحب	love	يحب
hate	يكره	prefer	يفضل
start	يبدأ	begin	يبدأ
continue	يستمر	intend	ينوى

Examples

I like to play football. = I like playing football.
He started to study English. = He started studying English.

لاحظ

١- عند وجود كلمة would أو اختصارها d' قبل الأفعال السابقة لابد أن يأتى بعدها (to + inf.).

I'd like/hate/prefer/love to go to school early.

٢- إذا كانت would تعبر عن زمن الماضى.

'd (like - prefer - love ...) to have + P.P.

It's a pity we didn't visit Ali. I'd like to have seen him again.

٣-استخدامات 'd rather - 'd prefer بمعنى (يفضل):

prefer	rather
(1) 'd prefer + to + inf. - I'd prefer to have lunch.	(1) 'd rather + inf. - I'd rather have lunch.
(2) prefer + v-ing + to + v-ing - I prefer studying to sleeping.	(2) 'd rather + inf. + than + inf. - I'd rather study than sleep.
(3) 'd prefer + to + inf. + rather than + inf. - I'd prefer to study rather than sleep.	(3) 'd rather + فاعل + past simple/past perfect - I'd rather he played well.

Language Check point 4

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I prefer .... in a swimming pool.
   a) swim b) to swim c) swimming d) b & c
2. I'd prefer .... in a swimming pool.
   a) swim b) to swim c) swimming d) b & c
3. I'd rather .... lunch with my friends.
   a) had b) to have c) have d) having
4. I'd prefer to sleep early rather than .... TV.
   a) watching b) to watch c) to watching d) watch
5. I prefer studying English to .... football with my friends.
   a) play b) playing c) played d) plays

(٢) أفعال تتبع بـ ing أو (to + inf.) مع اختلاف فى المعنى:

stop (to + inf.) يتوقف لكى يقوم بالفعل.

stop + (v-ing) يتوقف عن القيام بالفعل.

When he saw the restaurant, he stopped to eat. (توقف عن السير لكى يأكل)
He decided to stop smoking as he felt so ill. (قرر أن يتوقف عن التدخين تمامًا)

go on + (to + inf.) ينتقل من عمل لآخر

go on + (v-ing) يستمر (فى القيام بنفس العمل)

After he finished his maths homework, he went on to study English. (بدأ مذاكرة الإنجليزى)
My son went on studying English all night. (استمر فى مذاكرة الإنجليزى)

remember (to + inf.) يتذكر ثم يقوم بالفعل (الفعل لم يتم بعد).

remember + (v-ing) يتذكر أنه قام بالفعل (الفعل تم فى الماضى).

I remembered to phone her. (تذكر أولًا ثم اتصل)
I remembered phoning her. (اتصل أولًا ثم تذكر الحدث)

forget (to + inf.) ينسى أن يقوم بالفعل (الفعل لم يتم).

forget + (v-ing) قام بالفعل ونسى أنه قام به (الفعل تم).

I forgot to go to that meeting. (نسى أن يذهب)
I forgot going to that meeting. (قام بالذهاب بالفعل ولكنه نسى الحدث)

try + (to + inf.)	يحاول أن يفعل شيئًا
try + (v-ing)	يُجرب فعل شيء ليرى النتيجة

She tried to answer all the questions.
Try taking an aspirin. It might work.

regret (to + inf.)	يأسف لفعل شيء سوف يقوم به لأنه مضطر لذلك (الفعل لم يتم بعد).
regret + (v-ing)	يندم على فعل قام به (الفعل تم).

I regret to say that your interview was not successful. (آسف لقول ذلك)
I really regret being so rude to my friend. (ندمان على فعل ذلك)

Language Check point 5

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I regret .... this old car as it breaks down a lot.
   a) to buy b) buy c) to buying d) buying
2. Mona forgot .... her medicine, so she took it again.
   a) taking b) to take c) take d) to taking
3. Nader usually stops .... us some sweets on his way back home.
   a) to get b) getting c) to getting d) get
4. I remember .... the Queen in London. It was a wonderful day.
   a) meet b) to meet c) meeting d) to meeting
5. A: I have a headache. B: Have you tried .... an aspirin?
   a) to take b) taking c) take d) to taking

EXTRA POINTS

1 suggest/recommend + v-ing
= suggest/recommend that + فاعل آخر + inf. or (should + inf.)
I suggest going for a swim. = I suggest that we (should) go for a swim.

2 see – hear + مفعول + inf. رؤية واستماع الحدث كله
see – hear + مفعول + v-ing رؤية واستماع جزء من الحدث
I heard them talk about global warming. It was a very useful programme.
I saw my friend Ali playing but I left before the end of the match.

لاحظ هذا التعبير

3 the first – the second – the third – the last ... + n. + to + inf.

Hana was the last person to come to the party.

4 ask – decide – know – remember – forget – explain – understand

– هذه الأفعال إذا جاء بعدها أداة استفهام نستخدم .to + inf

We asked him how to get to the station.

I haven't decided where to go yet.

5 make + مفعول + inf. = cause + مفعول + to + inf. يجعل ...

make + مفعول + inf. = force + مفعول + to + inf. يجعل/يجبر ...

let + مفعول + inf. = allow + مفعول + to + inf. يسمح ...

My teacher always makes me study. (= causes me to study)

I only did it as they made me do it. (= forced me to do it)

– ولكن فى حالة المبنى للمجهول نستخدم بعدها .to + inf

He was made to come early.

He let me go out with my friends. (= allowed me to go out)

Language Check point 6

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. He suggested that she .... the party with her friends.
   a) attend b) has attended
   c) attending d) can attend
2. Could you explain how .... this maths problem?
   a) answering b) to answer
   c) to answering d) answer
3. Rania was the last student .... the class yesterday.
   a) enter b) entered
   c) entering d) to enter
4. Ali made me .... the party instead of him.
   a) to attend b) attend
   c) attending d) attended
5. Nargis was made .... a fine for driving her car fast.
   a) to pay b) pay
   c) paying d) paid



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I love .... during summer. I swim nearly every day.
   a) to swimming b) swimming c) swim d) swam
2. I'd like .... out with my family. This will make me happy.
   a) go b) going c) to going d) to go
3. Noha would rather .... lunch in the club.
   a) to have b) have c) having d) to having
4. I soon began .... what the problems were.
   a) to understanding b) understand c) understands d) to understand
5. My wife prefers cooking at home .... fast food.
   a) to buy b) than buy c) to buying d) than buying
6. Marwa recommended .... that new restaurant. She said it was good.
   a) trying b) to try c) to trying d) that try
7. I like listening to Dr El-Baz .... on television. I can't miss a word of his speech.
   a) talking b) to talk c) to talking d) talk
8. My favourite player intends .... this year. He can't play for more seasons.
   a) retiring b) to retire c) not to retire d) a & b
9. Dalia would prefer .... lunch in the club.
   a) to have b) have c) having d) b & c
10. Nader suggested that his sister .... with him.
   a) going b) go c) has been d) is going
11. Adel went on .... TV all night yesterday.
   a) watch b) to watch c) watching d) to watching
12. We tried .... the fire out, but in vain.
   a) put b) putting c) to put d) to putting
13. I'll never forget .... down in the middle of the street. It was embarrassing.
   a) falling b) to fall c) to falling d) fell
14. What a terrible thing! You forgot .... the important documents.
   a) signing b) sign c) to signing d) to sign

15. The postmen stopped .... letters to the houses in our area. It took them 30 minutes.

a) deliver b) to deliver c) to delivering d) delivering

16. I've gained too much weight, so I stopped .... fast food.

a) eat b) to eat c) to eating d) eating

17. I regret .... you that your request has been rejected.

a) for telling b) telling c) to tell d) not telling

18. I regretted .... my mother with the housework yesterday as she was really ill.

a) helping b) to help c) not to help d) not helping

19. We can continue .... about the problem after meeting the guests.

a) to talk b) we talk c) talking d) a & c

20. I'd rather Yusof .... to the gym to build his muscles.

a) to go b) goes c) go d) went

21. Jana is the first girl .... the top of the mountain.

a) reached b) to reach c) reaches d) reaching

22. Ashraf was made .... up early last Friday to complete his work .

a) getting b) get c) to get d) to getting

23. I prefer .... to .... videos on the internet. The latter is useless.

a) to read/watch b) reading / watch
c) reading / watching d) read/watching

24. On my first day at school, I remember .... into the classroom and seeing my classmates.

a) to go b) went c) to going d) going

25. I advised my children .... their time before the exam.

a) to waste b) wasting c) not to waste d) not wasting

26. I always hear the students .... in the kindergarten next to me.

a) to singing b) singing c) sings d) a & b

27. I suggest that she .... to the hospital tomorrow.

a) is going b) will go c) go d) going

28. My brother decided not to eat a lot again to lose weight. This means he .... a lot.

a) stopped eating b) enjoyed eating
c) regretted to eat d) forgot eating

29. I have a memory that I have met Ahmed Mekky in Alexandria before. This means that ....

a) I went on to meet Ahmed Mekky in Alexandria
b) I regret meeting Ahmed Mekky in Alexandria
c) I forgot to meet Ahmed Mekky in Alexandria
d) I remember meeting Ahmed Mekky in Alexandria

30. I forgot to bring my mobile. This means that ....

a) my mobile is with me now
b) my mobile isn't with me now
c) I have never brought my mobile
d) nothing is correct

31. Stop .... noise; your father is asleep. (Longman)

a) to making | b) making | c) make | d) to make

32. Would you like .... the summer holiday with us in Port Said? (Longman)

a) to spending | b) spend | c) spending | d) to spend

33. I really regret .... up late; I missed the first lecture. (Longman)

a) staying | b) to stay | c) to staying | d) for staying

34. I remember .... this young man before when I was in Alexandria. (Longman)

a) meeting | b) to meet | c) to meeting | d) had met

35. Don't .... your activity book or the teacher will be angry with you. (Longman)

a) remember bringing
b) forget bringing
c) remember to bring
d) forget to bring

36. Hatem starts .... French this year. (الشرقية - إدارة القنايات)

a) study | b) studying | c) to studying | d) studied

37. Sorry, I forgot .... bread when I was shopping. (الشرقية - إدارة فاقوس)

a) buying | b) buys | c) to buy | d) buy

38. I regret .... the school trip has been cancelled. (الشرقية - إدارة كفر صقر)

a) said | b) saying | c) to say | d) to saying

39. I was made .... a fine for not wearing my uniform. (الشرقية - إدارة ديرب نجم)

a) pay | b) to pay | c) paid | d) paying

40. I am hungry, I will stop .... a sandwich at a nearby restaurant. (الشرقية - إدارة شرق الزقازيق)

a) to have | b) having | c) to having | d) from having

Test yourself Part 2 | Lessons 3 & 4



Take a test

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Vocabulary

1. I like to read about the French ...., especially short stories.
a) literate b) future c) literature d) furniture

2. Our teacher always .... it very easy for us to understand our lessons.
a) takes b) makes c) helps d) has

3. I couldn't measure the .... of the street where I live. It is very long.
a) width b) long c) length d) depth

4. I think the story is .... interesting. I was very excited to read it.
a) quiet b) quit c) quietly d) quite

5. Take care of that box. What inside it is ....
a) breakable b) dressing c) broken d) repeated

6. During summer, I like to stay with my family .... Alexandria.
a) at b) on c) in d) for

7. The footballer had to .... after his injury to his right leg in the match.
a) hope b) crawl c) run d) hop

8. I like outdoor .... such as hiking or climbing.
a) activities b) subjects c) toys d) briefs

9. We had to have dinner by................... as there was a power cut.
a) TV b) wax c) lamp d) candlelight

10. Menna was playing happily with her new .... when her father came.
a) toy b) subject c) activity d) situation

11. My father .... the money on the table to persuade the man to sell his car.
a) lay b) laid c) lied d) led

12. Her mother told her to .... herself in her nicest clothes.
a) dress b) clear c) describe d) narrate

13. Families, ... those with young children, benefit from the health programme.
a) nearly b) especially c) excitingly d) fairly

14. It was impossible to see everything during our .... visit to Paris.
a) bare b) pure c) brave d) brief

15. Go along this road, then go .... the supermarket. The bookshop is on the left.
a) along b) past c) for d) straight

Language

16. I prefer being jobless to .... in such a company.

a) be worked b) working c) work d) worked

17. Try .... the mobile over there, it might get a better signal.

a) to put b) will put c) putting d) put

18. The rules of the library don't allow us ....

a) to smoking b) smoking c) smoke d) to smoke

19. I suggest that Mona .... the club.

a) join b) joined c) has joined d) will join

20. Would you like .... out for a meal tonight?

a) going b) to going c) go d) to go

21. I don't always recommend .... on your own.

a) study b) studying c) to study d) to studying

22. I really try to forget .... this very bad man who made me annoyed.

a) meeting b) to meeting c) to meet d) meet

23. I regret .... to the cinema. It was not a very good film.

a) go b) to go c) going d) to going

24. I still remember .... to Alexandria as a reward for my success.

a) take b) taking c) to be taken d) being taken

25. Please, remind your brother .... me the book he has borrowed.

a) getting b) to get c) to getting d) get

26. The police forced the criminal .... the truth about the theft.

a) tell b) telling c) to telling d) to tell

27. I consider .... Luxor and Aswan my best memory ever.

a) visit b) to visit c) to visiting d) visiting

28. I always have fun .... comic films.

a) watch b) watching c) to watch d) to watching

29. I don't .... meeting you here. What a lovely surprise!

a) expect b) fancy c) predict d) stand

30. I heard Mr Ahmed talking on his mobile. This means: ....

a) I heard everything he said

b) I heard part of what he said

c) I heard nothing he said

d) I heard everything he didn't say





Writing Skill

للمزيد من الشرح والتدريبات
يرجى الرجوع لملحق المهارات.

Writing tips

When you write a review of anything, especially a poem, you should follow the following steps:

1. What is the poem you are going to write about?
2. Who is the poet of the poem?
3. Do you think the rhyming is good or not?
4. What is the main idea of the poem and why the author wrote it?

MODEL ESSAY

A review of a poem

Introduction

"Bed in Summer" is a delightful poem written by Robert Louis Stevenson. It describes the innocence and joy of childhood. The poem describes the speaker's reluctance to get out of bed in the morning during the summer season. The speaker wants to stay in bed and enjoy the coolness and comfort that it offers.

Main body

The writer's use of vivid imagery and personification creates a visual image of the summer morning. The imagery of the garden full of butterflies and birds that sing on every tree helps to convey the speaker's sense of excitement. It's a good length for a poem, only three verses and I like the fact that the words rhyme as I don't like poems which don't rhyme. The first two lines rhyme, 'night' and 'light' and then the next two lines rhyme, 'way' and 'day'. This makes it easy to say and easy to remember! Robert Louis Stevenson was ill when he was a child and stayed in bed a lot. That's why I think he wrote this poem.

Conclusion

In conclusion, "Bed in Summer" is a beautiful poem that captures the essence of childhood and the joys of summer.



Practice more

(A) Reading Comprehension

قاموس بالكلمات الجديدة فى
قطع الفهم والتراجم نهاية الكتاب

1 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Your behaviour towards others shows people what you are really like, whether grown-up, well-balanced and wise or childish. These are some examples of situations that can show up your personality.

You have arranged an outing with your friends who have promised to call for you, but they don't arrive. If you are childish, you will get angry and decide to finish with them. But if you are well-balanced, you will think that something bad must have happened to them and run to make sure that they are safe.

You did something wrong at school. If you are unreliable, you will blame the circumstances or your classmates. But if you are a grown-up person, you will stand by your action and put the blame on yourself.

You didn't do your homework as you stayed up late at night. If you are an irresponsible person, you will easily copy your classmates' answers or lie to your teacher saying that your mother was very ill and you spent most of your time looking after her. But if you are wise enough, you can blame yourself and promise your teacher that you won't do that again.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The antonym of the word "unreliable" is "......................".
a) untrustworthy b) trustworthy c) trust d) dishonest

2. If your friends didn't call for you as planned, you shouldn't ....
a) get angry b) make sure they are safe
c) kill them d) say your mother was very ill

3. According to the text, you shouldn't .... at school.
a) tell the truth b) talk to your teachers
c) blame yourself d) tell lies

4. The best title for this passage is "..................".
a) How to stay up late at night b) How to make a promise
c) How to be a well-balanced person d) How to lie to your teacher

5. According to the passage, the writer wants to ....
a) guide young people b) mislead young people
c) bully young people d) trick young people

6. In your opinion, the best place to publish this text is ....
a) at school b) in a hospital c) in a workshop d) in the street

7. The underlined pronoun "that" means ....
a) doing the homework b) not doing the homework
c) looking after your mother d) calling friends

2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

The World Cup is one of the biggest sporting events in the world. This great football championship features players from thirty-two nations. The World Cup was created in 1928, and the first World Cup games were held in Uruguay in 1930. It was an all-male contest at that time. The first women's World Cup was held in China in 1991. Surprisingly, football is not quite as popular in the United States as basketball, or baseball, but it is still popular around the world.

People all over the continents often get up in the middle of the night or skip work to watch their nation's team compete. People in the winning nations celebrate their teams' victories. When Pelé played for Brazil in 1970, his team won the World Cup. This team is considered one of the greatest. Pelé is regarded as the best football player by many fans. Brazil has won a total of five World Cups, far more than any other nation. Another matchless player was Maradona who was regarded as one of the greatest footballers who played the game, and was awarded FIFA Best Player of the 20th Century, but he was not a good idol like Pelé. He was known for drug addiction and he was arrested in Argentina for cocaine possession.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. From the context of the passage, which is the best antonym for "victories"?

a) Wins. b) Happiness. c) Results. d) Defeats.

2. Who is Pelé?

a) A cocaine addict. b) A Brazilian team.
c) An average football player. d) One of the greatest football players.

3. In America, basketball and baseball are .... football.

a) more popular than b) less popular than
c) as popular as d) more dangerous than

4. People all over the world admired Maradona despite ....

a) his bad behaviour b) leading his team to the World Cup
c) his matchless talent d) scoring so many goals

5. The FIFA Best Player award goes to players who ....

a) addict drugs b) have achievements in the game
c) take part in the World Cup d) deal in drugs

6. People leaving work to watch their nation's team matches are .... the game.

a) crazy about b) hardly interested in
c) have no affection for d) might be arrested

7. The first women's World Cup was held in ....

a) Africa b) Uruguay
c) Asia d) South America

(B) Translation

3 (A) Choose the correct Arabic translation:

1. Man knows well that life is a mixture of success and failure, hope and despair, happiness and sadness, but in all cases, it should be filled with achievements.

a) يعرف الإنسان جيدًا أن الحياة مزيج من النجاح والانتصار، والأمل واليأس، والسعادة والحزن، ولكن فى كل الأحوال يجب أن تمتلئ بالإنجازات.

b) يعرف الإنسان جيدًا أن الحياة مزيج من النجاح والفشل، والأمل واليأس، والسعادة والحزن، ولكن فى كل الأحوال يجب أن تمتلئ بالإنجازات.

c) يعرف الإنسان جيدًا أن الحياة مزيج من النجاح والفشل، والأمل واليأس، والسعادة والفرح، ولكن فى كل الأحوال يجب أن تمتلئ بالإنجازات.

d) يعرف الإنسان جيدًا أن الحياة مزيج من النجاح والفشل، والأمل واليأس، والسعادة والحزن، ولكن فى كل الأحوال يمكن أن تمتلئ بالإنجازات.

2. Increasing production and improving its quality is the only way to increase our national income which helps to raise the standard of living.

a) إن زيادة الإنتاج وتحسين جودته هى الوسيلة الوحيدة لزيادة دخلنا القومى مما يساعد على رفع مستوى معيشتنا.

b) إن توسيع الإنتاج وتحسين جودته هى الوسيلة الوحيدة لزيادة دخلنا الوطنى مما يساعد على رفع مستوى المعيشة.

c) إن زيادة الإنتاج وتحسين جودته هى الوسيلة الأخيرة لزيادة دخلنا القومى مما يساعد على رفع أرقام المعيشة.

d) إن زيادة الإنتاج وتحسين جودته هى الوسيلة الوحيدة لزيادة دخلنا القومى مما يساعد على رفع مستوى المعيشة.

3. Reading literature introduces us to other people's experiences and cultures which are very different from our own.

a) تعرفنا قراءة الأدب على خبرات وثقافات الآخرين التى تختلف تمامًا عن ثقافاتنا.

b) تعرفنا قراءة الأدب على الخبرات والثقافات الأخرى التى تختلف تمامًا عن ثقافاتنا.

c) تعرفنا قراءة الأدب على تجارب وثقافات الآخرين التى تتشابه معنا تمامًا عن ثقافاتنا.

d) تعرفنا قراءة الأدب على تجارب وثقافات الآخرين التى تختلف تمامًا عن ثقافاتنا.

(B) Choose the correct English translation:

4. تلعب النوادى الرياضية دورًا هامًا فى المجتمع، كما تقدم خدمات عظيمة للشباب، وتساعدهم على قضاء أوقات الفراغ بشكل مفيد.

a) Sports clubs play an important role in society, and they also provide great services to young people, and help them spend their free time in a beneficial way.

b) Sports clubs play an important rule in society, and they also provide great services to young people, and help them spend their free time in a beneficial way.

c) Sports clubs play an important role in society, and they also provide great services to young people, and help them spend their empty time in a beneficial way.

d) Sports clubs play an important role in society, and they also include great services to young people, and help them spend their free time in a benefit way.

5. توقف عن مشاهدة التلفاز واذهب للفراش حالًا ولا تنس أن تغلق الباب الخلفى.

a) You stop watching TV and going to bed immediately, and don't forget to close the backward door.

b) Stop watching TV, and go to bed immediately, and don't forget to close the back door.

c) Stop to watch TV, and go sleep once, and don't forget closing the out door.

d) Stop watching TV and going to bed immediately, and don't forget to close the back door.

6. من الضرورى أن تجيد تحدث وكتابة اللغة الإنجليزية لكى تحصل على فرصة عمل جيدة فهى اللغة الأكثر تحدثًا فى العالم الآن.

a) It is necessary to be fluent in speaking and talking English to get a good job opportunity, as it is the most spoken language in the world now.

b) It is necessary to be good in speaking and writing English to get a good job opportunity, as it is the most spoken subject in the world now.

c) It is necessity to be fluent in speaking and writing English to get a good job opportunity, as it is the most spoken language in the world now.

d) It is necessary to be fluent in speaking and writing English to get a good job opportunity, as it is the most spoken language in the world now.

(C) Writing

4 Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on the following:

"The importance of teaching literature in schools"

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

I used more than 4 new vocabulary.	I used the right structure.	I used a topic sentence.	I wrote the conclusion.	I used the right punctuation.

Al-Azhar Corner



1 Finish the following dialogue:

Salma : Hey, I heard you visited Aswan recently, (1)..?
Hanan : It was amazing!
Salma : (2)..?
Hanan : We went on a cruise on the Nile.
Salma : What else did you visit there?
Hanan : (3).. .
Salma : Did you take any photos at the Nubian Museum?
Hanan : (4).. . I'll send some of them.

A Glimpse of Revelation

2 (A) Choose the correct answer:

1. Holy Books are revealed to mankind to ....
   a) memorise b) guard c) recite and follow d) read and enjoy
2. The Qur'an is a .... that Allah has promised to preserve.
   a) miracle b) tongue c) chapter d) construct

(B) Answer the following questions:

3. What are the names of the Five Holy Books?
4. What is the challenge in the Qur'an?

The Novel

3 (A) Choose the correct answer:

1. The pirates loaded the .... and fired towards the ship.
   a) canoe b) cannon c) fort d) raft
2. The .... was hard to get through as there were hundreds of soldiers around it.
   a) fort b) forth c) entrance d) beach

(B) Answer the following:

3. Why did Dr Livesy realise that they wouldn't take the ship?
4. Why should they take the flag down as Mr Trelawney thought?

4 (A) Translate into Arabic:

Every child has the right to lead a happy life in order to become a good human who is sensible.

(B) Translate into English:

الحج عبادة بالمال والنفس والوقت، يمحو الله بها الذنوب والخطايا.

Unit 6 Al-Adwaa Test

Choose the Two correct answers of the Five options:

1. Sameh couldn't see the caller because the screen was broken. The antonyms of the word "broken" are ....

a) cracked b) unbroken c) lined d) complete e) intact

2. I kept going on the .... to the main door.

a) path b) hand c) walk d) bath e) rule

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

3. I tried to .... on my good foot while holding onto my friend Ramy.

a) hope b) crawl c) run d) hop

4. We call a book about the life of someone a ....

a) research b) biography c) novel d) biology

5. Every parent .... to see their children succeed in their lives.

a) locks b) wishes c) becomes d) supposes

6. I found these CDs very .... when I was learning English.

a) helpful b) cooperative c) particular d) hopeful

7. Taha El Desouqy's character was a/an .... who could handle any suit قضية.

a) poet b) lawyer c) plumber d) author

8. It's better to .... the path not to harm the plants around it.

a) keep on b) stay on c) keep in d) stay in

9. The .... of the poem is suitable for young age.

a) length b) weight c) situation d) author

10. Hany and his sister enjoy .... tennis after school every day.

a) playing b) to play c) to playing d) play

11. Amina admitted not .... how to answer the test.

a) to be known b) known c) to know d) knowing

12. I saw them .... angrily, so I left the room to let them complete their argument.

a) talking b) talk c) to talk d) to talking

13. It is very nice here, but I really miss .... my friends.

a) saw b) to see c) seeing d) seen

14. I regret .... you that Nabil will not join the team. I know you want him with us.

a) telling b) to tell c) for telling d) to be told

15. They expect thousands of people .... Sapporo for the Snow Festival.

a) to visit b) to visiting c) visiting d) visit

16. Mr Badr encourages his students .... regularly for the exams.

a) revise b) to revise c) revising d) to revising

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

It was just before bedtime. Sally was reading a hair-raising ghost story. She loved the excitement of scaring herself before a good night's sleep. She was reading the story halfway when she suddenly heard the squeaky opening of her front door. She was surprised by the scary sound. She felt something was wrong. Sally gently pushed the warm blanket aside and slowly crept out of her bed. She walked down the stairs. Even her very own footsteps on the creaky stairs scared her. She heard the soft sound of footsteps in the kitchen and she stopped to listen. It was surely a ghost from the past since everyone she knew was in their beds fast asleep at this hour.

The darkness also frightened her, but she wanted to find out what was making the strange noise. She turned to enter the kitchen where the noise seemed to be coming. Suddenly, she walked right into a dark figure. The dark figure stretched out a hand and quickly turned on the bright kitchen lights. It was Sally's elder brother Ken! He couldn't help laughing at poor Sally. He had gone out late that night with his friends and had just returned home. Sally felt silly to have thought it was a ghost. She had a good laugh too.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17. The strange sound, the creaky stairs, the darkness and the dark figure .... Sally.

a) screamed b) scared c) cared d) entertained

18. Sally .... reading ghost stories.

a) enjoyed b) did not enjoy c) feared d) avoided

19. Who does the underlined phrase "The dark figure" refer to?

a) The strange noise. b) Sally.
c) Sally's brother. d) The ghost.

20. Sally realised it was not a ghost when her brother ....

a) stretched his hand b) turned on the lights
c) walked down the steps d) laughed

21. Ken .... when Sally started reading the story.

a) had been outside b) had been on the roof
c) hadn't entered the house d) had hidden under the bed

22. Sally thought it was a ghost because all of her family ....

a) were asleep b) got out
c) went shopping d) didn't like tricks

23. The best title for this passage is "..................".

a) Reading is important b) Scary tales effects
c) Ken is coward d) Sally's brother's trick

24. Choose the correct English translation:

- إن مستقبل الحياة على الأرض يتوقف على نجاح الجهود التى نبذلها للتخلص من التلوث البيئى.

a) The future of life on Earth depends on the successful of our efforts to get rid of environmental pollution.

b) The future of life at Earth depends on the success of our efforts to get rid of environment pollution.

c) The future of life on Earth independent on the success of our efforts to get rid of environmental pollution.

d) The future of life on Earth depends on the success of our efforts to get rid of environmental pollution.

25. Choose the correct Arabic translation:

- Scientific researchers have proved that the early experiences of childhood have an effect on man's personality.

a) أثبت الباحثون العلميون أن التجارب الحديثة للطفولة لها تأثير على شخصية الإنسان.

b) أثبت الباحثون المتخصصون أن الخبرات المبكرة للطفولة لها تأثير على شخصية الإنسان.

c) أثبتت الأبحاث العلمية أن التجارب المبكرة للطفولة لها تأثير على شخصية الإنسان.

d) أثبت الباحثون العلميون أن التجارب المبكرة للطفولة لها تأثير على شخصية الإنسان.

26. Answer the following questions:

1. Was it an advantage for Dr Livesy and his men to reach the fort before Silver's men? Why?
2. Why do you think Captain Smollett put up a flag inside the fort?
3. Why do you think Flint had built the fort before the men reached the island?

27. Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on the following:

"The importance of learning a foreign language"

....

....

....

....

....

....

لمزيد من التدريبات للطلبة الفائقين
الرجوع لنهاية الكتاب ص 365

Assess your progress ★★★★★

< 50%	50 : 64%	65 : 84%	85 : 100%
Study again	Practise more	Take more exams	Well done!

Units 5 & 6 Module Test

Choose the Two correct answers of the Five options:

1. The street seemed to be safe, so I wasn't afraid. The antonyms of the word "safe" are ....

a) untidy b) crowded c) unsafe d) secure e) risky

2. Stevenson died .... 44 in Samoa.

a) when he is b) aged c) age d) when he was e) at the age

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

3. .... is small stones used to make a surface for paths, roads, etc.

a) Rock b) Bravery c) Gravel d) Marvel

4. A .... man stopped my friends at the gate and asked for their identity card.

a) business b) minority c) security d) priority

5. My Facebook account was .... yesterday, so I couldn't reply to your message.

a) mocked b) sacked c) hacked d) packed

6. This player is .... I saw him play for the national team versus Poland.

a) Scottish b) Scotland c) Polish d) Poland

7. The hotel offers a variety of leisure ....

a) subjects b) toys c) activities d) problems

8. The novel which was published last year was a ....

a) successful b) successfully c) successor d) success

9. .... is easy today; people use apps to talk to their friends.

a) Communication b) Hack c) Literature d) Adventure

10. You should avoid .... friends with such bad people.

a) to making b) makes c) making d) to make

11. The police never allow .... in this area.

a) parking b) park c) to park d) to be parked

12. Kareema hates .... on planes. She gets nervous every time she does that.

a) to getting b) to get c) get d) to getting

13. The accused boy denied .... the ruler from his classmate's bag.

a) stealing b) to steal c) stolen d) steal

14. Ramy is travelling at night. This means that he ....

a) decided to travel b) is likely to travel
c) intended to travel d) has completed all preparations

15. Adel got excellent scores, so he .... the faculty he likes.

a) will join b) is going to join c) joins d) is joining

16. **Waiter:** What would you like to eat, sir? **Belal:** I .... pasta with meatballs.

a) have b) am having c) going to have d) will have

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

We must protect our environment from urgent threatening problems. For example, when was the last time you walked down a rubbish-free street? Although millions of pounds are spent on clearing rubbish every year, this alone cannot solve the problem. The solution lies in our hands. Dropping litter in street is against the law in Britain. You can be fined up to 1000 pounds. Not only is litter ugly, but it can also be dangerous.

Why is there so much litter? Most consumer products are packaged several times; a single item may be wrapped in plastic, put in a box, wrapped in cellophane and then put in a plastic carrier bag.

What can we do about this growing problem? Try recycling paper and plastic bottles. Never drop litter; consider the smallest piece of paper contributes to the problem. Avoid buying over-packaged items from supermarkets and take your own carrier bags. Pollution can also be a problem. Smoke and petrol from cars and more boats may make the air, beaches and the seas dirty; birds and fish may die.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17. The problem of clearing rubbish may be solved if everyone becomes .... of finding the solution.

a) thoughtless b) in charge c) careless d) afraid

18. We spend .... money to keep the environment clean.

a) many b) little c) a lot of d) few

19. We should .... our consumed products.

a) throw b) recycle c) grow d) clean

20. The underlined word "wrapped" is the synonym of ....

a) loose b) turned c) fallen d) rolled

21. In Britain, you .... throw rubbish in streets.

a) needn't b) mustn't c) are allowed to d) must

22. The text discussed .... problem(s) that we face nowadays.

a) three b) four c) one d) two

23. Why may birds and fish die according to the passage?

a) Because we drop rubbish in streets.
b) As a result of the problem of pollution.
c) Because man kills them.
d) Because of global warming.

24. Choose the correct English translation:

- يعد الدور الذى تلعبه المرأة المصرية فى النهوض بالمجتمع المصرى بارزًا ويقدره الجميع.

a) The role, played by the Egyptian women to increase the Egyptian society, is significant and appreciated by all.

b) The role, played by the Egyptian woman to upgrade the Egyptian society, is significant and appreciated by all.

c) The role, discovered by the Egyptian woman to upgrade the Egyptian society, is significant and appreciated by all.

d) The role which the Egyptian woman play to raise the Egyptian society, is remarkable and everyone think about it.

25. Choose the correct Arabic translation:

- The great development in industry has led to an increase in the amount of carbon dioxide and this has led to climate change and global warming.

a) التطور العظيم فى الصناعة أدى إلى زيادة كمية الكربون مما أدى إلى تغير المناخ والاحتباس الحرارى.

b) أدى الازدهار الكبير فى الصناعة إلى زيادة مبلغ ثانى أكسيد الكربون مما أدى إلى تغير المناخ والحرارة العالمية.

c) أدى التطور الكبير فى الصناعة إلى زيادة مبلغ الأكسجين مما أدى إلى تغير المناخ والاحتباس الحرارى.

d) أدى التطور الكبير فى الصناعة إلى زيادة كمية ثانى أكسيد الكربون مما أدى إلى تغير المناخ والاحتباس الحرارى.

26. Answer the following questions:

1. Why do you think that the men decided to go to the fort?
2. "I dream of eating good food again", what does this tell you about Gun's life on the island?
3. Why do you think Dr Livesy and his men were worried about Jim?

27. Write an email to your friend telling him your opinion about the modern technology and its effects on literature.

....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....

Assess your progress ★★★★★	< 50%	50 : 64%	65 : 84%	85 : 100%
	Study again	Practise more	Take more exams	Well done!

Story

Treasure Island



- Introduction
- Chapters' Texts
- Exercises



The Characters

الشخصيات

1 Jim Hawkins

He is a young, adventurous boy who narrates the story.
His father is the owner of an inn called Admiral Benbow.

2 Captain Billy Bones (The Captain)

He is an old pirate who arrives at an inn called Admiral Benbow.
He has a map that leads to a treasure.

3 Black Dog

He is a pirate who visits the Admiral Benbow looking for Captain Billy.
He is pale, with only three fingers in his left hand.

4 Pew (The blind man)

He is a scary pirate who comes to see Captain Billy to find the map.
He arrives with eight persons at the inn to get the map, but they don't find it as Jim and his mother have opened the box and taken it.

5 Dr Livesy

He is a smart, kind doctor and a magistrate.
He is respected and trusted by all people.
He goes with Jim and Mr Trelawney to find the treasure.

6 Mr Trelawney

He is a wealthy man who decides to finance يمول the journey to find the treasure.
He hires يستأجر a ship called *Hispaniola* and a crew including Silver.

7 Long John Silver

He is a strong man with only one leg.

He is a clever cook, but also a pirate who plots يخطط to get the treasure for himself He is very patient, clever and wicked ماكر/شرير.

8 Captain Smollett

He is an experienced ship's captain.

He is a very strict person who likes to do his work well.

He doesn't trust the crew.

9 Ben Gun

Flint's pirate crew left him on the island for three years. He is a very helpful man who wants to go home on the *Hispaniola* with Captain Smollett's crew.

10 Captain Flint

An old pirate who buried the treasure, and it is his map that Jim finds in Billy Bones' chest.

11 Redruth

Mr Trelawney's loyal servant and one of the good men on the *Hispaniola*.

12 Tom

A good sailor who refuses Silver's offer to join the pirates which makes Silver kill him.

Chapter 1

Vocabulary المفردات

admiral	أميرال (رتبة بحرية)	pale	باهت/شاحب اللون
adventures	مغامرات	perhaps	ربما
blind	أعمى/كفيف	point	يشير
cliffs	منحدرات صخرية	probably	من المحتمل
captain	قبطان	quiet	هادئ
dare	يجرؤ	realise	يدرك
dead	ميت	sailor	بحّار
frightened	خائف	scar	ندب/أثرجرح
grab	يجذب/ينتزع	suddenly	فجأة
guarding	حراسة	surprised	مندهش
gun	بندقية	sword	سيف
inn	حانة	terrible	فظيع
island	جزيرة	treasure	كنز
neighbours	الجيران	village	قرية

Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions التعبيرات والمصطلحات وحروف الجر

as quickly as we could	بأسرع ما يمكننا	point towards	يشيرنحو
be frightened by	خائف من	point to	يشيرإلى
come down	ينزل	run outside	يجرى للخارج
continue + (v-ing)	يستمرفي	spend + (v-ing)	يقضى
dare to	يجرؤ على	talk about	يتحدث عن
decide to	يقررأن	tell about	يحكى عن
fall over	يسقط	walk back into	يعود إلى
fall to the floor	يسقط على الأرض	walk into	يدخل
look around	ينظرحول	write about	يكتب عن
look pale	تبدو باهتة		

Chapter Summary



Chapter Text

Jim Hawkins:

I'll start by writing about the time when my father owned an inn called the Admiral[1] Benbow, many years ago. I remember the day when a man walked into the inn[2]. He was tall and strong, with an old blue coat and a scar on his face. He looked around him.

"This is a nice, quiet place. I'll stay here. Please, take this up to my room," he said, pointing to a large wooden box.

"You can call me Captain. And this is for you," he continued, handing my father three or four gold coins.

The Captain was usually a quiet man. He spent his days walking on the beach or on the cliffs[3]. When he came back, he always asked, "Did any sailors visit the inn today?" At first, we thought he wanted to find some other sailors, but later we realised that he didn't want any sailors to find him.

In the evenings, the Captain sometimes told stories about his time at sea. My father was worried that nobody would want to visit the inn because they would be frightened by the Captain' stories, but I think people liked them.

The Captain stayed at the inn for months. He did not give us any more money for his room and my father did not dare[4] to ask him for more.

One morning, the Captain went for a walk along the beach. I was helping my mother to make breakfast when another man walked into the inn. He was thin and pale[5], with three fingers on his left hand. He sat down and asked, "Is this table here for my friend Bill?"

I told him that I did not know Bill and said that the table was for the Captain.

"Well, my friend Bill might say that he's the Captain," he said. "He has a scar[6] on his face and likes to tell a story. Is that him?"

"Yes," I said. "He's gone for a walk."

"Which way did he walk?" he asked.

I pointed towards the beach. The man stood up and waited by the door for the Captain to return.



(1) رتبة فى البحرية
(2) حانة
(3) منحدرات
(4) يجرؤ
(5) شاحب الوجه
(6) علامة/ندبة

When the Captain saw the man, he looked pale and ill.

"Black Dog!" the Captain said.

"That's right," he replied. "I've found my friend Bill! We've had a lot of adventures[1] since I lost these fingers!"

I left them to talk. Then suddenly there were loud shouts[2] and both men stood up and ran outside. The Captain had a sword and then I saw Black Dog running away with blood on his arm. The man continued running until we could not see him.

The Captain walked back into the inn. He looked ill and suddenly he fell over. I thought perhaps he was hurt from the fight. At that moment, the doctor arrived to see my father who was sick.

"Help us, Dr Livesy! The Captain is hurt!" said my mother.

The doctor looked at him and said, "He is not hurt, but he is very ill. Help me to take him upstairs."

We took the Captain up to his bedroom and the doctor gave him some medicine. The Captain stayed in bed, but he was not quiet. He told me about his travels at sea, and said that he had something which people wanted.

"Black Dog is not as bad as some of the other men." he said, "They all want to find me. Tell me if you see them!"

That evening, my father died. I felt terrible and forgot all about the strange things that the Captain told me.

Then, a week later, I saw a blind[3] man coming down the road towards the inn. He stopped outside the door when he was near and asked, "Where am I? Will a kind person help me?"

"You are at the Admiral Benbow Inn in Black Hill Cove," I told him.

At that moment, he grabbed[4] my hand.

"Take me to the Captain!" he said. "Take me to him now!"

I walked with the blind man into the inn and took him to the Captain. The Captain looked very surprised to see him.

"Now, Bill, stay where you are. I can hear you. Take this." He then put something in the Captain's hand, turned round and left.

The Captain looked at what the man gave him.

"Ten o'clock!" he said. "I have time!"

Then the Captain suddenly fell to the floor. He was dead.

(1) مغامرات
(2) صياح /أصوات عالية
(3) كفيف
(4) جذب



I found my mother and we talked about what we should do. We knew that the Captain had a box in his room and it probably had money in it. The blind man and Black Dog probably wanted this. I thought about taking the box to Dr Livesy, but I did not want to leave my mother. We knew that we were in a danger[1]. We decided to go to the nearest village and ask our neighbours for help guarding the inn.

However, none of the people in the village wanted to help us. They did not come back with us, but one man went to tell Dr Livesy. Another man said that we could have his gun.

It was dark when we returned to the inn. We found the key to the box in the Captain's jacket. I also saw the message that the blind man gave to the Captain. It said, "You have until ten o'clock tonight."

We went upstairs and my mother soon opened the box with the key. Inside, we found some clothes, some guns, some papers and other things. We also found a bag with some coins[2] inside.

"We only have time until ten o'clock," I said. "Let's leave before the blind man and Black Dog return."

"I'll only take the money which the Captain owes us," my mother said, opening the bag.

We stood up to leave, and I decided to take the papers from the box, too. We walked as quickly as we could back towards the village, but as we walked, we heard the sound of people in the road behind us.

"Take the money and run," said my mother. "I'm too weak[3] to continue."

I did not want to leave her, so we stopped under a bridge[4], where we could hide[5] in the dark.

(1) خطر
(2) عملات معدنية
(3) ضعيف
(4) كوبرى
(5) يختبئ



Questions & Answers

(A) Factual Questions

1. Who is the narrator of the story?

من هو راوى القصة ؟

- Jim Hawkins.

2. Who did Jim live with and where?

مع من يعيش جيم وأين يعيشوا؟

- He lived with his father and mother in an inn called "The Admiral Benbow".

3. What was the Captain like?

كيف كان يبدو الكابتن ؟

- He was tall and strong. He had a scar on his face.

4. What was the Captain's real name?

ماذا كان اسم الكابتن الحقيقى؟

- He was called Billy Bones.

5. What did the Captain give Jim's father for the room?

ماذا أعطى الكابتن لوالد جيم مقابل الغرفة؟

- He gave him some coins.

6. What is special about the man called Black Dog?

ما المميز حول الرجل المدعو بلاك دوج؟

- He is thin and pale. He has only three fingers in his left hand.

7. What did Jim's father think about the Captain's stories?

ماذا كان رأى والد جيم فى قصص الكابتن؟

- He thought that they were so frightening that no one would come to the inn.

8. Who examined Bill and why was he there at that moment?

مَن فحص بيل ولماذا كان هناك فى هذا الوقت؟

- A doctor who was there to examine Jim's father.

9. What did the Captain do while he was ill?

ماذا فعل الكابتن بينما كان مريضًا؟

- He wasn't quiet and he told Jim about his travels at sea.

10. What did the Captain ask Jim about when he was ill in bed?

عن ماذا سأل الكابتن جيم ؟

- He asked Jim to tell him if he saw Black Dog and his men.

11. Who came to the inn to see the Captain? What did he give him?

من جاء للحانة ليرى الكابتن وماذا أعطى له؟

- A blind man called Pew and he gave him a message.

12. What was written in the message?

ماذا كان مكتوبًا فى الرسالة؟

- "You have until ten o'clock".

13. What happened to the Captain after he read the message?

ماذا حدث للكابتن بعدما قرأ الرسالة؟

- He fell to the ground and died.

14. What did Jim and his mother find inside the box?

ماذا وجد چيم ووالدته داخل الصندوق؟

- They found some clothes, guns, papers and a bag with coins inside.

15. What did Jim and his mother take from the box?

ماذا أخذ چيم ووالدته من الصندوق؟

- Jim's mother took the money that the Captain owed them. Jim took some papers.

(B) Critical Thinking Questions

16. Why do you think the narrator's father didn't dare to ask the Captain for more money?

لماذا تعتقد أن والد الراوى لم يجرؤ على طلب نقود أكثر من الكابتن؟

- I think that he was afraid of the sailor and his frightening stories.

17. Why do you think the Captain wanted to stay in a quiet place like that inn?

لماذا تعتقد أن الكابتن أراد أن يمكث فى مكان هادئ مثل تلك الحانة؟

- I think that he didn't want other sailors to find him and the inn was suitable as it was in an isolated place.

18. Do you think the narrator's father liked the Captain stories? Why?

هل تعتقد أن والد الراوى أحب قصص الكابتن؟ لماذا؟

- I think that he didn't like them as they were frightening and he was afraid that no one would visit the inn as a result of those stories.

19. Why do you think the Captain always asked if there were any sailors visiting the inn?

لماذا تعتقد أن الكابتن سأل دائمًا إذا كان هناك أى بحار يزور الحانة؟

- I think he wanted to be so relaxed that no sailor knew his place.

20. Why do you think that the Captain didn't tell them his real name?

لماذا تعتقد أن الكابتن لم يفصح عن اسمه الحقيقى؟

- He didn't want anyone to know his real identity as he didn't want any visits from other sailors.

21. Do you think the man who asked about the Captain was really his friend? Why?

هل تعتقد أن الرجل الذى سأل عن الكابتن كان حقًا صديقه؟ لماذا؟

- I don't think so, as the Captain was pale and worried when he saw him as if they were enemies.

22. Who do you think was stronger, the Captain or Black Dog? Why?

من تعتقد كان الأقوى، الكابتن أم بلاك دوج؟

- I think the Captain was stronger as he could hurt Black Dog who ran away.

23. The captain had a hobby, although he was ill. What do you think that hobby was?

كان الكابتن يمتلك هواية بالرغم من كونه مريضًا. ماذا تعتقد أن تكون هوايته؟

- It was the hobby of telling stories about his travels at sea.

24. Why did the narrator think that he and his mother were in danger after the Captain's death?

لماذا اعتقد الراوى أنه وأمه كانا فى خطر بعد موت الكابتن؟

- As he thought that Black Dog and the other bad sailors would come for the things that were with the Captain.

25. Were the people in the village helpful or not? Why do you think so?

هل كان الناس فى القرية متعاونين أم لا؟ لماذا تعتقد ذلك؟

- I don't think they were helpful as they didn't want to help Jim and his mother by guarding the inn and they refused to go back with them.

26. Why do you think the blind man visited the Captain in the Admiral Benbow?

لماذا تعتقد أن الرجل الأعمى زار الكابتن فى الأدميرال بينبو؟

- I think he visited him as he wanted to get the map of the treasure.

27. What do you think the message "You have until ten o'clock tonight" meant?

ما الذى تعنيه رسالة: «لديك فرصة حتى العاشرة ليلًا» فى اعتقادك؟

- I think that it meant they would come to the Captain to take what he had and kill him.

28. Why do you think that the narrator asked his mother to leave before the bad people arrived?

لماذا تعتقد أن الراوى طلب من والدته أن يرحلا قبل أن يصل الأشرار؟

- He was sure that they would hurt them as they were very nasty people.

29. In your point of view, why did the Captain look surprised to see the blind man in the Admiral Benow?

من وجهة نظرك، لماذا بدا الكابتن متفاجأ عندما رأى الرجل الأعمى فى الأدميرال بينبو؟

- I think that he didn't expect his old friend to find him in that isolated place. Also, he knew that he would be killed for the box.

30. Why do you think the Captain chose the Admiral Benbow as a place to stay?

(الإسكندرية - إدارة شرق)

لماذا تعتقد أن الكابتن اختار الأدميرال بينبو ليقيم بها؟

- He wanted to hide somewhere quiet, where no one could find him.

31. Jim and his father had different characters. Explain.

(الجيزة - البدرشين)

لجيم وولده شخصيتان مختلفتان . فسر.

- Jim was brave and didn't fear the men, but his father wasn't as he didn't dare to ask for his money.



Answer the following Questions:

1. If you were in the narrator's father's place, would you ask for your money or not? Why?
2. From your point of view, was the Captain really quiet and relaxed?
3. What do you think the stranger in the inn does to hide his identity?
4. Do you think there was friendship between the Captain and the man who asked about him in the inn? Prove your answer.
5. Do you think that the narrator and his mother would be safe after the Captain's death? Why?
6. The Captain's stories worried the narrator's father. Do you agree or not? Why?
7. Do you think the narrator was a good son to his mother or not? Why?
8. If you were the narrator, would you be interested in the matter of the Captain's death or not? Why?
9. In your opinion, what did the Captain feel when he read the message?
10. What do you think might have happened if Bill, the Captain, hadn't had that important thing? Why? (Longman)
11. What might have happened if the Captain hadn't died? (Longman)
12. Jim's mother was an honest person. Explain. (البحيرة - المحمودية)
13. Why do you think the Captain and Black Dog had a fight on the beach? (شبين القناطر - القليوبية)
14. Jim's mother loved her son Jim a lot. Explain by giving a reason. (إدارة كفر شكر التعليمية)
15. Do you think that Jim and his mother were in great trouble?
16. What do you think would have happened if the blind man and his men had found the boy and his mother? (فاقوس - الشرقية)

Chapter 2

Vocabulary — المفردات

agree	يوافق	inside	فى داخل
anyone else	أى شخص آخر	magistrate	قاضٍ
bury	يدفن	map	خريطة
catch	يقبض على	papers	أوراق/مستندات
clue	دليل/مفتاح لحل لغز	prepare	يعد/يجهز
cross	يعبر	ready	جاهز
describe	يصف	road	طريق
directions	الاتجاهات	rob	يسرق
escape	يهرب	safe	آمن
excited	متحمس	secret	سر
head	رئيس	servant	خادم
hide	يخفى	shout	يصيح / يصرخ / صيحة
important	مهم	the rest	البقية
include	يشمل		

Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions — التعبيرات والمصطلحات وحروف الجر

run inside	يركض فى الداخل	seem to	يبدو أن
call out	يصرخ	look for	يبحث عن
run out	ينفذ	longer than	أطول من
feel better	يشعر بتحسن	ready to	مستعد لـ
on a boat	على متن قارب	prepare for	يجهز لـ
as well as	بالإضافة إلى	send to	يرسل إلى
ask ... into	يطلب من شخص الدخول	keep secret	يحفظ السر
interested in	مهتم بـ		

Chapter Summary



Chapter Text

I could see the road from where we were hiding, and soon I saw eight men. One of them was the blind man. I saw them walk down the road to the Admiral Benbow Inn. They were surprised to see that the door was open, then they all ran inside. I heard someone shout, "Bill's dead!"

"Go and find his box," said the blind man.

A little later, a window opened from the Captain's bedroom and a man called out, "Someone has opened the box!"

"Is it **there**?" said the blind man.

"Only the money is there," replied the man.

"It's the boy and the woman from the inn!" shouted the blind man. "Let's find them!"

The men started to look around the house.

"If you find it, you'll all be rich!" said the blind man.

At this time, we heard horses coming down the road. When the men heard the horses, they started to run in all directions.

The horses arrived, so I ran out to see who was riding them. One of them was the boy who went to get Dr Livesy, and the rest were policemen. Two men took my mother to the village, where she soon felt better, and the others tried to catch[(1)] the men. But it was too late: we heard that they escaped[(2)] on a boat.

I returned to the Admiral Benbow with the police.

"What did they want?" said Mr Dance, the head[(3)] of the police.

"I think that they wanted this," I said, showing him the papers that I still had in my jacket. "I'd like to take them to Dr Livesy."

"That's a good idea," said Mr Dance. "He's a magistrate[(4)] as well as a doctor. He'll know what to do. I'll come with you."

We found that Dr Livesy was not at home, but was eating at the house of Mr Trelawney, an important rich man. Mr Trelawney asked us into his house. I showed Mr Trelawney and Dr Livesy the papers that the Captain had in his box.

"I think this might be a clue as to where Flint buried his treasure!" said Dr Livesy.



(1) يمسك/يلحق
(2) هرب
(3) رئيس/قائد
(4) قاضٍ

"That is why those men were not interested[1] in money," agreed Mr Trelawney. "If you are right, we should take the next boat from Bristol and go and find the treasure[2] ourselves!"

"If Jim here agrees," said the doctor, looking at me, "we should look at these papers now."

The doctor looked at the papers. Some of them seemed to describe the ships that the Captain and his men had robbed[3] of money. Then we looked at the other papers and saw a map[4] of an island, with a big cross[5] on it next to the words, "most of treasure here."

"Dr Livesy, we should go to Bristol tomorrow," said Mr Trelawney. "In a few days, we'll find the best ship in England. Jim Hawkins here can come as our ship's boy. You can be the ship's doctor."

"I agree," said the doctor, "but those men who tried to find the map will now be looking for us. We are not safe anymore. We must not tell anyone else what we know."

It took us longer than we thought to be ready to leave England. While Mr Trelawney prepared for the journey in Bristol, I stayed at Mr Trelawney's house with his servant Redruth and spent hours studying the map, thinking about the treasure that we might find.

One day, a letter was sent to me from Mr Trelawney. It said that a good man called Blandly had a ship called the *Hispaniola* for us. Trelawney said that he had found a crew[6] ready to work on it. The crew included a man called Long John Silver, who had lost a leg but was a good cook[7]. Silver also knew other men who would join us. Trelawney said that everyone was excited by the thought of the treasure. I was surprised by this, as I thought we had to keep the news of the treasure a secret.

I was very excited by the thought of the journey and I went to say goodbye to my mother at the Admiral Benbow Inn. I was very sad to leave her the next day, when I travelled to Bristol with Redruth. We had just one night in the city before we were going to sail[8].



(1) مهتم
(2) كنز
(3) سرق
(4) خريطة
(5) علامة
(6) طاقم
(7) طباخ
(8) يبحر

Questions & Answers

(A) Factual Questions

1. How many men did Jim see from the place where he was hiding?

كم رجلًا رأى جيم من مكان اختبائه ؟

- He saw eight men, including the blind man.

2. What did the gang find when the blind man asked them to get the box?

ماذا وجدت العصابة عندما أمرهم الرجل الأعمى بإحضار الصندوق ؟

- They found out that the box was opened and the papers disappeared. Only the money was there.

3. What did the blind man promise his men?

بماذا وعد الرجل الأعمى رجاله ؟

- He promised that they would be rich if they found the papers and the map.

4. How were Jim and his mother saved from the eight men?

كيف تم إنقاذ جيم ووالدته من الرجال الثمانية ؟

- The police and Dr Livesy arrived on horses and saved them.

5. Why did Jim want to give the papers to Dr Livesy?

لماذا أراد جيم أن يعطى الورق للدكتور لايفزى؟

- Jim and the police trusted Dr Livesy as he was a magistrate and Jim thought that he would know what to do with the papers and the map.

6. How did the eight men escape from the police?

كيف هرب الرجال الثمانية من الشرطة ؟

- They ran and escaped on a boat.

7. Where did Jim and Mr Dance find Dr Livesy?

أين وجد جيم والسيد دانس الدكتور لايفزى ؟

- They found him at the house of Mr Trelawney eating.

8. Who was Mr Trelawney?

من هو السيد تريلونى ؟

- He was an important, rich man.

9. What did Mr Trelawney decide when he saw the papers and the map?

ماذا قرر السيد تريلونى عندما رأى الأوراق والخريطة ؟

- He decided to take the next boat from Bristol and go and find the treasure themselves.

10. What did the papers that Jim found describe?

ماذا تصف الأوراق التى وجدها جيم؟

- Some papers described the ships that the Captain and his men had robbed of money and some other papers had a map of the island.

11. What will Jim and Dr Livesy do on the ship as Mr Trelawney said?

ماذا سيفعل جيم والدكتور لايفزى على متن السفينة كما قال السيد تريلونى ؟

- Jim would be the ship's boy and Dr Livesy would be the ship's doctor.

12. Why must they keep what they know a secret?

لماذا يجب عليهم أن يبقوا ما يعرفونه سرًّا؟

- As the men who tried to find the map would look for them.

13. Who was Redruth?

من هو ريدروث؟

- He was the servant at Mr Trelawney's house with whom Jim stayed.

14. What was the name of the ship that Mr Trelawney hired for their journey? And whom did it belong to?

ما اسم السفينة التى استأجرها السيد تريلونى لرحلتهم؟ ولمن؟

- The ship was called the *Hispaniola* and it belonged to someone called Blandly.

15. Who was Mr Dance?

من كان السيد دانس؟

- He was the head of the police.

(B) Critical Thinking Questions

16. How do you think that the boy who went to tell Dr Livesy was a great help to the narrator and his mother?

برأيك كيف قدم الولد الذى ذهب لإخبار الدكتور لايفزى مساعدة عظيمة للراوى ووالدته؟

- He helped them as he went to the police and they arrived in time to rescue the narrator and his mother before the sailors found them.

17. Do you think the blind man and his men were interested in Bill's death? Why?

هل تعتقد أن الرجل الأعمى ورجاله كانوا مهتمين بموت بيل؟ ولماذا؟

- No, I don't think so as they were interested in finding the box only to get what was inside it.

18. How do you know that all people trust Dr Livesy even the police?

كيف تعرف أن الجميع يثق بالدكتور لايفزى؟ وحتى الشرطة تثق به؟

- As the head of the police said that Dr Livesy was a magistrate and a doctor who would know what to do with the papers in the Captain's box.

19. Why do you think that Mr Trelawney was the one who organised the journey to get the treasure?

برأيك لماذا كان السيد تريلونى هو الشخص الذى قام بتنظيم رحلة الحصول على الكنز؟

- I think that he was rich enough to pay the costs of that journey.

20. Why do you think that the eight men were eagerly searching for the papers in the box?

برأيك لماذا كان الرجال الثمانية يبحثون عن الأوراق بتلهف فى الصندوق؟

- As they wanted to find the map to the treasure to know its place to get it.

21. Do you think that the Captain was loyal to his friends? Why?

هل تعتقد أن الكابتن كان مخلصًا لأصدقائه؟ ولماذا؟

- I don't think so as he took the map and the papers after their robbery and left them. I think he was planning to get the treasure for himself.

22. Why do you think that it was easy for Mr Trelawney to get a crew for the ship?

لماذا تعتقد أنه كان من السهل على السيد تريلونى أن يجهز طاقمًا للسفينة؟

- As anyone would know about the treasure would become interested in joining them.

23. **Do you think it was a good thing to tell other people about the map and the treasure? Why?**

هل تعتقد أنه كان من الجيد أن تخبر الآخرين عن الخريطة والكنز؟ ولماذا؟

- No, I think they had to keep it secret as other people, especially sailors, would be greedy and try to get the treasure and get rid of them.

24. **"If you find it, you will all be rich." Why do you think the blind man says that?**

«إذا وجدتموه، فستكونون جميعًا أغنياء» برأيك لماذا تعتقد أن الرجل الأعمى يقول ذلك؟

- I think he said that to his men to encourage them to find the map of the treasure to get it and be rich.

25. **What might have happened if Jim hadn't taken the papers and the map out of the box?**

ماذا كان سيحدث لو لم يأخذ جيم الأوراق والخريطة من الصندوق؟

- He wouldn't have known anything about the treasure and the blind man and his men would have taken them and found the treasure themselves.

26. **If you were Jim, would you agree to go on that adventure with Dr Livesy and Mr Trelawney? Why?**

لو كنت مكان جيم، هل كنت ستوافق أن تذهب فى هذه المغامرة مع الدكتور لايفزى والسيد تريلونى؟ ولماذا؟

- No, as it would be dangerous and I shouldn't leave my mother alone.

27. **Do you think that Jim could have made use of the map alone to get the treasure? Why?**

هل تعتقد أن جيم كان بإمكانه أن يستغل الخريطة بمفرده ليحصل على الكنز؟ ولماذا؟

- I don't think so as he was just a young boy and it was too difficult to do this alone.

28. **Why do you think that Dr Livesy thought they were not safe anymore?**

برأيك لماذا اعتقد الدكتور لايفزى أنهم لم يكونوا آمنين حينها؟

- I think he thought that the people who wanted to get the map would look for them to get it.

29. **Jim is a brave and adventurous boy. Do you agree or not? Why?**

جيم ولد شجاع ومغامر، هل تتفق أم لا؟ ولماذا؟

- I completely agree as he decided to go with them on their adventure to the Treasure Island to get the treasure.

30. **Do you think Jim should trust Mr Trelawney? Why? Why not?**

هل تعتقد أنه يجب على جيم أن يثق بالسيد تريلونى؟ ولماذا؟

- I think yes because Dr Livesy trusts him and Dr Livesy is a respected character.

31. **What do you think would have happened if the blind man and his men had found Jim and his mother?**

ماذا كان سيحدث لو وجد الرجل الأعمى ورجاله جيم ووالدته؟

- I think they would have killed them and taken the papers.

32. **Was it good or bad news for the blind man and Black Dog that the Captain was dead? Why?**

هل كان موت الكابتن أخبارًا جيدة أم سيئة للرجل الأعمى ورجاله؟ ولماذا؟

- I think it was good for them as they thought it was easy to get the map after his death.



Practice ... Chapter (2) Exercises

Answer the following Questions:

1. The death of the Captain was of no interest to the blind man and his men. Do you agree? Why?
2. Dr Livesy is a respected person in the village. Was that important for getting the treasure?
3. Show that Dr Livesy respected Jim Hawkins although he was just a boy.
4. If you were Dr Livesy, would you agree with Mr Trelawney to try to get the treasure or not? Why?
5. Why do you think Jim was surprised when Mr Trelawney messaged him about Long Silver and the crew?
6. How do you think the blind man reacted to the Captain's death? Why?
7. Do you think that Mr Trelawney made a good preparation for the journey? How?
8. Jim and his mother were lucky to escape death. Do you agree? Why?
9. Jim was a good son to his mother. Do you agree or not? Why?
10. In your opinion, did Dr Livesy feel at ease when they discovered the map? Why?
11. Do you think that it was a good thing that the crew knew about the treasure? Why? (Longman)
12. "The crew included a man called Long John Silver, who had lost a leg but was a good cook." Should they have taken a fitter person? Why? (Longman)
13. From your point of view, should Jim have stayed with his mother to look after her instead of going on that adventure? Why? (Longman)
14. What might have happened if Mr Trelawney and Dr Livesey hadn't decided to search for the treasure? (Longman)
15. It's the boy and the woman from the inn! "What did the blind man mean by this sentence? (إدارة كفر صقر التعليمية)
16. In your opinion, what were the papers the Captain hid about? (إدارة بلبيس التعليمية)
17. Why do you think the eight men didn't care much about Captain Bill's death? (الإسماعيلية)
18. Why do you think they chose Silver to be part of the crew on the *Hispaniola*? (إدارة شرق الإسكندرية)

Chapter 3

Vocabulary — المفردات

attack	يهاجم	harbour	ميناء
bank	مصرف/ضفة نهر	join	ينضم إلى/يلحق بـ
barrel	برميل	mean	يعنى/يقصد
crew	طاقم	mutiny	تمرد/عصيان
crutch	عكاز	own	يمتلك
clue	دليل	parrot	ببغاء
destination	المكان المقصود/جهة الوصول	pirate	قرصان
empty	فارغ	past	مارًا أمام
explain	يشرح/يفسر	patient	صبور/مريض
gang	عصابة	secret	سر/سرى

Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions — التعبيرات والمصطلحات وحروف الجر

agree with	يتفق مع	nearly empty	شبه فارغ
become blind	يصاب بالعمى	pay for	يدفع لـ
climb inside	يتسلق للداخل	prepare to	يستعد لـ
full of	ملىء	run after	يلحق
go on a journey	يذهب فى رحلة	the front of	مقدمة
go on the ship	يصعد السفينة	tired of	متعب من
happy about	سعيدٌ بشأن	walk around	يتجول
happy to	سعيد لـ	took some time to	استغرق بعض الوقت لـ
look after	يعتنى بـ	wait that long	ينتظر هذا الوقت الطويل
make me laugh	يضحكنى	walk up	يسير متجهًا

Chapter Text

Chapter Summary



The next morning, Mr Trelawney asked me to take a note to Long John Silver. I went to the inn which Silver owned. It was full of people, but I soon saw a tall, strong man with one leg. He looked very happy and seemed to know all of the people there. I walked up to him and gave him the note. When he saw that it was from Mr Trelawney, he looked surprised and said, "Ah, you must be the new ship's boy!"

At that moment, one of the men in the inn quickly left the room. I saw that he had three fingers on one hand.

"It's Black Dog!" I called. "Stop him!"

"Yes, stop him! He did not pay for his food!" called Silver to one of his helpers[1]. The helper ran after the door.

"Do you know that man? Black Dog, is it?" Silver asked me.

"Yes, he was one of the men who attacked my home. Did Mr Trelawney tell you about that?" I replied.

"Ah, yes. I've seen him in my inn before. He sometimes comes with a blind man."

"The blind man is called Pew," I said. "He was with Black Dog when they attacked."

"Then we must catch them both," said Silver. However, the helper returned and said he could not catch Black Dog.

"Well, we must return to Mr Trelawney," said Silver.

We walked back along the harbour[2] past boats of different sizes, all preparing to go to sea.

Silver told me all about the boats and I knew that he was a great sailor.

We found Dr Livesy with Mr Trelawney when we returned to his hotel, and told them about Black Dog.

"There is nothing we can do now," said Mr Trelawney. "We leave at four o'clock this afternoon. Get your hat, Jim, we'll go on the ship now," he said to me.

It took some time to reach the *Hispaniola*. When we walked onto the big ship, the Captain, Smollett, did not look happy to see us.

"What's the problem?" asked Mr Trelawney.



(1) مساعدون

(2) مرسى/ميناء

"I don't like the men on this ship and I'm not happy about where we're going," he said.

"Why not?" asked Dr Livesy.

"I was told that the destination[1] of the journey was a secret[2]," he explained. "But the crew tell me we're looking for treasure. I know that looking for treasure always means danger. And when I go on a journey, I like to be able to choose my own crew."

"Don't you like the crew we chose?" asked Mr Trelawney.

"If I sail with them, I want you to stay at the front of the ship for all the journey, and to keep guns[3] with you. And don't show anyone the map," said Smollett.

"Are you worried there will be a mutiny[4]?" asked Dr Livesy.

"It's my job to keep you safe, that's all,' said Smollett, and walked to another part of the ship.

"I think you've two good men on the ship," said Dr Livesy. "That's Long John Silver and Captain Smollett."

"I know Long John Silver is a good man," said Mr Trelawney, "but I don't think Captain Smollett is."

I agreed with Mr Trelawney. I did not like Captain Smollett.

The *Hispaniola* finally left Bristol and our long journey began. Silver was able to walk around the ship on one leg, using only a crutch[5]. All the men liked him and he was a good cook, his kitchen always clean. When he wasn't working, he looked after his parrot[6]. He called it Captain Flint and said it was 200 years old. The parrot could talk, too, which always made me laugh.

One night, before I went to bed, I decided to eat an apple. The apples were kept in a big barrel which I climbed inside, because it was nearly empty. Before I left the barrel, I heard a man talking nearby. It was Silver and what he said was terrible.

"On that journey, Flint was the Captain," he said. "It was then that I lost my leg and Pew became blind. After that journey, I put a lot of money in the bank. It was a great journey, and most of the same crew are on this ship today."

"You won't be able to return to Bristol after this journey," said another sailor called Dick. "What will happen to your inn?"



(1) جهة الوصول
(2) سر
(3) أسلحة
(4) تمرد
(5) عكاز
(6) ببغاء

"I've sold it," said Silver. "My wife has the money and is waiting for me to return in a secret place. And after this journey, you'll have lots of money, too."

Another man joined them and said, "I'm tired of waiting. When can we attack Captain Smollett?"

"You must be patient," said Silver. "Trelawney has the map, so we wait until they have found the treasure. We might also want Smollett to take us home before we attack."

"We shouldn't wait that long," replied another sailor.

"You're like the others," said Silver. "You want to do things quickly. That's what Pew and Flint wanted to do. What happened to them? Pew is blind and Flint is dead."

I began to realise that Silver was not only a cook, but he was also a pirate[1], and the other crew were part of his gang[2].

"No, we wait," continued Silver. "When the time is right, I'll kill Trelawney and his friends! Now, Dick, can you get me an apple?"

When I heard these words, I was very frightened[3]. However, before Dick came to the barrel, I heard another sailor call out:

"I can see land!"

It was this news that saved me, because the sailors now all forgot about apples. We were near the Treasure Island.



(1) قرصان
(2) عصابة
(3) خائف

Questions & Answers

(A) Factual Questions

1. Who was Silver? What was he like?

من هو سيلفر؟ ما الذى كان يعجبه ؟

- He was a cook who owned an inn. He is a tall, strong man with one leg.

2. What did Jim take to Silver?

ما الذى أخذه چيم لسيلفر ؟

- He took a note from Mr Trelawney.

3. Who was the man who left the room in the inn quickly?

من هو الرجل الذى ترك الحجرة فى الحانة بسرعة ؟

- He was Black Dog, the man with three fingers.

4. Why did Long John Silver want to stop the man who left the room?

لماذا أراد لونچ چون سيلفر أن يوقف الرجل الذى ترك الحجرة؟

- Because he didn't pay for his food.

5. Who was there at Silver's inn when Jim and Silver returned?

من كان فى حانة سيلفر عندما عاد چيم و سيلفر إليها؟

- They found Dr Livesy and Mr Trelwaney.

6. Who was the Captain of the *Hispaniola*?

من كان قبطان سفينة الهسبانيولا؟

- Captain Smollett.

7. Why wasn't Captain Smollett happy about the journey?

لماذا لم يكن الكابتن سموليت سعيدًا بالرحلة ؟

- He was told the destination of the journey was a secret while the other crew told him that they were going to look for treasure. Also, he wanted to choose his crew himself.

8. What did Captain Smollett ask Mr Trelawney to do if they sailed with the crew that Mr Trelawney chose?

ماذا طلب الكابتن سموليت من السيد تريلونى أن يفعل إذا أبحروا بهذا الطاقم الذى اختاره السيد تريلونى؟

- He asked him and Dr Livesy to stay at the front of the ship and to keep guns with them.

9. How was Silver able to walk around the ship?

كيف كان سيلفر قادرًا على التجول على السفينة ؟

- He was able to walk on one leg using only a crutch.

10. What did Silver call his parrot?

ماذا أطلق سيلفر على ببغائه ؟

- He called his parrot Captain Flint.

11. Where were the apples kept?

أين كان يحفظ التفاح؟

- The apples were kept in a big barrel on the ship.

12. What did Silver do with his inn? Why?

ماذا فعل سيلفر بحانته؟ ولماذا؟

- He sold it and gave his wife the money and she would wait for him to return in a secret place.

13. What did the crew on the ship plan to do?

ماذا خطط الطاقم الذى كان على السفينة أن يفعل؟

- They planned to attack Captain Smollett and kill Mr Trelawney, Dr Livesy and Jim.

14. What did Jim discover about Silver and the other crew?

ماذا اكتشف چيم عن سيلفر والطاقم الآخر؟

- He discovered that Silver was not only a cook, but he was also a pirate and the other crew were part of his gang.

15. Why was Jim in danger when he was inside the barrel?

لماذا كان چيم فى خطر عندما كان فى البرميل؟

- Because Silver asked Dick, one of the gang, to get him an apple from the barrel where Jim was hiding and they would see him and if that had happened they would have killed him.

16. What was Silver's secret plan on the *Hispaniola*?

ماذا كانت خطة سيلفر السرية على الهسبانيولا؟

- He wanted to kill the men and take the treasure for himself and the pirates only.

(B) Critical Thinking Questions

17. Why do you think that Black Dog left the inn quickly?

برأيك لماذا ترك بلاك دوج الحانة بسرعة؟

- I think that he thought that Jim would tell people to arrest him as he killed the Captain.

18. How do you think Jim knew the man who left the inn quickly? What does this show about Jim?

برأيك كيف عرف چيم الرجل الذى ترك الحانة بسرعة؟ وماذا يبين ذلك عن چيم؟

- Jim knew the man from his three fingers in his hand. He knew he was Black Dog. This shows that Jim was observant قوى الملاحظة.

19. Why do you think that Jim said Silver was a great sailor?

فى رأيك لماذا قال چيم عن سيلفر إنه بحّار عظيم؟

- As he told him all about the boats that were preparing to go to the sea.

20. Why do you think that Captain Smollett wasn't happy about the journey?

لماذا تعتقد أن كابتن سموليت لم يكن سعيدًا بالرحلة؟

- As he didn't like the men on the ship and he didn't feel at ease about the journey. He wanted to choose his men on the ship.

21. Do you agree with Captain Smollett when he said, "Looking for treasure always means danger"? Why?

هل تتفق مع كابتن سموليت حين قال: «البحث عن كنز دائمًا ما يعنى الخطر»؟ ولماذا؟

- Yes, I completely agree as we can't always trust people when matters are related to money.

22. **Captain Smollett was a very reliable leader. Do you agree? Why?**

كان الكابتن سموليت قائدًا موثوقًا به للغاية. هل توافق؟ ولماذا؟

- Yes. He was so honest that he was worried about the men who trusted him to be the leader. He did all his best to make them safe.

23. **Jim and Mr Trelawney didn't like Captain Smollett at first. Do you think that they were right? Why?**

چيم والسيد تريلونى لم يحبا كابتن سموليت فى البداية. هل تعتقد أنهما كانا مُحقين؟ ولماذا؟

- No. I think they were wrong as they found out later that he was right not to trust the men on the ship as they were pirates who came only to steal the treasure.

24. **Was Dr Livesy right to think that Silver was a good one? Why, in your opinion?**

هل كان الدكتور لايفزى محقًّا ليعتقد أن سيلفر كان رجلًا جيدًا؟ برأيك لماذا ؟

- No, as we would all discover that he would try to hurt them all to get the treasure.

25. **Do you think that Silver and the blind man were friends? Why?**

هل تعتقد أن سيلفر والرجل الأعمى كانا صديقين؟ لماذا؟

- Yes, I think so as Silver knew how Pew (the blind man) became blind. They were pirates who sailed with Captain Flint.

26. **"Things aren't as they first appear." Do you agree with this? Why?**

«ليست حقيقة الأشياء كما تبدو أول مرة.» هل تتفق مع هذا؟ ولماذا؟

- Yes, I agree as Jim thought at first that Silver was a good man and that Captain Smollett was not, but later he discovered that he was wrong about them.

27. **What, in your opinion, is Silver's secret plan?** برأيك ما هى خطة سيلفر؟

- Silver plans to kill Smollett, Dr Livesy, Mr Trelawney and Jim after they find the treasure.

28. **Who was Captain Flint?**

من كان «كابتن فلنت»؟

- He was a pirate on a ship with Silver. Silver has also named his parrot after this person.

29. **"When I go on a journey, I like to be able to choose my own crew." Why do you think Captain Smollett said this?**

عندما أذهب فى رحلة، أحب أن أختار طاقمى الخاص، فى اعتقادك لماذا قال كابتن سموليت ذلك؟

- I think he likes to choose his own crew to be able to trust them as he can't trust people who don't know especially when looking for treasure.

30. **Why do you think Captain Smollett was against the journey at first?**

لماذا تعتقد أن كابتن سموليت كان ضد الرحلة من البداية؟

- I think that he didn't like the crew, and he also didn't like the idea that they knew about the treasure as it would be dangerous.

31. **The parrot of Silver was an exceptional one. Illustrate.** ببغاء سيلفر كان استثنائيًا ومميزًا. وضح.

- Silver said that it was 200 years old. The parrot could talk.

32. **What do you think Jim, Dr Livesy and Mr Trelawney should do when they find the treasure? Why?**

برأيك ماذا يجب أن يفعل چيم والدكتور لايفزى والسيد تريلونى عندما يعثرون على الكنز؟ ولماذا؟

- I think they should secure it until they go home and share it together.



Practice more

Answer the following Questions:

1. The presence of Jim in the inn caused terror for a person there. Who was he? Why do you think so?
2. Prove that Jim was an observant person.
3. Do you think Captain Smollett trusted the men on the ship? Why?
4. Dr Livesy said that there were two good men on the ship. Who were they? Do you agree with him? Why?
5. Illustrate that Silver was a patient person who could wait for the best time to do something.
6. Explain that Jim was lucky to escape death from Silver and his men.
7. Why do you think that Captain Smollett thought that they wouldn't be safe on the ship? Was he right?
8. Silver was really a deceitful مخادع man. Do you agree or not? Prove your opinion.
9. The men on the ship proved to be all wicked persons اشرار. Do you agree? Illustrate.
10. Do you agree with the idea of telling the men on the ship about the treasure? Why do you think Mr Trelawney told them?
11. Jim and Silver had two different reasons for stopping Black Dog when he decided to leave the inn quickly. Illustrate.
12. In your opinion, what qualities should the ship crew have during that adventure of looking for the treasure? Why? Longman
13. If you were a ship captain, would you choose your own crew? Why? Longman
14. Why do you think looking for treasure always means danger? Longman
15. From your point of view, what might have happened if Jim had caught Black Dog in the inn? Longman
16. "Looking for treasure always means danger". Why do you think Captain Smollett said this? (العامرية - البحيرة)
17. Do you like Captain Smollett? Why? Why not? (إدارة أشمون - المنوفية)
18. Do you think it is good that the crew know about the treasure? Why? Why not? (غرب شبرا الخيمة - القليوبية)
19. Why do you think they chose Silver to be part of the crew on the *Hispaniola*? (إدارة شرق - الإسكندرية)

Chapter 4

Vocabulary — المفردات

branch	فرع شجرة/فرع لشركة أو محل	immediately	فى الحال
close	قريب	marked	مشاراليه
continue	يستمر	mistake	خطأ
correct	صحيح	organise	ينظم
count	يعد/يحصى	plan	خطة
diseases	أمراض	prefer	يفضل
downstairs	الطابق الأسفل	pretty	جميلة
expect	يتوقع	relax	يسترخى
expression	تعبير	rocky tops	قمم صخرية
follow	يتبع	shore	شاطئ
forever	إلى الأبد	thought	فكر
glasses	نظارات	trust	ثقة
hills	تلال	whistle	صفارة/يصفر

Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions — التعبيرات والمصطلحات وحروف الجر

along the beach	بمحاذاة الشاطئ	find out	يكتشف/يعرف
as usual	كالعادة	hold onto	يمسك فى
as fast as I could	بأسرع ما يمكننى	jumped out of	قفز من على
climb out of	يقفز من	prefer to	يفضل أن
close to	قريب من	walked off	خرج
fight them for	يقاتلهم من أجل	excited to	متحمس لـ

Chapter Text

Chapter Summary

I heard people running to look at the island, and I quietly climbed out of the barrel. I then walked up to join the sailors at the side of the ship. We could see two low hills[1] and one big one. The island was now very close.

"I've been here before," said Silver. "I know where the ship should stop."

"I have a map here," said Captain Smollett. "Can you take us to that place?"

I saw that Silver was excited to take the map, but it was not the one with the treasure marked on it.

"Yes, I can see it. You must go here," he said, pointing to a place on the map.

Then he turned to me and said, "You'll love this island. You can swim and climb trees and walk up the hills!"

I smiled at Silver, but inside I was very frightened of him now. I could not trust anything that he said.

I soon found Dr Livesy and quietly said to him, "I must speak to you, Captain Smollett and Mr Trelawney. I have some terrible news."

Dr Livesy's expression did not change. He asked me to find his glasses[2] downstairs and walked off to talk to Mr Trelawney and Smollett.

I waited downstairs and soon the three men joined me.

"What do you want to tell us?" asked Mr Trelawney.

I told them everything that I had heard in the barrel. When I finished talking, they thanked me.

"Captain," said Mr Trelawney. "You were right and I was wrong. What shall we do?"

"I'm surprised too," said Captain Smollett. "They have worked hard and been a better crew than I expected[3]. Now we must continue. We can't go back, or they might attack us immediately. I don't think that they will attack us until we find the treasure. Long John Silver did not find all of this crew, so some of the men are good men. We must wait, watch and attack them when they don't expect it."

"Jim can help us," said Dr Livesy. "The men all trust him. He can listen and find out who we can trust."

I did not like this thought. I counted[4] the men that Silver did not find for the crew. There were seven from a crew of nineteen, and I was one of them.



(1) تلال
(2) نظارة
(3) توقعت
(4) عددت

The next morning, the *Hispaniola* stopped close to the island. There were many trees, and above the trees I saw the rocky tops of the hills. Silver helped Captain Smollett to sail the boat closer to the shore[1]. It was very hot and very quiet. It smelled like bad eggs.

"This place is only good for diseases," said Silver.

The crew worked hard on our journey to the island, but now they did not seem to want to work. I remembered Dr Livesy talking about a mutiny. Perhaps it was near. Only Silver worked as hard as usual.

Later, Captain Smollett told us that he had a plan[2].

"Let's ask the men if they'd like to spend the afternoon on the island. If they go, we can take the ship. If they don't go, we know we need to fight them for the ship."

Mr Trelawney agreed. We decided to tell all the men we could trust[3] about our plan and gave them all guns. Captain Smollett then told the crew that they could all have the afternoon on the island to relax, if they wanted to.

"When you hear a gun at the end of the day, it'll be time to come back," he said.

All the crew suddenly looked happy and they all agreed to go. Perhaps they thought that they could find the treasure immediately.

Captain Smollett asked Silver to organise the men. Six men would stay on the *Hispaniola* and thirteen would take the small boats to the shore. I realised that there were six of Silver's men on the ship. The men in our group would not be able to take the ship, so I decided I would go with Silver onto the island. I got on one of the boats quietly, but Silver saw me. Had I made a big mistake[4]?

The boat I was in was fast, and we were nearly on the beach first when I held onto[5] the branch of a tree and jumped out of the boat. I heard someone calling me, but I did not listen and began to run as fast as I could.

When I stopped, I felt happy. Silver did not know where I was. This part of the island was open, with just a few trees. I could see the hills in front of me. As I walked, I saw pretty flowers, snakes and small birds.

Suddenly a cloud of birds flew into the sky and knew that something was coming towards me. I was correct, because I then heard people talking. I decided to hide behind some trees.



(1) ساحل
(2) خطة
(3) يثق
(4) خطأ
(5) تمسكت

I realised that one of the people was Silver, but I could not hear what he was saying. Soon the birds returned, and I knew that the men had gone. I told myself that it was my job to find out what these men were planning to do. So I decided to follow them, without them seeing me. After a few minutes, I saw Silver and another sailor talking near a beach.

"I want you to join us, Tom, because I know you're a good sailor. I'm telling you this to save you!" said Silver.

"Silver," Tom replied, "you're a good man and you shouldn't work with these pirates. I'd prefer to lose my hand than work with them!"

I knew then that here was a man that we could trust. Then came news of another. I suddenly heard a terrible shout, then all was quiet.

Silver smiled and said, "That? Oh, I think that was Alan."

"Alan!" cried Tom. "He's a good man. If your men have hurt him, then you are no friend of mine. I won't help you!"

Tom began to walk away from Silver along the beach. Silver suddenly threw his crutch at Tom, and it hit(1) him hard on the back. He fell(2) to the ground, and before he could stand again, Silver killed him with a knife.

Silver now blew a whistle(3) and I knew that more of his men would soon arrive on the beach. I was very frightened. I walked quietly back into the trees, then ran as quickly as I could.

As I ran, I began to think. What could I do now? When we heard Captain Smollett's gun, could I go back to the beach to be with these men? If I did, I knew that they would kill me. I would have to stay on the island forever.



(1) ضرب
(2) سقط
(3) صفارة

Questions & Answers

(A) Factual Questions

1. Who worked hard as usual when they reached the island?

من الذى عمل بجد كالمعتاد عندما وصل إلى الجزيرة؟

- Silver.

2. What did Jim see when he climbed out of the barrel?

ماذا رأى چيم عندما قفز خارج البرميل؟

- Jim saw two low hills and a big one on the island.

3. Whom did Captain Smollett ask to take them to the place on the map, and how did he react?

ممن طلب كابتن سموليت أن يأخذهم إلى المكان المذكور فى الخريطة وكيف كان رد فعله؟

- Captain Smollett asked Silver, who agreed excitedly to lead them to the place on the map.

4. What did Jim tell Dr Livesy, Captain Smollett, and Mr Trelawney, and why couldn't they do anything?

بماذا أخبر چيم دكتور لايڤزى وكابتن سموليت والسيد تريلونى؟ ولماذا لم يقدروا على فعل شىء حياله؟

- Jim told them everything he heard while in the barrel, but they couldn't do anything as they didn't think they would be attacked until the treasure was found.

5. What did Dr Livesy suggest Jim do after what he heard?

ماذا اقترح دكتور لايڤزى على چيم أن يفعل بعد ما سمعه؟

- Dr Livesy suggested that Jim could listen and find out which sailors they could trust.

6. How did the crew behave when the *Hispaniola* stopped close to the island?

كيف تصرف الطاقم عندما توقفت الهسبانويلا بالقرب من الجزيرة؟

- The crew didn't seem to want to work, except for Silver who worked hard as usual.

7. What was Captain Smollett's plan to take the ship?

ما هى خطة كابتن سموليت ليأخذ السفينة؟

- Captain Smollett decided to tell all the men they could trust about the plan and gave them guns. He also told the crew they could have the afternoon on the island to relax, which made them happy.

8. How many men stayed on the *Hispaniola*, and how many men went to the shore?

كم رجلًا بقى على الهسبانيولا وكم رجلًا ذهب للشاطئ؟

- Six men stayed on the *Hispaniola*, and thirteen went to the shore.

9. Why did Jim decide to go behind Silver onto the island?

لماذا قرر چيم أن يذهب خلف سيلڤر على الجزيرة؟

- Because he thought that the men in their group would not be able to take the ship, so he wanted to watch him.

10. What happened when Jim reached the island and began to run?

ماذا حدث عندما وصل جيم للجزيرة وبدأ يجرى؟

- Jim heard people, including Silver, but he couldn't hear what they were saying, and then they were gone.

11. Whom did Jim see talking to Silver on the island?

من رآه جيم يتكلم مع سيلفر على الجزيرة؟

- Jim saw Silver talking to another sailor named Tom.

12. What happened when Tom refused to work with the pirates?

ماذا حدث عندما رفض توم الانضمام للقراصنة؟

- Silver threw his crutch at him, hitting him hard on the back. Tom fell to the ground, and before he could stand again, Silver killed him with a knife.

13. How did Jim react to the situation with Tom?

كيف كان رد فعل جيم على موقف توم؟

- Jim was very frightened and ran away.

14. What did Silver do after killing Tom?

ماذا فعل سيلفر بعد قتله توم؟

- Silver blew a whistle, signalling that more of his men would soon arrive on the beach.

(B) Critical Thinking Questions

15. Captain Smollett was a cunning character. Discuss.

كان كابتن سموليت شخصية ماكرة. ناقش.

- He gave Silver the map without the treasure marked on it.

16. Why do you think Captain Smollett and his team decided not to go back after knowing about Silver and his men's plans?

برأيك لماذا قرر كابتن سموليت وفريقه ألا يعودوا بعدما علموا بشأن خطة سيلفر ورجاله؟

- Because they might be killed.

17. What would have happened if the map with Smollett had been the map of the treasure?

ماذا كان سيحدث لو كانت الخريطة التى مع سموليت هى خريطة الكنز؟

- Silver would have killed them, then he would have gone on the island with his men to get the treasure.

18. Silver helped Captain Smollett to sail the boat closer to the shore. Discuss.

سيلفر ساعد كابتن سموليت ليبحروا بالقارب بالقرب من الشاطئ. ناقش.

- As he didn't want anyone to doubt him يشك به.

19. After going to the island, Silver's character appeared. Discuss.

بعد الذهاب للجزيرة، ظهرت شخصية سيلفر. ناقش.

- His real intentions started to appear; he was greedy and cruel, as he killed Tom when he refused to join them.

20. **Do you think Captain Smollett's plan to take the ship was a failure?**

هل تعتقد أن خطة كابتن سموليت لأخذ السفينة كانت فاشلة؟

- Yes, because all who stayed on the ship were Silver's men.

21. **Why do you think the crew were happy when Captain Smollett let them go on the island?**

لماذا تعتقد أن الطاقم كانوا سعداء عندما سمح لهم كابتن سموليت بالذهاب للجزيرة؟

- Because they thought that they could find the treasure.

22. **What do you think made Jim decide to go behind Silver onto the island?**

برأيك ماذا جعل جيم يذهب خلف سيلفر على الجزيرة؟

- I think he wanted to watch him and his men not to do something wrong.

23. **Why do you think Silver killed Tom?**

برأيك لماذا قتل سيلفر توم؟

- To prevent him from telling Captain Smollett and the others that he was a pirate, as this would spoil يفسد all his plans to get the treasure.

24. **Why do you think the sailors didn't work hard when they reached the island?**

فى اعتقادك لماذا لم يعمل البحارة بجد عندما وصلوا إلى الجزيرة؟

- As they were eager to find the treasure.

25. **What might have happened if Jim hadn't told Dr Livesy, Smollett and Mr Trelawney about what he had heard?**

ماذا كان يمكن أن يحدث لو لم يخبر جيم دكتور لايفزى وسموليت والسيد تريلونى بما سمعه؟

- They wouldn't have known about Silver's evil intentions and things would have been worse.

26. **Was Jim right to be frightened of Silver? Why?**

هل كان جيم محقًا فى خوفه من سيلفر؟

- Yes, of course, as he saw him kill Tom, and his real character was revealed that he was a pirate.

27. **Tom lost his life for his honesty. Explain.**

فقد توم حياته من أجل أمانته. فسر.

- When Tom threatened Silver that if his men hurt Alan, he wouldn't help him. At last, Silver killed him.

28. **Why did Jim feel he made a mistake by deciding to go to the island?**

لماذا شعر جيم أنه أخطأ عندما قرر أن يذهب إلى الجزيرة؟

- As he found himself in a dangerous situation. There were pirates on board the *Hispaniola*, and Silver killed Tom on the island.

Chapter (4) Exercises



Answer the following Questions:

1. Why do you think Silver was excited to take the map from Captain Smollett?
2. Why do you think Silver helped Captain Smollett sail the boat closer to the shore?
3. What do you think made Jim decide to go with Silver onto the island?
4. Why do you think Silver kept six of his men on the ship?
5. What do you think would have happened if Tom had agreed to join the pirates?
6. "I know where the ship should stop." What does this show about Silver?
7. What do you think would have happened if the map with Smollett was the map of the treasure?
8. Why do you think Silver wanted Tom to join the pirates?
9. Why do you think the crew were better than Captain Smollett expected?
10. Silver helped Captain Smollett to sail the boat closer to the shore. Why do you think Captain Smollett let Silver help him do this?
11. Why do you think Jim said that he would have to stay on the island forever?
12. Why do you think Silver said that the place was only for diseases?
13. Why do you think Jim hid behind a tree, trying to listen to Silver and his men?
14. "I'd prefer to lose my hand than work with them." What does this show about Tom's character?
15. "You were right and I was wrong." What does this sentence show about Mr Trelawney's character?
16. What might have happened if Jim hadn't agreed to share in the adventure of looking for the treasure? (Longman)
17. If you were in Jim's place, would you swim and climb trees on the island? Why? (Longman)
18. Why do you think Silver couldn't reach the treasure although he had the map of the island? (الشرقية - ديرب نجم)
19. All that glitters is not gold. Explain the meaning of this phrase, referring to Silver and Smollett. (الشرقية - مشتول)

Chapter 5

Vocabulary — المفردات

allow	يسمح	fresh	منعش
believe	يصدق	group	مجموعة
bottom	الأسفل	interested	مهتم
crazy	مجنون	kneel	يركع
dangerous	خطير	leader	زعيم/قائد
dead	ميت	sail	شراع
different	مختلف	spade	جاروف
dry voice	صوت جاف		

Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions — التعبيرات والمصطلحات وحروف الجر

allow me to	يسمح لى أن	from up the hill	من أعلى التل
at the end	فى نهاية المطاف	in front of me	أمامى
burned by the sun	احترقت من الشمس	knelt down	ركع
come out from behind	يخرج من الخلف	left here by a ship	غادر من هنا على سفينة
dream of	يحلم بـ	on your own	بمفردك
flying above	تحلق فوق	to my surprise	لدهشتى
from the start	من البداية	work for	يعمل لدى

Chapter Text

Chapter Summary

I finally stopped running and saw that I was close to the bottom of one of the small hills. The air was fresher here and the trees were taller. Suddenly, from up the hill, something jumped behind a tree. I did not know if it was a man or an animal but it looked big and dangerous. I decided to walk back towards the beach, but then I saw him again. I realised it was a man, but he was running very fast from tree to tree. I remembered that I had a gun and this made me feel safer. I decided to walk towards the man.

When he saw me walking towards him, to my surprise, he came out from behind the tree and knelt down in front of me.

"Who are you?" I asked.

"Ben Gun," he said in a dry voice. "I've not spoken to anyone for three years."

The man had very long hair and skin that was burned[1] by the sun. His clothes were dirty and made of old sails[2].

"What happened to you?" I asked.

"I was left here by a ship," he said. "I've lived on fish and fruit ever since. I dream of eating good food again."

"If I can get back to my ship, I'll give you bread and cheese," I said.

He began to look worried. "If you can get back to your ship?! Why? What's to stop you?" he said.

"It isn't a problem with you," I replied.

"I'm a good man," he told me. "I'm very rich, too!" he said in a quiet voice.

I began to think that perhaps Ben Gun was crazy. Ben Gun saw that I did not believe him.

"I am rich! And you can be rich too, because you found me!" he said. Then he looked worried and said, "You didn't come on Flint's ship, did you?"

I realised now that this man could help me.

"No, Flint's dead, but some of Flint's crew is on the ship. That is not good for any of us." I told him.

"Is there a man with one leg?" he asked.

"Yes, Silver. He's the cook and their leader," I explained.

"If you work for Silver, I'm finished," he said.



(1) محترق

(2) أشرعة

I decided to tell him my story from the start, and he looked very interested.

"You're a good boy," he said at the end. "Don't worry, you can trust me. Do you think that Trelawney would give me money and allow me to come home on the ship if I helped him?" he asked.

"Of course," I replied. "And he'll need your help on the ship home, I'm sure."

"You're right," he said. "You know, I was on Flint's ship when he hid the treasure here. He was with six men and they were on the island for about a week. We waited for them on a ship called the Walrus. One day, Flint returned to the ship on his own. The other six men were dead. We don't know how he did it. Billy Bones and Long John Silver were with me on the ship. They asked Flint where the treasure was. 'You can go on the island and look for it,' he said. 'But you'll be there on your own. I'm taking this ship home.'

"Three years ago, I was on a different ship. When we saw the island, I told our crew that Flint's treasure was on it. We spent twelve days looking for it. They were not happy when we found nothing. One day, they went back to the ship and told me I could stay. 'Here's a gun and a spade[1]. You can look for the treasure on your own!' they said. So, you tell Trelawney, I would prefer to work for a man I can trust like him, than with a group of pirates."

"I'll tell him, but how can I return to my ship from here?" I asked him.

"I have a boat. I made it myself. We could go to the ship when it's dark!"

Suddenly, we heard the sound of a gun.

"They have started to fight," I said. "We must be quick!"

I began to run back with Ben. He gave me directions[2], and ran easily next to me. We heard more guns, then I saw a flag flying above some trees.



(1) جاروف

(2) اتجاهات

Questions & Answers

(A) Factual Questions

1. Who did Jim meet while walking through the trees?

من قابل جيم أثناء سيره بين الشجر؟

- Jim met a man named Ben Gun.

2. How long had Ben Gun been living alone on the island?

كم المدة التى قضاها بين جن وحيدًا على الجزيرة؟

- Ben Gun had been living alone on the island for three years.

3. What was Ben Gun's appearance like?

كيف كان يبدو مظهر بين جن؟

- Ben Gun had very long hair, sunburned skin, and wore clothes made of old sails that were dirty.

4. How did Ben Gun survive on the island?

كيف عاش بين جن على الجزيرة؟

- Ben Gun survived on the island by living on fish and fruit.

5. What did Ben Gun tell Jim about his wealth?

ماذا قال بين جن لجيم عن ثروته؟

- Ben Gun told Jim that he was very rich.

6. How did Jim initially react to Ben Gun's claim of being rich?

كيف كان رد فعل جيم فى البداية تجاه زعم بين جن أنه غنى؟

- Jim thought Ben Gun was crazy.

7. What did Ben Gun ask Jim about?

عم سأل بين جن جيم؟

- He asked Jim about Captain Flint, his ship and Long John Silver.

8. What did Jim tell Ben Gun about Flint?

ماذا قال جيم لبين جن عن فلنت؟

- He told Ben Gun that Flint was dead, but some of his crew were on the ship.

9. What did Jim decide to do when Ben Gun showed interest in the story?

ماذا قرر جيم أن يفعل عندما أظهر بين جن اهتمامًا بالقصة؟

- He decided to tell Ben Gun the story from the beginning.

10. What question did Ben Gun ask about Trelawney?

ما السؤال الذى سأله بين جن عن تريلونى؟

- Ben Gun asked if Trelawney would give him money and allow him to go home on the ship if he helped them.

11. How did Jim assure Ben Gun?

كيف طمأن جيم بين جن؟

- Jim assured Ben Gun that they would need his help on the ship home.

12. What did Ben Gun reveal about his time on Flint's ship?

ماذا كشف بين جن عن وقته على سفينة فلنت؟

- Ben Gun revealed that he was on Flint's ship when they hid the treasure.

13. How long were Ben Gun and six men on the island waiting for Flint?

كم المدة التى انتظر فيها بين جن والست رجال فلنت على الجزيرة؟

- Ben Gun and six men were on the island waiting for Flint for about a week.

14. What happened when Flint returned to the ship?

ماذا حدث عندما رجع فلنت إلى السفينة؟

- When Flint returned to the ship, the other six men were dead, and Billy Bones and Silver were with him.

15. What did Flint want the men to do?

ماذا أراد فلنت من الرجال أن يفعلوا؟

- Flint wanted the men to go to the island and look for the treasure while he took the ship home.

16. What did Ben Gun reveal about his past expedition to the island?

ماذا كشف بين جن عن رحلته الاستكشافية على الجزيرة فى الماضى؟

- Ben Gun revealed that three years ago, he was on a different ship that spent twelve days looking for Flint's treasure on the island but found nothing.

17. What did the crew on the same ship with Gun do with him?

ماذا فعل طاقم السفينة الذى كان مع بين جن معه؟

- When the crew returned to the ship, they told Ben Gun to stay and gave him a gun and a spade to look for the treasure on his own.

18. How did Ben Gun help Jim return to the ship?

كيف ساعد بين جن جيم فى العودة للسفينة؟

- Ben Gun had a boat which he made himself, and he offered to help Jim return to the ship.

19. What did Jim and Ben Gun hear suddenly that made them run back?

ما الذى سمعه جيم وبين جن فجأة مما جعلهما يهربان؟

- They heard the sound of a gun, followed by more guns, and then Jim saw a flag flying above some trees.

(B) Critical Thinking Questions

20. Was Jim mistaken when he decided to go to the island? Why do you think so?

هل كان چيم مخطأ عندما قرر الذهاب إلى الجزيرة؟ لماذا تعتقد ذلك؟

- Yes. Because he should have stayed on the ship to watch the other sailors.

21. "I dream of eating good food again." What does this show about Gun's life on the island?

«أحلم بتناول طعام جيد ثانيةً.» ما الذى يوضحه ذلك عن حياة بين جن على الجزيرة؟

- This shows that he had a hard life there.

22. "You didn't come on Flint's ship, did you?" Why do you think Ben Gun said this to Jim?

«أنت لم تأت على سفينة فلنت، صحيح؟» لماذا تعتقد أن بين جن قال ذلك لچيم ؟

- Because Flint had killed some sailors before. He was worried about seeing Flint again.

23. "If you work for Silver, I'm finished, he said". What does Ben Gun mean by this?

«لو كنت تعمل لصالح سيلفر، فقد انتهى أمرى.» ماذا يقصد بين جن بذلك؟

- He means that Silver could kill him.

24. Why do you think Jim thought that Mr Trelawney would let Ben Gun go home on the ship?

برأيك لماذا اعتقد چيم أن السيد تريلونى سوف يسمح لبين جن أن يعود للديار على السفينة ؟

- Because Mr Trelawney would need Ben Gun's help on the ship home.

25. Why do you think Flint was sure they wouldn't find the treasure?

لماذا تعتقد أن فلنت كان متأكدًا من أنهم لن يعثروا على الكنز؟

- Because he had hidden the treasure in a secret location.

26. Why do you think Ben returned to the island on another ship?

لماذا تعتقد أن بين جن عاد للجزيرة على سفينة أخرى؟

- To look for Captain Flint's treasure.

27. Why do you think Gun was left alone on the island?

لماذا تعتقد أن بين جن ترك وحيدًا على الجزيرة؟

- I think his crew punished him because they didn't find the treasure.

28. Why do you think the crew gave Ben a gun and a spade?

برأيك لماذا أعطى الطاقم بين جن سلاحًا وجاروفًا؟

- A gun to protect himself and a spade to look for the treasure.

29. Why do you think Flint killed the six men on the Treasure Island? (القليوبية - إدارة كفر شكر)

لماذا تعتقد أن فلنت قتل الرجال الستة على جزيرة الكنز؟

- As he didn't want anyone to know the place where he hid the treasure.

30. Why do you think Jim thought that Ben Gun was crazy? (الشرقية - إدارة مشتول)

فى رأيك لماذا ظن چيم أن بين جن مجنون؟

- Because Ben Gun behaved strangely and said that he was very rich although he lived on the island badly.



Answer the following Questions:

1. I've not spoken to anyone for three years." If you were Jim, would you believe these words?
2. Ben Gun seemed to have suffered a lot on the island. Discuss.
3. What is your opinion about Flint's character?
4. Do you think that Jim is right to trust Ben Gun? Why? Why not?
5. Why do you think Ben Gun's crew were angry with him?
6. How do you think Ben Gun would help Jim return to the ship safely?
7. How do you think Jim felt when he saw something jumping behind a tree?
8. If you were Ben Gun, how would you adapt to living alone on this island?
9. Do you agree that Flint was an evil man? Why? Why not?
10. Why do you think Jim couldn't return to the ship?
11. "I'm a good man," he told me. "I'm very rich, too!" If you were Jim, would you believe that Ben Gun was rich?
12. "You can look for the treasure on your own!" Why do you think Ben Gun's crew left him on the island?
13. Do you think that Jim is right to trust Ben Gun? Why/ Why not?
14. Why do you think Jim didn't believe that Ben Gun was rich?
15. Why do you think Jim thought that Ben Gun was crazy?
16. Do you think Jim could have known the right directions without Gun's help? Why?
17. Why do you think Flint hid the treasure in that island in particular?
18. "I dream of eating good food again". What does this tell about Gun's life on the island?

Chapter 6

Vocabulary — المفردات

advantage	ميزة	move	يتحرك
alive	على قيد الحياة	prevent	يحول دون/يمنع
cannon	مدفع	reach	يصل إلى
careful	حذر/حريص	sinking	غارقًا
contact	يتصل بـ	slowly	ببطء
cry	يبكى	supplies	إمدادات
enter	يدخل	weapons	أسلحة
fort	حصن	well defended	محصن
including	بما فيها/متضمنًا	wind	رياح
medicines	أدوية		

Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions — التعبيرات والمصطلحات وحروف الجر

a good servant to him	خادم جيد له	made us all move	جعلنا جميعًا نتحرك
at all	على الإطلاق	move towards	يتحرك نحو
at the other side	فى الجانب الآخر	on the island	على الجزيرة
at the same time	فى الوقت نفسه	one side of the boat	جانب واحد من القارب
big enough for	كبيرة بما يكفى لـ	prevent the boat from	يمنع القارب من
easy for them to	سهل بالنسبة لهم أن	stay on	يبقى على
far from	بعيد عن	take it down	ينزل شيئًا للأسفل
fell down	سقط	to get there first	للوصول إلى هناك أولًا
fire his gun	يطلق النارمن سلاحه	to put food and more weapons into	لوضع الطعام والمزيد من الأسلحة فى
from a different direction	من اتجاه مختلف	walk a little way	يمشى قليلًا
impossible for them	مستحيل بالنسبة لهم	we're finished	انتهينا

Chapter Summary



Chapter Text

Dr Livesy:

When the boats went to the shore, I talked to Captain Smollett and Mr Trelawney. There was no wind[1] at all, so we knew we could not take the ship, even if we wanted to attack the six men who stayed on the ship with us. Then we heard that Jim Hawkins was on the island with Silver and his men. We were very worried[2] about him.

I decided to take a boat to the shore with another man we could trust, called Hunter. When we reached the island, we walked a little way and then we found a small fort[3]. It was big enough for about twenty-five people and was very well defended[4]. It also had water. Then I heard a shout. I thought that Jim was dead.

We ran back to the boat and soon returned to the *Hispaniola*. I told Captain Smollett and Mr Trelawney my plan. We quickly put food, medicines and guns in the boat.

At the same time, Captain Smollett and Mr Trelawney said to Silver's men who were still on the ship, "We have guns. If you try to contact Silver, you will be dead."

They looked very surprised.

I then took the boat back to the beach with Hunter and another sailor called Joyce. We quickly took everything up to the fort, then I left Hunter and Joyce in the fort and returned to the *Hispaniola*.

We knew that Silver had more men than us, but we also knew that none of them had guns. We thought that this gave us an advantage[5]. On the *Hispaniola*, Trelawney helped me to put food and more weapons into the boat. Then we called for Captain Smollett, Redruth and a good sailor called Abraham Gray, and they climbed into the boat with us.

Our journey back to the island was more difficult than the others. There were more people and supplies[6] now, so the boat was heavy and very close to the water. We had to be very careful to prevent[7] the boat from sinking. The wind blew from a different direction, too, and we were not moving towards the beach near the fort.

"We'll never get to the beach!" I said.

"We must keep in this direction," said Captain Smollett. "Work hard, be patient[8], and we will arrive." Then his voice changed. "The cannon![9]" he called.

I looked round and realised that the men we left on the *Hispaniola* were preparing a cannon. We were moving so slowly that we were not far from the ship. It would be easy for them to hit us.



(1) رياح
(2) قلق
(3) حصن
(4) محصن جيدًا
(5) أفضلية / ميزة
(6) موارد / مؤن
(7) يمنع
(8) صبور
(9) مدفع

Trelawney stood up with a gun and fired at the pirates, and one of them fell.

We heard a cry from the ship, and another from the beach. We saw that the other pirates were getting into their boats.

"Go as fast as you can," said Captain Smollett. "If we don't get to the beach, we're finished."

"They are only using one boat" I said. "The other men are walking to the beach to wait for us."

"It's a long way for them to run," said Captain Smollett. "It's a race[1] to get there first."

We moved fast, and the wind was not so strong near the beach. However, Trelawney fired his gun again which made us all move to one side of the boat. It started to sink, but we were in just three feet of water. It was not difficult to walk to the beach, but we had lost many of our supplies in the water, including some of our guns.

There were now voices in the trees and we knew that the pirates were near. We had to get to the fort before the pirates got to the beach. We all ran as fast as possible and at last, we saw the fort in front of us. At the same time, seven pirates arrived at the other side of it. The pirates looked surprised to see the fort and stopped. This gave us time to fire our guns, and they quickly turned and ran into the trees behind them.

Before we could enter the fort, we heard another gun fire, and poor[2] Redruth fell down. We quickly picked him up and took him into the fort, but it was too late: he was dead. Trelawney was very sad. Redruth had been a good servant to him.

Captain Smollett put up a flag inside the fort and counted the supplies, then he asked me, "How long will we have to spend on this island?"

"In England, I told Blandly that if we were not back by August, to come and find us," I explained.

"We need the supplies that were lost in the sea," said Captain Smollett. "Without them, we have enough supplies until July only."

At that moment, we heard gun fire and the fort was nearly hit.

"They can see the flag," said Trelawney. "We should take it down."

"No!" said Captain Smollett. "We keep the flag! It will show the pirates that we are not frightened of them!"

The gun fire continued, but it was almost impossible for them to hit anyone inside the fort.

Just then, we heard someone calling.

"Doctor! Mr Trelawney! Captain! Are you there?"

I ran to the door of the fort and I found Jim Hawkins, safe and alive!



(1) سباق (2) مسكين

Questions & Answers

(A) Factual Questions

1. Why couldn't Dr Livesy and the others take the ship?

لماذا لم يستطع دكتور لايفزى والآخرون أن يأخذوا السفينة ؟

- There was no wind, so they couldn't take the ship, even if they wanted to attack the six men who stayed on the ship with them.

2. What news did the group hear about Jim Hawkins?

ما الأخبار التى سمعتها المجموعة عن جيم؟

- They heard that Jim Hawkins was on the island with Silver and his men, which made them very worried about him.

3. Who did Dr Livesy decide to take to the shore with him?

من الذى قرر دكتور لايفزى أن يأخذه معه للشاطئ؟

- Dr Livesy decided to take Hunter and another sailor named Joyce.

4. What did the group find on the island when they reached it?

ماذا وجدت المجموعة على الجزيرة عندما وصلوا؟

- They found a small fort that was big enough for about twenty-five people and was very well defended.

5. What did Dr Livesy and Hunter do when they heard a shout?

ماذا فعل دكتور لايفزى وهانتر عندما سمعا صيحة ؟

- They ran back to the boat and returned to the *Hispaniola*.

6. What did the group put in the boat before returning to the island?

ما الذى وضعوه فى القارب قبل عودتهم للجزيرة؟

- They put food, medicines and guns in the boat before returning to the island.

7. Who helped to put food and more weapons into the boat?

من ساعد فى وضع الطعام والمزيد من الأسلحة فى القارب؟

- Mr Trelawney.

8. Who climbed into the boat with Captain Smollett, Redruth, and Abraham Gray?

من قفز داخل السفينة مع كابتن سموليت وريدروث وأبرهام جراى؟

- Captain Smollett.

9. What did Dr Livesy realise when they were on the boat?

ماذا أدرك دكتور لايفزى عندما كانوا على القارب؟

- Dr Livesy realised that the men on the *Hispaniola* were preparing a cannon to hit the ship.

10. What did Mr Trelawney do when the pirates were getting into their boats?

ماذا فعل السيد تريلونى عندما قفز القراصنة فى قواربهم؟

- Trelawney stood up with a gun and fired at the pirates, causing one of them to fall.

11. What happened when Mr Trelawney fired his gun again?

ماذا حدث عندما ضرب السيد تريلونى النارثانية؟

- The ship started to sink, but they were near the beach and it was not difficult to walk to the shore, though they lost many supplies in the water, including some guns.

12. What did the group have to do before the pirates got to the beach?

ماذا توجب على المجموعة فعله قبل وصول القراصنة للشاطئ؟

- They had to get to the fort before the pirates got to the beach.

13. What happened just before they could enter the fort?

ماذا حدث قبل أن توشك المجموعة على دخول الحصن؟

- They heard another gunfire, and Redruth was dead, which made Trelawney very sad.

14. What did Mr Trelawney suggest they do when the pirates could see the flag?

ماذا اقترح السيد تريلونى عليهم أن يفعلوه عندما رأى القراصنة العلم؟

- Mr Trelawney suggested that they take down the flag, but Captain Smollett refused.

15. Who did the group hear shouting when they were at the fort?

من سمعت المجموعة صياحه عندما كانوا بالحصن؟

- They heard Jim Hawkins shouting, indicating that he was still alive and safe.

(B) Critical Thinking Questions

16. Why do you think it would be easy for the six men to hit Dr Livesy and his men with a cannon?

لماذا تعتقد أنه سيكون من السهل على الرجال الستة إصابة دكتور لايفزى ورجاله بالمدفع؟

- Because Dr Livesy and his men were moving too slowly that they were not far from the ship.

17. Why do you think it was difficult for Dr Livesy and his men to move towards the beach near the fort?

لماذا تعتقد أنه كان من الصعب على دكتور لايفزى ورجاله تحريك القارب تجاه الشاطئ بالقرب من الحصن؟

- I think the wind blew from a different direction, so it was hard to sail the boat which was too heavy.

18. "We have guns. If you try to contact Silver, you will be dead." Why were the six men surprised when Dr Livesy said these words?

«لدينا سلاح، إذا حاولتم التواصل مع سيلفر فستموتون.» لماذا اندهش الرجال الستة عندما قال دكتور لايفزى ذلك؟

- Because they didn't expect Dr Livesy to know that they worked for Silver.

19. It's a race to get there first. Do you think this was right?

إنه سباق الوصول إلى هناك أولًا، هل تعتقد أن ذلك كان صحيحًا؟

- Yes, because the group needed to reach the fort first to protect themselves from Silver's men.

20. Why do you think Dr Livesy and his men chose the fort to be a shelter for them?

لماذا تعتقد أن دكتور لايفزى والآخرين اختاروا الحصن ليكون مأوى لهم؟

- Because it was big and well defended and it had water.

21. Why do you think Dr Livesy and his men were not afraid of Silver and his men on the island?

برأيك لماذا لم يكن دكتور لايفزى ورجاله خائفين من سيلفر ورجاله على الجزيرة؟

- Silver's men didn't have guns, but Dr Livesy and his men did.

22. Why do you think their journey to the beach in a small boat was difficult?

فى اعتقادك، لماذا كانت رحلة المجموعة للشاطئ على قارب صغير صعبة؟

- I think that was because there were too many men on it while the pirates were chasing them and the men on the ship wanted to fire cannons at them.

23. Even if there hadn't been a strong wind, Smollett wouldn't have taken the ship back. Do you agree? Why?

حتى لو لم يكن هناك رياح قوية، سموليت لم يكن ليتمكن من استعادة السفينة؟

- Yes, because Jim was on the island, and they were worried about him.

24. Smollett advised the group to keep their guns at the beginning of the journey. Do you think it was good advice?

نصح سموليت المجموعة أن يحتفظوا بأسلحتهم فى بداية الرحلة، هل تعتقد أنها كانت نصيحة جيدة؟

- Yes, it was good advice because it saved them.

25. Why do you think Captain Smollett put up a flag inside the fort?

لماذا تعتقد أن كابتن سموليت رفع علمًا داخل الحصن؟

- To let Silver's men know they were not afraid of them.

26. Why do you think Dr Livesy decided to go to the fort?

برأيك، لماذا قرر دكتور لايفزى الذهاب للحصن؟

- To take it as a shelter where they could protect themselves.

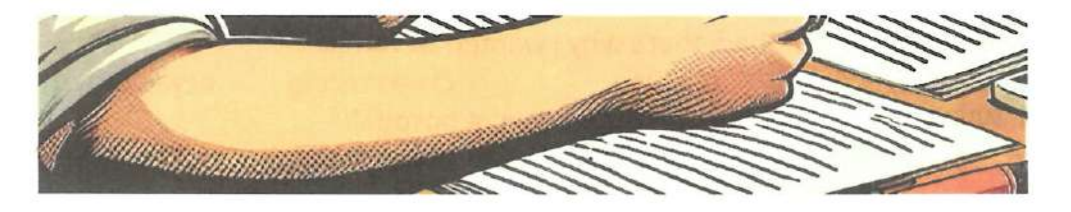


Answer the following Questions:

1. "Go as fast as you can. If we don't get to the beach, we're finished." What do you think Captain Smollett was afraid of?
2. "We'll never get to the beach!" Why do you think Dr Livesy and his group's final journey on the boat was dangerous?
3. The men lose some of their supplies in the water. Why is this a problem? How do you think they feel about this?
4. Why do you think Dr Livesy and his men were worried about Jim?
5. In your opinion, why did Dr Livesy and his men lose many of their supplies and guns in the water?
6. Do you think Mr Trelawney was brave enough to save his men? How?
7. Why do you think Dr Livesy and his men were lucky on their boat journey to the fort?
8. Do you think Mr Trelawney loved Redruth? Why? Why not?
9. In your opinion, why was it important for Dr Livesy and his men to reach the fort before Silver's men?
10. "It was almost impossible for them to hit anyone inside the fort." Why do you think so?
11. "We have guns. If you try to contact Silver, you will be dead." Why do you think the sailors were surprised?
12. Dr Livesy and Mr Trelawney have something in common. Discuss
13. Do you think the fort was a good place for the men to stay? Why?
14. The weather plotted against Captain Smollett and his men. Discuss
15. Why do you think Silver's men on the ship didn't try to contact him?
16. What might have happened if Dr Livesy, Smollett and Mr Trelawney had taken the ship and run away?
17. What would you take with you if you went on an adventure by sea? Why?
18. What do you think might have happened if the pirates had reached the fort first?

Advanced General Exercises

- Advanced General Exercises
- Advanced General Exercises Answers



Unit 1

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Waleed has given up smoking, but he still has an occasional cigarette on the ....

a) distance b) quiet c) quietly d) distant

2. I tried to .... my students out about the results of the exams.

a) seem b) vote c) tell d) sound

3. .... each problem does not seem bad, but together they are quite serious.

a) Isolated b) In isolated c) In isolation d) Insulated

4. Nabila is .... but I think she is in good health.

a) lean b) active c) sound d) leak

5. I was my teacher's .... when I was at school. I was his favourite.

a) fussy b) better c) bite d) pet

6. My father .... with anger when he knew that I failed the exam.

a) swelled b) spiced c) sustained d) leaned

7. A lot of people hate this actress as she is very ....

a) swell-legged b) swell-necked c) swell-handed d) swell-headed

8. People who owe huge amounts of money sometimes .... to selling their houses or cars.

a) restore b) lend c) catch d) resort

9. While I .... in Alexandria, I met my friends in the street.

a) were b) was being c) was d) had been

10. While .... the lessons, Ali was cooking the food.

a) studying b) was studying c) I was studying d) studied

11. .... Hurghada, I went to the beach every day.

a) While b) When c) On d) While in

12. My brother .... the extreme cold of Russia.

a) used to b) didn't use to c) was using d) got used to

13. I wish I were good at maths. This means that the speaker .... good at it.

a) is b) isn't c) was d) wasn't

14. Mona has lived in England for 5 years, so she .... the different cultures there.

a) is used to b) didn't use to c) be used to d) used to

15. The meal .... bad, that's why I wanted to vomit.

a) taste b) tasted c) was tasting d) was tasted

16. While ...., I was crying out of pain at hospital.

a) examining b) was examining

c) I was examining d) being examined

Unit 2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Reham .... with laughter at the joke that I told her.
a) sneezed b) roared c) frowned d) pleased

2. I didn't know you have bought a new car. I .... to see it in front of your house.
a) chanced b) speeded c) found d) shrugged

3. I'm happy that there is a strong sense of .... in our neighbourhood.
a) society b) smell c) communication d) community

4. Your son will be looked after here. Don't worry on that ....
a) goal b) score c) sense d) wall

5. I've .... everywhere for my gloves, but I can't find them.
a) hunted b) found c) caught d) fished

6. At the airport, you need to .... in two hours before the flight.
a) check b) support c) desire d) admire

7. The newspaper reports about Moamen Zakaria showed him little ....
a) aim b) charity c) hunting d) organisation

8. The United Nations decided that there should be .... on the borders between the two countries.
a) monitors b) killings c) villagers d) founders

9. Look! This boy .... 100 kilograms now.
a) weighing b) is weighing c) weighs d) weigh

10. .... to you now?
a) Is this car belong b) Is this car belonging
c) Do this car belong d) Does this car belong

11. I can't talk right now as I .... really busy. I will call you later.
a) being b) am c) will be d) was

12. In Chapter One, Huda .... Ali, and agrees to take part in the competition.
a) meet b) met c) meets d) is meeting

13. Mohamed Elneny .... the ball to Salah who scores a goal.
a) is passing b) passed c) pass d) passes

14. Look! Here .... your father at last!
a) come b) comes c) was coming d) came

15. Hard work .... to success.
a) lead b) is leading c) is led d) leads

16. Never .... his lessons hard.
a) he studies b) he does study c) does he study d) he studied

Unit 3

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I think I will .... for the fried fish, after all.
a) choose b) pump c) plump d) suggest

2. Hams was .... in getting her brother a job.
a) instrumental b) tool c) instrument d) deviceable

3. It is hard to understand the workings of the party ....
a) instrument b) tool c) device d) machine

4. The manager said that he needed the report on his desk on Monday at the ....
a) least b) latest c) last d) late

5. It is hoped that the government will increase .... on health care and education.
a) wasting b) pumping c) spending d) forcing

6. Too much dust during the storm .... my clothes and they needed cleaning.
a) stopped b) dirtied c) frowned d) blew

7. We must .... all our experience in solving this problem.
a) employ b) imply c) supply d) reply

8. The team's victory today has .... them a place in the finals.
a) gained b) wanted c) beat d) earned

9. I didn't notice the thief .... I was watching the match.
a) during b) since c) for d) just

10. The couple .... for 7 years when I met them. It was in 2015.
a) have married b) married
c) have been married d) had been married

11. My father has worked in this company .... 5 years ago.
a) during b) since c) for d) just

12. I haven't met my colleagues .... the last conference.
a) during b) since c) for d) just

13. Was it the first time that you .... been to London?
a) have ever b) had ever c) have never d) are never

14. I .... a cake. Would you like some?
a) 've been to make b) 've made c) 'd been made d) 'd been making

15. I enjoyed the film as I saw many places I've never ....
a) gone b) been to c) been d) arrived at

16. I .... football this afternoon and we lost 3-2.
a) played b) had played c) have played d) was playing

Unit 4

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I have got a whole .... of things that I want to discuss with my boss.
a) behave b) host c) guest d) debate

2. Our bus was late and so we missed our ....
a) communication b) contact c) connection d) link

3. .... of clothing were lying all over my daughter's room.
a) Articles b) Slices c) Lists d) Grades

4. My offer was received rather .... which made me angry.
a) cold b) eagerly c) coldly d) eager

5. There should be more .... on learning foreign languages in schools.
a) pressure b) press c) stress d) practice

6. The female parrot sits on the eggs while her .... hunts for food.
a) colleague b) matt c) gate d) mate

7. The old woman was .... an expression of delight on her face.
a) wearing b) dressing c) putting on d) acting

8. There are two .... in our local health centre and they are open 24 hours a day.
a) plays b) practices c) locations d) positions

9. The police found the dead man's .... including his will.
a) paper b) a paper c) papers d) newspaper

10. Our teacher told us that during the exam, there is no .... for mistakes.
a) a room b) rooms c) room d) many rooms

11. My father once saved .... one-year-old boy from a fire.
a) a b) an c) the d) no article

12. My friend's father was .... FBI agent when he was living in the U.S.A.
a) a b) an c) the d) no article

13. By .... day, I work as an office clerk, but at night, I work as a waiter.
a) a b) an c) the d) no article

14. My brother lives next door to .... Jacksons.
a) a b) an c) the d) no article

15. I took last Friday off to go to the doctor. I spent .... whole day sitting in his office.
a) a b) an c) the d) no article

16. I'm staying at .... Hilton Hotel near Tahrir Square.
a) a b) an c) the d) no article

Unit 5

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. He was exhausted as he had a lot of ....
a) application b) communication c) job d) position

2. The explorers .... their way through the jungle.
a) packed b) broke c) hacked d) spaded

3. Everyone should .... their children up when they go to school.
a) smarten b) lighten c) frighten d) shorten

4. A bandage is necessary to .... the flow of blood from the wound.
a) check b) chalk c) treat d) cure

5. Once I'd found the missing letter, everything .... into place.
a) checked b) licked c) clapped d) clicked

6. This winter, the weather has been really ....
a) frightful b) frightened c) fright d) frighten

7. My son likes healthy food and so he always .... the cream of the milk before drinking it.
a) scans b) skims c) scams d) unloads

8. Critics dismissed the speech as a political .... for winning support.
a) gadget b) machine c) advice d) device

9. Look out! The girl is going to fall from the balcony. This means that the girl .... from the balcony.
a) falls b) has fallen c) fell d) is about to fall

10. This museum will be 100 years old next month. This is a/an ....
a) intention b) future fact c) arrangement d) future plan

11. It was predicted that he .... his neighbours with their problems.
a) will help b) was helping
c) was going to help d) would help

12. Lots of lightning doesn't necessarily mean it ....
a) is going to rain b) will rain c) rains d) is raining

13. Being clever, she .... high marks in the exams.
a) will get b) is going to get c) is getting d) gets

14. The company is making losses. It .... soon.
a) will close b) closes c) is closing d) is going to close

15. We think that in the future all shopping .... on the internet.
a) will be doing b) will be done c) will have done d) will do

16. **A:** .... to the zoo this week? **B:** OK, it is a good idea.
a) Might we go b) Are we going
c) Are we going to go d) Shall we go

Unit 6

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Newspapers have .... up some facts about the famous actor's private life.
a) plug b) dug c) drill d) done

2. Have you got any .... on opening a new school in Cairo?
a) literature b) culture c) tradition d) chaos

3. He was arrested for .... against the government.
a) protecting b) making c) stealing d) plotting

4. ....! I will give you a lift to your workplace.
a) Get off b) Take in c) Run into d) Hop in

5. Please, ... off me for a while. I want to finish my work.
a) lie b) lay c) drop d) take

6. I am really .... with the idea of moving to Cairo for a year.
a) toying b) playing c) making d) doing

7. He .... his entire savings on the project, but he thinks it is hard to make a profit.
a) adventured b) earned c) gained d) owed

8. Please, be .... and get to the point. We do not have much time for further details.
a) shorten up b) brief c) shut up d) abbreviate

9. Which sentence of the following is CORRECT?
a) I prefer eating fish than meat.
b) I'd rather to study in the early morning.
c) I regret not to visit my uncle yesterday.
d) I remember friends criticising my style of clothes.

10. **A:** Why .... to Alexandria together? **B:** It's a good idea.
a) go b) to go c) not go d) going

11. My mobile needn't .... It works well.
a) repair b) repairing c) be repaired d) repaired

12. Let's .... noise because the baby is asleep.
a) make b) making c) not to make d) not make

13. He was made .... to the police.
a) lie b) lying c) to lie d) to lying

14. I heard Dr Magdy Yacoub talking on the radio. This means that ....
a) I heard nothing he said b) I heard everything he didn't say
c) I heard everything he said d) I heard part of what he said

15. Try using this medicine. This means that ....
a) I know this medicine must work
b) I know this medicine won't work
c) I hope this medicine won't work
d) I want you to use it and see what will happen

16. Why do you go on .... us the same stories again and again?
a) to tell b) telling c) to telling d) tell

Answers Advanced General Exercises

Unit 1

1. b) on the quiet
– بمعنى (سرًا).

2. d) sound
– تعبير بمعنى يستطلع رأيًا sound (sb) out.

3. c) In isolation
– بمعنى (بمعزل عن – بشكل منفصل).

4. a) lean
– بمعنى نحيف – قليل اللحم.

5. d) pet
– بمعنى شخص مدلل.

6. a) swelled
– بمعنى استشاط غضبًا.

7. d) swell-headed
– بمعنى مغرور.

8. d) resort
– تعبير بمعنى يلجأ إلى resort to.

9. c) was
– لأن v. to be لا يستخدم مع الأزمنة المستمرة فلا يمكن استخدام الاختيار b.

10. c) I was studying
– لأن الفاعلين فى الجملتين مختلفان فلا يمكن استخدام الاختيار a.

11. d) While in
– أصل الجملة While I was in Hurghada.
– وتم حذف while I was لوجود حرف جر وفقًا للملحوظة التى تم شرحها فى الوحدة بالتفصيل.

12. d) got used to
– لأنه جاء بعدها noun phrase.

13. b) isn't
– الأمنية هنا فى المضارع لذلك استخدم زمن الماضى البسيط بعد wish والأمنية فى المضارع تعبر عن عكس الواقع.

14. a) is used to
– لأنه جاء بعدها noun phrase.

15. b) tasted
– الفعل taste هنا جاء بمعنى ذى مذاق ولا يمكن استخدام الأزمنة المستمرة فى هذه الحالة.

16. d) being examined
– الفاعل محذوف والفعل مبنى للمجهول لذلك يتبع بـ being + P.P.

Unit 2

1. b) roared
– بمعنى يقهقه (يضحك بصوت عالٍ).

2. a) chanced
– يصادف أن chance to + inf.

3. d) community
– تعبير بمعنى روح الجماعة sense of community.

4. b) score
– تعبير بمعنى من هذه الناحية on that score.

5. a) hunted
– بمعنى يبحث عن أو يفتش.

6. a) check
– تعبير يفيد تأكيد الوصول فى مطار أو فندق check in.

7. b) charity
– بمعنى تعاطف.

8. a) monitors
– بمعنى مراقبين.

9. c) weighs
– الفعل weigh لا يستخدم مع الأزمنة المستمرة هنا لأنه جاء بمعنى (ذى وزن).

10. d) Does this car belong
– الفعل belong لا يستخدم مع الأزمنة المستمرة.

11. b) am
– v. to be لا يستخدم مع الأزمنة المستمرة.

12. c) meets
– يجب أن يكون الزمن قبل العطف (and) هو نفسه بعد العطف فى نفس الجملة.

13. d) passes
– فى التعليقات الرياضية نستخدم المضارع البسيط.

14. b) comes
– يستخدم المضارع البسيط مع بعض التعبيرات مثل here.

15. d) leads
– يستخدم المضارع البسيط مع المقولات المنطقية والحكم والأمثال.

16. c) does he study
– عند بداية الجملة بـ Never تتبع بفعل مساعد + فاعل ...

Unit 3

1. c) plump for — بمعنى يختار أو يقرر أن يتناول.

2. a) instrumental — بمعنى لها دور فعال.

3. d) machine — بمعنى (تنظيم - هيئة).

4. b) latest — بمعنى فى أبعد حد at the latest.

5. c) spending — بمعنى الإنفاق.

6. b) dirtied — بمعنى جعلها متسخة.

7. a) employ — بمعنى يوظف.

8. d) earned — بمعنى (يستحق - يحقق له).

9. b) since

- استخدمت كلمة since هنا بمعنى (بسبب) since = because

10. d) had been married

- فى حالة وجود كلمة دالة على المضارع التام وإشارة للماضى نستخدم الماضى التام بدلًا من المضارع التام.

11. b) since — since + مدة زمنية + ago

12. b) since

- since هنا جاءت مع the last لوجود اسم بعدها وليس مدة زمنية.

13. b) had ever

- It was the first time تستخدم مع الماضى التام على عكس It is the first time التى تستخدم مع المضارع التام.

14. b) 've made

- تم الانتهاء من الفعل توًا ولا يزال أثره واضحًا فى الحاضر.

15. b) been to

16. a) played

- هناك دليل على أن وقت اللعب كان فى الماضى بدليل انتهاء المباراة بخسارتنا لها.

Unit 4

1. b) host — بمعنى عدد هائل.

2. c) connection — بمعنى تواصل.

3. a) Articles — بمعنى قطع / بضائع / سلع.

4. c) coldly — بمعنى (بفتور).

5. c) stress — بمعنى (تأكيد).

6. d) mate — بمعنى (قرين - شريك).

7. a) wearing

- يبدو عليه wear an expression

8. b) practices — بمعنى (عيادة - مكتب محاماة).

9. c) papers — يقصد بها هنا وثائق أو مستندات.

10. c) room

- كلمة room هنا ليست بمعنى حجرة there is no room for mistakes معناها لا مجال للأخطاء.

11. a) a

- كلمة one بادئة بصوت ساكن وليس متحركا واستخدام أداة النكرة هنا لأن one-year-old صفة وجاء بعدها اسم موصوف مفرد.

12. b) an — مع الاختصارات البادئة بصوت متحرك.

13. d) no article — بمعنى بالنهار By day.

14. c) the

- إذا جاءت the قبل اسم شخص جمع فيعنى هنا اسم العائلة.

15. c) the

- كلمة the whole day تعنى اليوم بأكمله.

16. c) the

Unit 5

1. a) application — بمعنى مثابرة أو جهد.

2. c) hacked — بمعنى يشق طريقه.

3. a) smarten

- بمعنى يهندم smarten (sb) up.

4. a) check — بمعنى يبطئ - يوقف.

5. d) clicked — بمعنى يتضح الأمر فجأة.

6. a) frightful — بمعنى سيئ جدًا - فظيع.

7. b) skims — بمعنى يقشد - ينزع «الوش».

8. d) device — بمعنى حيلة - وسيلة.

9. d) is about to fall

- الجملة تعنى أن البنت على وشك السقوط.

10. b) future fact

- الحقيقة فى المستقبل تستخدم أحيانًا للتعبير عن العمر أو السن.

11. d) would help

- لوجود was predicted وهى فى زمن الماضى فيستخدم معها would.

12. a) is going to rain

13. a) will get

- being clever هنا لا تعتبر دليلًا لأنها قائمة على الرأى الشخصى وليس على شيء مرئى ملموس.

14. d) is going to close

- الشركة تحقق خسائر تعتبر دليلًا على قرب إغلاق الشركة مستقبلًا.

15. b) will be done — الجملة مبنية للمجهول.

16. d) Shall we go

Unit 6

1. b) dug

- dig up بمعنى ينبش عن معلومات.

2. a) literature — بمعنى منشورات - مطبوعات.

3. d) plotting — plot against بمعنى يتآمر على.

4. d) Hop in — بمعنى يركب السيارة بسرعة.

5. b) lay

- lay ... off يدع شخصًا وشأنه.

6. a) toying — toy with تداعبه فكرة.

7. a) adventured — غامر بـ.

8. b) brief — بمعنى مختصر.

9. d) I remember friends criticising my style of clothes.

10. c) not go

- يستخدم why not + inf للتعبير عن الاقتراح.

11. c) be repaired

- الجملة هنا مبنية للمجهول لذلك جاء بعدها be + P.P.

12. d) not make

- تتبع let's بالمصدر وعند النفى not + inf.

13. c) to lie

- كلمة make عند استخدامها فى المبنى للمجهول تتبع بـ to + inf.

14. d) I heard part of what he said.

- كلمة hear عندما تتبع بـ v-ing تعنى أن الحدث لا يتم بأكمله بل تم جزء منه فقط.

15. d) I want you to use it and see what will happen

16. b) telling

- go on إذا جاء بعدها v-ing تعنى الاستمرار فى عمل نفس الفعل دون تغيير.



الكلمات مرتبة أبجديا

absorb	يمتص
accessible	متاح الحصول عليه
access	وصول
accidentally	بالصدفة
acquisition	اكتساب
acupunctur	الوخز بالإبر
adaptable	قابل للتكيف والتأقلم
addiction	إدمان
adequate	مناسب
advances	اكتشافات
alternative energy	طاقة بديلة
anthropogenic activities	أنشطة بشرية
apartment	شقة
appropriate	مناسب/ملائم
articles	بضائع/منتجات
astronaut	رائد فضاء
attract	يجذب
awareness	الوعى
baggage car	عربة الحقائب فى القطر
balance	توازن
bask	يجلس فى الشمس (يتشمس)
behaviour	سلوك
biomass	كتلة حيوية
blame	يلوم
blessing	نعمة
brand name	اسم العلامة التجارية
break off	يقطع/ينفصل
cellophane	سيلوفان
challenges	تحديات
chameleon	حرباء
chemical mechanism	آلية كيميائية
cheque	شيك
childish	طفولى
citizenship	مواطنة
civilisation	حضارة
claws	مخالب
cocaine possession	حيازة الكوكايين
combat	يكافح
commercial	إعلان/تجارى
compete	يتنافس

competitive	تنافسى	despair	يأس
conduct experiments	يجرى تجارب	destructive	مدمر
conflict	صراع	disappointed	محبط
constantly	بشكل مستمر	disastrous	كارثى
consumer	مستهلك	discipline	انضباط
consumption	استهلاك	disobey	يعصى
contest	مسابقة	distract	يشتت
convey	يوصل / يحمل (معنى)	disturb	يزعج
craft	حرفة يدوية	duties	واجبات
creep out	يتسلل / يزحف للخارج	ease	يسهل / يخفف
curiosity	فضول	entertainment	ترفيه
currency trading	الاتجار فى العملة	entire	كامل
customs	جمارك	eradicate	يقضى على
dark figure	شكل مظلم	errand	مشوار
deadline	آخر موعد	essence	جوهر/لب
deaf	أصم	estimate	يقدر / يخمن
decent life	حياة كريمة	eventually	أخيرًا
deliberately	عمدًا	exhausted	منهك / متعب جدًا
department stores	محال تجارية	extraordinary	مذهل / استثنائى
dependent	معتمد / تابع	extravagance	الإسراف
desertification	التصحر	fabulous	رائع

failure	فشل/فاشل	in terms of	فيما يتعلق بـ
fascinating	خلاب	independent	مستقل
fashion	موضة	indisputable	لا خلاف عليه/بلا منازع
feature	ميزة/ يتميز/ يضم	influence	تأثير
float	يطفو	ink	حبر
fluent	فصيح/ طليق اللسان	innocence	براءة
fossil fuel	وقود أحفوري	inseparable	جزء لا يتجزأ (لا يمكن فصله)
furious	غضبان بشدة	insist	يصر
garlic	ثوم	institutions	المؤسسات
ghost	شبح	intellectuals	مفكرون/مثقفون
global warming	الاحتباس الحراري	irresponsible	غير مسئول
globalisation	العولمة	kick	يركل
hair-raising	مثير للقشعريرة	laboratory	معمل
handicapped	معاق	literacy	التعليم/محو الأمية
hazard	خطر	local councils	المجالس المحلية
herbalist	معالج بالأعشاب	loneliness	وحدة
herbs	أعشاب	matter	أمر/موضوع
housing problem	مشكلة الإسكان	magician	ساحر
idol	قدوة/ محبوب	mankind	البشر
imposing a tax	فرض ضريبة	manufacture	يصنع
impressed	منبهر	marvellous	رائع

mass tourism	السياحة الجماعية	pay attention	يولى اهتمامًا
medicinal	طبى/دوائى	peace	السلام
Mediterranean Sea	البحر المتوسط	peers	رفقاء/أقران
merchandise	بضاعة/سلع	periods	فترات
mesmerised	مفتون/معجب بشدة	personification	تشخيص
midair	الجو/الهواء	pills	حبوب
Ministry of Environment	وزارة البيئة	pleasures	ملذات/متع
nation	أمة	popularity	شيوع/شهرة
needle	إبرة	pour	يسكب
newsboy	بائع الجرائد	poverty	الفقر
nitrous oxides	اكاسيد النيتروجين	predator	مفترس
numeracy	الحساب	prescription	وصفة علاجية (روشتة)
numerous	عديد	priceless	لا يقدر بثمن
obtain	يحصل على	primitive	بدائى
obvious	واضح	progress	تقدم
occupation	احتلال/وظيفة	promote	يرقى/يطور
official	موظف	pullover	سترة
outing	تنزه/فسحة	purchase	يشترى
overnight	بين عشية وضحاها	pursue	يسعى / يكمل
overpopulation	الانفجار السكانى	puzzle	لغز
participate in	يشارك فى	queue	صف/طابور

rationalise	يرشد استهلاك	space tourism	سياحة الفضاء
raw materials	مواد خام	spacecraft	مركبة فضاء
reasonable prices	أسعار معقولة	spare time	وقت الفراغ
reform	يصلح	squeaky	صوته عال
reluctance	مقاومة	squeeze	يعصر
rely on	يعتمد على	squirm	يتلوى
renaissance	نهضة	stab	يطعن
restoration	ترميم/استعادة	standard of living	مستوى المعيشة
rights	حقوق	status	مكانة حالة
rubbish-free	خال من القمامة	sticky	خطير/ لزج
sanitation facilities	مرافق الصرف الصحى	stock market	البورصة
scholars	علماء/مفكرون/فقهاء	stranger	غريب
screen	شاشة	substance	مادة
self-educated	متعلم بطريقة ذاتية	sum of money	مبلغ من المال
shallow	ضحل(غير عميق)	surgeon	جراح
sink	يغوص	surgery	عملية جراحية
skirt	تنورة(جيبة)	survive	ينجو
skull	جمجمة	symptoms	أعراض
sleepy	نعسان/يشعر بالنعاس	tasty	شهى
social care	العناية الاجتماعية	tattoo	وشم
souvenirs	هدايا تذكارية	terrorism	الإرهاب

theory	نظرية
time bomb	قنبلة موقوتة
tiredness	التعب
trade	تجارة
traditions	تقاليد
transport	ينقل
treatment	علاج
tree bark	لحاء الشجرة
ugly	قبيح
unaware	غير واع
underestimate	يستهين / يستخف
unreliable	لا يمكن الوثوق به
up-to-date	حديث
urgent	عاجل
value	قيمة
vanish	يختفي
venomous	سام
vivid	حيوي
weightlessness	انعدام الوزن
well-planned	مخطط جيدًا
willow tree	شجر الصفصاف
wisdom	حكمة
wise	حكيم

Irregular Verbs

الأفعال غير المنتظمة

الأفعال مرتبة أبجديًا

	INFINITIVE	PAST	PAST PARTICIPLE
يكون	be	was/were	been
يضرب	beat	beat	beaten
يصبح	become	became	become
يبدأ	begin	began	begun
يثنى	bend	bent	bent
يكسر	break	broke	broken
يحضر	bring	brought	brought
يحرق	burn	burnt/burned	burnt/burned
يشترى	buy	bought	bought
يمسك	catch	caught	caught
يختار	choose	chose	chosen
يكلف	cost	cost	cost
يتعامل/يتاجر	deal	dealt	dealt
يفعل	do	did	done
يرسم	draw	drew	drawn
يشرب	drink	drank	drunk
يقود	drive	drove	driven
يسقط	fall	fell	fallen
يطعم	feed	fed	fed
يشعر	feel	felt	felt
يقاتل	fight	fought	fought
يجد	find	found	found

ينسى	forget	forgot	forgotten
يسامح	forgive	forgave	forgiven
يتجمد	freeze	froze	frozen
يحصل على	get	got	got/gotten
يعطى	give	gave	given
ينمو	grow	grew	grown
يعلق	hang	hung	hung
يملك/يتناول	have	had	had
يسمع	hear	heard	heard
يمسك	hold	held	held
يؤذى	hurt	hurt	hurt
يحفظ	keep	kept	kept
يعرف	know	knew	known
يؤدى/يقود	lead	led	led
يتعلم	learn	learnt/learned	learnt/learned
يرحل/يغادر	leave	left	left
يسلف	lend	lent	lent
يخسر	lose	lost	lost
يعنى	mean	meant	meant
يقابل	meet	met	met
يدفع	pay	paid	paid
يتصل تليفونيًا/يدق	ring	rang	rung
يجرى	run	ran	run
يقول	say	said	said
يرى	see	saw	seen

يبيع	sell	sold	sold
يرسل	send	sent	sent
يهز	shake	shook	shaken
يغطس	sink	sank	sunk
يجلس	sit	sat	sat
ينام	sleep	slept	slept
ينشر	spread	spread	spread
يقف	stand	stood	stood
يسرق	steal	stole	stolen
يأخذ	take	took	taken
يدرس	teach	taught	taught
يخبر	tell	told	told
يفكر	think	thought	thought
يلقى	throw	threw	thrown
يفهم	understand	understood	understood
يرتدى	wear	wore	worn
يكتب	write	wrote	written



Gem

New Hello!

الصف الأول الثانوى

الفصل الدراسى الأول

Ongoing Assessment, Skills & Final Revision

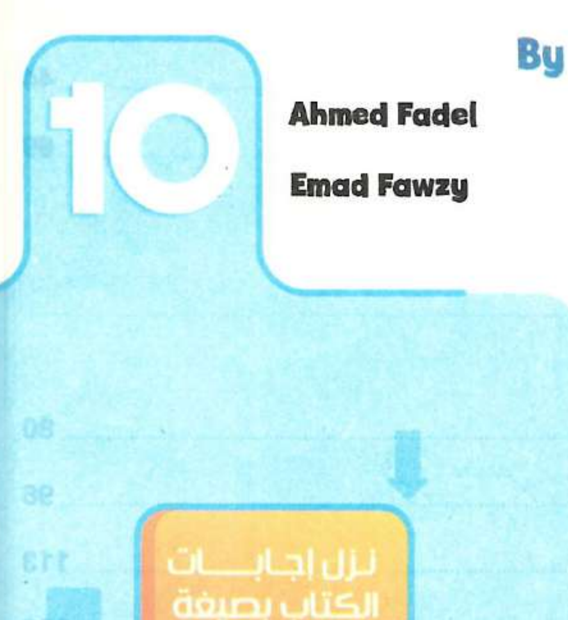
By

Ahmed Fadel
Ayman M. Ebrahim
Emad Fawzy
Mohamed Abdel Aal

10













Contents

Part 1

Ongoing Assessment



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. We should make sure that tourism in Egypt is .... or our economy will be affected badly.
   a) temporary b) isolated c) spoiled d) sustainable
2. We .... for a week through the rainforest last year. It was fantastic!
   a) trekked b) relaxed c) leant d) introduced
3. Some .... have met to discuss ways of protecting animals from the dangers of the drought.
   a) tourists b) conservationists c) receptionists d) artists
4. I used to live in a small fishing village on the .... of the Red Sea.
   a) coast b) cliff c) bank d) reef
5. During our holiday in Sharm El-Sheikh, we .... diving many times.
   a) played b) went c) did d) had
6. For 5 years, I .... as a translator before resigning to start my new career.
   a) have worked b) work c) was worked d) worked
7. My children .... together all day yesterday as they were free.
   a) were playing b) play c) had played d) are playing
8. Dalia .... out a lot when she was younger.
   a) is used to going b) was going c) always goes d) usually went
9. My sister .... a gold ring as she was digging in her garden.
   a) was finding b) finds c) found d) used to find
10. He .... to prison as a result of his crimes.
   a) was taken b) took c) was taking d) had taken

2 (A) Choose the correct Arabic translation:

- Environmental pollution is one of the most serious problems facing humanity, and it harms the natural environment.

a) إن القاذورات البيئية واحدة من أخطر المشكلات التى تواجه البشرية وتؤذى البيئة الطبيعية.

b) التلوث البيئى واحد من سلسلة المشاكل التى تواجه البشرية وتؤذى البيئة الطبيعية.

c) إن التلوث البيئى واحد من أخطر المشاكل التى تواجه البشرية وتؤذى البيئة الطبيعية.

d) يعد التلوث البيئى من أخطر المسائل التى تواجه البشرية وتؤذى البيئة الطبيعية.

(B) Choose the correct English translation:

- تعتبر النظافة الشخصية الحل الأساسى للتصدى للأمراض المعدية أو الفيروسات القاتلة مثل فيروس كورونا.

a) Hygiene was considered the mean solution to face normal or deadly viruses such as coronavirus.
b) Hygiene is considered the main solution to face infections or deadly viruses such as coronavirus.
c) Hygiene is the main solution to face infections or dead viruses such as coronavirus.
d) Hygiene is considering the main solution to face infections or deadly viruses such as coronavirus.

Unit 1 Quiz 2 on Part (2)

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Mr Ali is so bored. He's been .... at home for long.
   a) stuck b) exotic c) released d) freed
2. At the circus, the clown .... the children with his magic tricks.
   a) designed b) limited c) fascinated d) existed
3. It's a good decision we didn't go camping last weekend as the weather was ....
   a) lawful b) awful c) fascinating d) noisy
4. Don't worry! Your son is now 13 years old and is acting as a normal ....
   a) adolescence b) kid c) teenager d) adult
5. Sometimes I enjoy my English lessons, but at other times I find them really ....
   a) boredom b) bore c) bored d) boring
6. While .... by his mother, the baby gave a loud cry.
   a) having bathed b) he was bathing c) was bathed d) being bathed
7. My father used to be a heavy smoker when he was young, but now he ....
   a) doesn't b) isn't c) hasn't d) won't
8. .... I was talking on the phone, the doorbell rang.
   a) Since b) During c) While d) After
9. I .... fast food or fizzy drinks.
   a) don't use to b) didn't use to c) am not used to d) wasn't used for
10. I was sleeping .... the film. Don't ask me about what happened.
   a) since b) during c) while d) before

2 (A) Choose the correct Arabic translation:

- We really owe much to our parents who do their best to please us and provide a happy, secure life.

a) نحن حقًا ندين بالكثير لوالدينا اللذين يبذلان قصارى جهدهما لإسعادنا وتوفير حياة سعيدة وآمنة.

b) نحن حقًا نمتلك الكثير لوالدينا اللذين يبذلان قصارى جهدهما لإسعادنا وتوفير حياة سعيدة وآمنة.

c) نحن حقًا ندين بالكثير لوالدينا اللذين يبذلان قصارى جهدهما لتسليتنا وتوفير حياة سعيدة ومؤمن عليها.

d) نحن حقًا ندين بالكثير لوالدينا اللذين يبذلان قصارى جهدهما لإسعادنا وتوفير حياة سعيدة وهادئة.

(B) Choose the correct English translation:

- يجب علينا أن نعمل بجد لزيادة الإنتاج والدخل القومى لتوفير حياة أفضل لجميع أفراد المجتمع.

a) We must to work hard to increase production and the national income to provide a better life for all members of society.

b) We must work hard to decrease production and the national income to provide a better life for all members of society.

c) We must work hard to increase production and the national income to provide a better life for all organs of society.

d) We must work hard to increase production and the national income to provide a better life for all members of society.

Choose the Two correct answers of the Five options:

1. Everyone should know that cutting down trees .... the environment.
   a) causes damage to b) does damaging to c) make damages to
   d) damages e) does damage to
2. We work on providing sustainable support for the homeless. The synonyms of the word 'sustainable' are ....
   a) difficult b) continuous c) safety
   d) renewable e) heavy

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

3. When my brother got promoted as a sales manager, he was over the ....
   a) sun b) moon c) earth d) planet
4. My father is a .... eater. He dislikes many types of food.
   a) hungry b) fussy c) spicy d) fizzy
5. All I want is some ...., so I will leave anything that can remind me of work!
   a) endangered species b) active duties
   c) pros and cons d) peace and quiet
6. A/An .... is a large animal that looks like a monkey with long arms and reddish hair.
   a) dragon b) lemur c) orangutan d) cheetah
7. The thief stole everything in my house .... our mobiles and laptops.
   a) including b) concluding c) containing d) consisting
8. A .... is someone who does a job willingly without being paid.
   a) firefighter b) volunteer c) plumber d) tourist
9. I don't think that slavery العبودية .... in many countries of the world.
   a) designs b) coasts c) exists d) sticks
10. Please Ali, would you close the window? The wind is blowing the papers .... the table.
    a) of b) off c) from d) about
11. I never .... in the sea when I was a child, but now I am a good swimmer.
    a) swim b) have swum c) used to swim d) was swimming
12. I .... up late as my work demands it.
    a) used to stay b) stayed c) am used to staying d) was staying
13. .... writing a letter, I spilt a cup of water on the paper and felt disappointed.
    a) Having b) While c) During d) As soon as
14. When I met Habiba, I .... her to my birthday party.
    a) inviting b) have invited c) was inviting d) invited
15. .... hearing his father's voice, Amir immediately turned off his computer.
    a) While b) On c) Before d) As soon as
16. Yesterday evening, my family .... a very wonderful film together.
    a) were watching b) watch c) has watched d) are watching

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

No one can deny the achievements of the United Nations during the past half century in many fields, especially in the field of peace-keeping. One of the aims of its charters is to establish and safeguard world peace by peaceful means and through negotiations.

As a matter of fact, the U.N. has scored significant success in peace-making. Moreover, the United Nations has done its best to save stricken countries from famines, and natural disasters. Humanitarian aid has been sent to relieve people's suffering, and remedial measures have been taken to avoid future calamities.

There has been an urgent demand to increase the number of the Security Council permanent members. The Council should include as permanent members rich and industrial countries, as their status and contributions affect world policy.

The United Nations has a shortage of funds. There are not adequate funds available to meet the urgent and increasing demands of poor countries. The United Nations faces a world with revolutions and tension everywhere. Feud and greed cause a lot of wars and suffering in many parts of our world. The U.N. has setbacks and failures, but it has been doing a good job, so much so, that no one knows what would happen in the world without the United Nations.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17. The United Nations ....

a) has successes, achievements and setbacks

b) has always been a success

c) has always been a failure

d) has no funds at all

18. The United Nations has played a great part to help countries ....

a) which are rich and industrial
b) in time of need, calamities and suffering

c) which are powerful and rich
d) in the charter

19. The United Nations has shown unequalled success in the field of ....

a) medicine b) peace-keeping c) wars d) commerce

20. .... causes a lot of wars and suffering in many areas of the world.

a) Fund b) Failure c) Greed d) Peace

21. The word "calamities" in the phrase "to avoid future calamities" means ....

a) disasters b) happiness c) solutions d) contributions

22. What is urgent for the Security Council now?

a) To reduce the number of permanent members.

b) To increase the number of temporary members.

c) To raise the standard of its members.

d) To raise the number of permanent members.

23. The underlined pronoun "it" refers to ....

a) the Security Council
b) the poor countries

c) the United Nations
d) the revolutions

24. Choose the correct English translation:

- ينبغى على كل فرد فى المجتمع أن يؤدى دوره بإتقان حتى تتحقق الرفاهية والازدهار.

a) Every member in the community should perform her role perfectly to achieve progress and instability.

b) Everyone in society should perform their role perfectly to achieve welfare and flourishing.

c) Every good citizen should perform their role perfectly to achieve progress and flowering.

d) Every member in society should perform his role perfectly to achieve welfare and stability.

25. Choose the correct Arabic translation:

- Wasting water is a big problem that has appeared recently. Some careless people use it foolishly without any sense of duty or responsibility.

a) إن إهدار الماء مشكلة ظهرت مؤخرًا. بعض الناس المهملين يستخدمون الماء بحماقة بدون أى إحساس بالواجب أو الاحتمالية.

b) إن إهدار الماء مشكلة كبيرة ظهرت مؤخرًا. بعض الناس يستخدمون الماء بحماقة بدون أى إحساس بالواجب أو الاحتمالية.

c) إن ضياع الماء مشكلة كبيرة ظهرت مؤخرًا. بعض الناس الحريصون يستخدمون الماء بحماقة بدون أى إحساس بالواجب أو المسئولية.

d) إن إهدار الماء مشكلة كبيرة ظهرت مؤخرًا. بعض الناس المهملين يستخدمون الماء بحماقة بدون أى إحساس بالواجب أو المسئولية.

26. Answer the following questions:

1. Do you think Jim's father was rich? Why?

....

....

2. Jim is a brave boy. Do you agree? Why?

....

....

3. If you were the Captain, would you choose that inn to stay in? Why?

....

....

27. Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on the following:

"It is important to be friendly to your neighbours and help them."

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Mr Mostafa is a .... model. He is always on time.
   a) roller b) rule c) roll d) role
2. All doctors assure that natural blood .... is 120/80.
   a) pressure b) transfusion c) donation d) transplant
3. What makes me admire our friend more is his ....
   a) genre b) generous c) generosity d) generously
4. What makes me admire our friend more is the fact that he is ....
   a) genre b) generous c) generosity d) generously
5. I used to .... a lot of goals when I played for the national team. Who am I?
   a) reach b) score c) realise d) miss
6. At the age of seven, I always .... football in the street with my friends.
   a) played b) play c) plays d) was played
7. Students .... to do their homework at home alone.
   a) are asking b) ask c) are asked d) asked
8. I .... this morning because my alarm clock didn't go off.
   a) oversleep b) overslept c) has overslept d) was overslept
9. My son, Mido, ... sleeps early, so he is always tired in the morning.
   a) doesn't b) ever c) didn't d) never
10. I won't go out until my mother .... from the market.
   a) comes b) had come c) came d) come

2 (A) Choose the correct Arabic translation:

- The internet is considered a double-edged weapon with a lot of benefits as well as many demerits that can be harmful to us.

a) يعتبر الإنترنت سلاحًا ذا حدين لما له من الكثير من العيوب بالإضافة إلى العديد من المزايا والتى من الممكن أن تؤذينا.

b) يعتبر الإنترنت سلاحًا ذا حدين لما له من الكثير من الفوائد بالإضافة إلى العديد من العيوب والتى من الممكن أن تؤذينا.

c) يعتبر الإنترنت سلاحًا ذا حدين لما له من الكثير من الفوائد بالإضافة إلى القليل من العيوب والتى من الممكن أن تؤذينا.

d) تعتبر التكنولوجيا سلاحًا ذا حدين لما لها من الكثير من الفوائد بالإضافة إلى العديد من العيوب والتى من الممكن أن تؤلمنا.

(B) Choose the correct English translation:

- إن المشكلات التى تحدث لشخص ما تبين له أحيانًا الأصدقاء الحقيقيين الذين يقفون بجواره ويساعدونه.

a) The problems who occur to someone sometimes show the real friends who stand beside and help them.

b) The problems occurs to someone sometimes show the real friends who stand beside and help them.

c) The problems occur to someone sometimes show the real friends which stand beside and help them.

d) The problems that occur to someone sometimes show the real friends who stand beside and help them.

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The government assured that there should be cameras in all shops to .... everything happening.
   a) monitor b) role-play c) list d) compare
2. Nariman is a .... who graduated from the Faculty of Science in 2015.
   a) historian b) biologist c) doctor d) lawyer
3. I found a .... computer shop where I could buy a charger.
   a) nearby b) guardian c) missing d) desiring
4. Tourism .... thousands of people who are responsible for their families.
   a) tracks b) monitors c) works d) employs
5. Omar has a very strong .... which makes him a good leader.
   a) sense b) responsibility c) movement d) personality
6. A: .... he send emails to his friends? B: Yes, daily.
   a) Has b) Do c) Will d) Does
7. Every day, my room .... while I am at school.
   a) was tidied b) was being tidied c) is tidied d) tidied
8. English .... all over the world nowadays.
   a) is spoken b) has spoken c) speaks d) is speaking
9. These trees .... their leaves in autumn.
   a) isn't lost b) don't lose c) doesn't lose d) aren't lost
10. The first lesson .... at 8 a.m. and finishes at 10.
   a) starts b) start c) will start d) started

2 (A) Choose the correct Arabic translation:

- When we give a person a quality education, we help them to think and create to be good citizens.

a) عندما تعطى للشخص إنتاجًا جيدًا فأنت تساعده على التفكير والإبداع لكى يكون مواطنًا جيدًا.

b) بينما نعطى للشخص تعليمًا ذا كمية كبيرة فإننا نساعده على التفكير والإبداع لكى يكون مواطنًا جيدًا.

c) عندما نعطى للفرد تعليمًا جيدًا فإننا نساعده على التفكير والاختراع لكى يكون مواطنًا طيبًا.

d) عندما نعطى للفرد تعليمًا جيدًا فإننا نساعده على التفكير والإبداع لكى يكون مواطنًا جيدًا.

(B) Choose the correct English translation:

- يبذل الشخص الطموح دائمًا قصارى جهده لتحقيق نجاح أكثر والوصول لما يريد فى هذه الحياة.

a) An ambitious person always does their best to achieve more success and reach what they want in this life.

b) An ambition person always does the best to achieve more success and reach what they want in this life.

c) An ambitious person always does their best to achieve more successful and reach what they want in this life.

d) An ambitious person always does the best to archive more success and reach what they want in this life.

Choose the Two correct answers of the Five options:

1. I counted the students and Ali Ahmed was missing. The synonyms of the word "missing" are ....
   a) present b) lost c) found d) dead e) absent
2. The farmers build fences to protect their .... from wild animals and thieves.
   a) paper b) parties c) livestock d) tracks e) cattle

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

3. At hospitals, blood .... is checked regularly for patients before surgical operations.
   a) transport b) pressure c) transfusion d) transplant
4. .... is the respect that someone gets because of their success in society.
   a) Generosity b) Ability c) Prestige d) Support
5. After the terrible fire, a lot of volunteers wanted to give .... of blood and money to the victims.
   a) iron-levels b) donations c) transplants d) prestige
6. The new law helped reduce the .... of rare animals.
   a) survival b) life c) hunting d) death
7. Children need to be .... well by their parents at home in order not to hurt themselves.
   a) monitored b) praised c) benefited d) employed
8. My neighbour is famous .... his patience and good manners.
   a) for b) in c) among d) with
9. A .... means a deep, loud noise made by an animal such as a lion.
   a) sound b) roar c) whispering d) voice
10. .... the office .... regularly?
    a) Are/cleaning b) Is/cleaned c) Does/clean d) Did/clean
11. Did you go out last night or .... you busy?
    a) did b) were c) are d) have
12. Mazen .... ambitious and he wants to study medicine.
    a) is always b) always is c) doesn't always d) isn't always
13. Ahmed .... tea in the evening every day.
    a) has usually b) usually has c) usually have d) does usually
14. Ten years ago, we .... in a house by the river.
    a) lived b) will live c) live d) living
15. That old car .... any more.
    a) doesn't use b) didn't use c) is used d) isn't used
16. What time .... your father arrive home?
    a) was b) does c) do d) is

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

There are still some scientists who doubt that there is a link between smoking and cancer. So, smokers shout loudly that people who don't smoke should keep quiet. They claim that smoking brings psychological benefits. It relieves the stresses of everyday life and provides constant consolation. For example, people smoke when taking exams, being worried and being bereaved. It is also associated with good living and it makes social contact easier. It is very enjoyable. You feel relaxed when you sit with a cup of coffee or after a meal. It's foolish to ban smoking after so many hundreds of years. Tobacco tax is a very important source of income for many countries, like the U.S.A., Rhodesia, Greece and Turkey. People should be free to decide what they like and not be bullied by governments. Banning is undemocratic.

The tobacco industry spends vast sums on medical research. Over and above, improved filters have been introduced by Columbia University. As a result, it is now possible to smoke and enjoy smoking without danger. This is nonsense and groundless. All cigarette advertising should be banned, and anti-smoking campaigns should be conducted. As a beginning, smoking should be banned in public places like theatres, cinemas and restaurants. Advertisements should warn people, especially young people, of the fatal consequences of smoking. Warning words and death's head should be included in every packet that is sold. On TV, pictures of real smokers coughing up their lungs early in the morning should be shown. Governments should protect us from ourselves.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17. The passage clearly shows that ....

a) all scientists acknowledge the harm of smoking
b) scientists differ about the effect of smoking
c) all scientists insist on anti-smoking measures
d) smoking brings psychological benefits

18. Governments should protect us from ourselves because ....

a) we are certainly too weak to uproot habits
b) the tobacco industry is honest and useful
c) tobacco should be banned altogether
d) banning smoking is undemocratic

19. The tobacco industry is only useful when ....

a) it encourages people to smoke
b) it spends vast sums on medical research
c) smoking brings psychological benefits
d) it protects us from ourselves

20. The underlined pronoun "It" refers to ....

a) smoking
b) taking exams
c) good living
d) social contact

21. Smokers think that they can now enjoy smoking without danger because of ....

a) smoking is very good for health
b) the new improved filters
c) the good social contact
d) the medical research

22. According to smokers, it is .... to ban smoking.

a) democratic
b) sociable
c) undemocratic
d) legal

23. .... is considered a source of income to many countries.

a) Smoke
b) Improved filters
c) Tobacco waste
d) Tobacco tax

24. Choose the correct English translation:

- يعد التنمر فى المدارس مشكلة خطيرة يمكن أن تؤثر على صحة الطلاب العقلية .

a) Making fun in schools is a serious issue that enables effects on the mental health of students.

b) Bullying in schools is a series problem that can have effects on the mental health of students.

c) Bullying in schools is a serious problem that can have effects on the mental health of students.

d) Bullying in schools is a serious problem that can have effects on the physical health of students

25. Choose the correct Arabic translation:

- Sports protect people, especially youth, from many social and psychological diseases.

a) تحمى الرياضيات الناس وخصوصًا الشباب من كثير من الأمراض الاجتماعية والنفسية.

b) الرياضة تحمى الناس وخصوصًا الصغار من كثير من الأمراض الاجتماعية والنفسية.

c) تحمى الرياضة الناس وخصوصًا الشباب من كثير من الأمراض الاجتماعية والنفسية.

d) تحمى الرياضيات الناس وخصوصًا الشباب من كثير من الأمراض الاجتماعية والعصبية.

26. Answer the following questions:

1. What do you think of Jim's mother's action when she refused to take all the money?

....

....

2. Whom can you take with you if you go on this journey? Do you agree with Mr Trelawney's choices?

....

....

3. Do you think there was real treasure buried in that island? Why?

....

....

27. Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on the following:

"Hard work and faithful efforts lead to success in life."

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. After ten years of ………………….., he decided to forget his suffering and start a new life.
   a) imprison b) imprisonment c) prisoner d) imprisoned
2. A person who is ………………… is slightly fat in a nice way.
   a) fat b) overweight c) plump d) obese
3. The words "earn" and "lose" are ………………… .
   a) adverbs b) adjectives c) synonyms d) antonyms
4. If you never borrow money, you won't have ………………… .
   a) debts b) respects c) profits d) prisons
5. The dentist decided to ………………… my tooth which was totally decayed.
   a) distract b) track c) trek d) extract
6. A: Where is your father, Amina? B: He ………………… to the supermarket.
   a) has gone b) has been c) was d) had gone
7. The dishes are clean! Who ………………… them?
   a) had washed b) washed c) was washing d) has washed
8. I have felt great pain in my stomach since I ………………… a piece of that cake.
   a) have eaten b) eat c) eating d) ate
9. Walaa ………………… to the school library every week when she was young.
   a) has gone b) is going c) goes d) went
10. As soon as my father …………………., I will tell him everything.
   a) come b) came c) will come d) has come

2 (A) Choose the correct Arabic translation:

- When people enjoy freedom, they can achieve progress in all fields. However, this freedom is not absolute.

a) عندما يتمتع الأشخاص بالحرية فإنهم يتمكنون من تحقيق التقدم فى بعض المجالات ولكن هذه الحرية ليست مطلقة.

b) يستطيع الناس تحقيق التقدم فى كل المجالات عندما يتمتعون بالحرية ولكن هذه الحرية ليست مطلقة.

c) عندما يتمتع الأشخاص بالحرية فإنهم يتمكنون من تحقيق التقدم فى كل المجالات ولكن هذه الحرية مجردة.

d) لا يستطيع الناس صنع التقدم فى كل المجالات عندما يتمتعون بالحرية ولكن هذه الحرية ليست مطلقة.

(B) Choose the correct English translation:

- التعليم الجيد يساعدنا فى إعداد أجيال من المواطنين القادرين على تحقيق أهداف مجتمعاتهم.

a) Good education help us to prepare generations of citizens able to achieve their societies' aims.

b) Good education helps us to prepare generations of citizens who are able to achieve their societies' aims.

c) Well education helps us prepare generations of citizens capable to achieving their societies' aims.

d) Education helps us prepare generations of citizens able of achieve their society's aims.

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. There are .... differences between people in Europe and those in Egypt.
   a) cultures b) cultural c) cultured d) culturally
2. My father was a highly .... man, so all people admired him.
   a) culture b) cultural c) cultured d) culturally
3. During wars, floods and other disasters, food .... provide great help.
   a) misers b) pirates c) mutinies d) banks
4. I think something .... wrong with my car. I need to take it to the mechanic's.
   a) went b) had c) made d) did
5. Reda and I have some interests in .... We both like reading and fishing.
   a) common b) difference c) success d) expert
6. When the patient cut his finger, he .... antibiotic.
   a) was giving b) will be given c) was given d) has been given
7. .... at home when she smashed the glass window?
   a) Were you being b) Did you be c) Were you d) Have you been
8. I .... for this company for a year and I miss working there.
   a) was working b) have worked c) worked d) work
9. I haven't been to Aswan since 2010. This means that ....
   a) I have been in Aswan since 2010 b) I have never been to Aswan
   c) I was in Aswan in 2010 d) I wasn't in Aswan in 2010
10. I have passed this test ....
   a) already b) yet c) just d) so far

2 (A) Choose the correct Arabic translation:

- When you feel nervous, this may cause problems with focus or even cause troubles with sleeping.

a) أثناء الشعور بالتوتر فإن هذا من المؤكد أنه يسبب مشاكل فى التركيز حتى إنه يسبب صعوبات فى النوم.

b) بعدما تشعر بالتوتر فإن هذا من الممكن أن يسبب مشاكل فى العدسات حتى إنه يسبب متاعب أثناء النوم.

c) لو تشعر بالتوتر فإن هذا من الممكن أن يسبب مشاكل فى التركيز حتى إنه يسبب صعوبات فى النوم.

d) عندما تشعر بالتوتر فإن هذا من الممكن أن يسبب مشاكل فى التركيز حتى إنه يسبب متاعب فى النوم.

(B) Choose the correct English translation:

- قد تجعل التكنولوجيا الشباب كسولًا، وقد تسبب أيضًا بعض المشاكل الصحية.

a) Technology may make young people lazy, and may cause some healthy problems.
b) Technology may make youth physically inactive, and may cause some health disasters.
c) Technology will make young people lazy, and will cause some healthy problems.
d) Technology may make young people lazy, and may cause some health problems.

Unit 3 Al-Adwaa Unit Test

Choose the Two correct answers of the Five options:

1. I have .... that Sameh was a cheat. He deserves a punishment.
   a) founded out b) invented c) explored d) discovered e) found out
2. I asked my father to go out with me but he was very tired. The adjective "tired" gives the same meaning as ....
   a) active b) fresh c) weary d) lively e) exhausted

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

3. My friend was sent to prison because he was heavily in ....
   a) dairy b) debt c) dates d) debate
4. The thief .... stealing my car and selling it for only ten thousand pounds.
   a) admitted b) said c) told d) included
5. The prefix "......................" makes the noun "father" mean the husband of someone's mother.
   a) dis- b) half- c) semi- d) step-
6. Criminals should be punished for .... the law.
   a) following b) breaking c) obeying d) making
7. There was one .... for the problem, but we waited until we had agreed.
   a) solution b) association c) planning d) community
8. I asked you to do this difficult job because I .... you.
   a) trust b) change c) hurt d) revise
9. I was born in Beheira and I .... up in a small town called Abu El Matamir.
   a) went b) got c) grew d) looked
10. Egypt has changed a lot .... the last years.
    a) while b) when c) since d) over
11. He has gone to London. This means that he .... there.
    a) is still b) won't be c) is no longer d) was
12. When Mohamed was in Cairo, he always .... along the Nile.
    a) walked b) was walking c) walks d) 'll walk
13. They never .... used to eating in the office.
    a) do b) was c) got d) have
14. I .... to tidy my room before I went out.
    a) was made b) have been made c) made d) have made
15. Yasmeen is in Cairo now. She .... to Luxor.
    a) has gone b) go c) has been d) goes
16. I .... this car for more than three years now.
    a) has had b) have had c) have been d) had

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Light from the sun or a light bulb moves in straight waves. When the light waves hit an object, they bounce off of it. This action is called reflection. For most objects, the light bounces in many directions at the same time. When this happens, it allows us to see the object. A picture of the object is sent to the brain from the eye. The brain helps us understand what we see.

Light waves also bounce when they hit a smooth, shiny surface. Hitting a surface like a mirror makes the light waves bounce directly back to your eyes. This movement allows you to see yourself. It creates a reflection. You see the objects around it instead of the mirror itself.

Anything shiny may act like a mirror when the light hits it. Have you ever seen your face reflected on the rounded side of a pot or pan? You can even see reflections on the surface of water if it is smooth and still. You have probably seen beautiful pictures of mountain scenes.

Often, the mountains and sky are reflected on the smooth surface of the lake. Water and glass have a special ability. They can refract, or bend, light. That's why a spoon in a clear glass of water will look bent when it really is not. The ability of glass to refract light has given us some useful products. Eyeglasses help us see clearly. Magnifying glasses enlarge our view of an object.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17. The thing that helps us understand what we see is the ....

a) light b) reflection c) eye d) brain

18. We can see .... when the light waves hit a surface like a mirror.

a) the mirror b) ourselves c) the light wave d) our eyes

19. The ability to refract, or bend, light allows us to ....

a) magnify, or make things larger
b) see ourselves through glasses
c) see mountains in water
d) see things in the dark

20. We see objects because ....

a) the light waves can hit them
b) they are smooth and have shiny surfaces
c) light bounces off objects in many directions at the same time
d) light moves in straight waves

21. How do light waves act when they hit a smooth or shiny surface?

a) They bounce directly back to our brain.
b) They bounce directly back to our eyes.
c) They cause eye illness.
d) They make light.

22. A lake filled with people boating and swimming doesn't act like a mirror because .... to create a reflection.

a) the surface must be smooth and still
b) the surface must be sharp and still
c) a picture of an object must be sent to the brain from the eye
d) it's too salty

23. A good title for the passage is "......................."

a) Light abilities
b) Reflection of objects
c) The sunshine
d) Glass and water

24. Choose the correct English translation:

- زاد اعتمادنا على الكمبيوتر بشكل كبير فنحن نستخدمه تقريبًا فى جميع الأعمال والأنشطة وداخل مختلف المؤسسات.

a) Our dependence on computers has increased dramatically. We use it in almost all businesses, activities and within different institutions.

b) Our dependent on computers has increased dramatically. We use it in most all businesses, activities and within different institutions.

c) Our dependence on computers has decreased slightly. We use it in almost all businesses, activities and within different institutions.

d) Our dependent on computers have decreased dramatically. We use it in most all businesses, activities and within different institutions.

25. Choose the correct Arabic translation:

- The invention of the internet has given us various benefits. It is helpful in providing us with an inexpensive means of entertainment.

a) لقد أعطانا اكتشاف الإنترنت مزايا مختلفة فهو مفيد فى تحسيننا بوسيلة ترفيه ليست رخيصة.

b) لقد أعطانا اختراع الإنترنت مزايا مختلفة فهو مفيد فى تنميتنا بوسيلة ترفيه غالية.

c) لقد أعطانا اكتشاف الإنترنت فوائد مختلفة فهو مفيد فى تزويدنا بوسيلة ترفيه غالية.

d) لقد أعطانا اختراع الإنترنت فوائد مختلفة فهو مفيد فى تزويدنا بوسيلة ترفيه رخيصة.

26. Answer the following questions:

1. Captain Smollett thought that they wouldn't be safe on the ship. Do you agree? Why?

....

....

2. Luck saved Jim from getting in trouble. Do you agree? Why?

....

....

3. "Things aren't as they first appear." Do you agree with this? Why?

....

....

27. Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on the following:

"The relationship between parents and children"

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Unit 4 Quiz 7 | on Part (1)

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. My friend becomes nervous when he .... a difficult situation.
   a) welcomes b) faces c) stresses d) drops
2. Ali is the best one to .... English words.
   a) pronoun b) pronounce c) pronounces d) pronunciation
3. Ali's .... of English vocabulary is the best.
   a) pronoun b) pronounce c) pronounces d) pronunciation
4. I want you to .... me some advice about how to improve my English skills.
   a) make b) have c) take d) give
5. Stop talking! The teacher gave us his .... attention.
   a) personnel b) personality c) personal d) person
6. .... has made the world a smaller place.
   a) One plane b) Planes c) The plane d) This plane
7. There is .... black rug on the floor.
   a) a b) an c) the d) no article
8. Mr Hassan is .... better of the two teachers.
   a) a b) an c) the d) no article
9. England and France are .... European countries.
   a) a b) an c) the d) no article
10. .... lunch we had together was delicious.
   a) The b) A c) No article d) An

2 (A) Choose the correct Arabic translation:

- Global warming is the long-term rise in the average temperature of the Earth.

a) إن الاحتباس الحرارى هو الارتفاع فى متوسط درجة حرارة الأرض على المدى البعيد.

b) إن الاحتباس الحرارى هو الرفع فى متوسط درجة حرارة الأرض على المدى البعيد.

c) إن الاحتباس الحرارى هو الارتفاع فى متوسط درجة حرارة الأرض على المدى القريب.

d) إن الدفء العالمى هو الارتفاع فى متوسط درجة حرارة الأرض على المدى البعيد.

(B) Choose the correct English translation:

- يجب على المصريين جميعًا العمل بجد لإيجاد حلول ممكنة لمشاكلنا الاقتصادية ولتحقيق التقدم فى كل المجالات.

a) All Egyptians must work hard to find impossible solutions to our economic problems and achieve progress in all fields.
b) All Egyptians must work hard to find possible solutions to our economic problems and achieve progress in all fields.
c) All Egyptians need work hard to find possible solutions to our economical problems and achieve progress in all fields.
d) All Egyptians must work hard to find possible solutions to our social problems and achieve stability in all fields.

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A good woman .... my mother when she was in hospital.
   a) nurse b) nursed c) nursing d) nursery
2. Hala chose .... as a profession because she wanted to help people in need.
   a) nurse b) nursed c) nursing d) nursery
3. Don't look at the book during the exam. That's .... It isn't an open-book exam.
   a) cheat b) cheats c) cheated d) cheating
4. My friend is looking at the book during the exam. He is a .... It isn't an open-book exam.
   a) cheat b) cheats c) cheated d) cheating
5. My father made .... of the things he had to buy.
   a) list b) listed c) listing d) a list
6. The teacher gave us .... homework yesterday.
   a) a few b) some c) any d) many
7. Adel is honest. .... of what he says is true.
   a) Many b) Any c) Few d) Much
8. The trainer gave me .... useful advice on how to keep fit.
   a) an b) many c) some d) a
9. Statistics .... my favourite subject in school.
   a) were b) was c) have been d) a&b
10. Don't worry the room is .... to take two beds.
   a) enough large b) too large c) large enough d) too enough

2 (A) Choose the correct Arabic translation:

- Crimes committed by some young people are a serious problem. We need an urgent solution.

a) إن الجرائم المرتكبة من الشباب مشكلة خطيرة وتحتاج إلى حل عاجل.

b) إن الجرائم التى يرتكبها الشباب تعتبر مشكلة خطيرة ونحتاج إلى حل.

c) إن الجرائم التى يرتكبها الشباب الصغير مشكلة خطيرة وتحتاج إلى حلول عاجلة.

d) إن الجرائم التى يرتكبها بعض الشباب تعتبر مشكلة خطيرة ونحتاج إلى حل عاجل.

(B) Choose the correct English translation:

- التعليم الجيد هو العمود الفقرى لعملية التنمية لأنه يرفع قدرات الشباب وينمى مواهبهم.

a) Good education is the backbone of the development process as it raises youth's abilities and develops their talents.
b) Fine education is the backbone of the development progress as it raises youth's abilities and develops their talents.
c) Good education is the backbone of the development process as it rises youth's imagination and develops their abilities.
d) Well education is the backbone of the development process as it raise adult's abilities and develop their talents.

Unit 4 Al-Adwaa Unit Test

Choose the Two correct answers of the Five options:

1. My son managed to do all his work .... No one helped him.

a) lonely b) of his own c) on his own d) only e) alone

2. I couldn't drink this juice as it was nasty. The antonyms of the adjective "nasty" are ....

a) awful b) interesting c) stingy d) agreeable e) nice

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

3. A/An .... is a large board fixed to a wall where people can put notes and messages for other people to read.

a) noticeboard b) blog c) email d) rucksack

4. Because of social media and talk show programmes, many people have lost the art of ....

a) bullying b) conversation c) teaching d) conservation

5. We all want to buy some high-quality goods this factory ....

a) produce b) producer c) produces d) products

6. As far as I'm ...., doing sport is useful for our health.

a) interesting b) enthusiast c) regarded d) concerned

7. Funny films are my best. I like things that make me ....

a) discuss b) support c) laugh d) cry

8. My school bag is full. There's no room for .... books.

a) this b) extra c) least d) no

9. I asked my mother .... another piece of cake.

a) for b) to c) in d) with

10. A: How .... milk do you want? B: Two bottles, please.

a) many b) much c) a little d) a few

11. Laila was graduated from .... University of Mansoura.

a) an b) a c) the d) no article

12. Secondary school students in some countries don't have to wear .... uniform.

a) some b) one c) a d) an

13. My father always tells me .... valuable information.

a) a b) an c) the d) no article

14. During my stay in Saudi Arabia, I got .... experience.

a) many b) much c) an d) a lot

15. There is plenty of meat, but there is not .... bread.

a) plenty b) many c) any d) a lot

16. Two hundred metres .... long distance for young swimmers.

a) are b) are a c) is d) is a

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

One year, an agriculture expert visited a poor village in India. His purpose was to improve agriculture and food production in the village. The village relied for food on the two crops of the vegetables it grew each year. The villagers worked very hard during the planting and harvesting seasons, but their crops were sometimes poor and insufficient because of the weather and the old methods of agriculture. The expert told the head of the village that he could give the villagers a new type of rice which would produce double the quantity. The head of the village was delighted and agreed to try it out. The villagers planted the new rice and when they harvested it, it produced double the quantity. When the expert returned after the first crop, he was pleased to see the villagers so happy. The expert returned later to see if the second crop had been equally good. This time, he found the fields empty. The villagers were sitting around playing cards and taking life easy. When he asked the head of the village about the second crop, he replied, "We didn't need to plant a second crop because we had enough rice after the first crop. So we are relaxing and enjoying ourselves.". The expert realised it was useless to tell the head of the Indian village that he had not given them the new rice so that they could spend half a year without working.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17. Why did the agriculture expert go to the Indian village?

a) To increase the harvest. b) To raise cattle.
c) To teach people. d) To stay there.

18. Why was it difficult for the villagers to find enough rice?

a) Because of modern ways. b) Because of old ways.
c) Because of the weather. d) Both b & c.

19. Although the villagers worked hard during the planting and harvesting seasons, ...

a) their crops were excellent
b) their crops were poor and sufficient
c) their crops were poor and insufficient
d) their crops were not poor and sufficient

20. "When they harvested it" means when they .... it.

a) collected b) connected
c) communicated d) contacted

21. The people of the village were .... before the expert's help.

a) active b) lazy c) stupid d) mean

22. The new rice that the expert gave to the head of the village would help the villagers to get ....

a) a little amount of the crop b) less amount of the crop
c) the least amount of the crop d) none of these

23. An agriculture expert knows a lot about ....

a) industry b) farming
c) archaeology d) astronomy

24. Choose the correct English translation:

- خمسة ملايين جنيه هو مبلغ ضخم لا يمكن لأحد أن يجنيه بسرعة ولا بسهولة إلا من خلال التجارة المشروعة.

a) Five million pounds is a large sum of money which can't be earned quickly or easily except through legal trade.

b) Five millions pound is a large sum of money which mustn't be earned quickly or easily except through legal trade.

c) Five million pounds are a large sum of money which may not be made quickly or easily except through legal dealing.

d) Five millions pounds are a large sum of money which can't be made quickly or easily except through legal commerce.

25. Choose the correct Arabic translation:

- We should consider money a means not an end. That's why we shouldn't only collect money, but invest it in useful projects.

a) لابد أن نعتبر المال وسيلة وليس غاية لذلك لا ينبغى أن نجمع المال فقط ولكن أن نستثمره فى مشروعات مفيدة.

b) لابد أن نعتبر المال وسيلة وليس غاية لذلك لا ينبغى أن نجمع المال فقط ولكن يجب أن نستثمره فى مشروعات مفيدة.

c) لا يجب أن نعتبر المال وسيلة وليس غاية لذلك لا ينبغى أن نجمع المال فقط ولكن أن نستثمره فى مشروعات مفيدة.

d) لابد أن نعتبر المال وسيلة وليس غاية لذلك ينبغى أن نجمع المال فقط ولكن أن نستثمره فى مشروعات مفيدة.

26. Answer the following questions:

1. What do you think Tom's character represents?

....

....

2. If you had the map, how could you keep it safe on the ship?

....

....

3. Can we trust pirates and deal with them? Why?

....

....

27. Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on the following:

"Smartphones affect our life positively and negatively. Discuss."

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A professional programmer could .... the bank's system and get personal information.
   a) remove b) avoid c) enter d) hack
2. The dustman .... the bins in the large box every day.
   a) imagines b) steals c) empties d) charges
3. Decision .... needs deep thinking and experience.
   a) saying b) making c) doing d) having
4. Car drivers use .... to know where they are and how to reach a place.
   a) adverts b) sat-nav c) ID d) passwords
5. No one can hack .... my computer as I have antivirus software.
   a) of b) off c) into d) for
6. I .... to France after I finish my education as planned.
   a) am flying b) am going to fly c) will fly d) fly
7. What time .... your plane take off tomorrow?
   a) will b) is c) does d) should
8. My father has arranged everything. He .... to Saudi Arabia for Umrah next week.
   a) will travel b) is travelling c) going to travel d) travels
9. Although living in London is hard, I .... there sooner or later. I have made up my mind.
   a) am going to live b) will live c) won't live d) was living
10. Don't forget that our neighbours .... for dinner this evening.
   a) come b) will come c) are going to come d) are coming

2 (A) Choose the correct Arabic translation:

- The Ministry of Environment pays much attention to the fatal dangers that have some bad effects on the environment.

a) تولى وزارة البيئة اهتمامًا كبيرًا للمخاطر القاتلة والتى لها بعض الآثار السيئة على البيئة.

b) وزارة البيئة تعطى اهتمامًا كبيرًا للمخاطر الشديدة والتى لها بعض الآثار السلبية على البيئة.

c) تولى وزيرة البيئة اهتمامًا كبيرًا للمخاطر القاتلة والتى لها بعض الآثار المدمرة على البيئة.

d) وزارة البيئة تولى اهتمامًا كبيرًا غير محدود للمخاطر القاتلة والتى لها بعض الآثار السلبية على البيئة.

(B) Choose the correct English translation:

- لقد أنشئت الكثير من المؤسسات الخيرية لدعم المجتمع وخاصة الفقراء والمسنين والأيتام وذوى الاحتياجات الخاصة.

a) A lot of charities were set off to support the society especially the poor, old people, orphans and those with special needs.

b) A lot of charities were set up to support the community especially the poor people, old people, orphans and those with special needs.

c) A lot of charities were set up to support society especially the poor, the elderly, orphans and those with special needs.

d) Many charities were set up to support society especially the poor, old people, orphans and those with private needs.

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. He is a bad person who makes a lot of money through ....
   a) fishing b) catching c) phishing d) downloading
2. I forgot my .... and had to call the technical support to reset it.
   a) lock b) software c) antivirus d) password
3. Don't worry, sir. The door of the room is ....
   a) lock b) locked c) locks d) a lock
4. There must be a law to criminalise يجرم ....
   a) technology b) sat-nav c) cyberbullying d) chatting
5. I heard the .... of the gun and I knew that the criminal was going to shoot.
   a) danger b) decision c) ring d) click
6. The film .... at seven o'clock sharp.
   a) starts b) will start c) is going to start d) is starting
7. After Yousra reaches Paris, she .... us an email.
   a) will send b) sent c) has sent d) is sending
8. Amr .... in Boston University. That is his aim.
   a) is studying b) may study c) will study d) is going to study
9. Oh, the water is boiling. I .... off the gas.
   a) will turn b) am going to turn c) am turning d) turn
10. I think he .... for not doing the assignment.
   a) will be punishing b) is punishing c) will be punished d) is going to punish

2 (A) Choose the correct Arabic translation:

- Travelling abroad helps us to see so many countries of the world and know a lot about their customs and traditions.

a) السفر للخارج يساعدنا على رؤية مختلف دول العالم ومعرفة الكثير عن عاداتهم وتقاليدهم.

b) يساعدنا السفر للخارج على رؤية العديد من دول العالم ومعرفة الكثير عن عاداتهم وتقاليدهم.

c) يساعدنا السفر على متن السفن على رؤية العديد من دول العالم ومعرفة الكثير عن عاداتهم وتقاليدهم.

d) يساعدنا السفر للخارج على رؤية العديد من دول العالم ومعرفة الكثير عن زبائنهم وتقاليدهم.

(B) Choose the correct English translation:

- تنفذ الحكومة الكثير من المشروعات العملاقة وذلك لتوفير فرص عمل للشباب وحل مشكلة البطالة.

a) The government are carrying out a lot giant projects to provide job opportunities for youth and solve the problem of unemployment.

b) The ministry is carrying out a lot of giant projects to provide job opportunities for youth and solve the problem of employment.

c) The police are carrying out a lot of giant projects to provide job opportunities for youth and solving the problem of unemployment.

d) The government is carrying out a lot of mega projects to provide job opportunities for youth and solve the problem of unemployment.

Choose the Two correct answers of the Five options:

1. The salesperson told me to .... him if I want to inquire about any information.
   a) connect to b) contact c) communicate
   d) communicate with e) contact with
2. I always advise my students to be careful with their exams. The antonyms of the word "careful" are ....
   a) careless b) incautious c) raging
   d) painstaking e) pleasant

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

3. The software downloaded from this website is mostly .... which will damage your computer.
   a) malware b) hardware c) adverts d) apps
4. The officer asked me about the .... of the accident.
   a) offers b) networks c) organisations d) details
5. She .... on the link and the website soon opened.
   a) locked b) clicked c) linked d) caused
6. I don't know how my friend .... our Facebook accounts.
   a) hack b) hacking c) hacker d) hacks
7. The information on the main computer was lost through a ....
   a) hack b) hacking c) hacker d) hacks
8. I can't live here. I have a feeling of ....
   a) secure b) insecure c) security d) insecurity
9. There are some .... of social media.
   a) communications b) navigations c) stations d) disadvantages
10. We .... my birthday party on Saturday. Would you like to come?
   a) are having b) will have c) be going to have d) are being had
11. Esraa has just decided to buy this dress. She .... it now.
   a) is buying b) is going to buy c) will buy d) buys
12. Everything is arranged now, we .... for Alexandria tomorrow.
   a) will leave b) are leaving c) leave d) are going to leave
13. I expected that my team .... the match.
   a) is winning b) will win c) is going to win d) would win
14. Don't worry about your exams, I .... you.
   a) am helping b) will help c) am not going to help d) help
15. Tomorrow morning, we .... the flat together.
   a) will be painted b) are going to paint c) are painting d) b & c
16. Kareem has taken his car keys. He .... to university.
   a) is driving b) is going to drive c) will drive d) b & c

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

It is true that men have invented a lot of useful things; the alphabet, machines, rockets and so many other things. But scientists and archaeologists now agree that women invented one very important thing which has changed history. They invented agriculture. Before the invention of agriculture, men were hunters. They went out every day. Sometimes they killed animals, and sometimes animals killed them. Life was difficult and dangerous. Women had to go out every day too. They collected roots, fruit and grass. One day, more than 10,000 years ago, a woman dropped some grass seeds. She dropped them near her home. They grew, and the first wheat was born. The idea grew, too. Women planted roots and fruit trees. Then they could stay at home and look after their children and their animals. Archaeologists think that women kept the first domestic animals. Then their husbands did not have to go hunting for meat.

They stayed at home. They built villages and cities. Men began civilisation after women had invented agriculture.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17. An archaeologist is a person who studies ....

a) animal life
b) agriculture life
c) grass seeds
d) buried remains of ancient times

18. The underlined word "They" refers to ....

a) animals
b) men
c) seeds
d) women

19. The early man got his food through ....

a) agriculture
b) commerce
c) hunting animals
d) industry

20. .... proved that women invented agriculture.

a) Scientists
b) Archaeologists
c) Farmers
d) Both a & b

21. Women had to go out every day to ....

a) hunt
b) collect fruit
c) catch fish
d) kill animals

22. Civilisation began after the discovery of ....

a) agriculture
b) hunting
c) machines
d) industry

23. Agriculture was discovered ....

a) on purpose
b) by planning
c) by men
d) by accident

24. Choose the correct English translation:

- يهدف النظام التعليمى الجديد إلى تنمية مهارات الفهم والتحليل والنقد بدلًا من الحفظ والتلقين.

a) The modern educational system aims at developing the skills of misunderstanding, analysis and criticism instead of memorising and initiation.

b) The modern educational system aims at developing the skills of understanding, analysing and criticising instead of reminding and initiation.

c) The new educational system aims at developing the skills of understanding, analysing and criticising instead of memorising and imitating.

d) The new educational system aims at developing the skills of understanding, analysis and criticism instead of memorising and learning.

25. Choose the correct Arabic translation:

- Most of the world's countries try hard to preserve the environment. Man's activities have caused disasters such as global warming, which threatens our lives.

a) تسعى معظم دول العالم جاهدة للحفاظ على البيئة. فأنشطة الإنسان تسببت فى كوارث مثل الاحتباس الحرارى الذى يهدد حياتنا.

b) تسعى كثيرا من دول العالم بصعوبة للحفاظ على البيئة. فأنشطة الإنسان سببت الاحتباس الحرارى الذى يهدد حياتنا.

c) تسعى معظم دول العالم جاهدة للحفاظ على البيئة. فأنشطة الإنسان قد تتسبب فى كوارث مثل الاحتباس الحرارى الذى قد يهدد حياتنا.

d) تسعى معظم دول العالم بصعوبة للحفاظ على البيئة. فأنشطة الإنسان تسببت فى كوارث تهدد حياتنا مثل الاحتباس الحرارى.

26. Answer the following questions:

1. Do you think that Jim is right to trust Ben Gun? Why? Why not?

....

....

2. Do you think Ben Gun is really crazy? Why?

....

....

3. Why do you think Flint hid the treasure in that island in particular?

....

....

27. Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on the following:

"The roles that young people can play to help their country"

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Most of Naguib Mahfouz's novels have been .... into films.
a) made b) done c) replaced d) looked

2. Novels and plays are different forms of .... which I like reading.
a) literature b) illiteracy c) literary d) literacy

3. Novels and plays are different forms of .... writings which I like reading.
a) literature b) illiteracy c) literary d) literacy

4. It is polite to say "please" when you .... a request.
a) give b) take c) do d) make

5. I was .... a great favour when she gave me the money I needed.
a) done b) stayed c) dug d) made

6. Many wild animals can't adapt to .... in the zoo.
a) lives b) live c) living d) lived

7. I regret .... this printer as it breaks down a lot.
a) to buy b) buy c) to buying d) buying

8. My classmate was sorry because he forgot .... back the pen he borrowed.
a) bringing b) to be bringing c) to bring d) being brought

9. The headmaster doesn't allow .... to school late.
a) to come b) coming c) came d) with coming

10. Civil engineers get used to .... in the sun.
a) work b) working c) works d) worked

2 (A) Choose the correct Arabic translation:

- All you need to help your society is to devote part of your time and effort to help charity foundations.

a) كل ما تحتاجه لمساعدة مجتمعك هو تخصيص جزء من وقتك ومجهودك لمساعدة المؤسسات الخيرية.

b) كل ما تحتاجه لمساعدة مجتمعك هو تقسيم جزء من وقتك ومجهودك لمساعدة المؤسسات الخيرية.

c) كل ما تحتاجه لمساعدة مجتمعك هو تخصيص كل وقتك ومجهودك لمساعدة المنشآت التعاونية.

d) كل ما تحتاجه لمساعدة مجتمعك هو تخصيص جزء من وقتك وتأثيرك لمساعدة المؤسسات الخيرية.

(B) Choose the correct English translation:

- تُستخدم التكنولوجيا الحديثة فى جميع مجالات الحياة مما أدى إلى توفير الوقت والجهد وزيادة الإنتاج وجعل الحياة أكثر راحة.

a) Modern technology is used in all life schools and this resulted in saving time and effort, increase production and make life more comfortable.

b) Modern technology is used in all life fields and this resulted in saving time and effort, increasing production and making life more comfortable.

c) New technology is used in all fields of life and this caused saving time and effort, increasing production and making life more comfort.

d) Modern technology are used in all life fields and this resulted in saving time and effort, increasing production and making life more comfortable.

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. "He kept the gravel walk". In this sentence, "walk" refers to a ....
   a) path b) trip c) movement d) journey
2. Don't .... yourself to others. Everyone is different.
   a) request b) compare c) review d) regret
3. It was a very good party. We .... a lot of fun there.
   a) had b) spent c) did d) went
4. I really enjoyed your party, it was such great ....
   a) funny b) fun c) entertaining d) amusing
5. You have to .... on the path in order not to damage the small plants.
   a) do b) stay c) make d) score
6. My mother likes .... Indian series on Zee Alwan.
   a) watch b) watching c) to watch d) b & c
7. I can't imagine .... in the city. I enjoy its excitement and urban life.
   a) not living b) to live c) living d) live
8. You should try .... up in a balloon. You'd really love it.
   a) going b) to go c) gone d) being gone
9. The accused boy denied .... the ruler from his classmate's bag.
   a) stealing b) to steal c) stolen d) steal
10. He was made .... a fine for driving his car fast.
   a) to pay b) pay c) paying d) paid

2 (A) Choose the correct Arabic translation:

- Building the personality of human beings is the basic axis of development. We must take care of youth to make more progress in the future.

a) إن الارتقاء بشخصية الإنسان هو المحور الثانوى للتنمية. يجب أن نهتم بالكبار لإنجاز القليل من التقدم فى المستقبل.

b) إن الارتقاء بشخصية الإنسان هو المحور الرئيسى للتنمية. فعلينا أن نهتم بالشباب لتحقيق المزيد من التقدم فى المستقبل.

c) إن نمو شخصية الإنسان هو المحور الأساسى للتعمير. يجب أن نحفز الشباب لزيادة كمية الإنتاج فى المستقبل.

d) إن بناء شخصية الإنسان هو المحور الأساسى للتطوير. يجب أن نهتم بالشباب لتحقيق المزيد من التقدم فى المستقبل.

(B) Choose the correct English translation:

- يتعلم الأطفال الصغار الكثير عن كيفية التصرف من خلال مراقبة والديهم. فكلما كانوا أصغر سناً، اكتسبوا المزيد من المعرفة من آبائهم وأمهاتهم.

a) Young kids learn a lot about how to behave by watching their grandparents. The younger they are, the less knowledge they take from their mothers and fathers.

b) Young children learn a lot about how to be kind by disobeying their parents. The older they are, the more knowledge they take from their dads and mums.

c) Young parents learn a lot about how to behave by watching their children. The younger they are, the more knowledge they give to their mothers and fathers.

d) Young children learn a lot about how to behave by watching their parents. The younger they are, the more knowledge they gain from their fathers and mothers.

Unit 6 Al-Adwaa Unit Test

Choose the Two correct answers of the Five options:

1. We asked them to give us a brief description of the accident. The synonyms of the word "brief" are ....
   a) long b) short c) compressed d) lengthy e) mature
2. The journey to explore Mars has been ....
   a) a successful b) successful c) success d) a success e) succeed

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

3. My grandfather's garage is full of .... which he uses to fix his car.
   a) barrows b) gravels c) tools d) mice
4. There was a power failure for an hour last night, so we had to work by ....
   a) wax b) sunlight c) candlelight d) highlight
5. Hazem's .... mistakes make me angry. He never seems to learn from them.
   a) enjoyable b) popular c) repeated d) pleasant
6. This book is a thrilling .... story.
   a) adventure b) century c) puncture d) creature
7. Technology has .... our life easier and more comfortable.
   a) enjoyed b) made c) spent d) done
8. The dried grass used to feed cattle is called ....
   a) hay b) hey c) high d) hole
9. After you turn right, go .... the mosque and you will find the station.
   a) by b) past c) for d) straight
10. I regret .... to help her. She proved to be very greedy.
    a) to promise b) promising c) to be promising d) promise
11. Stop .... You are giving me a headache.
    a) to shout b) shouted c) shouting d) to shouting
12. Most parents remember .... their children to the funfair when they were young.
    a) to take b) take c) taking d) to taking
13. I think it's no good .... up late as it is harmful to your health.
    a) staying b) to staying c) to stay d) stay
14. We .... to take a break before finishing our mission.
    a) denied b) avoided c) imagined d) refused
15. Hams has difficulty .... as she can't breathe well.
    a) sleep b) in sleep c) sleeping d) to sleep
16. I hate .... TV with my little brothers, they keep asking about the coming incidents which I know nothing about.
    a) to watch b) watch c) to watching d) both a & c

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

There are wild dogs and pet dogs. Pet dogs are helpers and friends for people. There were no pet dogs 15,000 years ago. Men and women learned how to work with dogs. Dogs helped humans travel from Asia to North America 10,000 years ago by pulling sleds over snow.

People say dogs are "man's best friend".

They help with farming. They help with hunting. They help with fishing. They can pull things for people. They can help find things. There are many colours of dogs. There are white dogs, grey dogs, black dogs, and brown dogs. A dog's fur can be short or long. Dogs have curly hair or straight fur. There are very small dogs. They are only 6-8 inches tall. There are very big dogs. They are about 3 feet tall. Some dogs can see well. Some dogs do not see very well. All dogs can hear well. They can hear sounds that people cannot hear. They can hear high and low sounds. They can hear sounds very far away. All dogs can smell very well. They can smell 40 times better than humans! Dogs live 5 to 13 years, but some dogs live much longer. One dog lived to be 24 years old!

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17. Straight hair is ....

a) curly
b) long
c) brown
d) not curly

18. According to the passage, all dogs do well in ....

a) hearing
b) smelling
c) swimming
d) both a and b

19. The age of the oldest dog reaches ....

a) 24 years old
b) 20 years old
c) 13 years old
d) 15,000 years old

20. Dogs are useful animals because ....

a) they have many colours
b) they helped humans travel by pulling sleds in the snow
c) there are wild dogs and pet dogs
d) they can play and do nothing for men and women

21. The writer mentions that some dogs can't .... well.

a) hear
b) run
c) smell
d) see

22. The biggest dogs are about ....

a) 3 feet long
b) 300 inches tall
c) two metres tall
d) 3 feet tall

23. The best title for the passage is "......................".

a) Animals in the world
b) How to keep dogs
c) Dogs
d) The North Pole

24. Choose the correct English translation:

- نأسف لإخباركم بأنه تم تعليق حسابكم لدينا ولذا عليكم التوجه لأقرب فرع لاستكمال الإجراءات.

a) We regret to inform you that your account has been suspended, hence, you have to visit the nearest branch to complete the procedures.

b) We regret informing you that your maths has been stopped, hence, you have to visit the nearest branch to proceed the procedures.

c) We regret to informing you that your account was stopped, hence, you have to visit the nearest branch to proceed the process.

d) We regret to inform you that your account has suspended, hence, you should visit the nearest branch to proceed the process.

25. Choose the correct Arabic translation:

- Can you imagine how difficult life was in the past without mobile phones, the internet and fast means of transport?

a) هل تتوقع كم كانت الحياة صعبة فى الماضى بدون الهاتف المحمول والإنترنت ووسائل النقل الحديثة؟

b) هل تتخيل كم كانت الحياة صعبة فى الماضى بدون الهاتف المحمول والإنترنت ووسائل النقل السريعة؟

c) هل تتخيل كم كانت الحياة صعبة جدًا فى الماضى باستخدام الهاتف المحمول والإنترنت ووسائل النقل السريعة؟

d) هل تتخيل كم هى الحياة صعبة جدًا بدون الهاتف المحمول فى الماضى والإنترنت ووسائل النقل الحديثة؟

26. Answer the following questions:

1. Why do you think Mr Trelawney felt sorry for Redruth although he was his servant?

....

....

2. How do you think the group felt while facing the pirates?

....

....

3. If you were Silver, what would you think about the group when they raised a flag in the fort?

....

....

27. Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on the following:

"Why people travel abroad"

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Part 2

SKILLS



Part 2

(1) Reading Comprehension

(2) Writing

(3) Translation

1 Reading Comprehension قطع الفهم

TYPES OF COMPREHENSION QUESTIONS أنواع أسئلة قطع الفهم

1 Literal سؤال نصى مباشر

هذا النوع من الأسئلة (نصى مباشر) وفيه يستخرج الطالب الإجابة مباشرة من نص القطعة. فقط كل ما عليه هو مطابقة صياغة السؤال بنص القطعة.

Example

Read the following passage, then answer the question:
John put on his raincoat, grabbed an umbrella, and headed out the front door. As he walked outside, he saw dark clouds in the sky and felt small raindrops falling on his face. He knew he needed to stay dry on his way to work.

Question: What did John do before leaving the house?

a) He put on his raincoat and grabbed an umbrella.
b) He went back inside to get his phone.
c) He looked out the window at the rain.
d) He decided to walk to work without any rain protection.

The Answer: a)

2 Inference الاستنباط

هو سؤال غير مباشر يعتمد على الفهم واستخلاص الإجابة ... للإجابة عن هذا السؤال، يحتاج الطالب إلى تطوير مهارات الاستنتاج غير المباشر للوصول للإجابة.

Example

Read the following passage, then answer the question:
Sarah walked into the kitchen and saw flour, sugar and chocolate chips on the counter. She noticed her mum pulling out a mixing bowl and a recipe book. The delightful aroma رائحة filled the air.

Question: What can you infer about Sarah's mum?

a) She is preparing to leave.
b) She is getting ready for a party.
c) She is baking cookies.
d) She is making a salad.

The Answer: c)

3 Main Idea الفكرة الرئيسية

هو سؤال عن الفكرة الأساسية أو الدرس المستفاد من القطعة ... وللإجابة عن هذا السؤال يجب أن توافق الإجابة موضوع القطعة أو الفكرة العامة.

Example

Read the following passage, then answer the question:
The solar system consists of the sun, eight planets, and various other celestial objects. Each planet has distinct characteristics and orbits the sun in a specific pattern. The study of the solar system provides valuable insights into the vastness and complexity of our universe.

Question: What is the main idea of the passage?

a) The study of the solar system.
b) The characteristics of each planet.
c) The vastness of the universe.
d) The orbit patterns of celestial objects.

The Answer: a)

4 Opinion

الرأى

هو سؤال عن رأى الكاتب والجو العام للنص ... وللإجابة عن هذا السؤال، يحتاج الطالب إلى فهم أى رأى يؤيده الكاتب، وما هو طبيعة النص؛ هل لهجة الكتاب تدل على نصيحة، أم حكاية، أم نقد؟ ... إلخ.

Example

Read the following passage, then answer the question:

The importance of education in today's world cannot be overstated. It empowers individuals to make informed decisions, improving critical thinking skills, and broadens their understanding of various subjects. Education plays an important role in shaping a nation's future by bringing up responsible citizens who contribute positively to society.

Question: Which of the following statements best reflects the author's opinion about the significance of education?

a) Education is only important for personal growth.

b) Education has no impact on a nation's progress.

c) Education is vital for individual and social development.

d) Education is only useful for acquiring specific job skills.

The Answer: c)

5 Summarising

التلخيص

هو سؤال تلخيص الفقرة ... للإجابة عن هذا السؤال، يحتاج الطالب إلى قراءة الفقرة المطلوب تلخيصها ثم تحديد الكلمات المفتاحية داخل الفقرة، مع تحديد الفكرة الأساسية للقطعة.

Example

Read the following passage, then answer the question:

Artificial intelligence (AI) has revolutionised various industries, enabling automation and enhancing efficiency. AI applications, such as machine learning and natural language processing, have significantly impacted fields like healthcare, finance and transportation. As AI continues to evolve, it is expected to create new job opportunities while also raising concerns about privacy and security.

Question: What is the primary purpose of summarising the information about artificial intelligence in the passage?

a) To describe the history of AI development.

b) To discuss the potential risks of AI in detail.

c) To highlight the various industries where AI is being implemented.

d) To predict the future of AI and its impact on the job market.

The Answer: d)

6 Word in Text

كلمة فى النص

هو سؤال عن معنى الكلمة داخل النص (مرادف وعكس) وللإجابة عن هذا السؤال، يحتاج الطالب إلى تحديد الاسم الذى يعود عليه الضمير، أو فهم معانى الكلمات، أو معرفة المرادف والعكس.

Example

Read the following passage, then answer the question:

The process of photosynthesis is crucial for plant growth and survival, as it allows them to convert sunlight, water, and carbon dioxide into oxygen and glucose. Chlorophyll, a green pigment found in plants, plays a vital role in this process by absorbing light energy. Photosynthesis occurs primarily in the leaves, where specialised cells called chloroplasts are present. This energy conversion is essential for maintaining the balance of life on Earth, as it provides oxygen for animals and humans to breathe.

Question: Identify the word in the passage that represents the synonym of "essential."

a) Crucial. b) Unimportant. c) Optional. d) Irrelevant.

The Answer: a)

(قطعة للتدريب بها كل أنماط الأسئلة السابق شرحها)

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

The town of Willow Creek was known for its beautiful landscapes and friendly residents. The annual Willow Creek Festival, held in the heart of the town, attracted visitors from all over the country. The festival featured local artisans, musicians, and chefs, who came together to celebrate the town's rich cultural heritage.

One of the main attractions of the festival was the Willow Creek Art Competition, where talented artists competed for the prestigious Golden Brush Award. The competition was judged by a panel of renowned artists from different parts of the country, who appreciated the diverse styles and techniques displayed by the participants.

In addition to the art competition, the festival included live music performances, a farmers' market, and various interactive workshops for both children and adults. The festival demonstrated the town's commitment to preserving its unique identity and promoting local talent.

1. Inference: What can be inferred about the town of Willow Creek from the passage?

a) It is a modern and bustling city.
b) It is a small, quiet town.
c) It is a culturally rich and vibrant place.
d) It is an industrial town focused on manufacturing.

2. Main Idea: What is the main purpose of the Willow Creek Festival?

a) To attract tourists.
b) To celebrate the town's cultural heritage.
c) To showcase local talent.
d) To promote the town's agricultural products.

3. Literal: According to the passage, which event is a part of the Willow Creek Festival?

a) A marathon race. b) A cooking competition.
c) The Willow Creek Art Competition. d) A fashion show.

4. **Opinion:** What does the passage imply about the importance of the Golden Brush Award?

a) It is a minor prize.

b) It is a prestigious award in the art world.

c) The passage does not express an opinion about the award.

d) It is more important than the other events in the festival.

5. **Summarising:** What is the key message of the passage?

a) The Willow Creek Festival is an important event for the town.

b) The festival promotes local talent and cultural heritage.

c) The Golden Brush Award is a significant achievement for artists.

d) The town of Willow Creek values its cultural heritage and local talent.

6. **Word in Text:** What does "prestigious" mean in the context of the passage?

a) Common.

b) Famous.

c) Highly respected and honoured.

d) Expensive.

7. **Referring to:** The underlined pronoun "its" refers to ....

a) the art competition

b) the festival

c) the farmers' market

d) the town

The Answers:

1. c)	2. a)	3. c)	4. b)	5. d)	6. c)	7. d)

توجيهات عامة لقطعة الفهم

يجب اتباع الآتى عند حل سؤال قطعة الفهم:

١ نقرأ القطعة قراءة سريعة استكشافية، ولا نتوقف عند المفردات الصعبة، ويفضل البعض أن يقرأ الأسئلة أولًا.

٢ نقرأ الأسئلة لتحديد المعلومات التى نبحث عنها.

٣ نقرأ القطعة للمرة الثانية لنبحث عن إجابات الأسئلة.

٤ التمهل فى فهم السؤال ومعرفة معنى كلمات الاستفهام.

٥ التمهل فى استخلاص الإجابة؛ فقد تكون إجابة السؤال الأول فى الفقرة الثانية، وليس شرطًا أن تكون فى الفقرة الأولى.

٦ عدم الانزعاج من عدم معرفة المفردات والجمل الصعبة الواردة فى القطعة، فالمفردات الصعبة واردة لا محالة.

٧ يلزم فهم المعنى العام وتطويع المفردات حسب موضوع القطعة، مع استخدام القدرة على التخمين.

٨ قد نجد إيضاح الكلمة الصعبة فى العبارة التالية لها.

٩ قبل اختيار الإجابة الصحيحة تأكد من أن الإجابات الأخرى غير صحيحة بالمرة.

Comprehension Exercises

Passage No. 1

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

A barber was in his shop, busily cutting a man's hair when a handsome young stranger came in. He had a young boy with him. They sat down and waited until the barber had finished. Then the young man asked the barber to shave his head first and then cut the young boy's hair because he wanted to have a cup of tea while he was cutting the boy's hair. After the barber had finished shaving, he got up and said that he would go down the road to have his tea. "All right, but I won't take long" the barber warned him.

The man went out and the barber began to cut the boy's hair. He soon finished and then the boy sat down and waited. At the end of half an hour, the barber said, "It is a pity that your father's taking such a long time. Where is he likely to be now?" "I can't guess", answered the boy. "And that man wasn't my father. I'd never seen him before in my life. I was playing in the street when he came and asked me whether I'd like to have my hair cut without having to pay anything."

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The young boy was ....
   a) the man's son
   b) the man's relative
   c) a stranger to the man
   d) the man's friend
2. The young man took the young boy with him ....
   a) because he wanted the boy to have his hair cut
   b) in order not to pay anything
   c) in order to let the boy pay
   d) in order to stay with him
3. The young boy went to the barber on condition that ....
   a) the man wouldn't pay the barber
   b) the boy would pay the barber
   c) the man would give the boy some money
   d) the boy wouldn't pay anything
4. The barber didn't ask the stranger to pay him when he left because he was sure that ....
   a) the stranger wouldn't return
   b) the boy wouldn't pay him
   c) such a man wouldn't cheat him
   d) the stranger was dishonest
5. While the barber was cutting the boy's hair, ...
   a) the young man escaped
   b) the young man was waiting for his son
   c) the young man was having his tea
   d) the young man was having his breakfast
6. The barber discovered that the young man had deceived him when ....
   a) he went out
   b) he finished cutting the boy's hair
   c) the boy said that he had never seen that man before
   d) the young man asked him to cut the boy's hair
7. The underlined word "guess" means "......................".
   a) need
   b) learn
   c) think
   d) earn

Passage No. 2

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

The word "clown" is sometimes used to label a person as foolish. But being called a clown is not always an insult. The art of clowning is an old, honourable tradition. It includes not just modern-day circus clowns but court jesters, who performed for kings or emperors, and theatrical clowns, who were onstage as early as 500 years ago.

Throughout history, most cultures have had clowns. These clowns do more than they just make people laugh. They are often shown as powerless fools, but sometimes clowns actually enjoy great freedom of speech. Using humour, clowns are able to question their leaders in a way ordinary people might not be able to do.

For example, in ancient China, Emperor Shih Huang-Ti ordered to have the Great Wall of China built. During its construction, thousands of workers died due to poor working conditions. The Emperor planned to have the Great Wall painted, which would have resulted in even more lives lost. The Emperor's jester, Yu Sze, was the only person who dared to criticise this plan. He did so jokingly, but his jokes persuaded the Emperor not to paint the Great Wall. For this Yu Sze is now celebrated as a national hero in China.

Clowns remind us that humour can be one of the most effective ways to influence people. The clowns of our culture—those who make us laugh and look at life in new ways—may not represent foolishness at all, but wisdom in disguise.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The author of this passage is most interested in ....
a) presenting the history of clowns
b) explaining why Yu Sze is a hero
c) discussing the role clowns play in a culture
d) making people feel better about being called a clown

2. In paragraph 2, the author suggests that sometimes clowns have "great freedom of speech" compared to ordinary people because clowns are ....
a) not afraid of their leaders
b) smarter than ordinary people
c) able to use humour to make a point
d) viewed as national heroes

3. According to the author, Yu Sze persuaded the Chinese Emperor not to ....
a) build the Great Wall
b) mistreat the workers
c) paint the Great Wall
d) starve the workers

4. In the final paragraph, the author suggests that clowns may represent "wisdom in disguise." By this, the author means that clowns ....
a) are smarter than they appear
b) show up in unexpected places
c) should always be respected
d) dress up in costumes

5. According to the passage, which of the following is NOT true?
a) Only a few cultures used to have clowns.
b) Clowns do more than just make people laugh.
c) The Chinese are grateful to Yu Sze.
d) Clowning is an art.

6. Which of the following is the best title for this passage? "......................".
a) The Story of a Circus Clown
b) The Great Wall of China
c) An Honourable Tradition
d) A Famous Chinese Emperor

7. According to the author, humour is an effective way to .... people.
a) entertain
b) imprison
c) influence
d) understand

Passage No. 3

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Chess is called the game of kings. People have been playing it for over five hundred years. Chess is based on an older Indian game. The chess we play today is from Europe.

Chess is a two-player game. Each piece moves in a special way. One piece is called the king. Each player has one. The players take turns moving their pieces. The game ends when a player loses his or her king.

Some people think that chess is more than a game because good chess players use their brains. They take their time. They think about what will happen next. These skills are useful in life. Chess is like a workout for the mind. You don't always have lots of time to think when playing chess.

There is a type of chess with short time limits. It's called blitz chess in which each player gets ten minutes to use for the whole game. You need to hit the clock once you finish your turn to stop your time and start the other player's time. If you run out of time, you lose. Computers have been playing chess since the 1970s. At first, they did not play well. As time went on, they grew stronger. In 1997, a computer beat the best player in the world for the first time. Chess sure has come a long way.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Which is not a reason that chess is a good workout for the mind according to the text?

a) Good chess players think about what will happen next.
b) Good chess players take a lot of risks.
c) Good chess players take their time.
d) Good chess players use their brains.

2. How long have people been playing chess?

a) Over 100 years. b) Over 500 years. c) Over 1000 years. d) Over 5000 years.

3. Where did the game that chess is based on come from?

a) Europe. b) America. c) India. d) All of these.

4. Which best describes the main idea in the fourth paragraph?

a) This paragraph argues that players should think less.
b) This paragraph explains how blitz chess is played.
c) This paragraph explains time clocks work.
d) This paragraph describes many different ways to play chess.

5. How is blitz chess different from regular chess?

a) Each player has two kings. b) Players are blindfolded.
c) Players only have ten minutes to play. d) Players start from a random position.

6. If it's your turn in blitz chess, what happens when you hit the clock?

a) Both your clock and the other person's clock keep running.
b) The other person's clock stops running and yours starts.
c) Both clocks stop running.
d) Your clock stops running and the other person's clock begins.

7. When did a computer first beat a strong human player in chess?

a) In the 20s. b) In the 90s. c) In the 70s. d) In the 80s.

Passage No. 4

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

In a small village, there lived a little girl whose name was Sophia. Her uncle gave her a few pennies to share with her twin brother John on their fifth birthday. She looked at the pieces and said, "What shall we do with them, Mother?" "You mustn't spend them foolishly," said their mother. The twins ran into the street. They wondered what they should buy. Should they buy candy? They hardly knew how it tasted. Should they buy a toy? If they had been the only children in the family, things might have been different. However, there were three boys older than them and two little younger sisters.

They hadn't gone far when they met a larger boy who was blowing a flute. "I wish I had that flute," John said. The big boy looked at them and blew it and said," Oh, what a pretty sound it made!" Sophia showed the money to the boy. "You may have them if you will give us the flute." "All of them?" The boy asked. She looked at her brother and then nodded. "Well, it's a deal," said the boy, and he gave the flute to them and took the pennies. Little John was very happy. They ran home quickly.

"You've paid a dear price for this thing. You might have bought half a dozen of such flutes with the money," said his mother. The twins saw what a mistake they had made. The flute did not please John anymore. He threw it upon the floor and began to cry. "Never mind," said the mother very kindly. "You are only very little, and you will learn a great deal as you grow bigger."

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The central idea of this passage can be "......................".

a) The older you grow, the wiser you will be
b) The more people you meet, the more money you will get
c) The more money you get, the fewer things you will buy
d) The more relatives you have, the more money you will earn

2. .... liked to have the flute.

a) The flute boy b) Sophia c) John d) The mother

3. How were the twins deceived by the boy?

a) The boy sold them his flute for more than it deserved.
b) They decided to buy a flute for their mother.
c) They had to buy a flute to play with their brothers.
d) The mother gave them money to buy a flute.

4. "They hardly knew how it tasted." This sentence shows that the twins ....

a) live in poverty b) didn't like candy
c) had to inform their mother d) preferred to taste it

5. After John's experience of buying the flute, he might learn to ....

a) waste his money b) stop crying
c) ask his father for money d) value things

6. Although the mother advised her children to spend money wisely, she didn't get .... when they didn't follow her advice.

a) upset b) happy c) delighted d) satisfied

7. According to the passage, the big boy took advantage of the children and ....

a) took all their money b) played the flute again
c) gave them the flute for free d) tried to sell the flute

Passage No. 5

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

We sometimes feel that if only we were a little less shy, a little less afraid and a little more experienced, we might be bigger and braver and much more useful people than we are. A good deal of what we think of as exhaustion or fatigue is a mental thing, rather than bodily tiredness or weariness. As a result, a change will do for us as much as actual resting. There is truth in the old wise saying or proverb that change is as good as a bottle of medicine.

The wise student does not sit all night studying one single subject, but rather, having spent an hour at one subject, turns to some other different subjects for a further hour, and so on. By such a method, they will keep mentally fresh for three or four hours of real study. Another student, by thinking to devote the same three or four hours to one single subject, will, before he is halfway through, become listless, too tired to show interest or do anything and will fail to take in the meaning of what they are reading.

Trust yourself and you could be much bigger and more successful than you are. Self-distrust gives our real abilities no chance to shine and express ourselves. If you want to be greater, you must wake up and trust yourself, so that you may discover and use the abilities and potentialities within you which you may never have dreamed of possessing.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Most of what we think as exhaustion is due to ....
- a) tiredness or fatigue
- b) bodily tiredness
- c) a mental thing
- d) bodily weariness

2. Change is ....
- a) more useful than a bottle of medicine
- b) less useful than a bottle of medicine
- c) of the same effect as a bottle of medicine
- d) of no use as a bottle of medicine

3. A good title for the passage may be "...................".
- a) The wise student
- b) Bodily weariness
- c) Pieces of advice
- d) Self-distrust

4. The students fail to understand what they are reading when ....
- a) they are tired
- b) they are lazy
- c) they wake up late
- d) the subject is hard

5. Mistrust is bad for students as it ....
- a) hides their abilities
- b) cripples their legs
- c) keeps them unhealthy
- d) makes subjects harder

6. The writer thinks that if we are less shy, we ....
- a) might be stronger
- b) might be happier
- c) might be bigger
- d) we must be taller

7. Which one is not mentioned in the passage?
- a) Self-confidence makes you better.
- b) We must discover our potentialities.
- c) Wise students don't study one subject at night.
- d) People and all students are active in the morning.

لكتابة مقال جيد يجب أن تبدأ بكتابة جملة صحيحة (sentence) ومن ثم فقرة صحيحة (paragraph).

وللقيام بذلك عليك مراعاة التالى:

١ التكوين الصحيح للجملة، فالجملة فى اللغة الإنجليزية تبدأ بالفاعل ثم الفعل.

٢ أن تبدأ كل جملة باستخدام حرف كبير Capital.

٣ أن تضع (Full stop) واضحة فى نهاية كل جملة.

٤ أن تستخدم الزمن الصحيح والمناسب لنوعية الموضوع الذى تكتبه، فقد يكون فى المضارع وقد يكون فى الماضى أو المستقبل أو خليطًا بينهم.

٥ الاستخدام الصحيح للضمائر حسب موقعها فى الجملة.

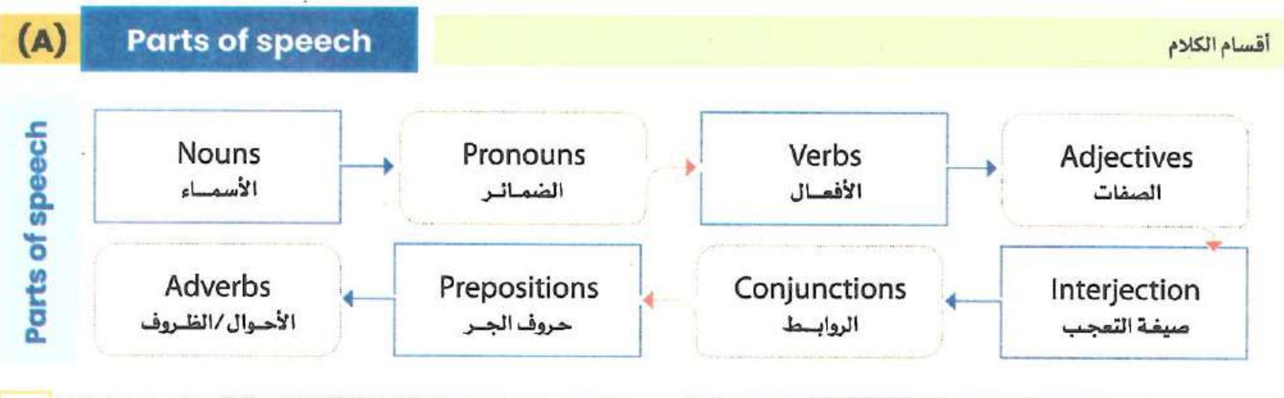
٦ تجنب استخدام الجمل المعقدة التى تحتوى على مفردات وتركيبات صعبة واستخدم الجمل البسيطة والسهلة فى المعنى.

٧ إذا استخدمت أى من أدوات الربط فيجب عليك مراعاة القواعد الصحيحة لها.

Sentence writing كتابة الجمـــل

يجب تعلم أقسام الكلام جيدًا فى اللغة الإنجليزية لفهم كيفية بناء الأنواع المختلفة من الجمل.

(A) Parts of speech أقسام الكلام



1 Nouns الأسماء

A noun is a word that names a person, a place, an animal or a thing.

الاسم هو كلمة تشير إلى شخص أو مكان أو حيوان أو شىء مثال:

Ahmed, people, man, horse, Cairo, door, factory, football, swimming, etc.

Types of Nouns أنواع الأسماء		Examples
Common Noun	الاسم الشائع يشير إلى شىء عام وليس شيئًا محددًا	woman, man, town, country, school, tree, location, etc.
Proper Noun	اسم العلم يشير إلى الاسم المحدد لشىء ما، ويبدأ بحرف كبير	Osama, Hala, Cairo, Google, Earth, Eiffel Tower, etc.
Countable Noun	الاسم المعدود يمكن عده بالأرقام ويكون فى صيغة المفرد والجمع ويستخدم المفرد منه مع أداتى النكرة a/an	car, teacher, tree, lion, eye, table, pen, film, street, etc.
Uncountable Noun	الاسم الذى لا يعد يشير إلى شىء لا يمكن عده ولا يستخدم مع a/an	furniture, advice, mail, news, hope, luggage, work, coffee, information, etc.

2 Pronouns

الضمائر

A pronoun is a word that is used instead of a noun.

الضمير هو كلمة تستخدم بدلًا من الاسم، لاحظ الجدول التالى:

Types of Pronouns أنواع الضمائر		Examples
Personal Pronouns	الضمائر الشخصية تمثل الأشخاص أو الأشياء.	I – He – She – We – They فاعل me – him – her – us – them مفعول it – you فاعل ومفعول
Possessive Pronouns	ضمائر الملكية لبيان الملكية والانتماء والخصوصية.	my – his – her – its – our – your – their صفات الملكية (تتبع باسم) mine – his – hers – ours – yours – theirs ضمائر الملكية (لا تتبع باسم)
Demonstrative Pronouns	ضمائر الإشارة تعنى «إظهار» أو «توضيح» شيء ما.	this – that – these – those
Reflexive Pronouns	الضمائر المنعكسة (تنعكس على فاعل الجملة) وتفيد التأكيد وتسمى intensive	myself – yourself – himself – herself – itself – ourselves – themselves
Relative Pronouns	ضمائر الوصل هى ضمائر تربط أجزاء مختلفة من الجملة.	who – whom – which – that – whoever, etc.
Indefinite Pronouns	الضمائر غير المحددة هى ضمائر لا تشير إلى أى شخص أو شيء معين.	anything – everybody – another – each – few – many – none – some

3 Verbs

الأفعال

الفعل هو كلمة أو مجموعة كلمات تعبر عن فعل أو حالة مثل:

go, jump, sleep, eat, think, be, change, become, drive, complete, etc.

We had a nice lunch./ I think that he is right./ He drove for hours.

Types of Verbs أنواع الأفعال		Examples
Auxiliary Verbs (also called "helping verbs")	الأفعال المساعدة هى أفعال تستخدم مع الفعل الرئيسى للجملة للتعبير عن الفعل أو الحالة.	(Be) am – is – are – was – were (Have) have – has – had (Do) do – does – did (Modals) will – would – can – could – may – might – shall – should – must – ought to
Stative Verbs	– هى أفعال الشعور والإدراك والتملك وبعض الأفعال الأخرى. – لا يتم استخدام أفعال الحالة عادة فى الأزمنة المستمرة.	be – seem – love – own – want – sound – have – know – understand – belong – forget
Phrasal Verbs	الفعل الاصطلاحى هو فعل مدمج مع ظرف أو حرف جر. يخلق معنى جديدًا.	look for يبحث عن run into يقابل صدفة

4 Adjectives

الصفات

An adjective is a word that describes a person or thing.

الصفة هى كلمة تصف شخصًا أو شيئًا، مثل:

big, old, pretty, expensive, green, round, French, loud, quick, fat, etc.

ترتيب الصفات قبل الاسم:

Opinion الرأى	Size الحجم	Age العمر	Shape الهيئة	Colour اللون	Origin بلد المنشأ	Material المادة	Used for الغرض	+ Noun الاسم
nice	big	old	round	red	Egyptian	metal	dinner	table

That's a comfortable big German car.

5 Adverbs

الأحوال / الظروف

الحال هو كلمة تصف: ١- الفعل ٢- الصفة ٣- الحال ٤- الجملة

Examples

(1) Verb	الحال يصف الفعل	She runs **quickly**.
(2) Adjective	الحال يصف الصفة	She is **extremely** beautiful.
(3) Adverb	الحال يصف الحال	She smokes **very** rarely.
(4) Sentence	الحال يصف الجملة	**Naturally**, you don't have to come.

Adverbs usually answer the following questions:

الأحوال عادة ما تجاوب مثل هذه الأسئلة:

- Where? Home.
- How? Slowly.
- How long? Temporarily.
- To what degree? Very.
- When? Yesterday.
- How often? Sometimes.
- How likely? Surely.

كيف يتكون الحال؟ غالبًا نحول الصفة إلى حال بإضافة ly.

Adjective + ly

quick + ly	quickly	brave + ly	bravely
strange + ly	strangely	real + ly	really
dead + ly	deadly	heavy + ly	heavily

هناك أحوال لا تنتهى بـ ly مثل:

fast, very, hard, home, just, too, well, never, sometimes, and so forth

TYPES OF ADVERBS أنواع الأحوال/الظروف

Adverbs of degree	توضح لنا ظروف الدرجة قوة أو درجة الفعل أو الحالة.	very, highly, totally, perfectly, partially, almost
Adverbs of manner	توضح لنا هذه الظروف الطريقة التى يتم بها العمل. وتجيب عن السؤال المبدوء بـ How	well, badly, nicely, slowly, loudly, quietly, happily, sadly, secretly, weakly
Adverbs of place	توضح لنا ظروف المكان موقع الفعل أو الحالة. وتجيب عن السؤال المبدوء بـ Where	home, here, there, outside, inside, away, around, anywhere, abroad, up, down, out
Adverbs of time	توضح لنا ظروف الوقت وقت الفعل أو الحالة. وتجيب عن السؤال المبدوء بـ When	now, soon, later, yesterday, tomorrow, early, before, lately, recently
Adverbs of frequency	توضح لنا ظروف التكرار معدل تكرار الإجراء أو الحالة. وتجيب عن السؤال المبدوء بـ How often	always, never, sometimes, often, rarely, usually, occasionally
Adverbs of duration	توضح لنا ظروف المدة طول الإجراء أو الحالة. وتجيب عن السؤال المبدوء بـ For how long	forever, constantly, temporarily, briefly
Adverbs of probability	توضح لنا ظروف الاحتمال فرص حدوث الإجراء أو الحالة. وتجيب عن السؤال المبدوء بـ How likely	certainly, maybe, probably, possibly, surely

6 Prepositions

حروف الجر

حرف الجر هو كلمة تستخدم قبل اسم أو ضمير لربطها بكلمة أخرى فى الجملة. يتم استخدامه عادةً لإظهار الموقع أو الاتجاه أو الوقت، وما إلى ذلك مثل:

on, in, at, by, under, above, beside, to, out, from, for

Let's go into the house./ We will meet at four o'clock./ He went to school.

7 Conjunctions

الروابط

الرابط هو كلمة تربط بين جملتين أو أكثر مثل: and, but, or, because, so

I want to come, but I can't.

She is smart, and they expect her to answer quickly.

He didn't pass the test because he didn't understand the subject.

We were hungry, so we ordered pizza.

8 Interjection

صيغة التعجب

صيغة التعجب هى صوت أو كلمة أو عبارة قصيرة تستخدم للتعبير عن مشاعر المتحدث.

Oh! Look out! Ow! Hey! Wow! Ah! Um ...

Wow, that's amazing!

Ah, that was a good meal!

Oh, dear! What happened?

Hello! How are you doing?

1 Decide which parts of speech are the underlined words:

1. I bought a beautiful T-shirt at the mall.
   a) Adverb b) Noun c) Preposition d) Adjective
2. What did he ask you to do?
   a) Preposition b) Conjunction c) Pronoun d) Noun
3. I left my shoes under the kitchen table.
   a) Adjective b) Preposition c) Pronoun d) Verb
4. If we finish our work quickly, we can watch the match.
   a) Adverb b) Conjunction c) Verb d) Adjective
5. On Saturdays, I work from nine to five.
   a) Noun b) Preposition c) Adverb d) Verb

(B) Punctuation

علامات الترقيم

قد تمتلك مهارات لغوية جيدة وتعرف كيفية التعبير عن نفسك بلغة صحيحة، ولكن دون معرفة علامات الترقيم فإن مهاراتك، وخاصة المكتوبة، تصبح غير مكتملة. ويصعب قراءة قطعة من الكتابة لا تتضمن علامات الترقيم مقارنة بقطعة أخرى تحمل علامات الترقيم المناسبة فى الأماكن الصحيحة؛ لذلك يجب أن نناقش علامات الترقيم وخاصة شائعة الاستخدام منها:

1 Capital letters

الحروف الكبيرة

My friend visited me yesterday. Where is the post office?	١- أول الجملة سواء خبرية أو استفهامية أو أمرية.
He said, "My father bought me a camera".	٢- فى بداية الجملة الموجودة بين علامات الاقتباس فى الكلام المباشر.
Ahmed and Emad are my friends.	٣- أسماء الأشخاص والأعلام.
Saudi Arabia is a rich country. I live in 22 Al-Nasr Street, Maadi.	٤- أسماء القارات والدول والعواصم والعناوين.
the A.R.E./ the U.S.A./ the K.S.A. /Mr/ Miss/ Dr	٥- فى الاختصارات.
the Red Sea/ the River Nile/ the Pacific Ocean/ the Alps/ Lake Victoria	٦- أسماء البحار والبحيرات والجبال والجزر والمحيطات والأنهار.
Omar speaks English, French and Spanish.	٧- أسماء اللغات.
Next Sunday, I will travel to Alex.	٨- أيام الأسبوع والشهور.
I am Egyptian, but my friend is American.	٩- الجنسيات.
My friend Hossam is training for the Winter Olympics.	١٠- الاسم العلم، وهو ما يشير إلى شخص أو مكان أو مؤسسة فردية أو حدث فردى.
Britain profited from the Industrial Revolution.	١١- أسماء الفترات التاريخية المميزة.
During Ramadan, Muslims must fast.	١٢- أسماء الأعياد والأيام المقدسة.
I like "The Times".	١٣- أسماء الكتب والأفلام والمسرحيات والصحف والمجلات.

2 Comma (,)

الفاصلة السفلى

Thanks for all your help, Osama. Osama, I want you to study hard.	١- عند مخاطبة الشخص بالاسم.
We went to school, and then to the stadium.	٢- فصل جملتين كاملتين أو عبارتين.
Sara wanted the black, green, and blue dress. You can fly to Bombay via Moscow, Athens or Cairo.	٣- فصل العناصر داخل الجمل عندما تكون هناك كلمات أو عبارات أو جمل مرتبطة بكلمة and أو or.
I was born on 9th August, 2000.	٤- فصل الأرقام والتواريخ.
I live in Cairo, Egypt.	٥- فصل العنوان.
I meant Ali, not Ahmed.	٦- فصل شخصين أو أى عناصر أخرى.
She said, "I'm sorry".	٧- قبل جملة المباشر التى بين الأقواس.
Sure, Well, No, Yes, Yesterday, Tomorrow, Sorry, Excuse me, Luckily, However, etc.	٨- بعد الروابط الزمنية وعبارات معينة إذا جاءت أول الكلام.
Although I was ill yesterday, I went to school.	٩- تفصل بين جملتين فى حالة استخدام أداة ربط فى أول الجملة.
My brother is very clever, but he doesn't want to be a doctor.	١٠- فى منتصف الجملة قبل أدوات الربط التالية: and, but, for, or, nor, so, yet
My book, which is on the table, is really useful. Ali, who is my neighbour, is really helpful.	١١- قبل وبعد جملة الوصل التى يمكن الاستغناء عنها (non-defining).
These birds are beautiful, aren't they?	١٢- قبل السؤال المذيل.

3 Full stop = period (.)

علامة التوقف

The boys are playing.	١- نهاية الجملة الخبرية.
Give me the blue dictionary.	٢- نهاية الجملة الأمرية.

4 Question Mark (?)

علامة الاستفهام

Have you finished writing? She asked, "Are you happy to be home?" Where did you go yesterday?	١- نهاية السؤال.
He asked me what I was doing.	٢- لاحظ أيضًا إذا حولنا السؤال من مباشر إلى غير مباشر يتحول إلى جملة خبرية ولا نضع علامة استفهام.

5 Exclamation Mark/Point (!) علامة التعجب

What a cute puppy! How fast you ran! You're such a liar!	١- تستخدم علامة التعجب بعد العبارات والجمل التى تعبر عن عاطفة أو رغبة مفاجئة.
What a wonderful pyramid!	٢- لاحظ أن التعجب يبدأ بكلمات استفهام فى بعض حالاته، ففرق بينه وبين الاستفهام.

6 Apostrophe (') الفاصلة العليا

it's = it is or it has we'll = we will or we shall they've = they have he'd = he would or he had	١- للاختصارات
We should care for children's health. Ahmed's car was repaired yesterday.	٢- الملكية إذا لم ينته الاسم بـ S وتوضع قبل الـ S سواء كان مفردًا أو جمعًا.
My parents' flat is on the first floor.	٣- للملكية إذا انتهى الاسم بـ S وتوضع بعد الـ S.
How many s's are there in "Mississippi"?	٤- عند جمع الحروف.

7 Colon (:) النقطتان

He was planning to study four subjects: politics, philosophy, sociology, and economics.	١- بعد كلمة بعدها قائمة لأشياء أو شرح لشىء أو مثال.
I didn't have time to get changed: I was already late.	٢- بين الجمل عندما تعطى الجملة الثانية شرحًا للجملة الأولى، على غرار الفاصلة المنقوطة.
There was one thing she loved more than any other: her dog.	٣- للتأكيد.
The ratio 2 : 4 is equivalent to the ratio 1 : 2.	٤- لبيان النسب.
The train leaves at 4:30 p.m.	٥- مع الوقت.

8 Semicolon (;) الفاصلة المنقوطة

Some people like ketchup with their fries; others prefer vinegar.	١- لربط الجمل وثيقة الصلة.
My plan included taking him to a nice dinner; going to the park to look at the stars; and having a ride along the beach.	٢- لتقسيم عناصر القائمة إذا كانت العناصر طويلة أو تحتوى على علامات ترقيم داخلية.
Be here by 4 o'clock at the latest; otherwise, we will not wait.	٣- لفصل جملة عن تفسيرها.

9 Hyphen (-) الواصلة

part-time, back-to-back, well-known, sister-in-law, half-brother, etc.	تستخدم الواصلة لربط كلمتين أو أكثر معًا فى مصطلح مركب، ولا يتم فصلها بمسافات.

10 Inverted commas ("...") علامات الاقتباس

"Don't go outside," she said.

تستخدم لبيان جملة مقتبسة من كلام شخص، وما بينهما لابد أن يبدأ بحرف Capital.



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Choose the correctly capitalised sentence.

a) Did mr ali play for al ahli club?
b) Did Mr Ali play for Al Ahli Club?
c) Did Mr Ali Play For Al Ahli Club?
d) Did Mr Ali play for al Ahli Club?

2. Choose the correctly capitalised sentence.

a) he lives in the Pacific northwest.
b) He lives in the pacific northwest.
c) He lives in The Pacific Northwest.
d) He lives in the Pacific northwest.

3. Which of the following sentences uses capital letters correctly?

a) Family day falls on February 15 this year.
b) Family Day falls on February 15 this year.
c) Family day falls on february 15 this year.
d) Family Day falls on February 15 this Year.

4. Which of the following sentences uses capital letters correctly?

a) On Tuesday, Professor Magdy commented on my essay about the World War.
b) On tuesday, Professor Magdy commented on my essay about the World War.
c) On Tuesday, professor magdy commented on my essay about the World War.
d) On Tuesday, Professor Magdy commented on my essay about the world war.

5. Which sentence below uses capital letters correctly?

a) She said, "he will never agree!".
b) I saw a play called annie get your Gun.
c) Columbus never saw The Indian ocean.
d) The film Charlie and the Chocolate Factory was entertaining.

Sentence patterns أنمـــاط الجمـــل

كما أن لكل لغة القواعد النحوية Grammar rules الخاصة فإن لكل لغة أنماطًا خاصة لتركيب الجملة، ولإجادة الكتابة باللغة الإنجليزية يجب أن نعلم الأنماط الأساسية للجمل فى اللغة الإنجليزية للتدريب عليها وأهمها:

1 Simple sentence الجملة البسيطة

Pattern (1)

Subject	Verb	Object
Alaa	eats	biscuits.
My father and mother	are eating	mangoes now.

(1) Rearrange the words in the correct order to make complete sentences:

1 That thin girl/ now/ milk/ is drinking.

....

2 the robbers yesterday/ The police/ caught.

....

3 our teacher/ like/ We.

....

4 My mother/ my baby sister/ is looking after.

....

5 has just written/ a letter/ The tall man.

....

Pattern (2)

Subject	Verb	Indirect Object	Direct Object
I	gave	my sister	a birthday present.
My parents	tell	me	stories.

(2) Rearrange the words in the correct order to make complete sentences:

1 The short man/ has bought/ some crayons from the stationery shop/ his son.

....

2 the policeman/ has just shown/ The driver/ his driving license.

....

3 the patient/ gave/ some medicine/ The nurse.

....

4 brought/ me/ a bouquet of flowers last week/ My uncle.

....

5 the shopkeeper/ The customer/ paid/ two hundred dollars.

....

Pattern (3)

Subject	Verb	Direct Object	Preposition	Indirect Object
My friend	has sent	a letter	to	me.
His parents	bought	a computer	for	him.

(3) Rewrite the following sentences by placing the word in brackets before the indirect object:

1 The postman gave her a letter yesterday. (to)

....

2 The dog owner gives his dog a bone every day. (to)

....

3 The students sent their teacher a present. (to)

....

4 The gardener handed me some flowers. (to)

....

5 My mother has given my father a cup of coffee. (to)

....

Pattern (4)

Object	Verb (to be + P.P.)	Subject
The truck	is driven	by him.
Seeds	are eaten	by canaries.

(4) Rearrange the words in the correct order to make complete sentences:

1 for/ him/ will be/ to/ A book/ his birthday/ given.

....

2 school/ were/ They/ away/ sent/ to.

....

3 tonight/ watched/ is going to/ A film/ be/ by us.

....

2 Compound sentence الجملة المركبة

تحتوى الجملة المركبة على جملتين مستقلتين على الأقل. يمكن دمج هاتين الجملتين المستقلتين مع فاصلة ورابط أو بفاصلة منقوطة.

She completed her literature review, and she created her reference list.
He organised his sources by theme; then, he updated his reference list.

3 Complex sentence الجملة المعقدة

تحتوى الجملة المعقدة على جملة مستقلة واحدة على الأقل وجملة تابعة واحدة على الأقل. يمكن أن تشير الجمل التابعة إلى الموضوع (who - which) التسلسل / الوقت (since - while) أو العناصر السببية، (because - so) أو الشرطية (if).

Although she completed her literature review, she still needed to work on her methods section.
Because he organised his sources by theme, it was easier for his readers to follow.
They studied grammar rules for many hours as they were so interesting.

لاحظ استخدام فاصلة (,) فى الجملتين الأوليين للبدء بأداة الربط، بينما لا توجد فى الثالثة لوجود أداة الربط فى المنتصف.

4 Compound-complex sentence الجملة المركبة المعقدة

تحتوى الجملة المركبة المعقدة على جملتين مستقلتين على الأقل وجملة تابعة واحدة على الأقل.

She completed her literature review, but she still needs to work on her methods section even though she finished her methods course last week.
Although he organised his sources by theme, he decided to arrange them chronologically, and he carefully followed the MEAL plan for organisation.

(5) Rearrange the words in the correct order to make complete sentences:

1 I want/ lose/ chocolate/ daily/ eat/ to/ weight,/ I/ yet.

....

2 country,/ in my/ spend/ I plan/ Italy/ two weeks/ favourite/ is/ to.

....

3 yesterday/ but he/ me/ saw/ Sami/ didn't/ I/ see.

....

4 went/ we only/ window-shopping/ the mall;/ We/ however/ went/ to.

....

5 football/ Because/ was/ was/ raining,/ the/ match/ it/ cancelled.

....

6 when/ laughed/ dad/ I told/ My/ a joke.

....

7 school/ cannot/ leave/ rings/ the bell/ You/ the/ until.

....

8 candy/ I like/ a film/ when/ to eat/ I watch.

....

9 the cat/ started/ ran away/ barking/ The dog/ so/ and I/ couldn't keep up.

....

10 because they/ are scary/ Kenzy/ doesn't like/ horror films,/ to watch.

....

Paragraph

الفقرة

– الفقرة عبارة عن سلسلة من الجمل منظمة ومتماسكة، وكلها مرتبطة بموضوع واحد، ويجب تنظيم الجمل ليكون الموضوع شيقًا وغير ممل. وتتطلب الكتابة معرفة القواعد والإلمام بمفردات لغوية معقولة، تنقسم الفقرة إلى ثلاثة أجزاء:

Paragraph structure

Topic sentence	Supporting sentences	Concluding sentence

1 Topic sentence

جملة الموضوع

It is the first sentence in the paragraph. The topic sentence states the main idea of the paragraph. That is, it shows what the whole paragraph is about. It can be called a 'hook' sentence that attempts to grab the reader's attention so that they want to read up on.

هى الجملة الأولى فى الفقرة. توضح الجملة الافتتاحية الفكرة الرئيسية للفقرة. أى أنها توضح ما تدور حوله الفقرة ويمكن أن تسمى (هوك) أو (جملة جاذبة للانتباه) تحاول جذب انتباه القارئ حتى يرغب فى القراءة.

2 Supporting sentences

الجمل الداعمة

They are used to develop the topic sentence. In other words, they give more information about the topic sentence. Supporting sentences can give facts, statistics, details, or examples.

تستخدم لتفصيل الجملة الافتتاحية. بمعنى آخر، يقدمون مزيدًا من المعلومات حول جملة الموضوع. يمكن أن تقدم الجمل الداعمة حقائق أو إحصائيات أو تفاصيل أو أمثلة.

3 Concluding/Closing sentence الجملة الختامية

The concluding/closing sentence is the last sentence in the paragraph. It usually restates the topic sentence in different words or summarises the main points of the paragraph.

الجملة الختامية هى الجملة الأخيرة فى الفقرة. عادة ما يعيد صياغة الجملة الافتتاحية بكلمات مختلفة أو يلخص النقاط الرئيسية للفقرة.

4 Transitions التعبيرات/الأدوات الانتقالية

هى أدوات أو تعبيرات يمكن استخدامها للربط بين الجمل الداعمة داخل الفقرة. ومنها:

Addition عند الإضافة			
and	و	further	أبعد/بالإضافة
also	أيضًا	furthermore	بالإضافة إلى (ذلك)
besides	بالإضافة إلى ذلك	in addition	بالإضافة
first (second, etc.)	أولًا (ثانيًا ... إلخ)	moreover	علاوةً على (ذلك)
What's more	وما هو أكثر	next	التالى
In addition to that	بالإضافة إلى (ذلك)	as well as	بالإضافة إلى
Giving an opinion عند إبداء الرأى			
in my opinion	فى رأيى	in my point of view	فى وجهة نظرى
I see	إنى أرى	I think	أعتقد
Giving an example عند طرح أمثلة			
For example	على سبيل المثال	In fact	فى الحقيقة
For instance	على سبيل المثال	To illustrate	وللتوضيح
Contrasting ideas عند تعارض الأفكار			
although	على الرغم من	however	ومع ذلك – ولكن
and yet	ومع ذلك	in contrast	على العكس
but	ولكن	in spite of	على الرغم من
despite	على الرغم من	nevertheless	مع هذا/غير أن
even though	على الرغم من	on the contrary	على العكس
on the other hand	من ناحية أخرى	though	على الرغم من
apart from that	باستثناء	yet	حتى الآن
To summarise or conclude للتلخيص أو الخاتمة			
All in all	فى المجمل	In summary	باختصار
In conclusion	للختام/فى المجمل	On the whole	فى المجمل/على العموم
In other words	بعبارات أخرى	Therefore	لذلك
In short	باختصار	To sum up	ملخصًا لما سبق
To conclude	للختام		
To show time روابط تشير إلى الوقت			
after	بعد	during	أثناء/خلال
afterwards	بعد أن	while	بينما
as	عندما	Finally	أخيرًا
as long as	طالما	when	عندما
as soon as	بمجرد أن	immediately	حالًا
At last	فى النهاية	later	فيما بعد
before	قبل	meanwhile	فى غضون/فى أثناء ذلك

Logical relationships العلاقات المنطقية مثل الشرط والسبب والنتيجة			
as a result	ونتيجة لذلك	because	لأن
consequently	بالتالى	for this reason	لهذا السبب
hence	من هنا	if	لو
so	لذلك	otherwise	وإلّا
therefore	بالتّالى	since	لأن
thus	هكذا	then	ثم
unless	لولم	without	بدون

Model Paragraph

Introduction

Topic sentence →

Money is very important in everyone's life. It helps us lead a healthy and peaceful life. The importance of money is increasing day by day as living has become so costly.

Body

Supporting sentences →

With money, we can buy what we need from the needle to the biggest thing. Money helps us learn and become educated and cultured persons. Our health depends mainly on money as we can't buy good food or go to the doctor if we don't have money.

Conclusion

To sum up, without money, we can't live well or achieve our aims. It is considered the backbone of our life.



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. How many ideas should a paragraph contain?
a) Only one idea. b) More than one idea.
c) Minimum of two ideas. d) Maximum of four ideas.

2. The main idea of a paragraph is introduced by what?
a) A collection of only adjectives. b) A topic sentence.
c) A collection of only nouns. d) A numerical beginning.

3. What can a paragraph be defined as?
a) A collection of sentences organised on the basis of a single thought or idea or subject.
b) A minimum of hundred words.
c) Writing that contains graphs.
d) A complete story, article or essay.

4. What should the body paragraph do?
a) Highlight the main idea. b) Support the main idea.
c) Connect to the next point. d) All of these.

5. Paragraphs that are coherent describe a writer's thoughts to be what?
a) Flowery. b) Beautiful.
c) Logical. d) Numerical.

Essay

المقال

المقال هو موضوع متكامل يتكون من العديد من الفقرات (ثلاثة أو أكثر) وتحتوى كل فقرة على فكرة معينة وكل فقرة بها جملة أساسية لبيان الفكرة (Topic sentence) ويمكن عند سرد أحداث قصة أو تسلسل أفكار مثلًا ألا تحتوى الفقرة على (Topic sentence) ولكن فى الموضوعات العامة لابد منها. وينقسم المقال إلى ثلاثة أجزاء:

Essay structure

Introduction	Body	Conclusion

1 Introduction

المقدمة

أول فقرة فى المقال وتتضمن معلومات عامة وأساسية عن الموضوع وتحتوى على الـ Thesis statement وهى الجملة التى تخبر القارئ بموضوع المقال. وتختلف المقدمات من موضوع لآخر حسب النوع، ففى موضوع الرأى مثلًا نذكر كيف يكون الشىء ونذكر رأينا فى المقدمة وفى الموضوعات الجدلية نذكر طرفى الجدال، كل فى جملة أو جملتين وهكذا، وسنبين ذلك فى الشرح القادم للأنواع.

2 Body

هيئة المقال

تتكون هيئة المقال من فقرتين أو أكثر ليتم مناقشة الفكرة الأساسية باستخدام الحقائق والحجج والتحليل والأمثلة وغيرها من المعلومات وتسمى (Supporting). وكل فقرة تحتوى على جمل تدعم الرأى الذى نتبناه أو الموضوع الذى نتناوله.

3 Conclusion

الخاتمة

وهو تلخيص (Summarisation) لما تم مناقشته فى الفقرات السابقة مع ذكر رأى الكاتب أو حسب نوع المقال.

Model Essay

Introduction

Money is very important in everyone's life. If we didn't have any money, either we would die or suffer a lot. Moreover, it helps us lead a healthy and peaceful life. In my opinion, I can't imagine life without money.

Body

Money has an effective influence on people's lives. It enables us to buy what we need (our necessities). In addition to that, a person needs money to make ends meet. As well as helping us to fulfill the eating, clothing and living requirements, it enables us to have a good education and better health care.

In addition, money helps us buy our necessities, improve our lives and enables us to be on welfare. Money increases the position of the person in society and gives a good impression to them. How could we have luxuries in life if we didn't have money?

Conclusion

To sum up, in my opinion, money is a required thing in life however; it cannot buy things like time, love and true care. It is needed by both the rich and the poor. No one can live without it.

Types of Essays

Persuasive إقناعى	Argumentative جدلى	Descriptive وصفى	Expository تفسيرى	Narrative قصصى

تتعدد أنواع المقال وأشكاله وبالطبع لكل نوع خصائص معينة فى الكتابة، وسنتناول بالشرح هذه الأنواع وكيفية الكتابة فى كل نوع:

1 Persuasive (Opinion) essay

المقال الإقناعى

نستخدم هذا النوع عند إبداء الرأى فى موضوع معين ويكون لدينا الحجج والبراهين التى تؤكد الرأى وفى هذا النوع من المقالات يحاول الكاتب أن يقنع القارئ بأن وجهة نظره هى الصحيحة. الكاتب يدعم رأيه بالحقائق والإحصائيات وآراء الخبراء. ويمكن تحديد عناصر موضوع الرأى فى الآتى:

Paragraph 1	What is the current situation? What is your point of view?	ما هو الوضع الحالى؟ ما هى وجهة نظرك فى هذا الأمر؟
Paragraph 2	Writing about your main idea by using wh. words and giving some examples. الكتابة عن فكرتك الأساسية من خلال استخدام كلمات الاستفهام وإعطاء الأمثلة.	
Paragraph 3	Giving other points through giving examples. (should be linked to the main point) إعطاء نقاط أخرى من خلال إعطاء أمثلة (يجب ربط الأمثلة بالنقطة الرئيسية)	
Paragraph 4	Reaffirm your opinion and end the essay.	أعد تأكيد رأيك واختم المقال.

Model Essay

Cleanliness is very important to fight diseases

Introduction

Nothing is more important than health. All people want to live healthily in a healthy environment. Diseases are enemies attacking living things and ending their lives. Besides, cleanliness is very important to fight these enemies. In my opinion, without hygiene and sanitation, we will suffer a lot from diseases.

Body

Concerning hygiene, people can do many things to protect themselves from all kinds of diseases. Our homes should be kept clean all the time. Our clothes mustn't be left dirty. Washing our hands before and after having meals is very necessary. It's important for everyone to have a bath regularly or after doing any kind of sport. Dishes shouldn't be left lying everywhere. We should eat healthy food and drink clean water.

Concerning sanitation, our streets should be clean in order not to be a means of spreading diseases. Rubbish should be put in dust bins. The government should punish those who pollute our environment. Our sources of water should be pure and healthy. Our means of transport should be environmentally friendly. Supermarkets should sell only healthy food.

Conclusion

To sum up, in my opinion, we should follow the rules of hygiene and sanitation which are very important in our life. We should be healthy and carry out the things needed to keep us healthy. To be healthy is very easy and doesn't cost us much, and it's within our reach.

2 Argumentative essay المقال الجدلى

Paragraph 1	The issue that the title raises.	القضية التى يثيرها العنوان
Paragraph 2	Arguments in favour of the title.	آراء المناصرين
Paragraph 3	Arguments against the title.	آراء المعارضين
Paragraph 4	Your experience and opinion.	تجربتك ورأيك الشخصى

Model Essay

Physical Education (P. E.) is a very important school subject

Introduction

It's often supposed by parents, teachers and students that P.E. is not important. They think that schools are a place of academic study and so sports are a waste of time. On the other hand, some people say that P.E. is one of the most essential subjects.

Body

Those who are in favour of P.E. say that it's necessary for students' health. They say that some students exercise only at school. It doesn't waste time as it's only one or two periods during the week. In addition to that, it teaches students good habits of a healthy lifestyle which will help them in the future.

Opponents of P.E. don't see its importance in education. Moreover, they say that it leads to violence because of its high level of competitiveness. Some think that the only place to do sports is in the club.

Conclusion

To sum up, I think that P.E. is as important as any other subject, but in a different way. These days teenagers spend too much time in front of screens. P.E. gives them the chance to change their sedentary life and do some exercise.

3 Descriptive essay (place/ people) المقال الوصفى

دائمًا ما يأتى هذا المقال بعنوان:

(1) A place you visited and you will never forget.

(2) A place you should visit.

Paragraph 1	The location and a brief history of the place.	الموقع وتاريخ موجز للمكان
Paragraph 2	The architectural adjectives/material used/style of building.	الصفات المعمارية /المواد المستخدمة/أسلوب البناء.
Paragraph 3	Why it is popular.	لماذا هو مشهور؟
Paragraph 4	Your personal opinion.	رأيك الشخصى.

Model Essay

The Citadel of Saladin in Cairo

Introduction

The Citadel of Saladin is a splendid building on a hill overlooking the old city of Cairo. It was built in the 12th century by King Saladin and his brother, King El-Adel. Apart from the mosques, the Citadel hosts four more interesting museums: the Military Museum, the Police Museum, the Royal Carriages Museum, and the Qasr El-Gawhara Museum.

Body

The Citadel, as well as its walls, was built out of stones. It took eight years to complete. Work began in 1176 and finished in 1183. The appearance of the Citadel is different today from the original one. It has been enlarged and reshaped by various leaders.

For many centuries, it was the seat of the king and his government in Egypt. Throughout different stages of Egyptian history, the Citadel has always played a significant role in Egyptian politics. In fact, the Citadel has defended Egypt against many violent attacks throughout time.

Today, the Citadel of Saladin is one of the most popular historical sites of Cairo and is included in almost every capital tour. Located at the top of a high cliff, the Citadel also provides tourists with magnificent views over the bustling city of Cairo. You can visit the Citadel of Saladin both day and evening.

Conclusion

In my point of view, it's worth visiting as it's one of the most interesting places in Egypt. I visited it 10 years ago, and I'd like to go there again. I think I'll have a very pleasant time there.

4 Expository essay

المقال التفسيرى

عندما تكتب مقالًا تفسيريًا، فأنت تشرح شيئًا لجمهورك. المقالات الإخبارية هى أمثلة جيدة للكتابة التوضيحية، مثلها مثل أى قطعة تركز على الأسئلة الخمسة (من وماذا وأين ومتى ولماذا).

Paragraph 1	It includes a topic sentence that clearly shows the main point of the essay. يتضمن جملة الموضوع التى توضح النقطة الرئيسية للمقال.
Paragraphs 2/3	Each paragraph in the body of the essay should focus on its own issue that helps develop and support the topic sentence. Make sure you're using factual information to support your thesis. يجب أن تركز كل فقرة فى نص المقالة على القضية التى تساعد فى تطوير ودعم جملة الموضوع. تأكد من أنك تستخدم المعلومات الواقعية لدعم الموضوع.
Paragraph 4	Your personal opinion. رأيك الشخصى.

Model Essay

Traffic rules and safety

Introduction	Traffic rules and regulations are formulated to regulate traffic for the safety of all types of road users. They are very essential to ensure the safety of various road users and as well as their easy commuting.
Body	Egyptian roads are overcrowded with a variety of vehicles and daily commuters. Our highways and city roads are carrying much more traffic than what they were actually designed for. But the main problem lies in the variety of vehicles on the same road and of course, they all want to reach on time. We have slow-moving traffic like – carts along with cars, buses, trucks, bicycles, motorcycles, pedestrians and often animals; all using the same road. Besides, motorcyclists, bicycle riders and pedestrians are the most vulnerable, as they are difficult to spot on a crowded and busy road. The traffic rules and regulations are designed in such a way that they ensure the safety of all commuters. Some rules are formulated for specific types of users, while some are common.
Conclusion	Wearing a helmet while riding a bike or bicycle is meant for the safety of the rider. Likewise, there are many rules like wearing seat belts while driving, driving at a limited speed, giving way to pedestrians, and following traffic signals and signs; all are designed for the safety of road users and to ensure their easy transit.

5 Narrative essay

المقال السردى /القصصى

عند حكاية قصة أو حدث قمت به أو قام به غيرك أو قمت بتأليفه فى الامتحان لابد من ترتيب الأفكار بطريقة معينة مثل:

Paragraph 1	Background information/setting the scene.	المعلومات التى لديك عن الحدث
Paragraph 2	Describing the event.	وصف الحدث
Paragraph 3	The response to the event.	رد الفعل والاستجابة تجاه الحدث
Paragraph 4	The final outcome.	المحصلة النهائية

Model Essay

An event you remember from your childhood

Introduction	In 2010, my family and I went to attend my uncle's wedding in a small village in Assuit 4 hundred kilometres from where we live. We were driving back home again on the new army road when a disaster happened.
Body	As it was a good motorway, my father was driving at a breakneck speed. Unfortunately, it was raining heavily and my father wanted to overtake a bus in front of him. I was sitting in the back seat with my younger sister. It was very cold, but we were wearing heavy coats. Suddenly, the car started to slide on the road. My father tried to control the car, but it crossed over onto the other side of the road. We had been very lucky; there had been no cars coming while we were crossing the other side of the motorway. As soon as the car stopped, we got out finding that the car windows had been broken and there was glass everywhere. Fortunately, none of us had been injured.
Conclusion	After our car had been repaired, we went to visit our family again. This time it wasn't raining and my father drove slower. I've never forgotten this bad experience.

A book review (narrative)

تلخيص كتاب/قصة

عند الكتابة عن قصة أعجبتك أو كتاب أعجبك وترشحه لأشخاص آخرين أحيانا لا تعرف من أين تبدأ وكيف تنسق الأفكار وكيف تختم على الرغم من كثرة الأفكار فى ذهنك ... والآن سوف نساعدك على استخراج أفكار لم تكن فى الحسبان وتنسيق الأفكار بطريقة صحيحة والتى ستساعدك على الكتابة بسرعة وبطريقة منظمة. عند الكتابة فى مثل هذه الموضوعات نفكر فى الآتى:

Paragraph 1	The facts and details about the novel/book. حقائق وتفاصيل عن الرواية أو الكتاب.
Paragraph 2	Describe the main characters and the relation between them. وصف للشخصيات الرئيسية والعلاقة بينها.
Paragraph 3	What happened in the story and the turning point. ماذا حدث فى القصة وما هى نقطة التحول.
Paragraph 4	Say why you enjoyed it and what the message of the story is. ما دعاك لتستمتع بالقصة وما هى الرسالة المقدمة منها؟

- Think of a novel you have enjoyed reading and you would recommend to other people.
- Write a book review about the last novel you read.

Model Essay

Oliver Twist

Introduction

My favourite novel which I consider the best novel I've ever read is "Oliver Twist." It was written by Charles Dickens who was one of the most famous writers of his time. He wrote it in London in the nineteenth century. It was first published in 1837 in a weekly magazine.

Body

The story is about a young orphan who experiences the best and the worst of life. The main character is Oliver Twist whose mother dies when he is a baby, and he goes to an orphanage where the conditions for the children are terrible. Oliver is soon forced to work in the workhouse, but his life doesn't improve.

There is a turning point when he meets Jack Dawkins who is a thief working for Fagin. Fagin is a man who uses children to steal. Oliver is forced to join the gang, but he is caught by the police as they think that he tries to rob a man in the street. However, Oliver is very lucky as he is rescued by a kind man called Mr. Brownlow. The rest of the story is about the fight between the evil Fagin and the kind Brownlow to keep Oliver.

Conclusion

To sum up, the story is about the struggle between good and evil. Dickens used the novel as a means to expose the terrible conditions that children lived in and the danger of criminals using them for their own benefits. I would recommend it to anyone who enjoys action stories which have a happy ending.

Writing a biography (Description of people)

السيرة الذاتية

للكتابة عن شخص تعرفه أو تحبه أو له فضل أو تأثير عليك أفكار معينة وطريقة يجب أن تتبعها ليخرج مقالًا جيدًا. وتذكر أنه فى الامتحان لن تجبر على الكتابة عن شخص معين ولكن تختار أنت الشخص الذى تكتب عنه؛ ولذلك يمكن أن تعد الأفكار والمعلومات من الآن أو أن تجهز موضوعًا عن شخصية فى كل مجال، وفقرات هذا الموضوع تكون كالتالى:

Paragraph 1	The person's birth, family and early school or life. Why you admire him/her. ولادة الشخص وأسرته ومدرسته المبكرة أو حياته. لماذا أنت معجب به/بها.
Paragraph 2	Talk about the first steps in the person's successes and the developments in his/her career. الخطوات الأولى فى نجاحات الشخص والتطورات فى حياته/حياتها المهنية .
Paragraph 3	What made the person famous and what are their interests and what is their influence on society. ما الذى جعل الشخص مشهورًا وما هى اهتماماته وتأثيره على المجتمع؟
Paragraph 4	The end of his/her career, life in retirement. نهاية حياته/حياتها المهنية والحياة فى التقاعد.

- Write about someone you admire.
- Write about a sportsperson/ scientist/ writer from your country.

Model Essay

Professor Mostafa El-Sayed

Introduction

The person I admire most is Professor Mostafa El-Sayed. Professor Mostafa El-Sayed is a famous Egyptian chemist and medical researcher. He was born in 1933 in Gharbia Governorate. His parents died when he was ten years old. He graduated from the Faculty of Science at Ain Shams University in 1953.

Body

During his studies, he did many scientific experiments that enabled him to pass his exams successfully. In 1961, he became a professor at the University of California. Dr El-Sayed's success depends on working in teams. Much of Dr El-Sayed's research is done with his team in the laser laboratory at Georgia Tech.

Professor Mostafa El-Sayed is well known for his research in biochemistry and nanoscience. Using nanoscience research, he has developed, or created new ways of treating cancer. His wife died of cancer in 2005, so he started to think of using nanotechnology in treating cancer. He has received many prizes and medals for science.

Conclusion

In 2008, he was awarded the US National Medal of Science. Professor Mostafa El-Sayed said that he works hard for humans, not for prizes.

Writing an email

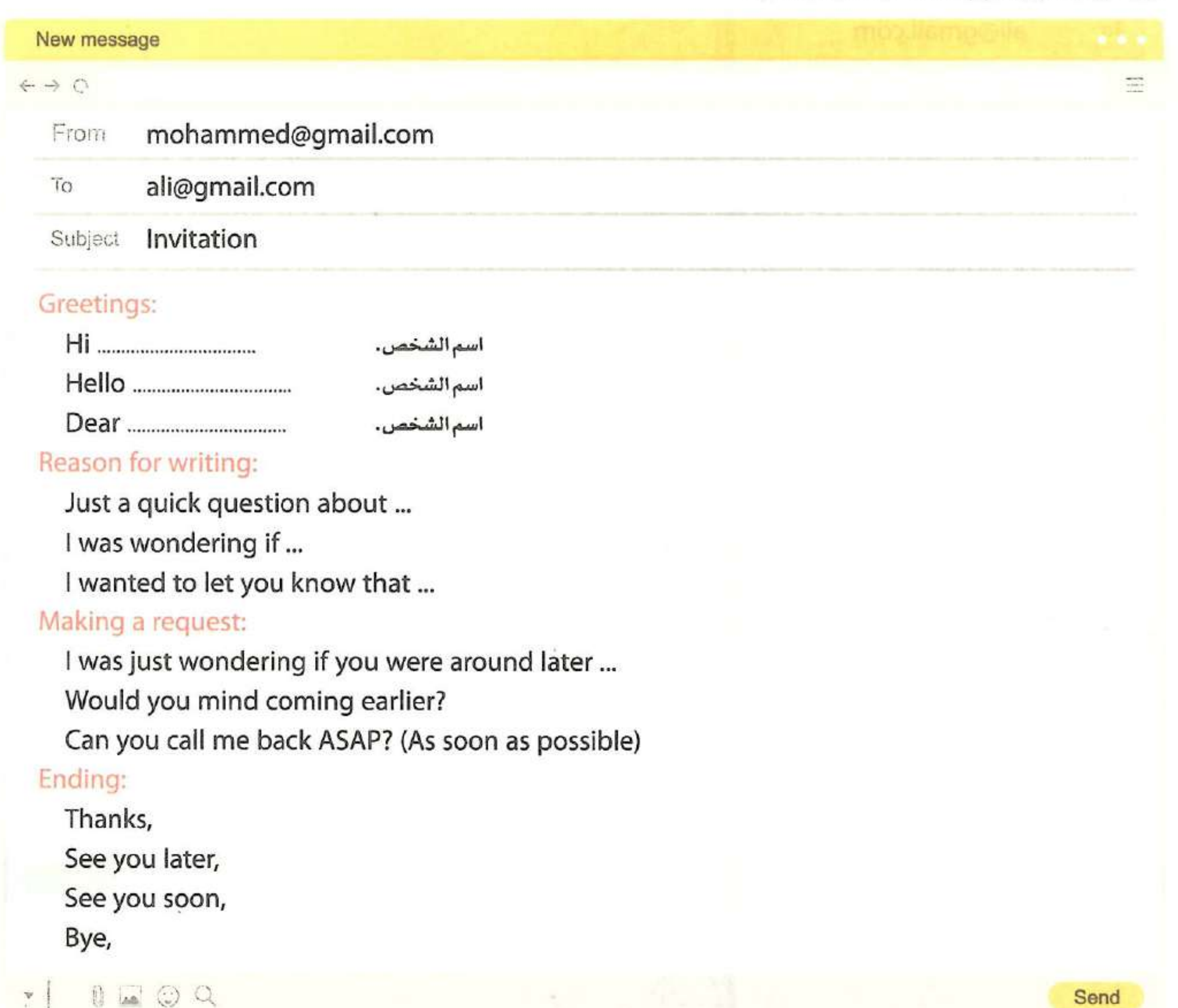
كتابة الإيميل (الرسالة الإلكترونية)

كتابة البريد الإلكترونى لها شكل مختلف فى التنسيق عن المقال العادى، فيكون فى أوله ثلاثة صفوف: أحدها للمرسل والآخر للمستلم والثالث لعنوان الموضوع. وبعدها نبدأ بالتحية ثم الغرض من الكتابة ثم النهاية. ويختلف البريد الرسمى عن غير الرسمى:

1 Informal Email

بريد غير رسمى

البريد غير الرسمى يرسل إلى الأصدقاء والمعارف والأقارب.



New message

From mohammed@gmail.com

To ali@gmail.com

Subject Invitation

Greetings:

Hi .... اسم الشخص.

Hello .... اسم الشخص.

Dear .... اسم الشخص.

Reason for writing:

Just a quick question about ...

I was wondering if ...

I wanted to let you know that ...

Making a request:

I was just wondering if you were around later ...

Would you mind coming earlier?

Can you call me back ASAP? (As soon as possible)

Ending:

Thanks,

See you later,

See you soon,

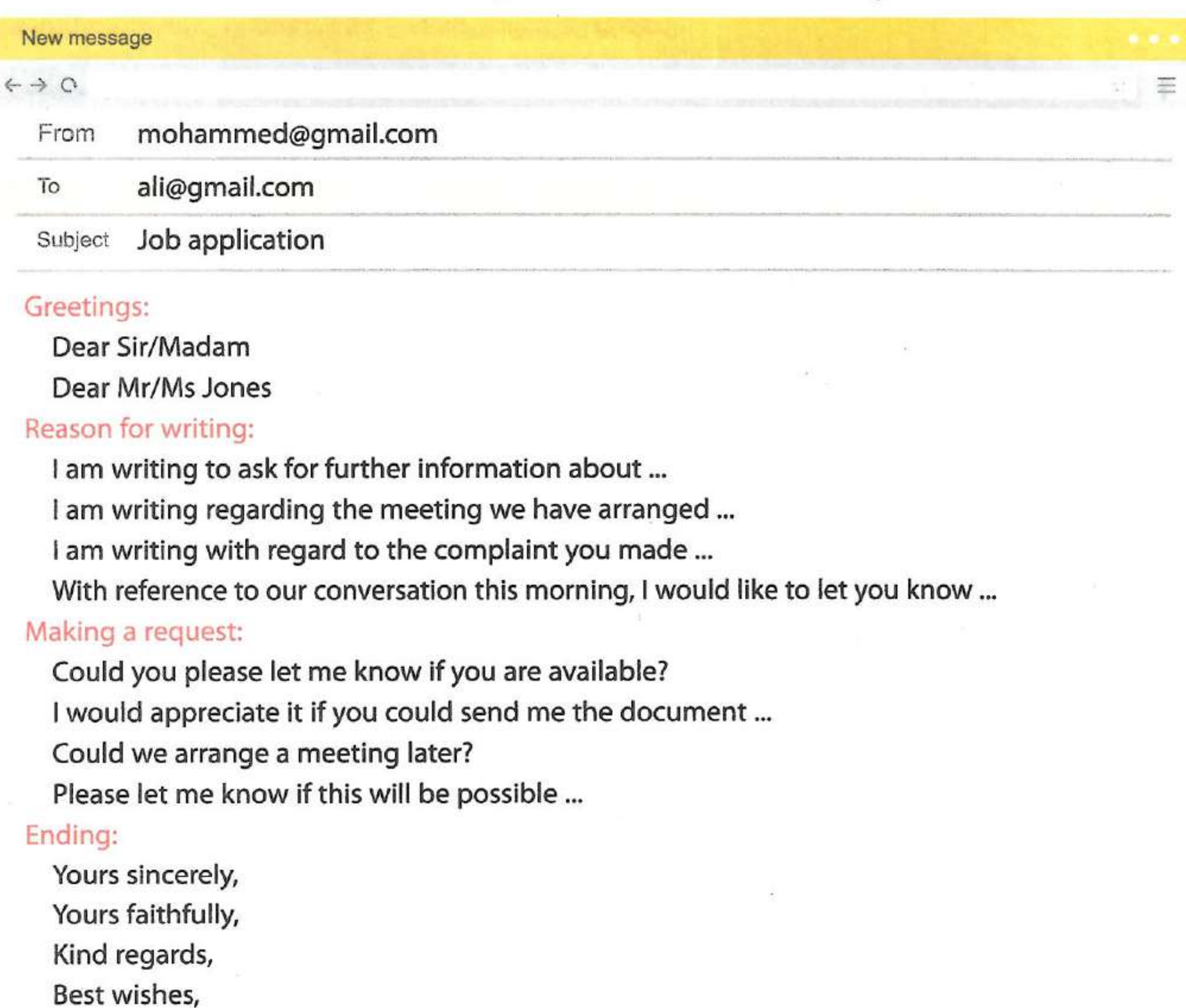
Bye,

Send

2 Formal Email

بريد رسمى

البريد الرسمى يرسل إلى الشركات والمصالح الحكومية والمؤسسات والهيئات والوزارات ... إلخ.



New message

From mohammed@gmail.com

To ali@gmail.com

Subject Job application

Greetings:

Dear Sir/Madam

Dear Mr/Ms Jones

Reason for writing:

I am writing to ask for further information about ...

I am writing regarding the meeting we have arranged ...

I am writing with regard to the complaint you made ...

With reference to our conversation this morning, I would like to let you know ...

Making a request:

Could you please let me know if you are available?

I would appreciate it if you could send me the document ...

Could we arrange a meeting later?

Please let me know if this will be possible ...

Ending:

Yours sincerely,

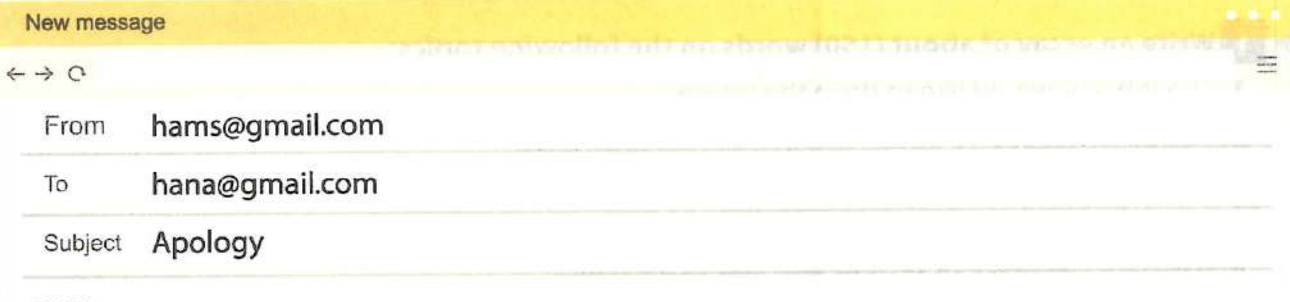
Yours faithfully,

Kind regards,

Best wishes,

Send

Model of an informal email



New message

From hams@gmail.com

To hana@gmail.com

Subject Apology

Hi Hana,

How's it going?

Sorry I haven't been in touch for such a long time, but I've had exams so I've been studying every free minute. Anyway, I'd love to hear all your news and I hope we can get together soon to catch up.

We've just moved to a new bigger flat so maybe you can come and visit one weekend.

Tell me how's your new job?

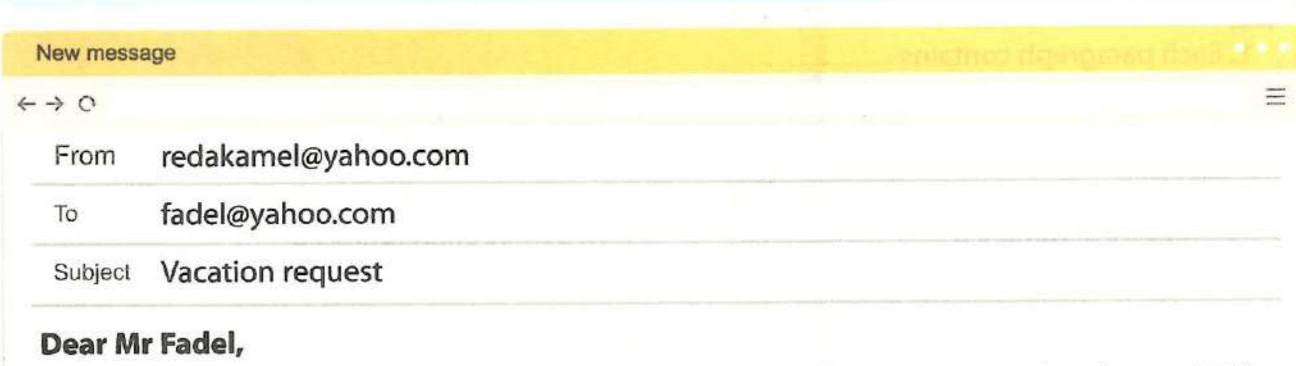
Looking forward to hearing from you!

Hams



Send

Model of a formal email



New message

From redakamel@yahoo.com

To fadel@yahoo.com

Subject Vacation request

Dear Mr Fadel,

I would like to request a vacation from Sunday, March 10th till Friday, March 15th. I would like to get it because of my bad circumstances.

I will make sure to complete all my current projects and tasks in advance before the vacation. My colleagues Amr and Ayman will cover my responsibilities during my absence.

Looking forward to your approval.

Sincerely,

Reda Kamel



Send

General Exercises

1 Write an essay of about (150) words on the following topics:

1. The job you would like to do in the future.
2. The advantages and disadvantages of mobile phones.
3. Your past habits.
4. How to help and support charities in your community.
5. How important for all of us to stay safe and healthy.
6. The pros and cons of social media.
7. The importance of reading.
8. Your career and life goals.
9. A mistake you have learnt from.
10. Online shopping.
11. How to benefit from your spare time.
12. Modern technology and how it affects our life.
13. Bullying and how to prevent it.

Emails:

14. Write an email to your friend Mark telling him about your exam results.
15. Write an email to Egypt Air company which has advertised for some jobs.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Each paragraph contains ....
   a) a topic sentence b) supporting sentences
   c) four or five paragraphs d) both a and b
2. The sentence that tells the reader what to expect in the paragraph is called ....
   a) a topic sentence b) a supporting sentence
   c) a conclusion d) a thesis
3. "As cell phone service has become available all the time, advertisers use it to sell their products through text messages and photos." This could be a part of an article about ....
   a) mobile phones b) the cell phone
   c) advertisement d) production
4. We see the result of what is mentioned in the .... of the essay.
   a) introduction b) body
   c) supporting sentences d) conclusion
5. He died on June 3rd and was buried the day after. The word "after" is a/an ....
   a) adjective b) conjunction c) adverb d) preposition
6. When you conclude writing your essay, you should ....
   a) summarise its content b) develop the main idea
   c) make the end open d) put a full stop

3 Translation الترجمة

What is "Translation"?

Translation is an art and not just memorising words. It is about how to rely on communicating the intended meaning of the sentence, not a literal translation of words. The translation skill includes the ability to transfer concepts and meanings from one language to another by guessing the meanings of words in the event of difficult words.

ما هى الترجمة؟

الترجمة فن وليست مجرد حفظ كلمات فقط، فهى عبارة عن كيفية الاعتماد على توصيل المعنى المراد من الجملة، وليست ترجمة حرفية للكلمات، تتضمن مهارة الترجمة القدرة على نقل المفاهيم والمعانى من لغة لأخرى عن طريق تخمين معانى الكلمات فى حالة وجود كلمات صعبة.

Language is meaning-based:

When we want to say something or translate a sentence, we should know that the meaning in general is more important as any language depends on the general meaning of every separate word.

اللغة تعتمد على توصيل المعنى

عند ترجمة جملة أو التحدث بشىء يجب أن نعرف أن المعنى العام هو الأكثر أهمية، حيث إن اللغة تعتمد على المعنى وليس ترجمة كل كلمة منفصلة.

لاحظ المثال التالى:

- «يجب أن يتحد الشعب المصرى لمواجهة تحديات العصر».

- Egyptians must (should) unite (work together/ help each other) to face (stand against) the challenges (difficulties) of the age (present time).

- لاحظ أننا استخدمنا أكثر من معنى لنفس الكلمة وليس الشرط هنا أن نترجم ترجمة حرفية، ولكن الأهم توصيل المعنى.

لاحظ مثالًا آخر:

- I had my lunch and then went out to meet my friends to have a nice time together and we really were over the moon."

- تناولت غدائى وخرجت لمقابلة أصدقائى لنحظى بوقت ممتع معًا، وكنا حقًا سعداء للغاية.

هنا لو تمت الترجمة الحرفية فسوف يضيع المعنى تمامًا، فمثلًا كلمة have نعرفها بمعنى يمتلك ولكن هنا لا يتناسب المعنى الحرفى مع المعنى العام.
أيضًا كلمة over the moon لو تم ترجمتها حرفيًا (فوق القمر) لضاع المعنى السليم وهو (سعيد جدًا).

What is the difference between "Translation into Arabic and Translation into English"?

- الترجمة من اللغة الإنجليزية إلى اللغة العربية تعتمد على المعنى، وتخمين الكلمات الصعبة وليس هناك شرط لتكوين الجملة والزمن.

- The government tries to solve most of our problems in Egypt.

- تحاول الحكومة (الحكومة تحاول) أن تحل (حل) معظم مشاكلنا فى مصر.

أما الترجمة من اللغة العربية إلى اللغة الإنجليزية فتعتبر الأصعب حيث لابد من معرفة تكوين الجملة والحفاظ على الزمن السليم وكذلك كتابة الكلمات بشكل صحيح.

- «تلعب الرياضة دورًا هامًا فى بناء الجسم والشخصية»

- Play sport role important in building body and character. (✗)

هنا ترجمة حرفية ليست صحيحة سواء تكوين الجملة أو المعنى.

Sport بدأنا هنا بالفاعل plays الفعل مفرد an important role الصفة قبل الاسم in building (forming) body and personality. (✓)

1 Translation from English into Arabic:

الترجمة من الإنجليزية إلى العربية:

١ لابد من البعد عن الترجمة الحرفية وتوصيل المعنى هو الأهم كما أوضحنا سابقًا.

٢ تخمن الكلمة الصعبة من التى قبلها أو التى بعدها طبقًا لسياق الجملة.

٣ يمكن التخمين باستخدام مقاطع أول وآخر الكلمة مثل non-renewable فإن أصل الكلمة new وأضيف لها re بمعنى يعيد وable تحولها إلى صفة وnon للنفى فتصبح الكلمة: غير متجدد.

٤ تترجم ought to – must – should إلى: يجب - ينبغى - إنه لزام علينا أن.

٥ من الأفضل أن يتحول المبنى للمجهول إلى المعلوم (إذا كان الفاعل مذكورًا).

- A lot of new schools were built by the government.

- لقد قامت الحكومة ببناء الكثير من المدارس الجديدة.

٦ من الممكن استخدام بعض الكلمات والحروف لتحسين المعنى.

- Tourism is one of the most important sources of our national income and hard currency.

- تُعتبر السياحة (إن السياحة) واحدة من أهم مصادر الدخل القومى لدينا وكذلك العملة الصعبة.

٧ الالتزام بزمن الجملة فى الترجمة من حيث (مضارع أو ماضٍ أو مستقبل).

٨ يتم ترجمة have/has + P.P. إلى «لقد».

٩ لا يظهر v. to be فى المضارع ولكن من الممكن أن يظهر فى الماضى.

- Music is the production of talent and passion.

- الموسيقى هى نتاج الموهبة مع العاطفة.

- Ali was at home when I phoned.

- كان على فى البيت عندما اتصلت.

١٠ v. to have يترجم إلى أكثر من معنى حسب سياق الجملة (لـ - عند - يملك - لدى - يقتنى - يتناول - يصاب - يناقش - ......)

- We had our meals.

- تناولنا وجباتنا.

- My son had a serious disease.

- أصيب ابنى بمرض خطير.

- Hala has a nice car.

- تمتلك هالة سيارة جميلة.

- Egypt has a lot of relations with world countries.

- لمصر علاقات كثيرة بدول العالم.

2 Translation from Arabic into English:

الترجمة من العربية إلى الإنجليزية:

١ لابد من تحديد أجزاء الجملة حيث إن الجملة فى اللغة الإنجليزية لابد أن تبدأ بالفاعل ثم الفعل ثم المفعول ....
Subject – verb – object ....

- تلعب مصر دورًا كبيرًا فى الشرق الأوسط.

- Egypt plays a great role in the Middle East.

٢ الالتزام بقواعد اللغة من حيث الأزمنة الصحيحة للجملة.

- لقد لعبت مصر مباراة رائعة بالأمس.

- Egypt played a wonderful match yesterday.

الزمن هنا ماضٍ بسيط حيث حدد وقته وعلامته.

- لقد اجتاز الاختبار وسيتقدم للجامعة الأسبوع القادم.

- He has passed the test and he will apply to university next week.

هنا مزيج من المضارع التام والمستقبل.

٣ الصفة دائمًا قبل الاسم والظرف بعد الفعل.

- أعتقد أن عليًا طالب رائع حيث إنه يتحدث الإنجليزية بلباقة.

- I think that Ali is a wonderful student as he speaks English fluently.

٤ أداة النصب «إن» ليس لها مكان عند الترجمة إلى الإنجليزية.

- إن تطوير التعليم هو أساس التقدم.

- Developing education is the basis of progress.

لاحظ: أن (is) هنا لم تكن موجودة فى الجملة باللغة العربية، ولكن لابد من وجودها فى الإنجليزية.

لاحظ: أيضًا أن عند بداية الجملة بالفعل يتم إضافة ing ليتحول إلى اسم فاعل gerund.

٥ من + صفة + لـ أو على + مفعول + أن .... = ... It's + adj. + for + obj. + to + inf.

- من الضرورى لنا جميعًا أن نتحد لخدمة بلدنا.

- It is necessary for all of us to unite to serve our country.

٦ الضمائر المتصلة فى العربية pronouns يجب إظهارها عند الترجمة إلى الإنجليزية.

- علينا أن نحاول بجد لكى نحقق ما نتمناه.

- We should try hard to achieve what we hope.

٧ لام التعليل تترجم إلى: المصدر + in order to/ so as to/ to.

- استيقظ مبكرًا للحاق بالقطار المتجه إلى القاهرة.

- He woke up early to catch the train to Cairo.

٨ الضمير المضاف إلى فعل يترجم إلى ضمير مفعول (us – them – him – me – her)

الضمير المضاف إلى اسم يترجم إلى (صفة ملكية) (your – its – our – his – her – their – my):

- قام الكثير من أصدقائى بزيارتى حيث إننى كنت مريضًا.

- A lot of my friends visited me because I was ill.

٩ الأسماء المعنوية والأسماء التى لا تجمع لا تأخذ the عند ترجمتها إلى الإنجليزية.

– السعادة كنز لا يقدر بثمن.

- Happiness is a priceless treasure.

honour	الشرف	virtue	الفضيلة	peace	السلام
beauty	الجمال	love	الحب	friendship	الصداقة
freedom	الحرية	advice	نصيحة	hatred	الكراهية
success	النجاح	justice	العدالة	honesty	الصدق

١٠ الأسماء التى لا تجمع Uncountable Nouns لا تأخذ أداة المعرفة أو أداة النكرة.

paper	الورق	luggage	الأمتعة	baggage	الحقائب
grass	العشب	money	المال	oil	الزيت
electricity	الكهرباء	information	معلومات	news	أخبار

- أريد معلومات عن البحث الجديد.

- I want information about the new research.

١١ حرف الـ (س) وكلمة (سوف) المرادف لهما فى اللغة الإنجليزية هو زمن المستقبل البسيط.

- سأزور أصدقائى غدًا.

- I will visit my friends tomorrow.

١٢ لقد + فعل ماضٍ وفى الجملة إشارة تدل على الماضى البسيط تترجم إلى ماضٍ بسيط أو تام.

- لقد ذهبنا معا إلى السينما الشهر الماضى.

- We went to the cinema together last month.

- لقد اشتريت بعض الفاكهة قبل ان أرجع إلى البيت.

- I had bought some fruit before I returned home.

١٣ لقد + فعل ماضٍ بدون أى إشارة تدل على الماضى تترجم لمضارع تام.

- لقد حققت مصر كثيرًا من التقدم ونتمنى المزيد.

- Egypt has achieved a lot of progress and we hope for more.

١٤ قد + فعل مضارع تدل على الاحتمال ونستخدم may.

• قد نقوم برحلة مدرسية قريبًا.

• We may have a school trip soon.

١٥ لن + فعل مضارع يقابله فى الإنجليزية مستقبل بسيط منفى future simple.

• لن يأتى على إلى حفل التخرج بسبب سفره.

• Ali won't come to the graduation party because of his travel.

١٦ يمكن أن تدل «لم» على المضارع التام أو الماضى التام حسب الكلمة الدالة على الزمن.

• لم أر صديقى منذ أن كنا فى الإسكندرية فى الصيف الماضى.

• I haven't seen my friend since we were in Alex last summer.

• لم أقابل أصدقائى قبل أن أنهى عملى أمس.

• I hadn't met my friends before I finished my work yesterday.

١٧ كان + فعل مضارع يقابله فى الإنجليزية ماضٍ مستمر.

- عندما وصلت المنزل كانت ابنتى تعمل واجباتها المدرسية.

• When I reached home, my daughter was doing her school homework.

لاحظ: أن كلمة home هنا لا تأخذ حرف جر.

١٨ كان + قد + فعل ماضٍ يقابله فى الإنجليزية الماضى التام.

• عندما ذهبت إلى العمل كان الاجتماع قد انتهى.

• When I went to work, the meeting had finished.

١٩ المفعول المطلق لا يتم ترجمته، ويتم تحويل الصفة إلى ظرف.

• يؤثر التدخين تأثيرًا سلبيًا على الصحة.

• Smoking has a negative effect on our health.
• Smoking affects our health negatively.

٢٠ الفعل بعد and يأخذ نفس شكل الفعل قبلها من حيث الزمن والإضافات.

• I enjoyed visiting my relatives and talking to them.

٢١ بعض الأفعال فى اللغة الإنجليزية لا يأخذ حرف جر (بينما يأخذ فى اللغة العربية).

contain	يحتوى على	need	يحتاج إلى	affect	يؤثر على
overcome	يتغلب على	fear	يخاف من	enjoy	يتمتع بـ
admire	يعجب بـ	feel	يشعر بـ	celebrate	يحتفل بـ
finish	ينتهى من	consider	يعتبر أن	increase	يزيد من
decrease	يقلل من	raise	يرفع من	include	يشتمل على

Exercises

قاموس بأهم موضوعات الترجمة نهاية الكتاب

Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d:

1. The television and the mobile are responsible for the declining interest in reading among children.

a) إن التليفزيون والتليفون المحمول هما المسئولان عن قلة الاهتمام بالكتابة بين صغار السن.

b) إن التلفاز والتليفون المحمول هما المسئولان عن قلة الاهتمام بالقراءة بين الشباب.

c) إن التليفزيون والتليفون المحمول هما المسئولان عن زيادة الاهتمام بالقراءة بين الشباب.

d) إن التلفاز والتليفون المحمول هما المسئولان عن قلة الاهتمام بالقراءة بين الأطفال.

2. Being a good citizen requires a lot of civilised behaviour like helping people in need and accepting differences among people.

a) أن تكون مواطنًا جيدًا يتطلب منك الكثير من السلوك المتحضر مثل مساعدة المحتاجين وتقبل الاختلافات بين الشعوب.

b) أن تكون مواطنًا صالحًا يتطلب منك الكثير من السلوك المعتدل مثل مساعدة المحتاجين وتقبل الآراء بين الناس.

c) أن تكون مواطنًا صالحًا يتطلب منك الكثير من السلوك المتحضر مثل مساعدة المحتاجين وتقبل الاختلافات بين الناس.

d) أن تكون مواطنًا حسنًا يتطلب منك الكثير من السلوك المتحضر مثل مساعدة الفقراء وتقبل الصعوبات بين الناس.

3. Mass production brings down prices which means that people can afford buying a lot of things that have been too expensive for them.

a) إن الإنتاج الضخم يتسبب فى زيادة الأسعار ويعنى أن الناس يستطيعون شراء الكثير من الأشياء التى كانت غالية جدًا بالنسبة لهم.

b) إن الإنتاج الضخم يتسبب فى خفض الأسعار والذى يعنى أن الناس يستطيعون شراء الكثير من الأشياء التى كانت غالية جدًا بالنسبة لهم.

c) إن الخصم الضخم يقلل الأسعار ويعنى أن الناس لا يستطيعون شراء الكثير من الأشياء التى كانت غالية جدًا بالنسبة لهم.

d) إن الإنتاج الضخم يقلل الأسعار ويعنى أن الناس يستطيعون شراء الكثير من الأشياء التى كانت رخيصة جدًا بالنسبة لهم.

4. We are becoming increasingly dependent on computers. They are used in businesses, hospitals, banks and even crime detection.

a) لقد أصبحنا معتمدين بشكل متزايد على الكمبيوتر حيث إنه يستخدم فى العمل والمستشفيات والبنوك وحتى فى كشف الجرائم.

b) لقد أصبحنا معتمدين بشكل متزايد على الكمبيوتر حيث إنه معتاد على العمل والمستشفيات والبنوك وحتى فى ارتكاب الجرائم.

c) لقد أصبحنا معتمدين بشكل متزايد على الكمبيوتر حيث إنه يستخدم فى العمل والمستشفيات والضفاف وحتى فى كشف الجرائم.

d) لقد أصبحنا معتمدين بشكل تزايدى على الحسابات حيث إنها تستخدم فى الأعمال والمستشفيات والبنوك وحتى فى ارتكاب الجرائم.

5. Cleanliness is extremely important in protecting us from many different kinds of infections. Everyone should follow rules of cleanliness to be healthy and happy all through life.

a) إن النظافة هامة للغاية فى حمايتنا من العديد من أنواع الأمراض المختلفة، ومن هنا فعلى كل فرد أن يفكر فى قواعد النظافة لكى يكون بصحة جيدة وسعيدًا طوال حياته.

b) إن النظافة هامة للغاية فى حمايتنا من القليل من أنواع العدوى المختلفة، ومن هنا فعلى كل فرد أن يتبع قواعد النظافة لكى يكون بصحة جيدة وقويًا طوال حياته.

c) إن النظافة هامة للغاية فى حمايتنا من العديد من أنواع العدوى المختلفة، ومن هنا فعلى كل فرد أن يتبع قواعد النظافة لكى يكون بصحة جيدة وسعيدًا طوال حياته.

d) إن النظافة هامة للغاية فى حمايتنا من العديد من أنواع العدوى المختلفة، ومن هنا فعلى كل فرد أن يتبع أدوار النظافة لكى يكون بصحة جيدة وسعيدًا طوال عمله.

6. Pollution is one of the most serious problems that face not only Egypt but also the whole world. Pollution is the greatest threat to humanity.

a) يعد التلوث واحدًا من أخطر المشاكل التى تواجه ليس فقط مصر ولكن العالم كله، فالتلوث هو أعظم تهديد للبشرية.

b) إن التلوث واحد من أهم المشاكل التى تواجه مصر والعالم حيث إنه التهديد الأكبر للبشرية.

c) إن التلوث واحد من أفضل المشاكل التى تواجه ليس فقط مصر ولكن العالم كله وهو أكبر تهديد للبشرية.

d) يعد التلوث أحد أخطر المشاكل التى لا تواجه مصر فقط ولكن العالم بأسره حيث إن التلوث يعتبر أكبر تهديد للكرة الأرضية.

7. Getting the right amount of sleep is not only important in terms of being able to function properly during the daytime, but it also has an impact on your overall health.

a) إن الحصول على المقدار المناسب من النوم ليس فقط مهمًا فى أن تكون مقدراً العمل جيدًا أثناء اليوم، ولكن أيضًا له تأثير على صحتك بوجه عام.

b) إن الحصول على المقدار المناسب من النوم ليس فقط مهمًا فى أن تكون قادراً على العمل جيدًا أثناء النهار، ولكن أيضًا له تأثير على صحتك بوجه عام.

c) إن الحصول على المقدار المناسب من النوم فقط مهم فى أن تكون قادرًا على العمل جيدًا أثناء الوقت، وأيضًا له تأثير على صحتك بوجه عام.

d) إن الحصول على المقدار المناسب من النوم ليس فقط مهمًا فى أن تكون قادرًا على العمل بشكل محتمل أثناء النهار ولكن أيضًا له تأثير على صحتك بوجه عام.

8. Our country is in a bad need of everyone's effort. We must work hard to produce and export. Then, we will save hard currency and achieve welfare.

a) إن بلدنا فى حاجة سيئة إلى تأثيرات كل فرد فيها ويجب علينا أن نعمل بجد لكى ننتج ونصدر ومن هنا سوف نوفر العملة الصعبة ونحقق الرفاهية.

b) إن بلدنا فى حاجة ملحة إلى مجهودات كل فرد فيها ويجب علينا أن نعمل بصعوبة لكى ننتج ونصدر ومن هنا سوف نوفر العملة الصعبة ونحقق الرفاهية.

c) إن بلدنا فى حاجة ماسة إلى مجهودات كل فرد فيها ولذلك يجب علينا أن نعمل بجد لكى ننتج ونصدر ومن هنا سوف نوفر العملة الصعبة ونحقق الرفاهية.

d) إن بلدنا فى حاجة ملحة إلى محاولات كل فرد فيها ويجب علينا أن نعمل بجد لكى ننتج ونستورد ومن هنا سوف نوفر العملة الصعبة ونحقق الرفاهية.

9. We can't ignore the fact that education in our country needs an urgent rescue operation to be able to cope with the advanced countries in this field.

a) لا يمكننا تجاهل أن التعليم فى وطننا يحتاج إلى عملية إنقاذ عاجلة حتى نتمكن من مواكبة الدول المتقدمة فى هذا المجال.

b) لا نستطيع تجاهل أن التعليم فى وطننا يحتاج إلى عملية جراحية عاجلة حتى نتمكن من مواكبة الدول المتقدمة فى هذا المجال.

c) لا يمكننا تجاهل أن التعليم فى وطننا يحتاج إلى عملية إنقاذ عاجلة حتى لا نتمكن من مواكبة الدول المتقدمة فى هذا الحقل.

d) نحن لا يمكننا تجاهل أن التعليم فى وطننا يحتاج إلى عملية إنقاذ عاجلة حتى نتمكن من تخطى الدول المتقدمة فى هذا المجال.

10. Sports have become one of the most effective means of achieving peace and stability throughout the world.

a) لقد أصبحت الرياضة واحدة من أقل الوسائل المؤثرة فى تحقيق السلام والاستقرار فى كل أنحاء العالم.

b) لقد أصبحت الرياضة واحدة من أكثر الوسائل المؤثرة فى تحقيق السلام وعدم الاستقرار فى كل أنحاء العالم.

c) لقد أصبحت الرياضة واحدة من أكثر الوسائل المؤثرة فى تحقيق السلام والاستقرار فى كل أنحاء العالم.

d) قد تصبح الرياضة واحدة من أكثر الوسائل المؤثرة فى تحقيق السلام والاستقرار فى كل أنحاء العالم.

Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d:

1. إن ثروة مصر الحقيقية تكمن فى مواردها البشرية وإبداع شبابها فى كل المجالات.

a) The real wealthy of Egypt lies in its humane resources and the creativity of its youth in all fields.
b) The real wealth of Egypt lies in its human resources and the creativity of its youth in all fields.
c) The real wealth of Egypt lie in it's human resources and the creativity of its youth in all fields.
d) The real wealth of Egypt lies in its human sources and the creativity of its youth in every fields.

2. تهتم الدولة اهتماما كبيرًا بأصحاب الهمم، فقد أعيد تخطيط معظم الشوارع والأرصفة لتسهل عليهم التنقل بسهولة وأمان.

a) The state pays great attention to disabled, so the most streets and pavements have been re-planned to make it easy and safe for them to move.

b) The state pay great attention to the disabled; most streets and platforms have been re-planned to make it easy and safe for them to move.

c) The state pays great attention to the disabled, so most streets and pavements have re-planned to make it easy and save for them to remove.

d) The state pays great attention to the disabled; most streets and pavements have been re-planned to make it easy and safe for them to move.

3. من الحكمة ألا تتخذ قرارًا إلا بعد تفكير عميق، علمتنى الحياة ألا أحزن على ما ضاع منى لأنه لم يكن لى.

a) It is wise not to make a decision without deep thinking. Life has taught me not to be sorry about what I have lost as it isn't mine.

b) It is a wise not to do a decision with a deep thought. Life has taught me not to be sorry about what I have lost as it is not mine.

c) It is wisdom not to make a decision without deep thinking. Life have taught me not to be sorry about what I have lost as it was not mine.

d) It is wisdom not to do a decision without a deep thought. Life has learnt me not to be sorry about what I have lost as it is not for me.

4. يجب أن نتمسك بالأخلاق الحميدة ونحترم آباءنا ومعلمينا لأن العلم وحده لا يصنع إنسانًا ناجحًا بالحياة.

a) We must adhere to good morals and aspect our parents and teachers because science only doesn't make a rich person in life.

b) We must adhere to good morals and respect our parents and teachers because science only doesn't make a successful person in life.

c) We must adhere to good morals and respect our fathers and teachers because science lonely don't do a successful person in life.

d) We must adhere to good morals and respect our parents and teachers because science alone doesn't make a successful person in life.

5. ربما ينجح العلماء قريبًا فى اكتشاف علاج فعال لكثير من الأمراض التى تفتك بالبشر فى كل أنحاء العالم.

a) Science may soon succeed in exploring an effective cure for many diseases that kill people all over the world.

b) Scientists may soon succeed to discovering an effective care for many diseases that kill people all over the world.

c) Scientists may soon succeed in discover an affective cure for many diseases that kill people all over the world.

d) Scientists may soon succeed in discovering an effective cure for many diseases that kill people all over the world.

6. يجب أن يتعاون كل أفراد المجتمع لمحاربة التنمر لأنها مشكلة اجتماعية تهدد الناس فى كل مكان.

a) All organs of society must cooperate to combat bullying because it is a social problem that threatens people everywhere.

b) All members of society must cooperate to combat bullying because it is a sociable problem that threatens people everywhere.

c) All members of society must cooperate to combat bullying because it is a social problem that threatens people everywhere.

d) All members of society must operate to combat bullying because it is a social problem that threatens people everywhere.

7. إن السبيل الوحيدة لتحسين الاقتصاد القومى هى زيادة الإنتاج، وتقليل الواردات، وهذا يتطلب التعاون بين الحكومة والأفراد على حد سواء.

a) The only way to prove the national economy is to increase production and reduce imports and this requires cooperation between the government and individuals alike.

b) The only way to improve the national economy is to increase production and reduce imports and this requires cooperation between the government and individuals alike.

c) The only road to improve the national economy is to decrease production and reduce imports and this requires cooperation between the government and individuals alike.

d) The only way to improve the national economy is to increase production and reduce imports and this acquires cooperation between the government and individuals alike.

8. البطالة مشكلة خطيرة جدًا، فهى لا تؤثر فقط على الأفراد، ولكن أيضًا على نمو البلد؛ حيث إن لها تأثيرًا سلبيًا على النمو الاقتصادى والاجتماعى، وتساعد فى انتشار الجريمة فى المجتمع.

a) Unemployment is a very serious problem, as it effects not only individuals, but also the growth of the country, as it has a negative impact on economic and social grow and helps in the spread of crime in society.

b) Unemployment is a very serious problem, as it affects not only individuals, but also the growing of the country, as it has a nasty impact on economic and social growing and helps in the publishing of crime in society.

c) Employment is a very serious problem, as it affects not only individuals, but also the growth of the country, as it has a negative impact on economic and social growing and helps in the publishing of crime in society.

d) Unemployment is a very serious problem, as it affects not only individuals, but also the growth of the country, as it has a negative impact on economic and social growth and helps in the spread of crime in society.

9. من المتوقع أن تزداد حاجتنا إلى المياه فى مصر فى المستقبل، لذلك يجب ترشيد استخدامنا للمياه وإلا فإننا سنواجه مشاكل خطيرة.

a) It is expected that our need for water in Egypt will increase in the future, so we must irrationalise our use of water, otherwise we will face serious problems.

b) It is expected that our need for water in Egypt will increase in the future, so we must rationalise our use of water, otherwise we will face serious problems.

c) It is accepted that our need for water in Egypt will increase in the future, so we must rationalise our use of water, otherwise we will face serious problems.

d) It is fallen that our need for water in Egypt will increase in the future, so we must rationalise our use of water, otherwise we will face series problems.

10. يحلم كل منا أن يكون مشهورًا فى يوم ما، لكن ليس من السهل أن تكون مشهورًا. العمل الجاد والصبر والمعاناة تؤدى إلى الشهرة.

a) Every one of us dreams of being famous one day, but it is not easy to be famous. Hard work, patience and suffering lead to fame.

b) Everyone of us dream of being famous one day, but it is not easy to being famous. Serious work, patience and suffering lead to fame.

c) Every one of us dreams to being famous one day, but it is not easy to be famous. Hard work, patience and suffering leads to fame.

d) Every one of us dreams of being famous one day, so it is not easy to be famous. Work hard, patience and suffering lead to fame.

General Exercises

قاموس بأهم موضوعات الترجمة
نهاية الكتاب

A) Translate into Arabic:

1. Don't waste your time. Time is your life and you should exploit it carefully and benefit from it as much as possible.

....

2. We must attract foreign and Arab investors, stimulate tourism and change cultural awareness if we want the Egyptian economy to recover.

....

3. It is believed that money is the root of all evil. It is considered the main reason for deviation, addiction and crimes and even wars among countries.

....

4. Technology has changed people and their lives. No period in history has had as many significant changes as the past century.

....

5. Many famous Egyptians are admired for their intelligence, creativity and their ability to do great charity work.

....

6. Protecting people from misguidance remains the most important issue related to journalism profession.

....

7. The majority of climate scientists agree that global warming is actually happening and that human activity is the primary cause.

....

8. To achieve your ambitions in life, you should have determination, courage, patience and a sense of responsibility.

....

9. A good education increases children's creativity, helps them enjoy studying and helps them in their future career.

....

10. Bullying is a grave phenomenon in our country, especially among teenagers and youth. We must try our hardest to find solutions to this problem.

....

11. Donating blood can help many people who are in need and at the same time have some health benefits for the donors themselves.

....

12. Building an Egyptian citizen who is capable of facing the future and creating a productive society is one of the most important goals of education in Egypt.

....

13. Egypt began its modern industrial development when Mohamed Ali obtained the help of leading European industrialists to develop it.

....

14. Industry has grown enormously, and it has become common practice for factories to dispose of waste materials in streams and rivers, causing great loss of river life.

....

15. It's important to report bullies on websites and the police will help. Any kind of bullying can have serious consequences on the whole society, and stopping it is the duty of everyone.

....

B) Translate into English:

16. النظافة الشخصية مهمة إذا كنت تريد الحفاظ على صحتك، فهى تحمينا من الأمراض المعدية التى تنتقل بسرعة من شخص لآخر.

....

17. إن الاستقرار الاجتماعى والسياسى سيجلب مزيدًا من الاستثمارات وينعش الاقتصاد.

....

18. إن قضية إصلاح التعليم من أخطر القضايا التى تواجه المجتمع المصرى؛ حيث إن البحث العلمى إحدى ركائز الأمن القومى.

....

19. تحتاج مصر إلى جهود المخلصين من أبنائها حتى تتغلب على كل المشاكل التى تعوق تقدمها.

....

20. إن زيادة الإنتاج واجب وطنى؛ لأنها تمكننا من مواجهة مشكلة تزايد السكان والبطالة فى مصر.

....

21. يجب على الحكومة الاستثمار فى البنية التحتية وتشجيع الاستثمارات الداخلية والخارجية.

....

22. السياحة مصدر هام لجلب العملة الصعبة لمصر، لذا علينا أن نقدم كل التسهيلات الممكنة لجذب السياح إلى مصر.

....

23. يجب أن نشجع الاستثمار ونزيد الإنتاج ونقلل الاستهلاك، فهذا سوف يخفض الأسعار ويحل المشكلة الاقتصادية، ولا يمكن أن يتحقق ذلك بدون تعاون الأفراد مع الحكومة.

....

24. هل استخدام التكنولوجيا الحديثة فى التعليم سيساعد الطالب فى تخطى الكثير من التحديات المعاصرة؟

....

25. يعتمد تقدم أى أمة على تطوير التعليم، وكذلك الاهتمام بالزراعة والصناعة.

....

26. الرياضة ليست فقط من أجل تنمية اللياقة البدنية، ولكن لتطوير الناحية الذهنية كذلك.

....

27. لابد من تطوير القطاعين الخاص والعام لتوفير فرص عمل للخريجين والقضاء على البطالة.

....

28. لابد من ربط التعليم بسوق العمل، وفتح كليات جديدة تؤهل الطالب للعمل بكفاءة.

....

29. الأب هو عائل الأسرة ليوفر لها الحماية والرعاية، والأم هى حجر الأساس لتوفير العاطفة والحب.

....

30. المدرس هو القدوة وهو العمود الفقرى فى العملية التعليمية، لذلك تهتم وزارة التربية والتعليم بتدريبه.

....

Part 3

General Revision

Revision on Module (1) (Units 1 & 2)

Revision on Module (2) (Units 3 & 4)

Revision on Module (3) (Units 5 & 6)

Treasure Island Revision





Vocabulary

Unit (1) — أهم مفردات الوحدة الأولى

conservation (n)	المحافظة على البيئة	environment (n)	البيئة	spicy (adj)	حار (متبل)
environmentally friendly (n)	صديق البيئة	exotic (adj)	غريب	sustainability (n)	الاستدامة
conservationist (n)	الشخص المحافظ على البيئة	impact (n)	تأثير	sustainable (adj)	مستدام
crowded (adj)	مزدحم	isolate (v) – d	يعزل	swell up (v)	يتورم
ecotourism (n)	السياحة البيئية	isolated (adj)	معزول	trek (v) – ked	يترجل
ecotourist (n)	السائح المتوجه إلى المناطق الطبيعية	lean (v) – ed	يميل	unique (adj)	مميز/فريد من نوعه
endanger (v) – ed	يعرض للخطر/ للانقراض	materials (n)	مواد خام		
endangered (adj)	مهدد بالخطر/معرض للانقراض	relaxing (adj)	مريح		

Unit (2) — أهم مفردات الوحدة الثانية

amazing (adj)	مذهل/مدهش	hunting (n)	الصيد	responsibility (n)	مسئولية
biologist (n)	عالم أحياء	iron levels	مستويات الحديد (فى الدم)	role model (n)	مثل أعلى
blood pressure	ضغط الدم	killings (n)	عمليات القتل	support (v) – ed	يدعم
cattle (n)	الماشية	livestock (n)	ماشية	track (v) – ed	يتتبع
disappear (v) – ed	يختفى	local (adj)	محلى	transplant (n)	زراعة الأعضاء
generous (adj)	كريم	monitor (v) – ed	يراقب	villagers (n)	سكان القرى
generously (adv)	بكرم	movements (n)	حركات		
guardian (n)	وصى/حام	organisation (n)	منظمة		

Expressions, Idioms & Prepositions — أهم التعبيرات والمصطلحات وحروف الجر بالوحدتين

(be) based in	القائم فى/الموجود فى	give a sense of	يعطى إحساسًا بـ	impact on	تأثير على
(be) stuck	عالق/غير قادر على الخروج	give blood	يتبرع بالدم	important for/to	مهم لـ
break the law	يخالف القانون	blow ... off	يُطير شيئًا	interested in	مهتم بـ
do a great job	يقوم بعمل عظيم	busy with	مشغول بـ	go away	يرحل
do research	يقوم بعمل بحث	disappear from	يختفى من	go diving	يغطس
do work for	يقوم بعمل من أجل	educate/teach ... about	يعلم ... عن	go missing	يتوه/يضل الطريق
give ... a chance	يعطى فرصة	famous for	مشهور بـ	have a holiday	يأخذ إجازة

health problem	مشكلة صحية	play a trick on	يخدع	search/look for	يبحث عن
make a difference	يصنع اختلافًا	take photos	يلتقط صورًا	stay in	يبقى فى
make good use of	يستغل	on balcony	فى البلكونة	take part in	يشارك فى
make sure	يؤكد	on TV	فى التلفزيون	unusual for	غير معتاد لـ
over the moon	سعيد جدًا	praise for	يمدح لأجل	worry about	يقلق على
pass exams	يجتاز الامتحانات	return to	يعود إلى		

Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	الكلمة	Synonym	المرادف	Antonym	المضاد
active	نشيط	energetic/dynamic		inactive/lazy/idle	كسول / خامل
amazing	مدهش	astonishing/unbelievable		believable/ordinary	معقول / عادى
ancient	قديم	old/antique		modern/new	حديث / عصرى
avoid	يتجنب	avert/stay away from		face/seek/confront	يواجه
beautiful	جميل	pretty/cute/handsome		ugly/awful	قبيح
boring	ممل	dull/uninteresting		exciting/interesting	مثير
exist	يوجد	remain/stay		vanish/depart	يختفى / يرحل
fascinating	ساحر/خلاب	charming/interesting		boring/dull	ممل
fortunately	لحسن الحظ	luckily/happily		unfortunately/unluckily	لسوء الحظ
generous	كريم	open-handed/big-hearted		miserly/mean	بخيل
giant	عملاق	colossal/gigantic		tiny/minute	ضئيل الحجم
happen	يحدث	occur/take place		cease/stop	يتوقف
injured	مصاب	wounded/damaged		healthy	معافى
limited	محدد/محدود	restricted/definite		unrestricted/unlimited	مطلق / بلا قيود
long-term	طويل المدى	lasting/durable/continuing		short-term/temporary	قصير المدى / مؤقت
remote	بعيد	distant/faraway		near/close	قريب
sustainable	مستدام	continual/lasting/permanent		temporary	مؤقت
unique	مميز/فريد من نوعه	exceptional/special		normal/ordinary	عادى

Notes on Vocabulary

لاحظ الفرق بين الكلمات التالية:

1	beach	البلاج (الجزء الرملى عند حافة البحر)
	shore	شاطئ البحر أو البحيرة
	coast	ساحل
	bank	ضفة النهر أو القناة

2	include	يحتوى على جزء أو أكثر من الأجزاء (المكونات) وليس كل المكونات
	contain	يحتوى على شىء بداخله
	consist of	يتكون من
3	weather	الطقس (حالة الجو لفترة قصيرة)
	climate	المناخ (حالة الجو لفترة طويلة)
	atmosphere	الجو العام / الغلاف الجوى (ما يحيط بالأرض)
4	steal + (something)	يسرق (شيئًا)
	rob + (place)	يسرق (مكانًا)
	rob + (somebody) of (something)	يسرق شيئًا من شخص
5	another + اسم مفرد	آخر (للمفرد) (شىء آخر إضافى أو مختلف) بعد another تأتى الكميات / المسافات / فترات الوقت / المبالغ المالية
	other + اسم جمع	آخر (للجمع) (شىء آخر إضافى أو مختلف)
	others + فعل	الآخرون (لا يأتى بعدها اسم، وتفيد الجمع أيضًا)
	the other + اسم مفرد أو جمع	الآخر / الآخرون
	the others + فعل	الآخرون (للجمع) يأتى بعدها فعل أو لا يأتى
6	nickname	اسم الشهرة
	surname	اسم العائلة
	first name = forename	اسم الشخص
	pen name	اسم مستعار
7	blood transplant	عملية زرع خلايا الدم "النخاع" (لمريض سرطان الدم مثلًا)
	blood transfusion	عملية نقل الدم
8	work with	يعمل مع
	work for	يعمل لدى / يعمل لصالح
	work in	يعمل فى (مكان / مجال)
	work on	يعمل على (مشروع / إنجاز)
	work as	يعمل كـ (بوظيفة)

Practice...

Module (1)
Vocabulary Question Bank

Choose the TWO (2) correct answers of the FIVE (5) options:

Group 1

1. The village is remote; we need to walk for miles. The antonyms of "remote" are ....
a) abnormal b) temporary c) unknown d) close e) near
2. It is important for all students to .... notes of what their teachers say.
a) do b) understand c) take d) go e) make

Group 2

1. The internet has a lot of ....
a) contacts b) communication c) advantages d) benefits e) livestock
2. The natural beauty of the village makes it attractive and unique. The synonyms of the word "natural" are ....
a) abnormal b) normal c) unknown d) ordinary e) exceptional

Group 3

1. Mohammed Salah is a/an .... footballer who plays for Liverpool Football Club.
a) exotic b) famous c) unknown d) clear e) well-known
2. Some kinds of rare fish exist in the ocean. The antonyms of the word "exist" are ....
a) endanger b) normal c) depart d) vanish e) travel

Group 4

1. Lots of people came to the charity to donate .... for the needy.
a) money b) hay c) information d) music e) blood
2. More women are applying for new jobs which were .... for men only.
a) accidentally b) usually c) aimlessly d) traditionally e) finally

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Group 1

1. Some reporters write under a .... as they don't want anyone to know their real names.
a) first name b) surname c) pen name d) nickname
2. My father shouted at me when he saw me .... out of the window.
a) develop b) swell c) lean d) dive
3. I was climbing to the top of a hill when the wind blew my hat ....
a) on b) of c) off d) out
4. The train to Luxor was travelling at a .... of 100 miles an hour.
a) pace b) speed c) height d) movement
5. Some villagers assure that .... parties are using firearms against lions.
a) monitoring b) missing c) changing d) hunting
6. Once I saw a lion paw ...., I hurried to hide in the tent.
a) signal b) remark c) print d) signature
7. The teacher adapted the lesson to improve students' .... to form simple sentences in English.
a) admiration b) ability c) donation d) inability

Group 2

1. The rainforests are home to many .... plants. They are so strange.
   a) usual b) exotic c) crowded d) relaxed
2. Try not to eat too much .... food. It is very tasty, but can cause you to feel uncomfortable.
   a) spicy b) healthy c) flavourless d) cool
3. Fingerprints are .... to every person. No people are similar to each other.
   a) terrible b) rare c) scarce d) unique
4. A teacher must be a role .... to all his/her students.
   a) model b) example c) statue d) figure
5. We didn't have enough money for a film, so we went to the park .... the cinema.
   a) instead b) instead of c) direct d) instant
6. I feel bored when I .... nothing to do.
   a) have b) do c) make d) take
7. I have a strong .... to travel around Egypt and enjoy its beauty.
   a) creation b) hatred c) fire d) desire

Group 3

1. We always advise our youth to try to face their problems and solve them. The verb "face" is an antonym of ....
   a) avoid b) seek c) find out d) empty
2. I took my friend and had a nice walk on the .... of the Nile.
   a) beach b) wall c) coast d) bank
3. Don't drive at a dangerous speed, it isn't .... You may have an accident.
   a) safe b) difficult c) easy d) harmful
4. A .... is someone who studies the science which is concerned with living things.
   a) psychologist b) biologist c) chemist d) zoologist
5. If there is a .... supermarket, we will be able to do our shopping easily.
   a) remote b) faraway c) nearby d) nearly
6. My boss is very kind-hearted. He showed much .... with the difficult situation which I face.
   a) admiration b) empathy c) inspiration d) appearance
7. My mother turned the vase over to look .... the price.
   a) up b) on c) for d) after

Group 4

1. Protecting the .... is important if we want to stay healthy.
   a) environment b) location c) tourism d) destination
2. Travelling to .... places that are far is my favourite hobby.
   a) insulated b) limited c) existed d) isolated
3. The footballer's ankle has already started to .... up as he was hit by another player.
   a) swallow b) swell c) extend d) refresh
4. Tourism is a major field that increases our national ....
   a) debt b) income c) debit d) benefit
5. A blood .... needs to be checked carefully to make sure they are healthy.
   a) donate b) donor c) donation d) donated
6. Some factories .... children who will work for long hours and get low wages.
   a) donate b) employ c) pretend d) hunt
7. Scientists worked .... developing the new vaccine last year.
   a) for b) with c) as d) on

Group 5

1. The government should do more efforts to promote .... economy.
a) limited b) sustainable c) tricky d) internal
2. As soon as Ashley saw her father in the airport, she .... her suitcases and ran towards him.
a) dropped b) fell c) filled d) dripped
3. The children were .... when their picnic was cancelled because of the bad weather.
a) alone b) glad c) annoyed d) hungry
4. I couldn't .... my friend as he had lost so much weight.
a) wish b) accuse c) realise d) recognise
5. Iron .... is the amount of iron stored in the body.
a) track b) organ c) tool d) level
6. It was obvious she had broken her toe, because it immediately started to .... up.
a) speak b) come c) swell d) get
7. Samar likes Mexican food, but it's too .... for me.
a) hot b) spicy c) cool d) salty

Group 6

1. Rasha has a degree in .... and she likes studying living things.
a) geology b) biology c) anthropology d) sociology
2. One of the many advantages .... living in big cities is that you can eat out at any time of the day.
a) with b) of c) from d) by
3. Hana couldn't believe that she was .... going to America. She was so happy.
a) hardly b) gratefully c) annually d) actually
4. Alexandria is an absolutely .... city. We all like it.
a) amazing b) boring c) new d) awful
5. Before the operation, a nurse should check the blood .... of the patient.
a) leisure b) temperature c) pressure d) treasure
6. I have a lot of revision for my exams and so I have no .... to waste any time.
a) intelligence b) request c) desire d) health
7. The company had a fairly .... contract that will last for 20 years .
a) full-term b) half-term c) short-term d) long-term

Group 7

1. It is the doorbell. I .... it'll be my friend Bassem.
a) except b) accept c) expect d) refuse
2. The .... thing was that our team lost the final match again.
a) busy b) beautiful c) active d) awful
3. Because of the climate, the coastal .... are deserted in winter.
a) banks b) rivers c) streets d) resorts
4. The train stopped as there was a tree across the ....
a) movement b) speed c) track d) road
5. Kareem is so .... He always buys sweets for his family children.
a) ambitious b) greedy c) stingy d) generous
6. The concert organisers say they will .... all profits to charity.
a) donate b) steal c) support d) call
7. I'll just .... sure I've turned the oven off.
a) make b) do c) have d) give

B Language

Unit 1

1 Past Simple Tense — زمن الماضى البسيط

Past Simple

Usage
- For completed actions in the past.
- For repeated actions or habits in the past.

Form

Subj فاعل + v + d/ ed/ ied
She studied all her lessons yesterday.

Subj فاعل + irregular verb
Yesterday, I went out to the café, then I ordered a cup of coffee.

Negative

Subj فاعل + didn't + inf.
She didn't study all her lessons yesterday.
Yesterday, I didn't go out to the café.

Yes/No?

Did + subj. فاعل + inf. ?
A: Did she study her lessons yesterday?
B: Yes, she did. / No, she didn't.
B: Yes, she studied her lessons yesterday.

Wh-?

Wh- word + did + subj. فاعل + inf. ?
A: When did she study her lessons?
B: She studied her lessons yesterday.

Key words

yesterday	in (1999)
last	in the past
ago	once

Notes
- فاعل + used to + inf. (no longer – كان معتادًا ولم يعد)
- فاعل عاقل + (be) used to + (v-ing) اعتاد على
- فاعل غير عاقل + (be) used to + inf. يستخدم لـ
- I wish – Suppose – It's time + past simple (ماضٍ غير حقيقى)
- 'd rather + inf./ 'd rather + فاعل + past simple

2 Past Continuous Tense — زمن الماضى المستمر

Past Continuous

Usage
- An action that was in progress at a certain time.
- Two actions that were in progress at the same time.

Form

Subj فاعل + was/were + (v-ing)
She was studying her lessons at 6 yesterday.
They were studying their lessons at 6 yesterday.

Negative

Subj فاعل + wasn't/weren't + (v-ing)
She wasn't studying her lessons at 6 yesterday.
They weren't studying their lessons at 6 yesterday.

Yes/No?

Was/Were + subj. + v-ing?
A: Were you studying your lessons at 6 yesterday?
B: Yes, I was. / No, I wasn't.

Wh-?

Wh- word + was/were + subj. + v-ing?
A: What was she studying at 6 yesterday?
B: She was studying her lessons.

Key words

while	during
when	just as/ as

Notes
- While + (past continuous) → past simple — الماضى البسيط قاطع للماضى المستمر.
- While + (past continuous) → past continuous — الحدثان مستمران فى الماضى بدون قاطع وفى نفس الوقت.
- During + noun أثناء
  - I slept during the film.
- While + (v-ing) بينما (بدون فاعل)
  - While watching the match, I turned off the lights.

1 Present Simple Tense زمن المضارع البسيط

Present Simple

Usage
- For scientific and universal facts.
- For habits or repeated actions.
- For permanent situations.

Form

He/ She/ It + v. + s/ es/ (y ies)

He visits his family every weekend.

I/ They/ We/ You + inf.

They visit their family every weekend.

Yes/No?

Do/Does + subj. فاعل + inf.?

A: Does she visit her family?

B: Yes, she does. / No, she doesn't.

B: Yes, she visits her family.

Negative

He/ She/ It + doesn't + inf.

Nada doesn't visit her family.

I/ They/ We/ You + don't + inf.

They don't visit their family.

Wh- ?

Wh- word + do/does + subj. فاعل+ inf.?

A: When do they visit their family?

B: They visit their family at the weekend.

Key words

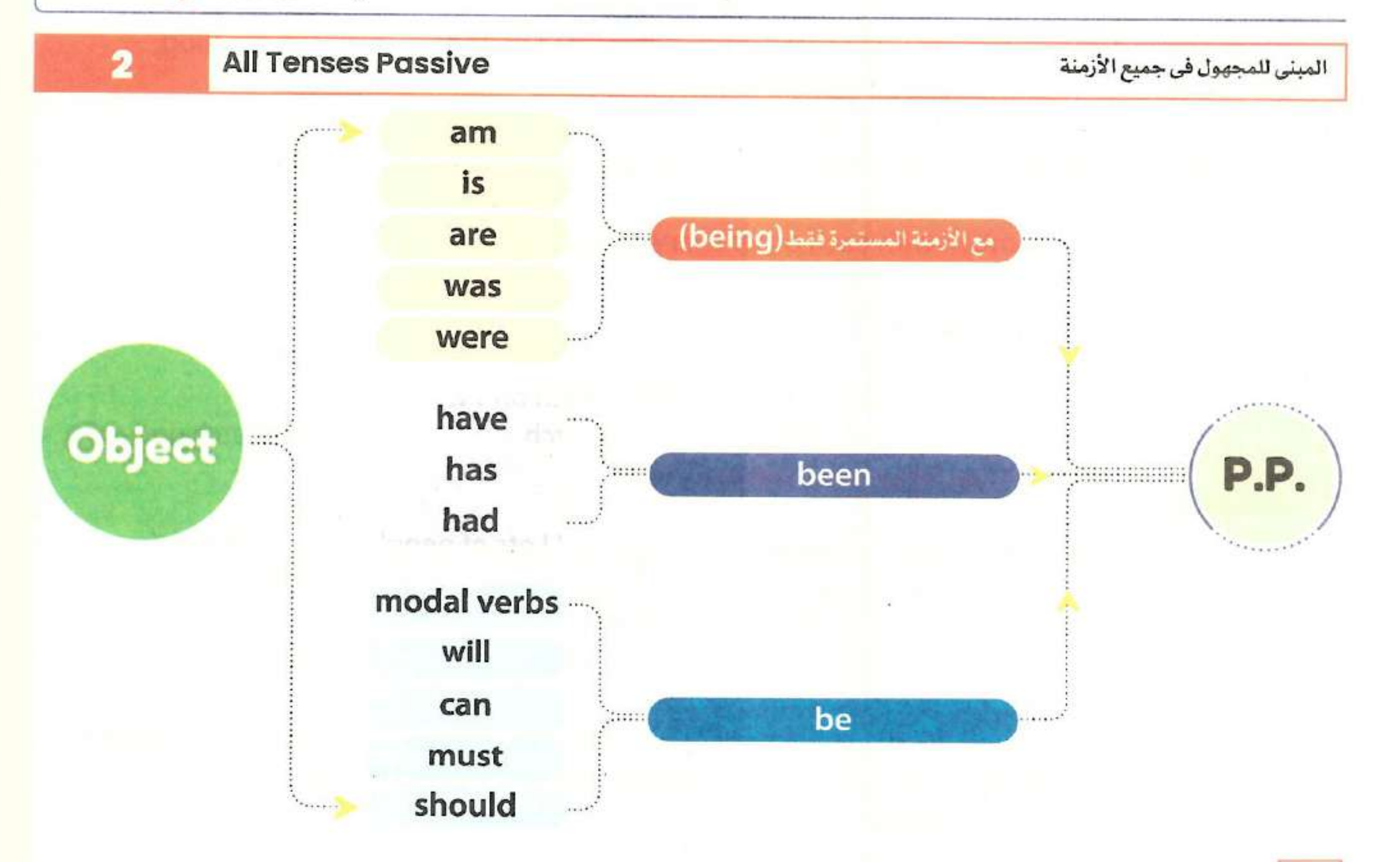
always/ sometimes/ often/ regularly/ how often/ seldom/ generally/ usually/ occasionally/ frequently/ never/ rarely/ hardly ever/ scarcely/ every/ in general

Notes

- The English lesson starts at 6 tomorrow. يستخدم المضارع البسيط مع جدول المواعيد الثابتة فى المستقبل.
- They will meet the boss after they arrive. يستخدم المضارع البسيط بعد الروابط الزمنية إذا كان زمن الجملة فى المستقبل.
- She is often early.
- He always comes early.

تستخدم ظروف التكرار بعد v. to (be) وقبل الفعل الأساسى.

2 All Tenses Passive المبنى للمجهول فى جميع الأزمنة



Practice...

Module (1) Language Question Bank

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Group 1

1. My brother .... the money he needed.
a) gave b) didn't give c) give d) was given

2. Hasnaa .... such hard work, she is always lazy.
a) is used to b) used to c) isn't used to d) didn't use to

3. The writer published his new novel last month. He .... the last two years writing it.
a) spent b) has spent c) was spent d) was spending

4. .... the party, I met an old friend.
a) When b) During c) While d) As

5. Nowadays, many new languages .... in our schools and universities.
a) are teaching b) are taught c) are being teaching d) have taught

6. My son rarely .... early. He likes staying up late.
a) slept b) sleeps c) has slept d) was sleeping

7. A lot of people .... by the new application of Leader of Fitness.
a) are attracted b) are attracting c) attract d) attracted

Group 2

1. While the house ...., I slept for an hour.
a) was cleaning b) was being cleaned c) was clean d) is cleaning

2. The thief .... while stealing the money of the bank.
a) arrested b) was arresting c) was arrested d) arresting

3. While Hazem .... his car, it started to rain.
a) drives b) had driven c) drove d) was driving

4. When she was a little girl, she often .... early to be healthy, but now she doesn't.
a) slept b) sleeps c) has slept d) sleeping

5. Ali and I .... football with each other every Thursday.
a) play b) plays c) played d) are played

6. When .... this school built?
a) does b) will c) did d) was

7. Between seven and eight yesterday, I .... the match on TV.
a) had watched b) was watching c) watch d) watching

Group 3

1. There had been a tragic مأساوى accident on the highway! Lots of people .... injured.
a) were b) have been c) are being d) was

2. .... I was talking on the phone, the doorbell rang.
a) Since b) During c) While d) After

3. I .... spicy food.
a) don't use to b) didn't use to c) am not used to d) wasn't used for

4. As he was running after the cat, he .... a hard rock and injured his leg.
a) hits b) hit c) was hitting d) has hit

5. As soon as Hana .... her mother, she will ask her for permission to go out.
a) met b) had met c) was meeting d) meets

6. .... meeting his teacher, he immediately asked him about the result of the exam.
a) Before b) On c) While d) During

7. The manager of the company .... for his hard work and cleverness.
a) respects b) respected c) is respected d) has respected

Group 4

1. All day yesterday, we were discussing the new project and .... a good time as well.
a) having b) had c) have d) being having

2. Huda .... an email to her friend yesterday.
a) has sent b) send c) sent d) was sending

3. While .... by his mother, the baby gave a loud cry.
a) dressed b) it was dressing c) was dressed d) being dressed

4. While she was doing her homework, I .... with my friends.
a) had chatted b) was chatted c) was chatting d) chatting

5. Water .... carelessly in many houses in Egypt.
a) is wasted b) wastes
c) wasted d) was being wasted

6. The moment I .... home, I will phone you.
a) leaves b) am leaving c) have left d) was leaving

7. I think that this house .... to my manager.
a) belongs b) is belonging c) was belonging d) belong

Group 5

1. She last played a tennis match .... she was ten.
a) since b) for c) when d) ago

2. My brother .... for this company for 20 years before retiring 3 years ago.
a) has worked b) works c) worked d) was working

3. While I .... in secondary school, I joined the football team.
a) was being b) had been c) have been d) was

4. I couldn't answer the phone because I .... a shower.
a) had b) have had c) was having d) have

5. Many people used to live in this isolated area, but now they ....
a) aren't b) didn't c) don't d) weren't

6. When I was a boy, I .... my relatives every now and then.
a) visit b) visited c) have visited d) visits

7. My mother no longer .... a lot as she used to do.
a) travel b) travelled c) was travelling d) travels

Group 6

1. At the time of our visit, Eman .... a very nice cake for the family.
a) was making b) have made c) is making d) will make

2. They often .... early when they were young.
a) sleeps b) slept c) were sleeping d) sleep

3. .... the accident, I phoned the police at once.

a) After I see b) Before I saw c) Before seeing d) When I saw

4. Plants .... energy from the sun to make their own food.

a) use b) are used c) uses d) used

5. My wife .... to bed late to keep healthy.

a) don't goes b) isn't going c) never goes d) never go

6. A man .... by the company he keeps, so we have to choose our friends well.

a) is known b) knows c) has known d) was known

7. Since Fatma .... hard, she will be promoted soon.

a) worked b) had worked c) have worked d) works

Group 7

1. She .... early. It was her habit.

a) used to sleep b) is used to sleeping c) uses to sleep d) is used to sleep

2. I .... the news during my work. They told me an hour ago.

a) didn't tell b) hadn't told c) wasn't told d) haven't told

3. Suppose your friends .... you to the concert, would you accept?

a) have invited b) invited c) was inviting d) were invited

4. I'd rather they .... us to tell us that they are coming on their way.

a) have phoned b) phoned c) will phone d) could phone

5. Money .... to Egypt by tourists.

a) brings b) is bringing c) is brought d) are brought

6. In some places, wood .... to heat people's homes.

a) are burnt b) burns c) burnt d) is burnt

7. Mr Hassan is flying to London at the weekend. His plane .... at 5:30 in the morning.

a) leaving b) leaves c) left d) leave

Group 8

1. These days, nothing .... to stop the merchants' greed of raising prices.

a) didn't do b) is done c) wasn't done d) was done

2. Amr is often late for school, but he .... absent from it.

a) is never b) never is c) is always d) usually is

3. Every day, my room .... by my mother while I am at school.

a) was tidied b) was being tidied c) is tidied d) tidied

4. How .... your younger brother spend his free time?

a) is b) was c) does d) has

5. Students .... homework to do every day to be better.

a) are giving b) are given c) is given d) given

6. Canada .... north of the United States.

a) is lying b) lies c) lie d) has lied

7. I didn't understand this maths problem before, but now I .... it well.

a) am understanding b) understand c) understood d) understands

Practice...

Module (1)
Skills Question Bank

1 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Passage No. 1

Nowadays, every household produces electronic rubbish (or e-rubbish) – an old TV or computer printer, or an out-of-date mobile phone we no longer need. But when we throw these everyday items away, not many of us know where these objects go. The journalist and photographer, Peter Essick, decided to follow this e-rubbish to several different countries around the world.

In particular, Essick found a lot of e-rubbish goes to Ghana. There, he saw mountains of old computers in the local markets. The sellers resell some of them but not much equipment works. Instead, they recycle the broken computers by melting the parts inside. These parts contain a little metal such as copper or even gold sometimes. However, this process of recycling is dangerous for workers because it produces a lot of toxic chemicals.

As a result of his journey, Peter Essick thinks it's important to stop exporting e-rubbish. It's bad for the environment and it's bad for people's health. Instead, he believes manufacturers need to produce more eco-friendly electronics in the future; in other words, electronic products which you can recycle cheaply, safely and in the country where they were made.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Which of the following can be a suitable title for the passage? "......................".
a) Saving the poor African nations
b) Saving the earth through recycling
c) Rubbish is no longer useless
d) A better way to deal with e-rubbish

2. Ghana .... a lot of electronic rubbish.
a) exports
b) imports
c) produces
d) cycles

3. Which of the following isn't why Essick wants to stop exporting e-rubbish?
a) It's made in his own country.
b) It harms the environment.
c) It might cause diseases.
d) It produces a lot of toxic chemicals.

4. Which of the following is not true according to the passage?
a) Essick travelled to Ghana.
b) Some of the equipment in the e-rubbish works.
c) Essick suggests extracting gold from e-rubbish.
d) Huge amounts of e-rubbish are exported to Ghana.

5. What is one thing people in Ghana do with e-rubbish?
a) They export it to other poor countries.
b) They convert it into eco-friendly electronics.
c) They extract some valuable material.
d) They recycle them safely.

6. Essick is likely to be interested in ....
a) health problems
b) valuable metals
c) ecological issues
d) the world countries

7. Essick is different from most people as he ....
a) has travelled to many parts of the world
b) has never thrown away used electronics
c) tried to shed light on a dirty process
d) took up two incompatible jobs

Passage No. 2

How would you feel about travelling into space for six months to live on a planet that is 400 million kilometres from Earth? And how would you feel if you have been told that you could never return?!"

That is what is planned for people who are going to Mars on a mission in 2031. Surprisingly, 200000 applications have been received from people who want to join the mission, even though they will never see Earth again. The people who want to go to Mars say that their plan is not very different from, the first Europeans who went to America, or thousands of people who have left their countries because of war or diseases. They also knew that their lives would be difficult and that they would probably never see their countries again.

A hundred people who want to go to Mars have chosen to start special training to see who is suitable. Scientists will get people to live in a small living space for a long time, without seeing any friends or family. This will be similar to what they expect on Mars. The launch will have a crew of just four people for the long journey into space. A special settlement will be built on Mars where food will be grown and the four people will live and work. It won't be an easy life. There will be little water, they will have to grow their own food and the planet is known for its giant dust storms. Despite these problems, it is an adventure they cannot refuse.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The number of people who will be made ready through training is ………………… .

a) a thousand people
b) less than a thousand
c) two hundred thousand people
d) less than ten people

2. The main idea of the passage is "…………………".

a) One day we all live on Mars
b) Life on Mars will be impossible
c) The people who will go to Mars will be famous
d) Life on Mars will be very difficult

3. The thing that made those who sent applications want to travel to Mars is that ………………… .

a) they don't like Earth
b) scientists made them go there
c) they want to see dust storms
d) they want to know if they can survive there

4. People who travel to Mars should be ………………… .

a) adventurous
b) giant
c) intelligent
d) scientists

5. Mars is known for ………………… .

a) its easy life
b) its nice plants
c) its dust storms
d) wonderful shores

6. The aim of living in a small living space for a long time is ………………… .

a) travelling
b) studying
c) seeing no friends
d) training

7. People who are trained but not chosen to travel to Mars are ………………… .

a) 200000
b) 4
c) 96
d) 100

Passage No. 3

Technology has changed people and their lives, but some people don't like the results of technology. They often resist the new. They might prefer to take trains instead of planes and receive letters instead of phone calls or emails.

Computers are an obvious part of technology that reaches into most people's lives. A computer can easily perform simple and complex calculations. It can record all kinds of information. It can sort material either alphabetically or in a number sequence. It can classify, report and edit information that is put in. The only requirement is that the computer must be correctly programmed to perform these functions or jobs.

Computers have so many everyday uses that the business world would stop without them.

They can, for example, reserve aeroplane tickets, keep bank accounts and record grocery items. All of these jobs can be done in a fraction of the time that a person would need. The investment of time and patience that a person makes in learning how to use a computer pays off many times.

Computers save great amounts of time by doing uninteresting jobs that take people a long time. Computers are designed for repetitive projects, for processing and storing a large amount of data, and for accuracy and speed. By using computers, human beings can free themselves to do more human projects.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. One of the following is NOT mentioned in the passage as a job that a computer can do ....

a) storing data
b) performing complex calculations
c) reserving plane tickets
d) paving the way for human relationships

2. Some people react negatively to technology as they ....

a) like modern things
b) prefer traditional things
c) avoid old inventions
d) keep away from ancient discoveries

3. What does the writer mean by the underlined words "pays off"? ....

a) brings benefits
b) causes a delay
c) wastes time
d) harms people

4. To get the most correct output, a computer requires ....

a) great amounts of time
b) a limited amount of data
c) a high degree of patience
d) highly accurate programmes

5. Without computers, ...

a) complex calculations would be easier
b) life would be much more difficult
c) communication would be more developed
d) making use of time would be better

6. The best title for this passage can be "....................".

a) Technology in the Past Centuries
b) Computers, Past and Present
c) Computers and Man
d) Unwelcome Guest

7. They often resist the new. The antonym of the word "resist" is ....

a) reject
b) refuse
c) accept
d) decline

2 Translation:

Group 1

(A) Choose the correct Arabic translation:

- Your health is essential if you are to live freely. Your physical health allows you to be freed to go wherever you may desire.

a) صحتك ضرورية إذا أردت العيش بحرية فصحتك البدنية تعطيك الحرية فى التجول أينما شئت.

b) صحتك ملزمة إذا أردت العيش بحرية فصحتك البدنية تعطيك الحرية فى التجول أينما شئت.

c) صحتك ضرورية إذا أردت العيش بحرية فصحتك النفسية تعطيك الحرية فى التجول وقتما شئت.

d) صحتك مهمة عندما يعود الأمر للعيش بحرية فصحتك البدنية تعطيك الحرية فى التجول أينما رغبت.

(B) Choose the correct English translation:

- أعتقد أن الخبرة فى العمل مهمة، لكن لا يمكننا التغاضى عن حماس الشباب وأفكارهم المبتكرة.

a) I think work experience is important, but we cannot ignore the enthusiasm and innovative ideas of workers.

b) I agree that work experience is important, but we cannot overlook the enthusiasm and innovative ideas of young people.

c) I think work experience is important, but we cannot overlook the enthusiasm and innovative ideas of young people.

d) I think work management is important, but we cannot overlook the enthusiasm and innovative ideas of young people.

Group 2

(A) Choose the correct Arabic translation:

- The internet has become the most outstanding innovation in the field of communication in the history of mankind.

a) لقد أصبحت الكهرباء أحد أبرز الابتكارات فى مجال الاتصال فى تاريخ الجنس البشرى.

b) يصبح الإنترنت أحد أبرز الابتكارات فى مجال الاتصال فى تاريخ الجنس البشرى.

c) لقد أصبح الإنترنت أحد أبرز الابتكارات فى مجال الاتصال فى تاريخ الجنس البشرى.

d) لقد أصبح الإنترنت واحدًا من أبرز الاختراعات فى مجال التعليم فى التاريخ.

(B) Choose the correct English translation:

- يجب على الدول العربية أن تتحد وتحل النزاعات والخلافات بينها وذلك لمواجهة المخاطر والتحديات الخارجية المحيطة بها.

a) The Arab states has to unite and solve disputes and differences between them to face the external dangers and challenges surrounding them.

b) The Arab states have to unite and solve disputes and differences among them to face the external dangers and challenges surrounding them.

c) The Arab have to unite and solves disputes and differences between them to face the external dangers and challenges surrounding them.

d) Arab states have to unite and solve disputes and different among them to face the outer dangers and challenges that they surround.

Group 3

(A) Choose the correct Arabic translation:

- Reading is a vital activity for students of all ages since it exposes them to a variety of cultures.

a) اقرأ لأن القراءة حيوية للطلاب فى الأعمار الصغيرة لأنها تعرضهم لمجموعة متنوعة من الثقافات.

b) القراءة نشاط أساسى للطلاب من جميع الأعمار لأنها تعرضهم لمجموعة متنوعة من الحضارات.

c) القراءة نشاط حيوى للطلاب من جميع الأعمار لأنها تعرضهم لمجموعة متنوعة من الثقافات.

d) القراءة نشاط حيوى للطلاب من جميع الأعمار لأنهم يتعرضون فيها لمجموعة من الثقافات.

(B) Choose the correct English translation:

- تتمتع بلادنا بمصادر طبيعية غنية إذا احسن استغلالها سيؤدى ذلك إلى الرفاهية والتقدم الملحوظ.

a) The country have rich nature resources, which, if they are made best use of, will lead to welfare and remarkable progress.

b) Our country has rich natural resources, whose, if they had made best use of, will lead to welfare and remarkable progress.

c) Our country has rich natural resources, which, if they are made best use of, will lead to welfare and remarkable progress.

d) Our village has rich normal resources, which, if they are made best use of, would lead to welfare and remarkable progress.

3 Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on the following:

1. The role mass media play in our life.

....
....
....
....
....
....

2. Different creative ways to support your community.

....
....
....
....
....
....

3. How can people overcome bad habits and replace them with good ones?

....
....
....
....
....
....



A Vocabulary

Unit (3) — أهم مفردات الوحدة الثالثة

admit (v) – ted	يعترف	earn (v) – ed	يكسب (مالًا)	miserable (adj)	بائس
admission (n)	اعتراف	food bank (n)	بنك الطعام	owe (v) – d	يدين لـ
adult (n)	بالغ	grow up (v)	ينضج	plump (adj)	ممتلئ الجسم
community (n)	مجتمع	improve (v) – d	يحسن/يطور	prison (n)	سجن
cultural (adj)	ثقافى	later (adv)	فيما بعد	voluntary work (n)	عمل تطوعى
culture (n)	ثقافة	lucky (adj)	محظوظ	youth association (n)	جمعية شباب
debts (n)	ديون	merchant (n)	تاجر		

Unit (4) — أهم مفردات الوحدة الرابعة

advice (n)	نصيحة	debate (n)	مناظرة	police (v) – d	يحرس
advise (v) – d	ينصح	effect (n)	تأثير	radio show (n)	برنامج إذاعى
behave (v) – d	يتصرف	hide (v)	يخفى	rucksack (n)	حقيبة الظهر
bully (n)	بلطجى	nasty (adj)	كريه	scared (adj)	مفزوع
cheat (v) – ed	يغش	noticeboard (n)	لوحة إعلانات	take something for granted	يعتبر أمرًا مفروغًا منه
cheat (n)	شخص غشاش	nursing (n)	التمريض	terrible (adj)	فظيع
cheating (n)	الغش	nurse (n)	ممرضة		
connect (v) – ed	يتصل بـ	police officer (n)	ضابط شرطة		

Expressions, Idioms & Prepositions — أهم التعبيرات والمصطلحات وحروف الجر بالوحدتين

a 15-year-old boy	ولد عمره ١٥ عامًا	effect on	تأثير على	take time	يستغرق وقتًا
as far as I'm concerned	على قدر اهتمامى	find out	يكتشف	take turns	يتبادل الأدوار
busy + (v-ing)	مشغول بـ	go out with	يخرج مع	tired-looking lady	سيدة متعبة المظهر
do team sports	يمارس رياضات جماعية	good at	جيد فى	good for	جيد لـ
feel better	يشعر بتحسن	on my own	بمفردى	list in	يدرج فى قائمة
give advice	يعطى نصيحة	on the line	على الخط (خط التليفون)	nice to	لطيف مع
go online	يدخل على الإنترنت	owe money to	يدين بالمال لـ	point at	يشير إلى
look after	يعتنى بـ	part of a team	عضو فى فريق	problem with	مشكلة مع
make clothes	يصنع ملابس	pay back	يرد دينًا	sure about	متأكد من
make friends	يكوّن صداقات	spend time with	يقضى وقتًا مع	talk about	يتحدث عن
angry with	غاضب من شخص	take ... home	يأخذ ... للمنزل		

Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

Word الكلمة		Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد	
admit	يعترف	confess/acknowledge	deny/renounce	ينكر
attack	هجوم	assault/aggression	defence/resistance	دفاع/مقاومة
connection	صلة/علاقة	relation/contact	gap/disconnection	فجوة/عدم اتصال
continue	يستمر	resume/proceed	stop/cease	يتوقف
disappear	يختفي	vanish/cease	appear/come out	يظهر
empty	فارغ	vacant/blank/unoccupied	full/occupied	مملوء
exciting	مثير	inspiring/thrilling	boring/dull	ممل
face	يواجه	confront/encounter/endure	withdraw/avoid	ينسحب/يتجنب
favourite	مفضل	preferred/favoured/popular	unpopular/disliked	غير محبوب/مكروه
follow	يتبع	pursue/chase	avoid/neglect	يتجنب/يهمل
honest	أمين/مخلص	trustful/sincere/candid	dishonest/deceitful/insincere	خائن/غير أمين
host	مضيف	presenter/owner/moderator	guest/visitor	ضيف/زائر
join	يلتحق بـ/يربط	unite/attach	detach/disconnect/disunite	يفصل
main	رئيسى/أساسى	major/essential	minor/trivial	غير هام/تافه
miserable	بائس	unhappy/sad/depressed	cheerful/happy	سعيد/مبتهج
nasty	مقرف/كريه	disgusting/offensive	agreeable/facile	مقبول
plump	ممتلئ الجسم	chubby/fleshy/well-fed	thin/lean	نحيف
praise	يمدح	appreciate/glorify	condemn/criticise	ينتقد/يدين
prestige	احترام (نفوذ/هيبة/وجاهة)	esteem/influence	insignificance/unimportance/disrespect	عدم احترام/عدم أهمية
scared	مذعور	frightened/afraid/fearful	unafraid/bold/brave	غير خائف/شجاع
support	يدعم	aid/assist	desert/abandon	يتخلى عن
voluntary	تطوعى	willing/free	involuntary/unwilling	غير تطوعى

Notes on Vocabulary

لاحظ الفرق بين الكلمات التالية:

1	work	عمل/مكان العمل (اسم لا يعد)
	job	وظيفة/مهنة (اسم يعد)
	career	الحياة العملية أو المهنية للفرد
	profession	مهنة (المهنة بوجه عام)

2	invent	يخترع شيئًا جديدًا لم يكن موجودًا من قبل
	discover	يكتشف شيئًا كان موجودًا ولكنه غير معروف
	explore	يستكشف (مع الأماكن)
3	win	يفوز/يكسب (كأس - مباراة - انتخابات)
	beat	يهزم/يتغلب على (شخص أو فريق)
	gain	يكتسب/يحصل على شيء معنوى مفيد (خبرة - معرفة معلومات - شهرة - الوزن - السرعة)
	earn	يكسب (قوتا أو رزقا) مقابل عمل
4	look at	ينظر إلى
	look for = search for	يبحث عن
	look up	يبحث عن كلمة فى قاموس أو معلومة فى مرجع
	look forward to	يتطلع إلى
	look like	يشبه
	Look out! = Watch out!	احترس
	look after = take care of	يعتنى بـ
5	wear	يرتدى (شكل الملابس كاملًا على الشخص)
	put on	يقوم بارتداء (تعبر عن الحدث وليس نوع الملابس)
	dress	يرتدى (بدون مفعول)
	dress + مفعول	يُلبس شخصًا لا يستطيع اللبس بنفسه
	(be) dressed in = wear	يرتدى
6	paper	ورق (اسم لا يعد)
	papers (n)	جرائد/وثائق/أوراق رسمية
7	connected to	متصل بـ (شيء يتصل مباشرة بشيء آخر ماديًا)
	connected with	مرتبط بـ/له علاقة بـ (معنويًا)
	contact	يتصل بـ
8	spend time with	يقضى وقتًا مع
	spend + (time) + (v-ing)	يقضى وقتًا فى فعل شيء

Practice...

Module (2)
Vocabulary Question Bank

▶ **Choose the TWO (2) correct answers of the FIVE (5) options:**

Group 1

1. Can I borrow your bike, Anas? The antonyms of the word "borrow" are ....
   a) dislike b) lend c) disorder d) organise e) return
2. It is advisable for young men to .... sports regularly.
   a) do b) make c) have d) practise e) participate

Group 2

1. The surface of the plane is hard enough to be able to bear the high pressure. The synonyms of the word "hard" are ....
   a) difficult b) serious c) tough d) solid e) delicate
2. I .... hungry fast when I eat cheese for breakfast.
   a) become b) make c) do d) get e) go

Group 3

1. Sonya preferred to relax at home once she arrived. The antonyms of the word "relax" are ....
   a) worry b) frighten c) rest d) energise e) irritate
2. The chef prepared the food .... although he finished his shift.
   a) willingly b) voluntarily c) unwillingly d) slightly e) unusually

Group 4

1. Mr Ayoub didn't accept my project saying it was ....
   a) thrilling b) tasty c) nasty d) agreeable e) offensive
2. Yahia admitted making mistakes in his exam. The opposite of the word "admitted" is ....
   a) confessed b) denied c) defended d) acknowledged e) renounced

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Group 1

1. Most online .... are trying to convince you to buy goods by all means.
   a) adults b) merchants c) customers d) trades
2. I caught a .... by a trap in our house.
   a) rat b) virus c) pet d) cow
3. .... must pay to enter the museum, but kids enter for free.
   a) Children b) Plump people c) Adults d) Babies
4. Ghareeb was sent to prison because he had a lot of ....
   a) goods b) debts c) doubts d) payments
5. The .... you have enables to deal with all types of people.
   a) experience b) experiences c) expert d) experienced
6. When you think something is true or will stay the same, then you ....
   a) find it difficult b) find it easy
   c) take it easy d) take it for granted
7. .... is forbidden, but some students do it in exams.
   a) Connection b) Policing c) Phishing d) Cheating

Group 2

1. Parents are struggling to be able to .... their children.
a) eat b) feet c) beat d) feed

2. Taking on too much work makes you ....
a) plump b) dirty c) hard d) miserable

3. My sister has a child with .... rosy cheeks. He is very beautiful.
a) ugly b) plump c) tired d) dirty

4. A .... is someone who hurts or frightens someone smaller or less powerful than them.
a) nurse b) cheat c) bully d) police officer

5. Security men are always there to .... the city; that's why I feel safe.
a) police b) nurse c) close d) stop

6. Don't look at my answer sheet. I don't like you to .... from me.
a) cheating b) cheat c) cheated d) cheater

7. The .... about high prices has engaged the whole nation.
a) policing b) fight c) debate d) connection

Group 3

1. I always have a .... face when I stay up late.
a) tiring-looked b) tired-looking c) tiring-looking d) tired-looked

2. You mustn't go there alone at night. Anything might ....
a) take part b) participate c) occur d) share

3. Finally, we were able to pay back all our .... and we feel relaxed now.
a) money b) jobs c) debts d) twins

4. My brother found a .... in a big company in Alexandria.
a) job b) work c) career d) profession

5. My son's friends have had a/an .... effect on him and his results have improved.
a) negative b) disadvantageous c) unhelpful d) positive

6. During my childhood, I always dreamt about .... money from singing.
a) paying b) giving c) gaining d) earning

7. The word "criminal" is both a noun and a/an ....
a) verb b) adjective c) adverb d) interjection

Group 4

1. It took Samah a long time to .... enough confidence to speak in public.
a) win b) beat c) earn d) gain

2. After months without rain, the ground was too .... to plough.
a) hardness b) hardly c) hardest d) hard

3. Youth .... is a group of young people who do things together.
a) association b) federation c) participation d) dream

4. The children were .... to survive the fire which destroyed their home.
a) cultured b) unusual c) lucky d) grown-up

5. I asked Hoda what she thought I should do. She always gives me good ....
a) advice b) connection c) noticeboard d) device

6. She's been feeling very .... since she started this tiring job.
a) happy b) glad c) pleased d) stressed

7. Tamer's already gone to Rome and his wife and children will .... him shortly.
a) follow b) give c) provide d) neglect

Group 5

1. It is advisable to give your students a/an .... to show their ability.
a) opportunity b) solution c) admittance d) insistence
2. Yusuf's computer .... were not good enough to be accepted in the job.
a) skills b) experiments c) debts d) machines
3. I hope to live in a civilised .... whose residents are respectful.
a) tent b) caravan c) shop d) community
4. In what ways do British and Australian .... differ?
a) cultures b) admittance c) characters d) dreams
5. Doctors have to inform patients of the .... side effects of the drug.
a) positive b) nice c) negative d) superior
6. Any increase in taxes may have a bad .... on business.
a) affect b) affective c) effective d) effect
7. No doubt that there is a .... between smoking and cancer.
a) communication b) contact c) connection d) collection

Group 6

1. The thief finally .... he had stolen the money.
a) broke b) admitted c) experienced d) paid
2. Contact your local branch to .... an appointment.
a) do b) save c) arrange d) worry
3. I like doing all my work .... without any help from anyone.
a) alone b) on my own c) by myself d) all mentioned
4. Don't take it .... granted that other students will start a conversation at your new school.
a) for b) to c) with d) on
5. I've got too much to do for my next exams and I'm feeling so ....
a) happy b) stressful c) pleased d) stressed
6. The IT specialist is working on .... the two offices in one network.
a) communicating b) contacting c) relating d) connecting
7. If you want the job, you'll have to .... for it.
a) relax b) stand c) continue d) fight

Group 7

1. Space .... needs a lot of money.
a) discover b) invention c) exploration d) association
2. If you're playing against Salem, I warn you, he .... losing!
a) loves b) likes c) feels d) hates
3. As .... as I'm concerned, Egypt is achieving a lot of progress.
a) for b) far c) long d) soon
4. Most world people have extreme .... towards everyone responsible for Gaza's war.
a) hates b) hatred c) hated d) hating
5. The government .... the difficult challenge of rebuilding the country's economy.
a) faces b) enjoys c) feels d) wears
6. I was very disappointed when I lost some of my important ....
a) paper b) a paper c) papers d) peppers
7. After a long time of illness, I'm feeling .... today. I've stopped all the medicines.
a) graded b) advisable c) better d) afraid

B Language

Unit 3

Present Perfect Tense
زمن المضارع التام

Present Perfect Tense

Usage
- Actions that started in the past and continue into the present.
- Questions and answers about people's experiences.
- Actions that happened in the past without mentioning a specific time.
- Actions that happened in the past and its effect is clear in the present.

Form

He/ She/ It + has + P.P.

He has done his homework.

I/ They/ We/ You + have + P.P.

They have done their homework.

Yes/No ?

Has/ Have + subj. فاعل + P.P.?

A: Has he done his homework?

B: Yes, he has. / No, he hasn't.

B: Yes, he has done his homework.

Negative

He/ She/ It + hasn't + P.P.

He hasn't done his homework.

I/ They/ We/ You + haven't + P.P.

They haven't done their homework.

Wh- ?

Wh- word + has/have + subj. فاعل + P.P.?

A: How long have they done their homework?

B: They have done their homework for 2 hours.

Key vocab

already/ just/ ever/ never/ yet/ lately/ recently/ so far/ up till now/ for/ since

Notes
- مضارع تام (has – have) + P.P. + since + ماضٍ بسيط
- have – has + gone to ذهب وما زال هناك
- فاعل last + ماضٍ بسيط + when + ماضٍ بسيط
- have – has + been to ذهب وعاد
- It is + فترة + since + ماضٍ بسيط

Unit 4

Articles

1 A – An

– تستخدم (a/an) مع الاسم المفرد الذى يعد (له مفرد وجمع) مع ملاحظة التالى:

- a + اسم مفرد يُعد ويبدأ بصوت ساكن
- an + اسم مفرد يُعد ويبدأ بصوت متحرك

– تستخدم قبل وظيفة الشخص.

- My father is a teacher.

– تستخدم قبل الجنسيات إذا جاء بعدها اسم مفرد.

- I met an American boy.

– مع الأعداد الآتية والأجزاء.

a hundred – a thousand – a million – a half – a quarter – a fifth

2 The

تستخدم the مع الحالات الآتية:

- مع الأسماء الفريدة من نوعها فى الكون. the sun
- مع صفات الدرجة الثالثة. the oldest
- مع أسماء البلاد إذا كانت تحتوى على هذه الكلمات republic – state – union – kingdom أو إذا كانت مختصرة.

• the Arab Republic of Egypt
• the U.S.A. – the U.K. – the A.R.E.

- مع بعض الأماكن (عادة أماكن التسلية والترفيه) مثل the cinema
- مع أسماء الأنهار والبحار والمحيطات وسلاسل الجبال الجمع، والكتب المقدسة والصحارى ومجموعة الجزر الجمع، والصحف.

• the River Nile – the Red Sea – the Pacific Ocean – the Alps

- مع الاسم الذى تم ذكره من قبل.

• I met a young boy in the street. The boy was crying.

- مع الآلات الموسيقية مع الأفعال (play – listen to – learn – teach).

• I like to play the piano.

- قبل الصفة للإشارة إلى الجمع (الفقراء). the poor
- قبل أجزاء الجسم البشرى. the head
- قبل أجزاء الزمن واليوم.

• the future – in the morning

- مع الاختراعات والاكتشافات.

• The telephone is so useful.

- عند التحدث عن فصيلة الحيوان.

• The lion is strong.

- مع أسماء الهيئات والمنظمات والمناخ.

• the government – the police – the United Nations – the climate – the weather

- مع جمل المقارنة (كلما .... كلما).

• The more you study, the better marks you will get.

- قبل بعض الكلمات مثل:

• first – second – third – only – last
• Mohamed was the last one to arrive.

3 الحالات الآتية لا يأتى قبلها أى أداة (no article)

- عند التحدث عن الجمع بوجه عام.

• Children are sometimes noisy.

- الأسماء التى لا تُعد والكميات ومنها:

١) أسماء الأطعمة والشراب — oil – water – milk – money – meat – juice

٢) المواد الدراسية — English – Arabic – science – history – physics

٣) المواد الخام بوجه عام — glass – wood – gold – silver – paper

٤) الألعاب الرياضية مثل — football – tennis – basketball – volleyball – swimming

٥) الأسماء المعنوية بوجه عام — advice – freedom – love – sadness – happiness

٦) قبل الوجبات بوجه عام — breakfast – lunch – dinner – supper

- قبل أسماء المدن والدول. Cairo is the capital of Egypt.

– قبل أسماء الجزر المفردة والجبال المفردة والبحيرات المفردة.

• Lake Nasser – Everest – Malta

– قبل الكلمات المتبوعة باسم علم. King Lear – Professor Zewail – President Nasser

– قبل الأماكن الآتية إذا كان الذهاب إليها أو استخدامها للغرض الذى أنشئت من أجله.

• school – bed – hospital – prison – court – church – mosque – college – work

• I go to work every day.

Countable and uncountable nouns

الأسماء التى تُعد والتى لا تُعد

1. **Countable nouns:** a book, an egg, a camel ⟶ books, eggs, camels
2. **Uncountable nouns:** light, news, cloth, meat, soap, homework, petrol, music, advice, oil, food, information, luggage, bread, cake, time, experience, fish, etc.

– يجب حفظ الأسماء التى لا تُعد حفظًا جيدًا، مع ملاحظة أن الأسماء التى لا تُعد تعامل معاملة المفرد حيث إنها لا تفرد ولا تجمع.

هناك تعبيرات للكمية يجب معرفتها جيدًا وهى كالتالى:

- فى الجملة المثبتة نستخدم:

some – a lot of – a few – a little

some – a lot of تأتى مع الاسم الذى يعد والذى لا يعد.

a few مع اسم يعد.

a little مع اسم لا يعد.

- أما فى الجملة المنفية والاستفهامية فإننا نستخدم:

any – many – much

any تأتى مع الاسم الذى يعد والذى لا يعد.

many تأتى مع الاسم الذى يعد.

much تأتى مع الاسم الذى لا يعد.

هناك تعبيرات للتجزئة يجب مراجعتها جيدًا:

a bit of/a piece of cloth/ a sheet of paper/ a slice of meat/ a loaf of bread/ a bottle of milk/ a jar of jam/ a tube of toothpaste/ a bar of chocolate/soap

Practice...

Module (2) Language Question Bank

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Group 1

1. A: Have you visited Aswan? B: ....
a) Already b) Not c) Not yet d) Ever
2. I haven't seen my uncle since ....
a) three weeks b) three weeks ago c) ages d) a long ago
3. We .... our relatives for a year. They are too busy.
a) have met b) haven't been met c) never have met d) haven't met
4. My trousers .... some holes in them.
a) is b) has c) are d) have
5. I'm dreaming of travelling to .... United States of America.
a) no article b) the c) an d) a
6. This is the first time I .... abroad alone.
a) travel b) to travel c) have ever travelled d) travelled
7. How .... do you practise every day?
a) many b) often c) much d) old

Group 2

1. My father has .... the airport. He is on his way to reach it.
a) been in b) gone in c) been to d) gone to
2. .... the last two weeks, we have prepared for our daughter's birth.
a) Since b) At c) For d) While
3. In my opinion, this is the best podcast ....
a) I never heard b) I didn't hear c) I used to hear d) I've ever heard
4. I really find it difficult to move or play football as I .... my leg.
a) breaks b) had broken c) would break d) have broken
5. I only bought my new car last week, but I .... 5000 km with it so far.
a) already driven b) have already driven c) had already driven d) drove
6. Never .... to school late. He is so punctual.
a) he comes b) comes he c) does he come d) is he come
7. .... "King Lear" is a play written by William Shakespeare.
a) A b) An c) The d) No article

Group 3

1. I have lived in the village .... I was born.
a) for b) yet c) since d) already
2. A: Have you ever been to Luxor? B: Yes, I .... there last winter.
a) will go b) am going c) have gone d) went
3. .... he worked as a football trainer, he has earned a lot of money.
a) While b) Having c) Since d) After
4. The SUV car is my .... one. I adore it.
a) the best b) a best c) best d) much best

5. The number of views .... increasing daily.

a) is b) are c) have d) were

6. When I was in .... Cairo, I always walked along .... Nile.

a) the/a b) no article/a c) an/the d) no article/the

7. My father .... to America on business and he is still there.

a) has been b) was going c) has gone d) is going

Group 4

1. It .... five years since I visited my relatives in Sidi Salem.

a) is b) was c) had been d) would be

2. As soon as Mona ...., I will take her out for a walk.

a) arrived b) has arrived c) had arrived d) was arriving

3. Has Hana finished her homework ....?

a) since b) for c) yet d) lately

4. My family have lived in a small village near Cairo .... 2011.

a) in b) by c) when d) since

5. .... tourism is very important for all of us.

a) The b) A c) An d) No article

6. .... a day keeps the doctor away; apples are full of vitamins.

a) Apple b) The apple c) A apple d) An apple

7. Only .... fans attended the concert because of coronavirus.

a) many b) a lot of c) a little d) a few

Group 5

1. My family lived in a small village near Cairo .... 2011.

a) in b) by c) when d) since

2. I can't phone my parents now as I .... my mobile.

a) had lost b) was losing c) has lost d) have lost

3. I think this is the most amusing film we have .... watched.

a) never b) so far c) ever d) yet

4. The judge sent the murderer to .... prison for 20 years.

a) a b) the c) an d) no article

5. My brother works as .... carpenter. He is very clever.

a) an b) a c) the d) no article

6. .... house where I live was partly destroyed by an earthquake.

a) A b) An c) The d) No article

7. I am very tired and nervous. All I want is .... rest.

a) some b) many c) a few d) a lot

Group 6

1. Have you finished the report and the article ....? I can't believe it!

a) yet b) already c) ever d) recently

2. I haven't .... announced my new decisions concerning the new workers.

a) just b) yet c) already d) never

3. I haven't seen action films since my parents .... me.

a) have warned b) had warned c) warn d) warned

4. Jana .... to Tanta with her friends. They are in Mahalla at the moment.

a) has been b) has gone c) was going d) had been

5. Look at .... woman over there! She is a famous actress.

a) an b) a c) the d) no article

6. Nasra was wearing .... ugly dress when she met him.

a) the b) no article c) an d) a

7. They have a lovely house near Málaga. It's near .... coast.

a) the b) a c) an d) no article

Group 7

1. We .... the carpet. It is very clean now.

a) are washing b) have washed c) would wash d) wash

2. My son has studied English .... 5 years.

a) since b) in c) for d) when

3. My father is right to blame me as I .... my wallet at school.

a) had forgotten b) have forgotten c) forgot d) was forgotten

4. The trainer gave me .... useful advice on how to keep fit.

a) an b) many c) some d) a few

5. There is a boy at the door. I think he is .... boy from the market.

a) the b) a c) an d) no article

6. The best thing to drink when you are thirsty is .... water.

a) no article b) a c) an d) the

7. I spend so .... money that I can't save any for my future.

a) many b) a lot c) some d) much

Group 8

1. When I .... the report, I will send you an email.

a) finished b) had finished c) finishes d) have finished

2. I haven't taken part in any competition .... 10 years ago.

a) for b) since c) ago d) in

3. The money .... not enough for the stylish jacket I chose.

a) was b) were c) has d) a & b

4. .... have made travelling easier and more comfortable.

a) The planes b) Planes c) The plane d) All mentioned

5. Physics .... a hard subject which I never excel at.

a) is b) are c) no word d) a & b

6. It is a fact that fear is .... universal weakness.

a) an b) no article c) the d) a

7. Mr Hassan is .... better of the two teachers.

a) a b) an c) the d) no article

Practice...

Module (2)
Skills Question Bank

1 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Passage No. 1

It is a disgusting fact that many different wild animals throughout the world are in danger. The reasons for this are many and varied, but we must blame pollution, pesticides, the disturbance of animals and their natural environment and man's greed.

Industry has grown enormously, and it has become common practice for factories to dispose of waste materials in streams and rivers, causing great loss of river life. Modern agricultural methods include using pesticides which control insects classified as pests, but also destroy so many others that are not. An increase in population meant more buildings which results in the destruction of much of the countryside that provides shelter for wild animals. To satisfy man's selfish desires, the polar bear in North America is under threat, hunted by sportsmen.

Whales are killed for the oil and the food they yield. There are only a few species under threat. But the problem is receiving worldwide recognition, and some actions are being taken. For example, pollution in the River Thames has been greatly reduced, trading in some furs had been forbidden, and the organisations like "Friends of the Earth" do valuable work in this field. We should take serious steps to conserve our environment and protect it from destruction.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Factories dispose of .... in streams and rivers.
a) gas
b) waste
c) oil
d) animals

2. The most suitable title for this passage would be "......................".
a) Wildlife in danger
b) Increase in animal population
c) Agriculture
d) Modern methods of hunting

3. We should take serious steps to conserve our ....
a) polar bears
b) food
c) whales
d) environment

4. Pollution in the River Thames has greatly ....
a) increased
b) developed
c) decreased
d) raised

5. The increase in pollution leads to the .... of much of the countryside.
a) instruction
b) ruin
c) reconstruction
d) construction

6. Pesticides can .... insects.
a) kill
b) fetch
c) hide
d) disappear

7. Now, trading in some furs has been ....
a) allowed
b) conserved
c) banned
d) demanded

Passage No. 2

Every year, about two million people visit Mount Rushmore, where the faces of four U.S. presidents were carved in granite by sculptor Gutzon Borglum and his son, the late Lincoln Borglum. The creation of the Rushmore Monument took 14 years—from 1927 to 1941—and nearly a million dollars. These were times when money was difficult to come by and many people were jobless. To move more than 40,000 tons of rock, Borglum hired laid-off workers from the closed-down mines in the Black Hills area. He taught these men to dynamite, drill, carve and finish the granite. They were hanging in mid-air in specially devised chairs, which had many safety features. Borglum was proud of the fact that no workers were killed or severely injured during the years of blasting and carving.

During the carving, many changes in the original design had to be made to keep the carved heads free of large fissures that were uncovered. Borglum concocted a mixture of granite dust, white lead and linseed oil to fill them. Every winter, water from melting snows gets into the fissures and expands as it freezes, making the fissures bigger. Consequently, every autumn maintenance work is done to refill the cracks. The repairers fix the monument with the same mixture that Borglum used to preserve this national monument for future generations.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. This passage is mainly about ....

a) the visitors to the Mount Rushmore Monument
b) the sculptor of the Mount Rushmore Monument
c) the creation of the Mount Rushmore Monument
d) how to repair national monuments

2. According to the passage, Borglum's son ....

a) was a sculptor
b) was a president
c) spent a million dollars
d) was a miner

3. The underlined word "These" refers to the ....

a) faces
b) years
c) workers
d) dollars

4. The men who Borglum hired were ....

a) trained sculptors
b) Black Hills volunteers
c) unemployed miners
d) severely injured

5. The passage shows that ....

a) the heads are not as originally planned
b) the workers made mistakes when blasting
c) the cracks caused serious injuries
d) Borglum was not loyal to his presidents

6. Borglum's mixture for filling cracks was ....

a) very expensive
b) bought by the Black Hills miners
c) invented by the sculptor himself
d) not used after he died

7. Today, Mount Rushmore needs to be ....

a) polished for tourists
b) restored during the winter
c) visited by people
d) repaired periodically

Passage No. 3

Waking up early is like discovering a hidden treasure box full of benefits, and many people are attracted by the calm moments before the world wakes up. Early risers enjoy the peacefulness, using the time to plan their day, enjoy a good breakfast and take a moment for personal thoughts. It's not just about quiet mornings; waking up early gives you extra time, perfect for finishing tasks, reading a favourite book, or playing outdoors before the day gets busy. But there's more magic to it!

Waking up early also gives you more energy. Imagine having a good night's sleep and waking up with the sunrise - it's like having super hero boost for your day. Early morning became a special time for concentration and learning new things. In a way, waking up early reveals the beauty of nature, watching the sunrise, listening to the birds singing and feeling the gentle morning breeze can make it a magical and inspiring experience. This choice isn't just about getting up early; it's about enjoying quiet moments, having extra time feeling energised, being more focused and feeling a strong connection with nature - a bit like having a superpower that makes every day a little brighter. Getting up with the sunrise is really cool.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. According to the passage, early rising is ....

a) useful
b) harmful
c) terrible
d) horrible

2. What is the best time for learning new things?

a) Late afternoons.
b) Midnight.
c) Early mornings.
d) Midday.

3. From the passage, it is always .... when you get up early.

a) cold and wet
b) noisy and crowded
c) dark and depressing
d) quiet and cool

4. Early risers have .... time to finish their work.

a) no
b) less
c) much more
d) little

5. People who wake up early must have a lot of ....

a) meal
b) energy
c) books
d) birds

6. To get up early, you must ....

a) stay up all night
b) find a hidden treasure box
c) have a good night's sleep
d) reveal the beauty of nature

7. The main idea of the text is "......................".

a) Early to bed and early to rise makes a man healthy, wealthy and wise
b) Eating an early breakfast makes your body strong
c) Having a superpower makes every day a little brighter
d) All people have the habit of rising early in the morning

2 Translation:

Group 1

(A) Choose the correct Arabic translation:

- We must reduce the environmental pollution by the expansion of planting trees and rationalising the use of energy.

a) يجب أن نقلل من التلوث البيئى بالتوسع فى زراعة الأشجار وترشيد استخدام الطاقة.

b) يستحسن أن نقلل من نسبة التلوث البيئى بالتوسع فى زراعة الأشجار ومنع استخدام الطاقة.

c) يجب أن نحد من التلوث البيئى بالتوسع فى زراعة النباتات وترشيد استخدام الطاقة.

d) يجب أن نقلل من نسبة التلوث البيئى بالتوسع فى زراعة الأشجار وترشيد استخدام المياه.

(B) Choose the correct English translation:

- يقوم العلماء بأبحاث عديدة للاستفادة القصوى من مصادر الطاقة المتجددة كالماء والرياح.

a) Chemists do a lot of search to make full use of unrenewable sources, like water and the wind.
b) Scientists makes lots of research because have full use of renewable sources, like water and the wind.
c) Experts stand up with much research to make full use of renewable sources, like water and air.
d) Scientists do a lot of research to make full use of renewable sources, like water and the wind.

Group 2

(A) Choose the correct Arabic translation:

- It isn't impossible for a person to achieve their ambitions if they have patience and a strong will.

a) ليس مستحيلًا على المرء أن يحقق طموحاته إذا ما تحلى بالصبر والإرادة.

b) من المستحيل على الأفراد أن يحققو آمالهم إذا ما تحلوا بالصبر والإرادة القوية.

c) ليس من المستحيل على المرء أن يحقق أهدافه إذا ما تحلى بالزينة والإرادة والعزيمة.

d) ليس من المستحيل على المرء أن يحقق طموحاته إذا ما تحلى بالصبر والإرادة القوية.

(B) Choose the correct English translation:

- تهتم الدولة اهتمامًا كبيرًا بالطفل فهى تقدم له كل سبل الرعاية الممكنة لكى ينمو لائقًا صحيًا وعقليًا.

a) The state is greatly interested in the child. It offers him all possible means of care so that he can grow healthy and mentally fit.
b) The state is greatly interested at the child. It offers it all possible means of care so that he can grow healthy and mentally fit.
c) The state is greatly interested in the child. It offers them all possible means of care so that they can grow healthily and mentally fit.
d) The government is greatly interested in the children. It serves them some probable means of care and that they able to grow healthily and mentally fit.

Group 3

(A) Choose the correct Arabic translation:

- The Egyptian satellite channels have achieved successes and achievements, which surpassed all expectations.

a) لم تحقق القنوات الفضائية المصرية نجاحات وإنجازات كما كان متوقعًا.

b) حققت القنوات الفضائية المصرية نجاحات وإنجازات فاقت كل التوقعات.

c) حققت القنوات الفضائية المصرية الناجحة إنجازات فاقت كل التنبؤات.

d) حققت القنوات الفضائية المصرية نجاحا وإنجازات تفوق كل الاعتقادات.

(B) Choose the correct English translation:

- زيادة الاستثمارات فى مجالات النشاط الاقتصادى المختلفة هى مفتاح النمو والتقدم.

a) The rise of investments in different fields economic activity is the key of getting up and progress.
b) The increase of investments in different fields of economic activity is the key of growth and progress.
c) Increase of investments in difference fields economic activity the key of growth and progress.
d) The increase of investments in different fields of economic activity are the key of grow and progress.

3 Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on the following:

1. With modern technology, life has become easier and more comfortable. Discuss and explain.

....
....
....
....
....
....

2. A friend in need is a friend indeed. Do you have a friend who's ready to support you all the time?

....
....
....
....
....
....

3. A short story you've read and learnt from.

....
....
....
....
....
....

Study...



Revision on Module 3 | Units 5 & 6

A Vocabulary

Unit (5) — أهم مفردات الوحدة الخامسة

anti-virus software (n) برنامج مضاد للفيروسات	downloading malware (n) تحميل برمجيات خبيثة / ضارة	sat-nav (n) نظام الملاحة عن طريق القمر الصناعى
app = application (n) تطبيق حاسب آلى	embarrassing (dj) محرج	scam (n) احتيال
camping (n) التخييم (الخروج فى معسكرات ومخيمات)	flexible (adj) مرن	security (n) أمن
check (v) – ed يفحص / يراجع	hack (n) (v) – ed اختراق / يخترق	socialise (v) – d يختلط (اجتماعيًا)
click (v) – ed يضغط على (رابط)	illegal (adj) غير قانونى	survey (n) دراسة / استطلاع
communicate (v) – d يتواصل	phishing (n) التصيد	task (n) مهمة
cyberbullying (n) التنمر (الابتزاز) الإلكترونى	posting photos نشر الصور	uploading personal details رفع بيانات شخصية على الإنترنت

Unit (6) — أهم مفردات الوحدة السادسة

activities (n) أنشطة	gravel (n) حصى	rhyme (n) (v) – d قافية الشعر / يتناغم
adventure (n) مغامرة	grown-up (adj) (n) كبير / بالغ	rhythm (n) الوزن الشعرى
biography (n) السيرة الذاتية	hay (n) قش / تبن	romantic (adj) رومانسى
brief (adj) مختصر	hop (v) (ped) يقفز على قدم واحدة	sailing (n) إبحار
candlelight (n) ضوء الشموع	issues (n) قضايا	situation (n) موقف
case (n) حالة / قضية	literature (n) الأدب	subject (n) موضوع
consider (v) – ed يعتبر / يضع فى الاعتبار	lock (v) – ed يغلق / يحبس	summary (n) ملخص
currant row صف من العنب (الزبيب)	narrate (v) – d يروى	toy (n) لعبة أطفال
dig (v) يحفر	pirate (n) قرصان	unwell (adj) مريض / معتل الصحة
each other (pron) بعضهم البعض	plot (n) قطعة أرض زراعية / حبكة درامية	verse (n) بيت (فى قصيدة)
especially (adv) خصوصًا	poem (n) قصيدة	
fair (adj) عادل	popular (adj) محبوب	

Expressions, Idioms & Prepositions — أهم التعبيرات والمصطلحات وحروف الجر بالوحدتين

(be) best known for معروف جيدًا بـ	break into يقتحم	compare ... to يشبّه .. بـ
(be) known as معروف كـ	bring ... to يُحضر ... إلى	different from مختلف عن
a driverless car سيارة بدون سائق	build friendships يبنى (يكوّن) صداقات	do a favour يقوم بعمل معروف
a piece of writing قطعة مكتوبة	by day نهارًا	do a job يقوم بعمل
as often as I can بقدر ما أستطيع	collect (someone) يوصل شخصًا بسيارة	do homework يقوم بعمل الواجب المدرسى
at night ليلًا	communicate with يتواصل مع	follow rules يتبع القواعد

get along well with	يتماشى مع	keep the gravel walk	يلزم الطريق المفروش بالحصى	put ... away	يرتب
get away from	يبتعد عن	learn about	يعلم عن	sail from ... to	يبحر من ... إلى
go out	يخرج	listen to	يستمع إلى	send messages to	يرسل رسائل نصية لـ
go past	يمر أمام	look at	ينظر إلى	similar to	مشابه لـ
hack into	يخترق	look like	يبدو كأنه	stay safe online	يبقى آمنًا على الإنترنت
hear about	يسمع عن	made into films	تحولت إلى أفلام	steal from	يسرق من
in particular	على وجه الخصوص	make a decision	يتخذ قرارًا	the other way	على العكس تمامًا
keep a note of	يحتفظ بملحوظة من	outside world	العالم الخارجي	think about	يفكر في

Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	الكلمة	Synonym المرادف	Antonym	المضاد
brief	مختصر	short/compressed	long/lengthy/detailed	طويل
careful	حريص	cautious/concerned	careless/incautious	غير حريص / مهمل
change	يغير	alter/adjust	preserve/remain	يحفظ / يظل
clear	صافٍ / واضح	apparent/bright/cloudless	ambiguous/cloudy/foggy	غامض / غير واضح / غير صافٍ
connected	متصل	linked/joined	disconnected/detached	غير متصل / منفصل
control	يتحكم في	command/dominate	follow/surrender	يتبع / يستسلم
disadvantages	عيوب	demerits/drawbacks	advantages/merits	مزايا
embarrassing	محرج	awkward/uncomfortable	elegant/convenient	لائق / مناسب
enough	كافٍ	adequate/sufficient	inadequate/insufficient	غير كافٍ
fair	عادل	unprejudiced/impartial	prejudiced/partial	متحيز
funny	مضحك	comical/humorous	serious/unfunny	جاد / غير مضحك
furious	غاضب جدًا	very angry/raging/boiling	calm/quiet	هادئ
heating	التدفئة	warming/boiling	cooling/freezing	تبريد / تجميد
horrible	فظيع	unpleasant/awful	attractive/pleasant	جذاب
illegal	غير قانوني	unlawful/banned/unauthorised	legal/lawful/authorised	قانوني
major	رئيسي	main/primary/leading	minor/secondary/trivial	ثانوي / تافه
personal	شخصي	private/individual	public/common	عام / شائع
safe	آمن	secure/protected	insecure/risky	غير آمن / خطير
scary	مخيف	frightening/terrifying	normal/calming	طبيعي / مهدئ
security	أمن	safety/protection	insecurity/danger	عدم الأمان / الخطر
serious	خطير	dangerous/severe/tough	safe/facile/calm	آمن
socialise	يختلط (اجتماعيًا)	mix/mingle	dissociate/separate	ينفصل اجتماعيًا
ugly	قبيح	unattractive/bad-looking	beautiful/pretty	جميل

Notes on Vocabulary

لاحظ الفرق بين الكلمات التالية:

1	electric (adj)	كهربائى أى يعمل بالكهرباء (لوصف الأدوات والأجهزة)
	electrical (adj)	كهربائى أى يتعامل مع الكهرباء (لوصف الأعطال والأشخاص)
	electricity (n)	الكهرباء
	electrician (n)	عامل فنى كهرباء
	electronic (adj)	إلكترونى
2	experience	الخبرة (ما يكتسبه الشخص من معرفة ومهارات من خلال عمل معين) (لا تُعد)
	experience(s)	مواقف أو تجارب أو خبرات فى الحياة. (تُعد)
	experiment	تجربة علمية (داخل معمل)
3	everyday (adj)	يومى
	every day (adv)	يوميًا
4	(be) able to + (inf.)	قادر على
	(be) capable of + (v-ing)	قادر على
	(have) the ability to + (inf.)	لديه القدرة على
	(someone/ something) + enable + (someone/ something) + to + (inf.)	... يُمكِّن ... من ...
5	(be) born in + (مكان / سنة)	وُلد فى ...
	(be) born on + (تاريخ / يوم)	وُلد فى ...
	(be) born into ...	وُلد فى عائلة
	(be) born with + (disease)	مولود (بمرض)
6	at the age of = aged	فى سن
	in the age of	فى عصر

Practice...

Module (3) Vocabulary Question Bank

Choose the TWO (2) correct answers of the FIVE (5) options:

Group 1

1. You are ....; that's why you have had this accident.
a) careless b) careful c) incautious d) awake e) smart

2. Wafaa leaped into the air with joy when she heard the good news. The synonyms of the word "joy" are ....
a) charm b) delight c) cleverness d) energy e) effectiveness

Group 2

1. ...., I can't believe that Tamer has lived in the USA; he can hardly spell his name in English.
a) Actively b) Personally c) Painfully d) In my opinion e) At my point of view

2. Hey! What you're saying is .... We want to finish because we sleep early.
a) repetitively b) repeatedly c) repeatable d) repeated e) repetitive

Group 3

1. The old buildings look .... although they are near the main street.
a) weary b) unattractive c) attractive d) fascinating e) ugly

2. Always remember to do your .... perfectly, then ask about your rights.
a) crime b) better c) work d) job e) favour

Group 4

1. When I was young, I used to .... the house rules and my parents called me the good boy.
a) break b) follow c) prepare d) obey e) fix

2. Grandma is the best one to narrate fictional stories about animals. The synonyms of the word "narrate" are ....
a) portray b) draw c) tail d) remain e) recite

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Group 1

1. Some .... emails can look as if they come from a real bank email address.
a) camping b) security c) application d) phishing

2. The government is trying hard to improve the .... system in Egypt.
a) education b) culture c) phishing d) hacking

3. When I moved to my new house, I didn't take much time to get .... my new neighbours.
a) along with b) away from c) down to d) up with

4. I connected the charger .... my laptop before going to the kitchen.
a) on b) about c) off d) to

5. He expresses his ideas in a .... way.
a) clearness b) clarity c) clear d) clearly

6. "The criminal was locked up." This means ....
a) he was killed b) he was arrested
c) he was put in prison d) he managed to escape

7. No one has ever hacked .... my computer.
a) of b) off c) into d) to

Group 2

1. Parents must always keep in .... with their children at any time.
   a) connect b) communicate c) contract d) contact
2. A person hit the .... guard and ran away.
   a) communication b) phishing c) security d) application
3. When they .... the room, we were able to see each other.
   a) darkened b) lit c) caused d) hacked
4. Missing your family and friends is one of the .... of working abroad.
   a) movements b) benefits c) causes d) disadvantages
5. The word "hat" .... with the word "cat".
   a) harms b) rhymes c) calls d) improves
6. I liked the comic film as it has a very simple ....
   a) serial b) raw c) plot d) fiction
7. I had sent the company 5000 pounds before I realised it was a ....
   a) scam b) scams c) scammed d) scammer

Group 3

1. Now, teachers are always searching .... for extra information.
   a) in line b) on the line c) online d) offline
2. The .... attempt to reach a peaceful settlement ended in failure.
   a) latest b) false c) empty d) linked
3. His name has been .... with several famous actresses since he started his new career.
   a) communicated b) linked c) contacted d) covered
4. The story was .... and it didn't take much time.
   a) long b) pure c) boring d) brief
5. If you compare prices in the two areas, it's .... amazing how different they are.
   a) quite b) quiet c) quit d) kind
6. The verb "..................." means to move earth, snow, etc. or to make a hole in the ground, using a spade or your hands.
   a) cut b) drill c) dig d) wig
7. They make .... to feed cattle in winter.
   a) way b) gravel c) use d) hay

Group 4

1. Modern .... has helped us to improve crop yields by over 30%.
   a) technology b) archaeology c) experience d) heating
2. My schedule is quite .... I have plenty of choices.
   a) stuck b) sticky c) flexible d) rubbery
3. The new modern .... are enabling more people to work from home.
   a) internet b) hacks c) contacts d) communications
4. There are many shops selling new electronic .... in Sidi Gaber Mall.
   a) devices b) advises c) marks d) pipes
5. These .... should be available for all pupils to learn from them, not just some of them.
   a) recipes b) competitions c) toys d) activities
6. The light went out suddenly, so my son had to .... in the dark to go to his friend's party.
   a) hate b) describe c) dress d) detach
7. I remember playing hopscotch in the street in which we used to .... on one foot.
   a) hope b) crawl c) run d) hop

Group 5

1. It is against the law for anyone to enter any country ....
a) legality b) illegally c) lawfully d) easily
2. Sending messages online to frighten or worry someone is what we call ....
a) downloading b) clicking c) uploading d) cyberbullying
3. Mona! I'm sorry, I didn't .... you. You've had your hair cut!
a) realise b) recognise c) analyse d) organise
4. My uncle has invited us to go .... in the Red Sea this weekend.
a) boxing b) weightlifting c) beach d) sailing
5. Although he .... to lie in bed, his doctor advised him not to leave it.
a) hopped b) described c) narrated d) hated
6. Families, ... those with young children, benefit from the health programme.
a) differently b) especially c) excitingly d) fairly
7. The accident left her with three .... bones in her leg.
a) brief b) repeated c) broken d) exciting

Group 6

1. It was so .... as I couldn't remember his name when he talked to me.
a) excited b) embarrassing c) impossible d) scary
2. The email requires me to send back my personal details. I think it's a ....
a) scam b) click c) link d) change
3. After .... the film, we sat together to watch it.
a) downloading b) clicking c) uploading d) cyberbullying
4. Upload your .... details. Be careful with the website and make sure its trustworthy موثوق.
a) personnel b) personal c) personality d) personally
5. Every parent .... to see their children successful in their lives.
a) locks b) wishes c) becomes d) supposes
6. I found these CDs very .... when I was learning English.
a) helpful b) cooperative c) particular d) hopeful
7. Mrs Rasha is a professor of language and .... at Damanhour University.
a) literary b) literature c) literal d) liberal

Group 7

1. I can't check the latest update as my phone is not .... to the internet.
a) communicated b) connected c) constructed d) contracted
2. Children like to .... new games from the internet when the vacation starts.
a) upload b) download c) downside d) destroy
3. I asked my son to .... the door when he went out.
a) look b) describe c) lock d) repeat
4. Dried grapes and berries are called ....
a) current b) currency c) currant d) cricket
5. Small pieces of land used for growing things are called ....
a) plots b) lakes c) ponds d) fountains
6. Gold, silver and money that someone has hidden in a place, is called ....
a) pleasure b) treasure c) pressure d) measure
7. The novel which was published last year was a ....
a) successful b) successfully c) success d) succeed

B **Language**

Unit 5

Future

will + inf.	- on-the-spot decision قرار سريع - future fact حقيقة فى المستقبل - offer عرض - request طلب - promise وعد - threat تهديد - predict تنبؤ - expect توقع - hope أمل - I'm sure متأكد - perhaps ربما - probably من المحتمل - warning تحذير - think يعتقد - I think they will win the match.
be going to + inf.	- intend ينوى He is going to spend the summer holiday in France. That's his intention. - plan يخطط Ali is going to study science. That's his plan. - (have – has) already decided قرر من قبل I am going to do my work. I have already decided. - prediction with evidence تنبؤ بدليل The sky is very cloudy. It is going to rain.
am – is – are + (v-ing) مضارع مستمر	- arrangement ترتيب They are having lunch at the restaurant. They have arranged (prepared) to do so. - prepare يجهز/يرتب - كلمة تدل على اكتمال الترتيب. We are travelling to London tomorrow. I have booked the tickets.
Present simple مضارع بسيط	- timetable - جدول مواعيد ثابتة للأشياء. My English lesson starts at 2:30 tomorrow.

Verbs (to + inf. OR v-ing)

ـ أفعال تتبع بـ to + inf.

afford	deserve	mean	seem
agree	expect	offer	tend
arrange	fail	plan	threaten
attempt	hope	pretend	want
dare	learn	promise	choose
decide	manage	refuse	wish

ـ أفعال تتبع بـ v-ing

admit	deny	imagine	recommend
adore	dislike	involve	resist
avoid	enjoy	mind	risk
confess	fancy	miss	suggest
consider	finish	postpone	escape
delay	go	practise	understand

ـ أفعال يأتى بعدها مفعول ثم to + inf.

ask	get	persuade	teach
enable	invite	recommend	tell
force	order	remind	warn

ـ أفعال من الممكن أن يأتى بعدها to + inf. أو مفعول ثم to + inf.

ask	help	predict	would like
expect	mean	want	would prefer

ـ أفعال يأتى بعدها (obj. + to + inf.) أو v-ing مع عدم وجود مفعول.

advise	allow	encourage	permit	recommend

- أفعال يأتى بعدها .to + inf أو v-ing بدون أى اختلاف فى المعنى:

start	begin	continue	intend
like	love	hate	prefer

ولكن عند وجود would أو d' قبلها نستخدم .to + inf

would (like – love – prefer) to + inf.

- أفعال يأتى بعدها .to + inf أو v-ing مع اختلاف واضح فى المعنى.

remember – forget

to + inf.	v-ing
الحدث لم يتم	الحدث تم

stop

to + inf.	v-ing
يتوقف لكى يقوم بالفعل	يتوقف عن القيام بالفعل

Practice...

Module (3)
Language Question Bank

▶ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Group 1

1. Somebody is knocking on the door. – OK. I .... and open it.
a) am going b) will go c) am going to go d) go
2. Twenty years from now, I think my city .... a fantastic place to live in.
a) is b) is being c) is going to be d) will be
3. I .... Fadel tomorrow morning. He accepted my invitation and booked a flight.
a) will meet b) am meeting c) am going to be met d) meet
4. Ali trains hard for the next competition, I think he .... it.
a) will be won b) is going to win c) is winning d) wins
5. I regret .... this used car. I need a lot of money to fix it.
a) buying b) to buy c) to buying d) buy
6. I promised Marwan .... him a new bike.
a) will buy b) would buy c) to buying d) to buy
7. Rania plans .... her relatives next week.
a) to visit b) visiting c) to visiting d) visits

Group 2

1. Those bags look heavy, so I .... them for you.
a) will carry b) am going to carry c) am carrying d) will have carried
2. This summer, we .... on holiday to Dahab, I am sure you will enjoy if you come with us.
a) are going b) will have gone c) would go d) go
3. I can't meet you this evening. I .... my dentist.
a) see b) seeing c) am seeing d) will se
4. A: What arrangements have you made for next week? B: I .... to Alexandria with my father.
a) will travel b) am travelling c) going travelling d) travel
5. You have to tidy your room or your mother .... you.
a) is punishing b) punishes c) will punish d) has punished
6. We'd really like .... on holiday, but we don't have enough money.
a) to going b) be going c) to go d) going
7. I .... the summer holiday in Alex as planned.
a) will spend b) am going to spend c) am spending d) spend

Group 3

1. The sun is getting down. It .... dark in half an hour.
a) won't be b) is going to be c) is being d) would be
2. If I get that job, I .... out and celebrate.
a) will go b) am going c) would go d) go
3. Dad, you look tired. I .... you some tea until I have prepared the lunch.
a) am make b) am going to make c) make d) will make
4. The suspect مشتبه به was seen .... to the man before disappearing.
a) talking b) to talking c) to talk d) talks

5. British Airways regrets .... the cancellation of Flight BA205 to Madrid.
a) announcing b) announce c) to announce d) announced

6. Students are recommended .... a lot before exams.
a) revising b) to revising c) to revise d) that revise

7. The famous actor wore a cap and sunglasses to avoid .... by anyone.
a) being recognised b) recognising c) to recognise d) to be recognised

Group 4

1. I have made up my mind. I .... with them on the next journey.
a) am going to go b) will go c) would go d) will have gone

2. My son's birthday .... next Sunday.
a) is going b) is being c) will have been d) will be

3. My brother .... to London tomorrow. He has arranged everything.
a) is flying b) will fly c) is going to fly d) flies

4. Khaleel is very strong. I think he .... this heavy box.
a) is carrying b) will carry
c) will be carrying d) is going to be carrying

5. Having a car enables you .... around more easily.
a) travel b) to travel c) to travelling d) travelled

6. He suggested .... closer to the beach.
a) to swim b) swimming c) had swum d) swam

7. I can't stand people .... loudly on the bus.
a) chat b) chatting c) chatted d) to chat

Group 5

1. Please, take care! You .... in the hole in front of you.
a) are going to fall b) will fall c) are falling d) will be falling

2. The plane from London .... at 6 o'clock tomorrow.
a) is arriving b) arrives c) will be arriving d) will have arrived

3. Don't worry about this problem. I promise I .... you.
a) will be helping b) would help c) will help d) am helping

4. Are you looking forward .... this job in this company?
a) getting b) get c) to get d) to getting

5. I always hope my students .... high marks.
a) to get b) get c) got d) getting

6. My father doesn't allow anyone .... in his office.
a) smoking b) smoke c) to smoking d) to smoke

7. I wouldn't recommend you .... at that hotel.
a) stay b) staying c) to staying d) to stay

Group 6

1. I .... hire a car to travel to Alexandria. That's my plan.
a) am going to b) will c) may d) could

2. When he arrives, I .... dinner with him.
a) am having b) would have c) have d) will have

3. Mona .... wash the clothes. She's already decided to do so.

a) will b) would c) is going to d) can't

4. I don't mind .... at home alone as long as I'll eat fast food.

a) stay b) staying c) to stay d) to staying

5. It's raining outside. Would you prefer .... in with us?

a) to stay b) stay c) staying d) stays

6. Don't forget .... the door from inside.

a) to lock b) locking c) lock d) to locking

7. All of us must stop .... unhealthy food and drinking fizzy drinks.

a) to have b) having c) to having d) have

Group 7

1. We .... probably have ice cream for dessert since it's so hot today.

a) going to b) will c) are d) won't

2. We .... our relatives tomorrow in the afternoon.

a) will visit b) were visiting c) are visiting d) will be visited

3. Salma and Sarah have made plans. They .... skate tomorrow.

a) are going to b) would c) will d) may

4. The result of the exams .... tomorrow.

a) will know b) will be known c) is knowing d) was known

5. My sister objected .... all the washing up alone.

a) to do b) doing c) do d) to doing

6. You'd better avoid .... friends with Ahmed whom you saw steal your money.

a) to make b) making c) makes d) to making

7. I remember .... that man when I was nine.

a) being met b) met c) to meet d) meeting

Group 8

1. Have you finished .... that book I lent you?

a) read b) reads c) to read d) reading

2. Please, remember .... your friend before you sleep.

a) to phone b) phone c) phoning d) phones

3. Moaaz felt exhausted as he has never been used to .... hard work.

a) do b) did c) doing d) done

4. Ayman wishes he had studied for his exams. He regrets ....

a) to study b) to studying c) studying d) not studying

5. When it is very hot, I suggest that we .... inside.

a) stay b) to stay c) to staying d) staying

6. The joke was so funny that we couldn't help .... during the party.

a) laugh b) laughs c) laughing d) to laugh

7. Would you like me .... to the club with you?

a) going b) go c) to go d) to going

Practice...

Module (3)
Skills Question Bank

1 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Passage No. 1

Do you love plastic? People love plastic. They think it's great! You can see why. It is very adjustable: you can change its shape and it is very light. It is also very cheap. And it is attractive, you can have it in any colour. But it causes many problems. Because it's cheap. People throw plastic things away. On top of this, a lot of packaging contains plastic. Parts of your fast food meals and packets of certain types of crisps are made from plastic. Why is this a problem? Well, it is homely; it is not nice to look at. However, one of the main problems is that the plastic is not biodegradable. It lives for many, many years. It's a particular problem in the seas and oceans. It breaks up into small pieces and marine life, from whales to the smallest fish, eats these plastic particles. It is poisonous to them. Besides, when humans eat fish and seafood, they are also ingesting these plastic particles. Bigger pieces of plastic, like bottles, can cause problems if larger fish, for example, dolphins, swallow them. They block up the dolphin's stomach and this can kill the dolphins.

We must stop making so much plastic and putting it into our environment. Stop and think before you buy plastic and stop and think twice before you throw plastic things away!

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. What do people think of plastic?

a) People hate plastic and they think it is nasty.
b) People love plastic, they think it is great!
c) People love plastic although it is ugly.
d) People hate plastic as it isn't useful.

2. What does the underlined word "adjustable" mean?

a) Cheap. b) Poisonous. c) Flexible. d) Expensive.t

3. Why do people love plastic?

a) It is very cheap. b) It is attractive.
c) You can have it in any colour. d) All of these.

4. Which one of the following isn't a problem caused by plastic?

a) Plastic is very flexible and you can change its shape.
b) People throw plastic things away.
c) People don't re-use plastic things as it is cheap.
d) Plastic is not biodegradable.

5. Which problem can plastic bottles cause to the dolphins?

a) The dolphins eat them and become fat. b) They block up the dolphin's stomach.
c) The dolphins die after eating them. d) The dolphins spend much time eating them.

6. What must we do to avoid the problem of plastic?

a) We must stop making so much plastic. b) We mustn't eat fish.
c) You should continue to buy plastic. d) All of these.

7. What is the best title for the passage? - "...................".

a) We can't live without plastic b) The advantages of plastic
c) The ugly fact of plastic d) Plastic is fantastic

Passage No. 2

We notice that there is a lot more violence in children nowadays. Violence is sometimes caused because people grow up seeing it openly displayed. A Lot of children are bullied at school. Bullying is very negative and creates major problems for our society. In fact, it does destroy many people's lives. Even worse, kids could be hurt or seriously injured if the bullying gets extreme. It can lead to depression, isolation, suicide, emotional problems, low confidence, and stress. Additionally, the bully can have a higher chance of joining in criminal activities. Bullying at the hands of students may make children afraid to go to school and can negatively affect their ability to learn. So, the best way to address bullying is to stop it before it starts. Also, schools need to apply more serious punishments for those who bully because maybe that will prevent it from happening as often. If you are being bullied, and you feel safe to do so: ignore them, tell them to stop, pretend you don't care, get support from your friends, parents or teachers. If you see someone else being bullied, and feel safe to do so, you can: refuse to join in, tell the person doing the bullying to stop.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. What is the main idea of this passage?

a) Bullying is a fun crime. b) Bullying is a serious crime.
c) Bullying is a legal right. d) Bullying isn't a crime.

2. What are the best ways to stop someone bullying you?

a) Ignore them b) Tell them to stop
c) Get support from your friends d) All of these

3. If you see a friend of you being bullied, you should .... the bully at once.

a) stop b) help
c) pretend you don't care d) ignore

4. The underlined word "those" refers to ....

a) schools b) bullies
c) hands d) punishments

5. Bullying sometimes causes ....

a) happiness b) depression
c) satisfaction d) ignorance

6. If the bullying gets extreme, ...

a) someone may kill themselves b) schools are blamed
c) friends should support it d) victims should cry

7. School can prevent bullying from happening by applying stricter .... for bullies.

a) depression b) emotional problems
c) supports d) punishments

Passage No. 3

Honeybees make buzzing sounds when they fly, but that is not the way how they communicate. Instead, they do some amazing things to tell other bees things they need to know.

Dancing is an instrumental way of communication between bees, especially when needing to tell where to find flowers. When a bee locates those flowers, it returns to the hive and does a special "dance." For a bee, a dance means moving in a certain way as it crawls around. There are "round dances" that bees do when the flowers are close to the hive. There are also "waggle dances," which the bees do when the flowers are farther away.

Bees' dances are not the only way a bee communicates. Bees also produce chemicals called pheromones. If an animal like a bear approaches the beehive, the honeybees' bodies start to make these special chemicals. Other bees sense these pheromones and know that an animal is threatening the hive. They all start to fly out to try to sting the animal and scare it away.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. What is the main topic of the passage?

a) Why do bees dance? b) How do bees communicate?
c) How can bees make honey? d) Bees live in hives.

2. According to the passage, bees communicate by ....

a) singing b) dancing
c) making buzzing sounds d) eating

3. The underlined word "beehive" means ....

a) what bees eat b) how bees dance c) where bees live d) when bees die

4. "Round dances" means that the flowers are .... the hive.

a) near b) far from c) remote to d) opposite to

5. Bees produce pheromones when they are ....

a) happy b) in danger c) safe d) playing

6. The pattern a bee dances tells how .... the flowers are.

a) much or little b) near or far c) high or low d) fast or slow

7. When there is an animal near the hive, ...

a) the bees run away b) the bees try to keep it away
c) the queen kills it d) the hive flies to a safer place

2 Translation:

Group 1

(A) Choose the correct Arabic translation:

- The Olympic Games are held every four years in one of the competitive countries.

a) تقام الألعاب الأوليمبية مرة كل أربع سنوات فى أحد البلاد المتنافسة.

b) تقام الألعاب البارالیمبیة مرة كل أربع سنوات فى أحد البلاد المتنافسة.

c) الألعاب العالمية تقام مرة كل أربع سنوات فى أحد البلاد المتنافسة.

d) أقيمت الألعاب الأوليمبية أربع مرات كل سنة فى أحد البلاد المتنافسة.

(B) Choose the correct English translation:

– إن زيادة الإنتاج أصبحت واجبًا وطنيًّا لأنه يمكننا من مواجهة مشكلة تزايد السكان والبطالة فى مصر.

a) Increasing production has become a national duty because it enables us to face the problems of overpopulation and unemployment in Egypt.

b) Increasing producing had become national duty but it enables us to face the problems of growing population and unemployment in Egypt.

c) The increase of production is a cultural homework because it enables us to face the problems of growing population and unemployment in Egypt.

d) The increase of production had become a national homework because we can face the problems of overpopulation and unemployment here.

Group 2

(A) Choose the correct Arabic translation:

- Delivering the Nile water to the Egyptian desert means increasing production and creating job opportunities for a big number of the Egyptians.

a) إن عدم وصول مياه النيل إلى صحراء مصر يعنى زيادة الإنتاج وإيجاد فرص عمل لعدد كبير من المصريين.

b) إن وصول مياه النيل إلى صحراء مصر يعنى غمر الإنتاج وإيجاد فرص عمل لعدد كبير من الناس.

c) إن وصول مياه النيل إلى الصحارى المصرية يَعنى زيادة الإنتاج وإيجاد فرص عمل لعدد كبير من المصريين.

d) إن وصول مياه النيل إلى صحراء مصر يعنى زيادة الإنتاج وإيجاد فرص عمل لعدد ليس بقليل من الأفراد.

(B) Choose the correct English translation:

– الإنترنت عبارة عن شبكة عالمية تفيد مليارات الناس فى العالم. فقد أصبحت الأنشطة اليومية التى كانت تستغرق وقتًا طويلًا ويصعب إداراتها بسيطة للغاية ويسهل إنجازها.

a) The internet is a local network that benefits millions of people in Egypt. Daily activities that were time consuming and difficult to manage are now very simple and easy to accomplish.

b) The internet are a global network that benefits billions of people in the world. Daily activities that were time consuming and difficult to manage aren't now very complex and easy to accomplish.

c) The internet is a global network that benefits billions of people in the world. Daily activities that used to be time consuming and difficult to manage are now very simple and easy to accomplish.

d) Internet is a global net that benefits most people in the world. Daily activities that used to be expensive and difficult to manage are now very simple and easy to accomplish.

Group 3

(A) Choose the correct Arabic translation:

- Illiteracy is one of the most serious ills of our society, so every citizen should play an effective part in eliminating illiteracy in their town or village.

a) الجهل من أخطار أمراض مجتمعنا، ولكن يجب على كل مواطن أن يكون دورًا فعالًا فى محو الجهل فى مدينته أو قريته.

b) الأمية من أخطر مشكلات مجتمعنا، ولذا على كل مواطن أن يلعب دورًا فعالًا فى ازالة الأمية فى المدينة أو القرية.

c) الأمية من أخطر مشكلات مجتمعنا، ولذا يجب على كل مواطن أن يلعب دورًا فعالًا فى محو الأمية فى مدينته أو قريته.

d) الأمية من أخطر مشاكل مجتمعنا، ولذا يجب على كل مواطن أن يلعب دورًا هامًا فى محو الأمية فى المدينة أو القرية.

(B) Choose the correct English translation:

- لقد أثرت الحرب الروسية -الأوكرانية على أسعار السلع الضرورية والنفط فى كل أنحاء العالم وخاصة الدول النامية.

a) The Russian-Ukrainian war has affected the prices of essential commodities and energy all over the world, especially the developed countries.

b) The Russian-Ukrainian war had affected the prices of essential commodities and energy all over the world, especially the developing countries.

c) The Russian-Ukrainian war has affected the prices of essential commodities and oil all over the world, especially in the developing countries.

d) The Russia-Ukrain battle has affected the prices of all goods and gas all over the world, especially in developing countries.

3 Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on the following:

1. Reading reinforces the power of mind.

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

2. If we didn't have phones, how would communication be like?

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

3. The role of poets and writers in shaping our society's culture.

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Treasure Island Revision

Vocabulary

أهم المفردات

advantage (n)	ميزة	expect (v) – ed	يتوقع	parrot (n)	ببغاء
attack (v) – ed (n)	يهاجم/هجوم	fight (v) – (n)	يتشاجر/يقاتل/قتال	patient (adj)	صبور
barrel (n)	برميل	fire (v) – d	يطلق النار	pirate (n)	قرصان
blind (adj)	أعمى	flag (n)	عَلم/راية	rob (v) – bed	يسرق
branch (n)	فرع	gang (n)	عصابة	sail (n)	شراع السفينة
cannon (n)	مدفع	get to (v)	يصل إلى	scar (n)	ندبة/جرح
cliff (n)	منحدر	grab (v) – bed	يجذب/يشد	secret (n)	سر
clue (n)	دليل/مفتاح لغز	guard (v) – ed	يحرس	servant (n)	خادم
contact (v) – ed	يتواصل مع	harbour (n)	مرفأ/ميناء	shore (n)	شاطئ
count (v) – ed	يعد/يحسب	head (n)	رئيس	shout (n)	صرخة/صيحة
crazy (adj)	مجنون	inn (n)	حانة	spade (n)	جاروف
crew (n)	طاقم العمل	kneel down (v)	يركع	supplies (n)	مؤن/مخزون
crutch (n)	عكاز	leader (n)	قائد	surprised (adj)	مندهش
dare (v) – d	يجرؤ	magistrate (n)	محقق	sword (n)	سيف
defend (v) – ed	يدافع عن	mutiny (n)	تمرد	trust (n) (v) – ed	ثقة/يثق
disease (n)	مرض	owe (v) – d	يدين	well-defended (adj)	محصن
escape (v) – d	يهرب	pale (adj)	شاحب	whistle (n) (v) – d	صفارة/يصفر

Summary

Chapter (1)

- The narrator of the story is called Jim Hawkins. His father owned an inn called the Admiral Benbow many years ago. A man walked into the inn. He was tall and strong, with a scar on his face.
- The man decided to stay in the inn. He had a large wooden box. He asked them to call him Captain.
- The Captain stayed at the inn for months. One morning, another man walked into the inn and asked about him. He was thin and pale, with three fingers on his left hand.
- When the Captain returned and saw the man. He called the man Black Dog. Jim left them talking. Suddenly, there were loud voices and then he saw Black Dog running away with blood on his arm.
- The Captain fell over. At that moment, a doctor arrived to see Jim's father who was sick. The doctor looked at the Captain and gave him some medicine.

- The Captain stayed in bed, but he was not quiet. He told Jim that he had something which people wanted and Black Dog was not as bad as some of the other men.
- That evening, Jim's father died. Then, a week later, Jim saw a blind man coming towards the inn. He asked Jim to take him to the Captain who looked very surprised to see him. He then put something in the Captain's hand, turned around and left.
- The Captain suddenly fell to the floor. He was dead. Jim and his mother knew that the Captain had a box in his room and it probably had money in it. The blind man and Black Dog probably wanted this.
- Jim thought about taking the box to Dr Livesy, but he knew they were in danger, so they asked their neighbours for help, but they refused. Only one of them went to tell Dr Livesy.
- They found the box key and the message that the blind man gave to the Captain. It said, "You have until ten o'clock tonight."
- Jim's mother opened the box and found some clothes, some guns, some papers and other things. They also found a bag with some coins inside.
- Jim and his mother took the money and the papers and walked back towards the village, but as they walked, they heard the sound of people on the road behind them. They stopped under a bridge, where they could hide in the dark.

Chapter (2)

- Jim could see eight men. One of them was the blind man. They ran inside the Admiral Benbow Inn. The blind man asked them to find Bill's box.
- They found out that someone opened the box. The blind man knew that it was Jim and his mother who did that. At this time, they heard horses coming down the road and they started to run in all directions.
- Jim ran out to see who was riding the horses. One of them was the boy who went to get Dr Livesy, and the rest were policemen. Two men took his mother to the village, and the others tried to catch the men who escaped on a boat.
- Jim showed the policemen the papers that he still had in his jacket. He wanted to take them to Dr Livesy and the head of the police, Mr Dance, agreed as Dr Livesy was a magistrate as well as a doctor. And he'd know what to do.
- They found that Dr Livesy was eating at the house of Mr Trelawney, an important rich man. Mr Trelawney asked them into his house. Jim showed Mr Trelawney and Dr Livesy the papers that the Captain had in his box.
- The doctor thought this might be a clue to the place where Flint buried his treasure. Mr Trelawney agreed with him and suggested that they should take the next boat from Bristol and find the treasure themselves.
- The doctor looked at the papers. Some of them seemed to describe the ships that the Captain and his men had robbed. Then they looked at the other papers and saw a map of an island, with a big cross on it next to the words, "most of the treasure here."

- Mr Trelawney asked Dr Livesy to go to Bristol the next day. He wanted Jim Hawkins to come as their ship's boy and Dr Livesy as the ship's doctor. The doctor agreed, but he was worried that those men who tried to find the map would look for them.
- While Mr Trelawney prepared for the journey in Bristol, Jim stayed at Mr Trelawney's house with his servant Redruth.
- One day, a letter was sent to Jim from Mr Trelawney. It said that a good man called Blandly had a ship called the *Hispaniola* for them. Trelawney said that he had found a crew ready to work on it. The crew included a man called Long John Silver, who had lost a leg but was a good cook. Silver also knew other men who would join them.
- Jim was surprised by this, as he thought they had to keep the news of the treasure a secret. He was very excited but sad to leave his mother when he travelled to Bristol with Redruth.

Chapter (3)

- The next morning, Mr Trelawney asked Jim to take a note to Long John Silver. Jim went to the inn which Silver owned and gave him the note.
- Silver was surprised when he saw it was from Mr Trelawney. While they were going to him, Silver talked about boats and Jim knew that he was a great sailor.
- Mr Trelawney told them that they had to leave at four o'clock that afternoon. And asked Jim to get his hat to go on the ship. When they walked onto the *Hispaniola*, the Captain, Smollett, did not look happy to see them. He didn't like the men on this ship and he was not happy about where they were going. The crew told him they were looking for treasure which always meant danger. He didn't want to show anyone the map for fear of a mutiny.
- Dr Livesy thought that they had two good men on the ship: Silver and Captain Smollett. Mr Trelawney knew that Silver was a good man, but he didn't think Captain Smollett was and Jim agreed with him.
- Silver was able to walk around the ship using only a crutch. All the men liked him and he was a good cook. He looked after his parrot, Captain Flint, which was 200 years old.
- One night, Jim climbed inside the apple barrel to eat an apple. He heard a man talking nearby.
- Silver was saying that Flint was the Captain. It was then that he lost his leg and Pew became blind. After that journey, he put a lot of money in the bank. It was a great journey, and most of the same crew were on the ship that day.
- Another sailor called Dick told him that he wouldn't be able to return to Bristol after the journey. They would have lots of money. Another man said that he was tired of waiting and asked when they could attack Captain Smollett.
- Silver asked him to be patient as Mr. Trelawney had the map. They might also want Smollett to take them home. Silver threatened that they wanted to do things quickly and that's what Pew and Flint wanted to do, so Pew was blind and Flint was dead. Silver asked them to wait for the right time to kill them all.
- Jim realised that Silver was a pirate, and the other crew were part of his gang.

Chapter (4)

- People ran to look at the island, and Jim climbed out of the barrel. Captain Smollett asked Silver to take them to the place on the map and he agreed excitedly.
- Jim told Dr Livesy, Captain Smollett and Mr Trelawney everything he had heard in the barrel, but they couldn't do anything as they didn't think they would attack them until they found the treasure. Dr Livesy suggested that Jim could listen and find out the sailors they could trust.
- The crew worked hard on the journey to the island, but when they reached it, they didn't seem to want to work. Only Silver worked as hard as usual.
- Later, Captain Smollett decided to tell all the men they could trust about the plan and gave them all guns.
- Silver organised the men. Six men would stay on the *Hispaniola* and thirteen would take the small boats to the shore. Jim decided to go with Silver onto the island, but Silver saw him.
- When Jim reached, he saw Silver and another sailor talking. Silver asked the man who was called Tom to join him as he was a good sailor. But Tom refused to work with the pirates.
- Jim suddenly heard a terrible shout, it was Alan. Tom threatened Silver that if his men hurt Alan, he wouldn't help him. Silver threw his crutch at Tom and killed him with a knife.
- Silver blew a whistle and more of his men would soon arrive on the beach. Jim was very frightened and ran away.

Chapter (5)

- Jim saw a man who was running very fast from tree to tree. Jim had a gun and decided to walk towards him. When the man saw him, he came out from behind the tree and knelt down in front of him.
- The man was called Ben Gun who lived alone on the island for three years. Ben Gun had very long hair and skin that was burned by the sun. His clothes were dirty and made of old sails.
- Gun was left by a ship and lived on fish and fruit ever since. He told Jim that he was very rich. Jim thought he was crazy. But he told him that he could be rich too.
- Gun asked about Flint and his ship and Jim told him that he died, but some of Flint's crew is on the ship. He also asked about Silver. Jim decided to tell him the story from the beginning.
- Gun asked Jim if Trelawney would give him money and allow him to go home on the ship if he helped him and Jim assured him as they would need his help on the ship home. He told Jim that he was on Flint's ship when he hid the treasure.
- He was with six men and they were on the island for about a week. They waited for them on a ship called the Walrus. One day, Flint returned to the ship on his own. The other six men were dead. They didn't know how he did it. Billy Bones and Silver were with him on the ship.
- Three years ago, Gun was on a different ship. They spent twelve days looking for it, but they found nothing.
- One day, they went back to the ship and told Ben Gun to stay and gave him a gun and a spade to look for the treasure on his own.
- Jim asked for his help to return to the ship. Gun had a boat which he made himself.
- Suddenly, they heard the sound of a gun. Jim began to run back with Gun. He gave Jim directions.

Chapter (6)

- As there was no wind, Dr Livesy knew they could not take the ship, even if they wanted to attack the six men who stayed on the ship with them. Then, they heard that Jim Hawkins was on the island with Silver and his men. They were very worried about him.
- Dr Livesy and Hunter decided to take a boat to the shore and found a small fort. It was big enough for about twenty-five people and was very well-defended.
- They ran back to the boat and returned to the *Hispaniola*. They put food, medicines and guns in the boat, and they threatened Silver's men that if they tried to contact Silver, they would be dead.
- The doctor took the boat back to the beach with Hunter and another sailor called Joyce. They took everything to the fort and returned to the *Hispaniola* where Trelawney helped to put food and more weapons into the boat.
- They called for Captain Smollett, Redruth and a good sailor called Abraham Gray, and they climbed into the boat with them.
- There were more people and supplies, so the boat was heavy and very close to the water. Then Dr Livesy looked round and realised that the men on the *Hispaniola* were preparing a cannon.
- Trelawney stood up with a gun and fired at the pirates, and one of them fell. The other pirates were getting into their boats.
- Trelawney fired his gun again and the ship started to sink, but they were near the beach and it was not difficult to walk to, but they had lost many of their supplies in the water, including some of their guns.
- At last, they saw the fort in front of them. At the same time, seven pirates arrived at the other side of it.
- Before they could enter the fort, they heard another gunfire, and Redruth was dead. Trelawney was very sad.
- Captain Smollett put up a flag. He knew that they needed the supplies that were lost in the sea. At that moment, they heard gunfire and the fort was nearly hit.
- The pirates could see the flag, so Mr Trelawney thought that they should take it down, but Captain Smollett refused. They heard someone shouting. It was Jim Hawkins who was still alive and safe.

Practice...

Treasure Island General Exercises

▶ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Chapters (1-2)

1. After he knew that he had failed the exams, his face looked ....
   a) flourished b) happy c) pale d) distinguished
2. I don't .... to tell my father the result of my last exam. He'll be angry.
   a) dare b) admit c) see d) mind
3. He had a/an .... across his forehead because he had an accident a year ago.
   a) dimple b) injury c) scar d) nevus
4. The height of the .... is 25 metres above sea level.
   a) valley b) hell c) cliff d) shore
5. The boy .... my bag and disappeared quickly into the crowd.
   a) attacked b) grabbed c) stuck d) robbed
6. Nada usually helps her .... sister to go to school although she has a special walking stick.
   a) deaf b) dumb c) senseless d) blind
7. The students will be very .... if I reward them for their great efforts.
   a) sorry b) surprised c) useless d) sad
8. The police found a vital .... to the girl's disappearance near her home.
   a) secret b) crew c) glue d) clue
9. In court, the girl told the .... that she stole the money to pay for her mother's medicines.
   a) parrots b) magistrates c) pirates d) pilots
10. Their son had been injured in a .... accident.
   a) terrible b) terrific c) pleased d) terrified

Chapters (3-4)

11. My wife used a big .... to keep the water in, as we had a problem with running water.
   a) glass b) barrel c) swimming pool d) bathtub
12. Martin broke his leg while playing football. He has been on .... for the last six weeks.
   a) crutches b) cliffs c) swords d) ropes
13. The police declared that an armed .... stole nearly $1.9 million from a bank.
   a) band b) crew c) staff d) gang
14. Thirteen soldiers were sentenced to life imprisonment السجن مدى الحياة for ....
   a) loyalty b) mutiny c) safety d) bravery
15. About 700 yachts had been in the .... for days because of the bad storm.
   a) airport b) harbour c) station d) park
16. While they were sailing across the Red Sea, they were attacked by a group of ....
   a) servants b) magistrates c) pilots d) pirates

17. He wanted to buy a ...., as it can be taught to imitate human speech.

a) parrot b) pirate c) cat d) monkey

18. The sparrow built its nest on the biggest .... of the tree.

a) trunk b) bark c) branch d) leaf

19. Ayman is one of my oldest friends. I .... him completely.

a) trust b) doubt c) suspect d) realise

20. After the sinking of the ship, only a few sailors could reach the ....

a) shore b) station c) sea d) road

Chapters (5-6)

21. The government must continue the .... against corruption.

a) right b) fight c) light d) height

22. A .... is a tool for digging that has a long handle and a broad metal blade that you push into the ground.

a) knife b) gun c) sword d) spade

23. My grandfather .... down and lifted the little girl into his arms.

a) put b) knelt c) fell d) stood

24. You can .... them for advice by phone or email.

a) contact b) conduct c) connect d) communicate

25. A .... is a large, powerful gun fixed to two or four wheels, which fires heavy stones or metal balls. It was used in the past.

a) rifle b) sword c) cannon d) gun

26. It is the responsibility of every individual to .... Egypt against enemies.

a) fight b) pretend c) defend d) attack

27. The referee .... a gun to start the race.

a) shot b) threw c) fired d) broke

28. Food .... in the camp were already running out. We need to buy some more.

a) supplies b) materials c) metals d) places

29. I found the keys, they were at the .... of my handbag.

a) direction b) expression c) sails d) bottom

30. You should put the milk in the fridge to keep it ....

a) burned b) fresh c) different d) dead

Critical Thinking Questions:

Group 1

1. Do you think the Captain was heading towards the inn for a vacation? Why?
2. Why do you think the Captain hid his identity?
3. If you were the narrator, would you show interest in the Captain's death? Why?

Group 2

1. In your opinion, how did the Captain feel when he read the message?
2. Do you think that the Captain had friends or a family? Why?
3. What might have happened if Jim had kept the papers and the map in the box?

Group 3

1. Dr Livesy is a respected person in the village. Why do you think he gets involved in dangers?
2. Do you think Jim and his mother escaped death by luck or Jim's skills?
3. In your opinion, what was the importance of the Captain's box?

Group 4

1. Jim knew the man who left the inn. What does this show about his character?
2. Why do you think Captain Smollett was upset about the journey?
3. Do you think that Silver and the blind man were friends? Why?

Group 5

1. Why do you think Silver named his parrot Captain Flint?
2. What do you think of Silver's character?
3. If you were the Captain of the *Hispaniola*, would you tell your crew about your purpose and destination?

Group 6

1. Why do you think Captain Smollett and his team decided not to go back after knowing about Silver and his men's plans?
2. Silver's real character appeared so fast during the journey. Do you agree? Why?
3. In your opinion, what kind of work was needed on the island when they reached there?

Group 7

1. Why do you think Silver was keen to take the map from Captain Smollett?
2. Why do you think Silver wanted more people to join the pirates?
3. "I'd prefer to lose my hand than work with them." What does this show about Tom's nature?

Group 8

1. "You didn't come on Flint's ship, did you?" Do you think Ben Gun was afraid of Jim? Why?
2. Do you think Ben trusted Jim? Why?
3. If you were Ben Gun, how would you survive on the island for such a long period of time?

Group 9

1. How do you think Jim felt when he saw something jumping behind a tree?
2. Do you think that Jim is right to trust Ben Gun? Why? Why not?
3. Do you think Dr Livesy had experience in sailing? Why?

Group 10

1. It's a race to get there first. Do you think they were confident enough to compete against the pirates? Why?
2. "We'll never get to the beach!" Why do you think Dr Livesy and his group's final journey on the boat was dangerous?
3. Dr Livesy and Mr Trelawney have something in common. Do you agree? What's it?

Part 4

Final Tests



- Tests
- Topics Dictionary
- Al-Azhar Listening Texts



Choose the TWO (2) correct answers out of the FIVE (5) options given:

1. This nature reserve is famous for its unique animals. "Unique" is an antonym for "................." and ".................".
   a) common b) small c) normal d) strong e) cheap
2. Scientists are trying to eliminate the .... of burning oil on the environment.
   a) safety b) respect c) effect d) impact e) security

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

3. Heba wants to be a .... to protect animals and plants.
   a) tourist b) capitalist c) conservationist d) extremist
4. The museum is open daily .... for Fridays.
   a) expect b) except c) accept d) exist
5. I always .... a bike when I was young.
   a) ride b) rides c) rode d) riding
6. As my car ...., I did some shopping.
   a) was being repaired b) was repairing
   c) was repaired d) is being repaired
7. My parents always .... me when I do well at school.
   a) bully b) defend c) praise d) raise
8. Don't go out until your work ....
   a) does b) did c) will do d) is done
9. From the sad look on her face, I .... that there is something wrong.
   a) reviewed b) recognised c) realised d) reduced
10. Have you finished your task ....? Wow! You are very quick.
    a) yet b) so far c) already d) since
11. This question is .... You can leave it.
    a) compulsory b) easy c) social d) optional
12. England and France are .... countries.
    a) a b) an c) no article d) the
13. Self- .... is necessary for the success of any person.
    a) manage b) manager c) managed d) management
14. I can't go out with you tonight because I .... my brother at the airport.
    a) will meet b) meet c) am meeting d) going to meet
15. Climate change is one of the main .... that must be faced and solved.
    a) issues b) rules c) roles d) reviews
16. The old man forgot .... the medicine, so he wanted to take it again.
    a) to take b) taking c) take d) took

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Nothing we do in this world is done in isolation. It is now recognised that being able to work successfully with other people is one of the major keys to success. In every situation where you are in a group, you will need a skilled leader. All groups need leaders and all successful groups have good leaders. Groups without leaders always break down. Members of a leaderless group often begin to feel dissatisfied and frustrated. There are often arguments and tensions between people as there is nobody to keep the goals clear.

Some people are natural leaders. True leaders are born and you can spot them. They are people who combine toughness, fairness and humour. Although a lot of people agree that there are some natural-born leaders, most people now recognise that leadership can also be taught in training courses which use activities and techniques to develop a range of qualities which are necessary to be a good leader, such as self-confidence, calmness and intelligence.

They also need to be able to work under pressure. Lastly, and probably most importantly, good leaders need to be sensitive, sociable and able to get on with a wide range of people. Good leadership is the ability to influence others and allow all members of the group to contribute.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17. Successful leaders shouldn't be ....

a) fair b) wise
c) selfish d) experienced

18. Most people now recognise that they can .... leadership.

a) borrow b) offer
c) export d) learn

19. The underlined pronoun "They" refers to ....

a) true leaders b) arguments and tensions
c) training courses d) leaders' works

20. The verb from the noun "leadership" is ....

a) leader b) lead
c) led d) lend

21. Groups without leaders always ....

a) put out b) break down
c) look down d) put down

22. Members of leaderless groups often feel ....

a) satisfied b) pleasant
c) fair d) dissatisfied

23. A good leader keeps the goals ....

a) clean b) satisfied
c) clear d) far

24. Choose the correct English translation:

- تطوير مهارات الاتصال الفعال يساعدك على فهم ما يقوله الآخرون وهذا يجعلك عضوا أفضل وأكثر تواصلا فى المجتمع.

a) Developing recent communication skills helps you to understand what others are saying. This makes you a better member in the society.

b) Developing ineffective communications skills helps you to understand what others are saying. This makes you a better and more communicative member in the society.

c) Developing effective communication skills helps you to understand what others are saying. This makes you a better and more communicative member in the society.

d) Developing effective communication skills helps you to misunderstand what others are saying. This makes you a better and more communicative member in the society.

25. Choose the correct Arabic translation:

- To reduce air pollution, we must avoid burning wood and rubbish. We must use public transport and encourage people to walk and cycle.

a) لنقلل من تلوث الهواء يجب أن نتجنب حرق الخشب والقمامة كما يجب ألا نستخدم النقل العام ولا نشجع الناس على السير وركوب الدراجات.

b) لكى نقلل من تلوث الهواء يجب أن نتجنب حرق الخشب والقمامة ويجب ألا نستخدم النقل العام ونشجع الناس على السير وإعادة التدوير.

c) لنقلل من تلوث الهواء يجب أن نتجنب حرق الخشب والقمامة ويجب أن نستخدم النقل العام ولا نشجع الناس على السير وركوب الدراجات النارية.

d) لنقلل من تلوث الهواء يجب أن نتجنب حرق الخشب والقمامة ويجب أن نستخدم النقل العام ونشجع الناس على السير وركوب الدراجات.

26. Answer the following questions:

1. Do you think Jim was right when he took the papers from the box? Why/Why not?

....

....

2. Captain Smollett was a wise man. Do you agree? Why/Why not?.

....

....

3. Do you think the Captain's box has something important? Why/Why not?

....

....

27. Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on the following:

"What should we do to be healthy?"

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Choose the TWO (2) correct answers out of the FIVE (5) options given:

1. All of us should .... the responsibility of developing Egypt.

a) do b) have c) bear d) keep e) make

2. When our team won the cup, we were over the moon. That means we were .... and ....

a) late b) happy c) delighted d) miserable e) sad

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

3. Before you donate blood, your blood .... must be checked.

a) pleasure b) treasure c) measure d) pressure

4. A .... is a sailor who attacks ships and steals them.

a) captain b) pirate c) crew d) miserable

5. .... is trying to trick someone into giving information over the internet.

a) Fishing b) Antivirus c) App d) Phishing

6. I can't live here. I feel ....

a) secure b) insecure c) security d) insecurity

7. Children like to .... new games and films from the internet.

a) upload b) downside c) download d) destroy

8. Aswan is considered a main .... for many tourists.

a) destination b) cooperation c) location d) foundation

9. A group of criminals who work together is called a ....

a) tank b) band c) gang d) bank

10. While I was writing a letter, my father .... me to have dinner.

a) was calling b) has called c) called d) calls

11. Watch out! You .... the flower vase.

a) would drop b) drop
c) are dropping d) are going to drop

12. Every child has to wear .... uniform in the primary stage in Egypt.

a) an b) a c) the d) no article

13. I haven't seen him since he .... a child.

a) was b) is c) has been d) had been

14. Money .... to Egypt by the tourists, so we should keep our country clean.

a) brings b) is brought c) is bringing d) are brought

15. Next week, she .... 16 years old.

a) is going to be b) will be c) is d) is being

16. Someone broke .... my car and stole my laptop.

a) into b) onto c) from d) at

▶ Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Teenagers today live in a very competitive world. It is more important than ever to succeed at school if you hope to have a chance in the job market afterwards. It's no wonder that many young people worry about letting down their parents, their peers and themselves. When trying to please everyone, they take on too many tasks until it becomes harder and harder to balance homework assignments, parties, sports activities and friends. The result is that young people suffer from stress.

There are different ways of dealing with stress. Everyone knows that caffeine, whether it is in the form of coffee or soft drinks, keeps you awake and alert. But caffeine is a drug which can become addictive. In the end, like other drugs, caffeine only leads to more stress. A better way to deal with stress is to exercise. Research has proved that physical exercise is a good release from stress because it increases certain chemicals in the brain which calm you down.

Enough sleep is also an important way of avoiding stress and staying healthy and full of energy. Another way to avoid stress is by managing your time effectively. It is better to do a few tasks really well, than lots of tasks badly. Know your limits and try not to take on too much work. Finally, if it all gets beyond your control, don't panic or get hysterical.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17. The best title for this passage is "..................".

a) Teen Activity
b) Teen Stress
c) Teen Hobby
d) Teen Culture

18. The writer is for the idea of the .... of work.

a) amount
b) quantity
c) quality
d) mass

19. Having a lot of burdens results in ....

a) happiness
b) success
c) stability
d) stress

20. Having caffeine leads to ....

a) less stress
b) feeling healthy
c) more stress
d) heart disease

21. According to the text, caffeine is ....

a) useful
b) harmless
c) useless
d) a mixed blessing

22. If it gets beyond your control, ...

a) be happy
b) don't panic
c) get hysterical
d) get stressed

23. The underlined pronoun "it" refers to ....

a) stress
b) caffeine
c) energy
d) physical exercise

24. Choose the correct English translation:

– تعتبر السياحة البيئية مصدرا مباشرا من مصادر الدخل القومى فى مصر؛ فمصر تمتلك الكثير والكثير من الأماكن الطبيعية المعزولة التى يرغب السياح فى زيارتها.

a) Ecotourism is considered a direct source of international income in Egypt as Egypt has more and more isolated natural palaces that tourists desire to visit.

b) Ecotourism is considered a direct source of national income in Egypt as Egypt has more and less isolated artificial places that tourists desire to visit.

c) Ecotourism is considered a direct source of national income in Egypt, as Egypt has more and more isolated natural places that tourists desire to visit.

d) Ecotourism is considered an indirect source of national income in Egypt as Egypt has more and more isolated natural places that tourists desire to go.

25. Choose the correct Arabic translation:

- The government and individuals should pay more attention to the problem of bullying as it's a very serious problem that threatens the whole society.

a) يجب على الحكومة والطلاب الدفع إلى مشكلة التنمر لأنها مشكلة صارمة تهدد المجتمع بأكمله.

b) يجب على الحكومة والناس الانتباه إلى مشكلة التنمر لأنها مشكلة خطيرة تهدد المجتمع بأكمله.

c) يجب على الحكومة والأفراد الانتباه أكثر إلى مشكلة التنمر لأنها مشكلة خطيرة تهدد المجتمع بأكمله.

d) يجب على الدولة والأفراد أن يدفعوا إلى مشكلة التنمر لأنها مشكلة جادة تهدد المجتمع بأكمله.

26. Answer the following questions:

1. Why do you think the Captain chose the Admiral Benbow Inn as a place to stay in?

....

....

2. In your opinion, why didn't the people in the village want to help Jim and his mother?

....

....

3. Do you think Long John Silver was a good person to have on the ship? Why/Why not?

....

....

27. Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on the following:

"Tourism in Egypt"

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....



Test (3) محافظة قنا (إدارة نجع حمادى)

Choose the TWO (2) correct answers out of the FIVE (5) options given:

1. He became active after achieving good results. The synonyms of the word "active" are ....
   a) inactive b) idle c) energetic d) dull e) dynamic
2. My father is generous as he helps all people. The antonyms of "generous" are ....
   a) stingy b) charitable c) wealthy d) mean e) beautiful

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

3. Egypt is providing ecotourism to protect the environments .... the Red Sea.
   a) along b) a long c) long d) belong
4. Mohamed Salah is one of Egypt's most famous ....
   a) players b) programmers c) donors d) stars
5. Donating blood helps injured people who need blood ....
   a) transfusion b) transform c) transport d) pressure
6. I had a problem with my computer, so I asked a specialist for some ....
   a) advice b) advise c) devise d) help
7. The company lost a lot of money as their computer system was ....
   a) secured b) hacked c) protected d) saved
8. .... is dried grass that people use to feed animals.
   a) Hay b) Hey c) Hem d) Hail
9. I .... our old days when we sat at the sea chatting till dawn.
   a) long b) miss c) lose d) remind
10. France is part of .... European Union.
    a) an b) the c) a d) no article
11. I .... going to school by bus.
    a) used to b) am used to c) didn't use to d) was used
12. A: Have you enjoyed today's lesson? B: Yes, I have .... a great time.
    a) been b) has c) had d) spend
13. Nesma .... the film at 8 o'clock.
    a) watch b) watches c) will be watching d) will have watched
14. I have already booked the tickets. We .... abroad.
    a) will travel to b) are going c) are going to d) travelling
15. On her way home, Mona stopped .... a sandwich.
    a) buying b) buy c) to buy d) bought
16. .... working hours, we should switch off our phones.
    a) During b) While c) After d) Since

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

"No smoking" is the written advice we read in public and closed places and public means of transport. "Give up smoking: if you don't smoke, don't smoke, don't start." This is a valuable piece of advice we often receive from the majority of doctors. The smokers themselves often say the same to those young people who haven't started smoking yet.

Smoking represents a fearful enemy to man's health as it destroys health and causes suffering and death. Smoking is one of the basic factors in the development of some serious illnesses that can cause you many health problems and bring about heart diseases. Doctors have proved that the smoker's lungs, throat and respiratory system are often attacked by cancer. They assert that cigarette smokers have a higher death rate than those who don't smoke.

Accordingly, smoking is banned in cinemas, theatres and all closed places. In some other places, there are rooms allotted for smoking just to protect the non-smokers from its dangers. But this is all in vain, as it will never protect the non-smokers, who are, by any measure, considered helpless victims as they still inhale poisonous gas, ash and nicotine. They receive much more harm than the smokers themselves.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17. The underlined verb "bring about" in the second paragraph means "..................".

a) cause
b) harm
c) end
d) stop

18. .... is a substance in cigarettes that makes it difficult to stop smoking.

a) Vain
b) Cancer
c) Health
d) Nicotine

19. Smokers have to stop smoking in order to ....

a) inhale poisonous gas
b) avoid public places
c) keep healthy
d) avoid closed places

20. Doctors advise those who don't smoke ....

a) not to start smoking
b) to start smoking
c) to stop smoking
d) to live in closed places

21. According to the passage, a helpless victim is the person who ....

a) refuses to stop smoking
b) doesn't smoke
c) has stopped smoking
d) has started smoking

22. The main idea of the passage is "..................".

a) Smoking is harmful to some smokers
b) Smoking is bad for non-smokers only
c) Smoking should be banned in the cinema
d) All people should avoid smoking

23. Which sentence can best describe the first paragraph?

a) Too much smoking is harmful.
b) If you aren't a smoker, you shouldn't start smoking.
c) Stop smoking on public means of transport.
d) Don't smoke in closed places.

24. Choose the correct English translation:

- يجب أن نشجع المواطنين على التبرع بالدم لإنقاذ حياة الكثيرين من ضحايا الحوادث، علاوة على أن هذا مفيد أيضًا لصحتك النفسية و البدنية.

a) We should to encourage citizens to donate blood to save the lives of accident victims. In addition, it has a lot of benefits for your psychological and physical health.

b) We should encourage citizens to donate blood to safe the lives of accident victims. In addition, it has a lot of benefits for your psychological and physical health.

c) We should to encourage citizens to donate blood to save the lives of accident victims. In addition, it has a lot of benefits for your psychological and physical health.

d) We should encourage citizens to donate blood to save the lives of accident victims. In addition, it has lots of benefits for your psychological and physical health.

25. Choose the correct Arabic translation:

- Life is a series of choices. If you want to succeed, you must make a lot of right choices and not lose hope in case of failure.

a) الحياة عبارة عن سلسلة من الاختيارات. إن أردت النجاح فعليك القيام بالكثير من الخيارات الصحيحة وألا تفقد الأمل فى حالة الإخفاق.

b) الحياة عبارة عن سلسلة من الاختيارات . إن أردت النجاح فعليك القيام بالكثير من الخيارات وألا تفقد الأمل فى حالة الفشل.

c) الحياة عبارة عن سلسلة من الاختيارات. إن أردت النجاح فعليك القيام بالكثير من الخيارات الصحيحة وأن تفقد الأمل فى حالة الإخفاق.

d) الحياة عبارة عن سلسلة من الاختيارات. إن أردت النجاح فعليك القيام بالقليل من الخيارات الصحيحة وألا تفقد الأمل فى حالة الإخفاق.

26. Answer the following questions:

1. In your opinion, why did the Captain want to stay in a quiet inn?

....

....

2. Do you think the large wooden box with the Captain was important? Why?

....

....

3. Jim and his mother were lucky. Explain.

....

....

27. Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on the following:

"Your dream job"

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Choose the TWO (2) correct answers out of the FIVE (5) options given:

1. The ancient civilisation of Egypt has always fascinated people all over the world. The antonyms of "ancient" here are ....

a) new b) historic c) early d) modern e) old

2. Nora, carefully put the tiny flower into the vase. The word "tiny" equals in meaning .... and ....

a) huge b) massive c) small d) big e) little

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

3. Students complain about being .... in their classes for a long time.

a) struck b) stuck c) studied d) stunned

4. Blood .... should be checked regularly.

a) pleasure b) treasure c) pressure d) donation

5. It is believed that there is a .... between pollution and death of trees.

a) collection b) communication c) connection d) tradition

6. The email looked like it came from my bank, but it was an example of ....

a) phishing b) uploading c) downloading d) cyberbullying

7. My father bought a small .... of land to build a villa on.

a) packet b) bar c) line d) plot

8. My friend worked harder to earn money and pay his ....

a) dates b) debts c) doubts d) drops

9. It is taken for .... that tourism is important for Egypt.

a) a ride b) a sign c) granted d) a joke

10. My school has .... uniform which all students there must wear.

a) the b) a c) an d) no article

11. I was injured while .... a tree in the garden.

a) climbing b) was climbing c) climbed d) is climbing

12. Our plane to America .... at seven a.m. tomorrow.

a) is left b) has left c) was leaving d) leaves

13. I regret .... this car. It caused me a lot of problems.

a) to buy b) buying c) to buying d) buys

14. Dad .... to Paris. Let's see the presents he bought for us.

a) has been b) has gone c) is going d) is being

15. My teacher gave me some useful pieces of .... to follow.

a) device b) advise c) advice d) advises

16. .... help me with this heavy bag, please?

a) Are you b) Are you going to c) Must you d) Will you

▶ **Read the following passage, then answer the questions:**

With the development of modern civilisation, life has become more and more complicated. As a result, the car, which was once considered a luxury, is now looked upon as a necessity. Doctors, engineers and businessmen cannot work without private cars. Moreover, the rapid growth of population in capitals and main cities has actually made the joy of possessing a car much less. Besides the problems of keeping a car in good condition and the lack of garages, there is the big problem of crowded streets.

Most people insist on having a private car to avoid the long wait at a bus stop. Getting on or off the bus is a hard struggle. Going to places by taxi does not solve the problem as taxi drivers take passengers according to rules they themselves set. They sometimes ask for more money than they deserve.

Cars could be a source of trouble. Many people have to leave their cars in the streets because garages are expensive and crowded. This exposes them to rusting or robbery. In rush hours, streets are so blocked that it takes a driver ages to get to his destination.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17. **According to the passage, taking a public bus is a problem because ....**

a) it is expensive
b) getting on and off the bus is difficult
c) it is very slow
d) bus drivers drive carelessly

18. **The main idea of the passage is "...................".**

a) Traffic rules
b) Types of cars
c) Some means of transport
d) Driving carelessly

19. **According to the writer, possessing a car can be a trouble because ....**

a) traffic is incredible
b) cars have to be left in the streets
c) drivers are careless
d) cars take a space in the garage

20. **The underlined pronoun "they" in the second paragraph refers to ....**

a) taxi drivers
b) taxis
c) buses
d) passengers

21. **The antonym of the word "complicated" is ....**

a) familiar
b) simple
c) complex
d) difficult

22. **According to the passage, some taxi drivers are ....**

a) regular
b) public
c) funny
d) greedy

23. **Reaching your destination during rush hours ....**

a) is easy
b) takes a while
c) takes too long
d) isn't a problem

24. Choose the correct English translation:

- يعد التنمر فى المدارس مشكلة خطيرة يمكن أن تؤثر على صحة الطلاب العقلية.

a) Playing in schools is a serious problem that can have effects on the mental health of students.

b) Bullying in schools is a series problem that can have effects on the mental health of students.

c) Bullying in schools is a serious problem that can have effects on the mental health of students.

d) Bullying in schools is a serious problem that can have effects on the physical health of students.

25. Choose the correct Arabic translation:

- Sports protect people and especially the youth from many social and psychological diseases.

a) تحمى الرياضيات الناس وخصوصًا الشباب من كثير من الأمراض الاجتماعية والنفسية.

b) تحمى الرياضة الناس وخصوصًا الكهول من كثير من الأمراض الاجتماعية والنفسية.

c) تحمى الرياضة الناس وخصوصًا الشباب من كثير من الأمراض الاجتماعية والنفسية .

d) تحمى الرياضيات الناس وخصوصًا الشباب من كثير من الأمراض الاجتماعية والعصبية .

26. Answer the following questions:

1. Dr Livesy is a respected person in the village. Why do you think he gets involved in dangers?

....

....

2. What do you think of Silver's plan to take the treasure himself?

....

....

3. If you were Tom, would you accept Silver's offer? Why?

....

....

27. Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on the following:

"How can you spend your free time?"

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....



Test (5) محافظة المنوفية (إدارة منوف)

Choose the TWO (2) correct answers out of the FIVE (5) options given:

1. Global warming has a bad .... on the environment.
   a) effect b) cause c) affect d) reason e) impact

2. Sameer is a very honest person. The synonyms of the word "honest" are ....
   a) novel b) reliable c) available d) trusted e) crazy

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

3. I'd rather you .... your time.
   a) not wasting b) didn't waste c) not to waste d) haven't wasted

4. Blood .... is one of the most dangerous diseases nowadays.
   a) pleasure b) leisure c) treasure d) pressure

5. Amr .... a cup of coffee every morning; it's his habit.
   a) used to drink b) is used to drinking c) drink d) always drank

6. He's over the moon; he .... the final match.
   a) was winning b) won c) had won d) has won

7. My father travelled abroad, so I felt really .... for the first month.
   a) only b) lonely c) alone d) scary

8. While ...., the thief tried to escape.
   a) is arresting b) was arresting
   c) being arrested d) was being arrested

9. It's .... for granted that it hardly rains in Egypt in summer.
   a) given b) written c) taken d) paid

10. There are no clouds. I think it ....
   a) is going to rain b) will rain c) isn't going to rain d) won't rain

11. I usually .... my pen friends by both phone and email.
   a) commute b) connect c) communicate d) contact

12. "King Lear" was a great ....
   a) successful b) succeed c) success d) successfully

13. I really regret .... a lot of money; I am penniless.
   a) spending b) to spend c) to spending d) for spending

14. Let's .... some windsurfing tomorrow.
   a) make b) go c) play d) do

15. France is a country in .... European Union.
   a) a b) an c) the d) no

16. We should motivate youth to .... money to charities.
   a) borrow b) owe c) donate d) own

▶ **Read the following passage, then answer the questions:**

Many people have jobs that are not very interesting, but a lot of people have to work at night, and this is very difficult. When everybody else is getting ready to go out, they have to go to work, and this puts a lot of psychological stress on them. It's also not very healthy because the human body is designed to be active during the day and to rest in the dark. If this cycle is changed, it can have a bad effect on a person's health. So, why do people work night shifts?

Nowadays, a lot of jobs have to offer a 24-hour service, like hotels, delivery companies, some supermarkets which open all night and all day, call centres and hospitals. It's true that some people only need a few hours of sleep at night but the majority need eight hours. Humans are most active in the middle of the day, and when they are least able to concentrate and be efficient, it is between 2 am and 4 am.

This is the worst time to drive, or to do anything that needs concentration. The body finds it very difficult to adapt to the opposite cycle. Things aren't likely to get better in the future because more businesses are working 24-hour cycles to keep up with our 24-hour society.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17. **The main idea of this passage is about ....**

a) working late isn't useful
b) helping people change their way of life
c) describing the importance of work
d) how working at night can be harmful

18. **The writer thinks that you need ....**

a) abbreviation
b) concentration
c) stress
d) investigation

19. **According to the passage, we can infer that ....**

a) it's difficult to change your sleeping needs
b) people need to sleep early between 2 am and 4 am
c) people sleep better in the early morning
d) everybody needs the same amount of sleep

20. **We can summarise the last paragraph that in the future ....**

a) fewer people will work during the day
b) some jobs will always be done at night
c) many people will stop working during the day
d) nobody will work at night

21. **The underlined word "active" can be replaced with ....**

a) inactive
b) different
c) upset
d) energetic

22. **The writer thinks that the majority of people need .... hours of sleep.**

a) 8
b) 24
c) 16
d) 2

23. **People who have to work night shifts struggle with ....**

a) the quality of sleep
b) more sleeping time
c) emotional stress
d) psychological stress

24. Choose the correct English translation:

- يسعى المتطوعون إلى خدمة مجتمعهم المحلى دون مقابل. حيث إن رغبتهم فى مساعدة الآخرين وتطوير مجتمعهم هى مصدر سعادتهم.

a) Volunteers seeks to serve their local community for free. Their desire to help others and develop its community is the source of their happiness.

b) Volunteers seek to serve their local community for free. Their desire to help others and develop its community are the source of their happiness.

c) Volunteers seek to serve their local community for free. Their desire to help others and develop their community is the source of their happiness.

d) Volunteers seeks to serve their local community for free. Their desire to help others and develop their community is the source of their happiness.

25. Choose the correct Arabic translation:

- International tourism brings in foreign currency, provides employment and helps peoples to understand each other.

a) إن السياحة القومية تجلب العملات الأجنبية وتوفر فرص العمل وتساعد الناس على فهم بعضهم البعض.

b) إن السياحة الدولية تجلب العملات الجارية وتوفر فرص العمل وتساعد الشعب على فهم بعضهم البعض.

c) إن السياحة الدولية تجلب العملات الأجنبية وتوفر فرص العمل وتساعد الشعوب على فهم بعضهم البعض.

d) إن السياحة الدولية تجلب العملات الأجنبية وتوفر البطالة وتساعد الناس على فهم بعضهم البعض.

26. Answer the following questions:

1. If you were Jim, would you leave your mother and go with the others to search for the treasure?

....

....

2. Why do you think they decide to go to the fort?

....

....

3. Why do you think the Captain didn't want any sailors to see him?

....

....

27. Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on the following:

"Pros and cons of modern technology"

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Choose the TWO (2) correct answers out of the FIVE (5) options given:

1. I can't contact my friend as the line is currently ....
a) connected b) disconnected c) online d) communicated e) dead

2. The teacher supports all the students in class. The antonyms of "support" are ....
a) oppose b) aid c) advocate d) neglect e) assist

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

3. Some species of animals and plants don't .... anywhere else.
a) persist b) insist c) exist d) detest

4. Salma was travelling around Indonesia when she .... her leg.
a) has broken b) was broken c) breaks d) broke

5. My brother's .... problems forced him to retire before the appointed time.
a) health b) wealth c) healthy d) wealthy

6. Lions .... as much as in the past.
a) didn't hunt b) aren't hunted c) aren't hunting d) not hunting

7. My baby sister never stops eating! She is ...., healthy and happy.
a) slight b) slim c) plump d) thin

8. It's the first time I .... the temple of Philae.
a) never seen b) have never seen c) have ever seen d) yet seen

9. Six months .... a long time to spend in hospital.
a) are b) were c) is d) have

10. Don't think about what I have told you, please take it for ....
a) grant b) granted c) guarantee d) grain

11. She .... to London next Monday. Everything is arranged.
a) is flying b) flies c) fly d) would fly

12. It's important to memorise your username and .... to log into your site.
a) name b) password c) surname d) nickname

13. Leila's parents have bought her all the latest ....; a computer and a tablet.
a) material b) transport c) technology d) communication

14. After the earthquake, we began to .... money for the homeless.
a) export b) import c) collect d) made

15. We must .... mixing with bad people.
a) want b) avoid c) agree d) help

16. .... which is dried grape, is much used in cooking.
a) Hay b) Currant c) Current d) Graved

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

With the development of modern civilisation, life has become more and more complicated. As a result the car which was once considered a luxury, is now looked upon as a necessity, doctors engineers and businessmen cannot work without private cars. Moreover, the rapid growth of population in capitals and main cities has made the joy of possessing a car much less. Besides the problems of keeping a car in good condition and lack of garages, there is the big problem of crowded streets.

Moreover people insist on having a private car to avoid the long wait at the bus stop. Getting on or off the bus is a hard struggle. Going to places by taxis doesn't solve the problem as taxi drivers take passengers according to rules they themselves set. They sometimes ask for more money than they deserve.

Cars could be a source of trouble. Many people have to leave their cars in the streets because garages are expensive and crowded. This exposes them to rusting or robbery. In rush hours, the streets are so blocked that it takes a driver ages to get to his destination.

To conclude, we can say that although modern technology has indeed brought numerous conveniences and advancement to our lives, but it has also introduced complexity.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17. Taking public bus is a problem because ....

a) it is expensive to get on or off the bus
b) it is very slow to get on or off the bus
c) it is difficult to get on or off the bus
d) it is careless to get on or off the bus

18. The underlined pronoun "they" refers to ....

a) taxis
b) taxis drivers
c) buses
d) passengers

19. Most people insist on possessing a private car to keep .... from the long wait.

a) up
b) away
c) on
d) down

20. Possessing a private car is .... for doctors and engineers.

a) unnecessary
b) necessary
c) difficult
d) bad

21. In your opinion to solve the problem of crowded streets, ...

a) we buy more private cars
b) everyone should have a car
c) we shouldn't use private cars daily
d) we shouldn't use a new car

22. When are cars, according to the writer, exposed to robbery?

a) When they aren't covered.
b) When they are locked.
c) When they are left in a garage.
d) When they are left in the streets.

23. The main idea of the passage is "...................".

a) The advantages of private cars
b) Private cars are a mixed blessing
c) The demerits of private cars
d) Avoiding buying private cars

24. Choose the correct English translation:

- الإنسان هو السبب الرئيسى لتلوث البيئة، والأنشطة الصناعية التى يقوم بها الإنسان هى التى دمرت التوازن البيئى.

a) The man is the main cause of environment pollution; it's man's industry activities that have destroyed environmental balance.

b) Man is the main reason of environment pollution; it's man's industrial activities that have destroyed environment balance.

c) Man is the main reason of environment pollution; it's man's industry activities that have developed environmental balance.

d) Man is the main cause of environment pollution; it's man's industrial activities that have destroyed environmental balance.

25. Choose the correct Arabic translation:

- Can you imagine how difficult life was in the past without mobile phones, the internet and fast means of transport?

a) هل تتخيل كم كانت الحياة صعبة جدا فى الماضى بدون الهاتف المحمول والإنترنت ووسائل النقل الحديثة؟

b) هل تتخيل كم كانت الحياة صعبة جدا فى الماضى بدون الهاتف المحمول والإنترنت ووسائل النقل السريعة؟

c) هل تتخيل كم كانت الحياة صعبة جدا فى الماضى باستخدام الهاتف المحمول والإنترنت ووسائل النقل السريعة؟

d) هل تتخيل كم هى الحياة صعبة جدا بدون الهاتف المحمول فى الماضى والإنترنت ووسائل النقل الحديثة؟

26. Answer the following questions:

1. Why do you think Jim's father was afraid to ask the Captian for more money?

....

....

2. "Looking for treasure always means danger." Why do you think Captain Smollett said this?

....

....

3. What do you think would have happened if the blind man and his men had found the boy and his mother?

....

....

27. Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on the following:

"How can you achieve your goal in life?"

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....



Test (7)

محافظة الدقهلية (إدارة بلقاس)

▶ **Choose the TWO (2) correct answers out of the FIVE (5) options given:**

1. Two antonyms for "praise" are ....

a) reward b) encourage c) punish d) blame e) kill

2. Two synonyms for "phishing" are ....

a) receiving b) tricking c) mocking d) hunting e) deceiving

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

3. A young man .... my grandpa of his wallet.

a) stole b) robbed c) accused d) charged

4. You must remember .... my dictionary with you to school tomorrow.

a) bring b) to bring c) bringing d) to be brought

5. The company has presented me two options, but I preferred the ....

a) later b) another c) latter d) other

6. While .... as a journalist, Charles Dickens was writing magazine stories.

a) works b) working c) is working d) was working

7. Charitable organisations should help those who are forced to fall in ....

a) debt b) shift c) drift d) gift

8. The repeated patterns of sound in music are known as ....

a) verse b) metaphor c) rhyme d) rhythm

9. It is known that working hard is .... to stress.

a) contacted b) commented c) connected d) contracted

10. My father is a hotel manager. He .... sure that everything in the rooms is tidy and clean.

a) takes b) does c) gives d) makes

11. There are some .... of working abroad as you miss your close friends.

a) pros b) benefits c) disadvantages d) causes

12. I .... tomorrow. I've got the tickets.

a) am flying b) was flying c) will fly d) fly

13. The workers were punished for ....

a) mutuality b) mutiny c) morality d) moral

14. He didn't hesitate, when I asked for his ....

a) suppose b) impose c) suffocate d) support

15. How .... luggage do you need when you travel abroad?

a) many b) much c) often d) long

16. .... going to Cairo, she has stayed there.

a) Since b) For c) Ago d) Just

▶ **Read the following passage, then answer the questions:**

Sadness means suffering in silence. Many people suffer because they have their heart broken, they have problems at work, they have had a fight with a person, they have lost something, or someone. Sadness is a state of mind that comes and goes as it pleases. Today we can be sad, tomorrow we can forget about yesterday. Life is about going through bad and good moments, so it is normal to feel sad sometimes. Sadness can display itself through emotions like being angry, stressed out, nervous or just depressed.

Depression is a more serious case of sadness. Depression means negative thoughts and lasts for much longer. Many people commit suicide because of depression, so it's a dangerous disease that can be treated only through therapy.

Sadness and depression are two different things. Sadness is a state of mind that can pass very quickly once things get better and it is caused by grief, sorrow over things that don't go according to plan. Depression is deeper; it's longer and usually gives people suicidal thoughts. The number of people that kill themselves each year has increased over the years.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17. The best title for the passage is "..................".

a) Sadness means depression
b) Sadness is a kind of depression
c) Sadness is different from depression
d) Sadness and depression are equals

18. Sadness is a/an .... case.

a) physical
b) mental
c) cultural
d) economical

19. Sadness is .... suffering.

a) silent
b) previous
c) attentive
d) curious

20. The underlined word "pleases" is a/an ....

a) adverb
b) noun
c) adjective
d) verb

21. When a person loses a dear one, they will be ....

a) happy
b) pleased
c) grieved
d) excited

22. .... is a result of sadness and depression.

a) Joy
b) Happiness
c) Suicide
d) Health

23. The underlined pronoun "it" refers to ....

a) people
b) suicide
c) depression
d) sadness

24. Choose the correct English translation:

- يجب أن يلعب كل مواطن دورا فعالا وبناء لصالح بلده ويفكر فى مشاكلها ويعرض حلولا لها.

a) Every citizen must play an active and constructive role for the beneficial of their country, think about its problems, and show solutions of them.

b) Every citizen must play an active and constructive role for the beneficial of their country, think about it's problems, and over solutions to them.

c) Every citizen must play an active and constructive role for the benefit of their country, think about it's problems, and offer solutions to them.

d) Every citizen must play an active and constructive role for the benefit of their country, think about its problems, and offer solutions to them.

25. Choose the correct Arabic translation:

- Charitable work is the only hope to improve the living of a lot of the poor, the homeless and the disabled.

a) إن العمل الخيرى هو الأمل الوحيد فى تحسن معيشة الكثير من الفقراء والمشردين والمعاقين.

b) إن العمل الخيرى هو الأمل الوحيد فى تحسن معيشة الكثير من الفقراء والمتشددين والمعاقين.

c) إن العمل الخيرى هو الأمل الأول فى تحسن معيشة الكثير من الفقراء والمشردين والقادرين.

d) إن العمل الحرفى هو الأمل الوحيد فى تحسن معيشة الكثير من الفقراء والمشردين والمعاقين.

26. Answer the following questions:

1. If you were Mr. Trelawny, would you go to the island? Why?

....

....

2. What's your opinion of John Silver?

....

....

3. What do you think of Dr. Livesy? Why?

....

....

27. Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on the following:

"We owe much to our parents."

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Choose the TWO (2) correct answers out of the FIVE (5) options given:

1. Stress can have an enormous negative impact on your health. The synonyms of "impact" are ....
   a) affection b) influence c) direction d) influenza e) effect
2. This bird is exotic. It is hardly seen here. The antonyms of "exotic" are ....
   a) familiar b) strange c) common d) foreign e) rare

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

3. The World Blood .... Day is on June 14th.
   a) Donor b) Owner c) Doer d) Honour
4. Sending messages online to frighten people is called ....
   a) scan b) phishing c) scamming d) cyberbullying
5. My sister is really .... as she always buys things for her friends.
   a) miser b) ambitious c) generous d) greedy
6. The manager met two candidates; the .... seemed ambitious and efficient.
   a) later b) latter c) end d) third
7. It is taken for .... that bullying is a very bad behaviour.
   a) granted b) denial c) denial d) refusal
8. The headmaster of our school always writes his instructions on a .... on the wall.
   a) table b) notebook c) noticeboard d) booklet
9. At last, she could .... her goal in life.
   a) score b) achieve c) do d) make
10. When I went to the workshop, the mechanic .... my car, so I had to wait.
    a) repaired b) is repairing c) had repaired d) was repairing
11. Sara is driving at a breakneck speed. I think she .... an accident.
    a) will have b) is having c) is going to have d) has
12. .... has made the world a smaller place.
    a) Planes b) Plane c) A plane d) The plane
13. Five kilometres .... a long distance to walk.
    a) are b) were c) has d) is
14. Sahar is the best cook I ....
    a) have ever met b) have never met c) had met d) meet
15. My brother used to be fat, but now he ....
    a) doesn't b) isn't c) don't d) didn't
16. Farida .... as a secretary for only two years. Now, she is a sales representative.
    a) worked b) works c) has worked d) had worked

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Sleep is very important for our health and safety. We should get enough sleep in order to let our brains work properly. Research has shown that sixty percent of adults suffer from sleep deprivation. If we don't sleep well for a long time, many negative things may happen. We may get sick because the body loses its ability to fight infections. Also, a lot of accidents can be caused because drivers have difficulty concentrating as a result of sleep deprivation. We need to ask a very important question. How much sleep should an individual have?

An average of eight hours of sleep a night gives our bodies good preparation for the next day. However, to get a good night's sleep, we need to set a specific bedtime and wake-up time and make it a routine. Also, we shouldn't drink many drinks which have caffeine such as: cola, tea and coffee during the day in order to get a good night's rest. We should try to avoid eating, studying or even watching television in bed because bed is meant for sleep. We must know that sleeping is essential for our health.

Our bodies are like batteries. If we don't get sleep they can't be charged and we'll feel the effects. Getting sleep every day is important. When we sleep, our blood vessels and circulatory system heal themselves. If you have a bruise, you will notice that it has healed a little bit when you go to sleep and wake up in the morning. Sleep does the same thing for the rest of the body as well, and it is essential to allow your batteries to charge while you heal yourself.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17. It is recommended to have .... hours of sleep.
- a) eight
- b) four
- c) six
- d) ten

18. The main idea of the passage is ....
- a) the dangers of sleep
- b) our life without sleep
- c) the dangers of not having enough sleep
- d) how to get a good night's sleep

19. The words "sleep deprivation" mean ....
- a) the benefits of sleep
- b) the drawbacks of sleep
- c) having enough sleep
- d) lack of sleep

20. Having drinks which contain caffeine during the day ....
- a) makes your body strong to fight diseases
- b) prevents you from getting a good sleep at night
- c) enables you to eat, study and watch TV in bed
- d) enables you to have enough sleep at night

21. If we don't get enough sleep, ...
- a) our brains don't work properly
- b) we'll have chronic diseases
- c) we won't succeed in exams
- d) we won't get good jobs

22. Parents can help their children have a good night's sleep by ....
- a) punishing their children
- b) setting a specific routine
- c) turning the lights off
- d) forcing them to sleep during the day

23. Our blood vessels and circulatory system heal themselves if we ....
- a) go to hospital
- b) consult doctors
- c) sleep well
- d) study well

24. Choose the correct English translation:

- أثبتت التجربة العملية أن العلم سلاح ذو حدين فهو نعمة إذا استخدم فى الخير وفيما ينفع الناس ويكون العلم نقمة إذا استخدم فى الشر والدمار.

a) Practical experience has proven that knowledge is a double-edged sword, as it is a blessing if it is used for good and the benefit of people. Knowledge is a course if it is used for evil and destruction.

b) Practice experience has proven that science is a double-edged sword, as it is a blessing if it is used for good and the benefit of people. Science is a curse if it was used for evil and destruction.

c) Practical experience has proven that science is a double-edged sword, as it is a blessing whether it is used for good and the benefit of people. Science is a curse if it is used for evil and construction.

d) Practical experience has proven that education is a double-edged sword, as it is a blessing if it is used for good and the benefit of people. Education is a curse if it is used for evil and destruction.

25. Choose the correct Arabic translation:

- You can interact with society by volunteering with charities and community centres. As a result, you can assist others while also gaining valuable skills.

a) يمكنك التفاعل مع المجتمع من خلال العمل المادى مع الجمعيات الخيرية والمراكز المجتمعية. ونتيجة لذلك، يمكنك مساعدة الآخرين من خلال اكتساب مهارات قيمة أيضًا.

b) يمكنك التفاعل مع المجتمع من خلال العمل التطوعى مع الجمعيات الخيرية والمراكز المجتمعية. ونتيجة لذلك، يمكنك مساعدة الآخرين مع اكتساب مهارات قيمة أيضًا.

c) يمكنك التعاون مع المجتمع من خلال العمل التطوعى مع الجمعيات الخيرية والمراكز الرياضية. ونتيجة لذلك، يمكنك مساعدة الآخرين مع اكتساب مهارات قيمة أيضًا.

d) يمكنك التفاعل مع الجماعات من خلال العمل التطوعى مع المنظمات الخيرية والمراكز المجتمعية. ونتيجة لذلك، يمكنك مساعدة الآخرين بدون اكتساب مهارات قيمة أيضًا.

26. Answer the following questions:

1. Why do you think the Captain, Bill, decided to stay at a quiet place like the Admiral Benbow Inn for months?

....

....

2. What do you think would have happened if the Blind man and his men had found Jim and his mother?

....

....

3. If you were in Jim's place, would you take the money robbed by the Captain?

....

....

27. Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on the following:

"A problem students might have at school"

....

....

....

....

....

....

....



Test (9)

محافظة الأقصر (إدارة إسنا)

Choose the TWO (2) correct answers out of the FIVE (5) options given:

1. People who .... the law have to be punished.

a) draw b) disobey c) follow d) break e) respect

2. Mo Salah is a famous Egyptian footballer. The antonyms of "famous" are ....

a) unknown b) well-known c) usual d) remarkable e) outstanding

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

3. Farmers always look after their .... well.

a) fertilisers b) kettle c) corps d) livestock

4. My brother used to play football when he was young. Now, he ....

a) doesn't b) didn't c) don't d) hasn't

5. The crew went to the isolated island to look for the ....

a) pleasure b) leisure c) treasure d) pressure

6. .... Hamdi bought his new company, he has been very busy.

a) For b) Since c) While d) During

7. When the light goes out at night, we usually depend on ....

a) the sun b) candlelight c) the spade d) daylight

8. Do you think .... freedom is necessary for all the living things?

a) an b) a c) the d) no article

9. She needs some advice about how to .... friends.

a) make b) take c) dig d) do

10. After buying his new flat, he had .... money left, so he couldn't decorate it.

a) many b) few c) much d) little

11. .... is a lesson learnt from a story, novel, play, etc.

a) Global b) Mirror c) Moral d) Lion

12. Dad .... our flat next week. It's his plan.

a) is painting b) is going to paint c) will paint d) paints

13. Taking part in this discussion is .... You won't be paid for it.

a) private b) gradually c) common d) voluntary

14. Dr Yacoub's desire to help others .... clear in the charitable work he does.

a) has b) have c) is d) are

▶ **Read the following passage, then answer the questions:**

My name is Sally. Last week, I had a very bad day. It was really a nightmare! I had a job interview one morning, but I forgot to set the alarm clock. I overslept and couldn't have a shower or breakfast. I went to our garage putting on my shoes and setting my hair at the same time. The car wouldn't start, and I was able to make it work the third time I tried. The traffic was awful and I arrived at the parking garage 5 minutes before the interview. Luckily, I found a place to park my car, but a young man in a red Mercedes tried to take it. I cut him off and managed to put my car there and - of course - he didn't like it. He complained, but not in a nice way, and I had to tell him what I think of people like him.

I was quarrelling with that foolish person when I slammed my finger in the car door. I was so nervous that I didn't notice the keys were still inside the car and locked it. I didn't have time to deal with it at the moment, so I rushed to attend the interview on time and guess who the interviewer was; the guy I met at the parking garage! I wish I hadn't got up that day.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

15. Sally succeeded in putting her car in the parking spot as ....

a) she was late for the interview
b) she overslept and got up late
c) she blocked the man's way
d) she didn't have time at that moment

16. The antonym of the underlined word "awful" is ....

a) wonderful
b) terrifying
c) terrible
d) bad

17. Why did Sally oversleep?

a) She forgot about the interview.
b) She didn't have an alarm clock.
c) The alarm clock didn't go off.
d) She didn't set the alarm clock.

18. We understand from the passage that Sally talked to the man ....

a) unkindly
b) politely
c) nicely
d) kindly

19. The underlined pronoun "it" refers to ....

a) the keys
b) the car
c) the job
d) the interview

20. Why didn't Sally have time to deal with the car keys which were locked inside?

a) Her sister had a key.
b) The park was safe.
c) She had another key.
d) She was in a hurry.

21. The young man complained in a .... way.

a) nice
b) rude
c) kind
d) friendly

22. Choose the correct English translation:

- زاد اعتمادنا على الكمبيوتر بشكل كبير فنحن نستخدمه تقريبا فى جميع الأعمال والأنشطة وداخل مختلف المؤسسات.

a) Our dependence on computers has increased dramatically. We use it in almost all businesses, activities and within different institutions.

b) Our dependent on computers has increased dramatically. We use it in most all businesses, activities and within different institutions.

c) Our dependence on computers has decreased dramatically. We use it in almost all businesses, activities and within different institutions.

d) Our dependent on computers has decreased dramatically. We use it in most all businesses, activities and within different institutions.

23. Choose the correct Arabic translation:

- The invention of the internet has given us various benefits. It is helpful in providing us with an inexpensive means of entertainment.

a) لقد أعطانا اكتشاف الإنترنت مزايا مختلفة فهو مفيد فى تحسيننا بوسيلة ترفيه رخيصة.

b) لقد أعطانا اختراع الإنترنت مزايا مختلفة فهو مفيد فى تنميتنا بوسيلة ترفيه غالية.

c) لقد أعطانا اكتشاف الإنترنت فوائد مختلفة فهو مفيد فى تزويدنا بوسيلة ترفيه غالية.

d) لقد أعطانا اختراع الإنترنت فوائد مختلفة فهو مفيد فى تزويدنا بوسيلة ترفيه رخيصة.

24. Answer the following questions:

1. Why, do you think, Captain Bill choose the Admiral Benbow Inn to stay in?

....

....

2. What, do you think, the eight men were looking for when they came to the inn?

....

....

3. If you were Mr Trelawney, would you make that journey to get the treasure?

....

....

25. Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on the following:

"Keeping the environment clean is the responsibility of every citizen."

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Choose the TWO (2) correct answers out of the FIVE (5) options given:

1. He was taken to hospital because his injury was ....

a) simple b) serious c) exciting d) dangerous e) exhausting

2. Social media apps .... an important role in people's lives nowadays.

a) obey b) have c) save d) play e) do

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

3. The aim of the youth .... programme is to promote the skills of traditional furniture design.

a) civilisation b) isolation c) association d) deviation

4. We all .... Mr Ahmed because he is cruel and violent.

a) like b) respect c) discourage d) avoid

5. .... is for people who want a holiday which respects the environment.

a) Ecotourism b) Economy c) Ecology d) Echo

6. I always have a severe headache because of the high blood ....

a) pleasure b) transfusion c) transplant d) pressure

7. Parents are the real and only .... of their children.

a) guardians b) gardens c) spies d) gardeners

8. Mr Galal is busy .... his work at the moment. He can't talk to you.

a) in b) at c) of d) with

9. Whenever I go to the club, I .... new friends.

a) do b) play c) make d) be

10. My friend Moustafa .... in Aswan since the age of 10.

a) lived b) has lived c) was living d) live

11. My kids are really pleased as this is the first time they .... the Egyptian Museum.

a) visited b) have never visited
c) have ever visited d) was visiting

12. What .... yesterday morning when I phoned you?

a) have you done b) did you do
c) are you doing d) were you doing

13. My daughter Sarah .... to the club every day when she was on holiday.

a) goes b) go c) was gone d) went

14. .... staying in Alexandria, he visited many wonderful places there.

a) During b) As soon as c) Having d) While

15. My clever students .... nice presents for their amazing results every month. I always do so.

a) gave b) weren't given c) have given d) are given

16. Would you like .... and see our new house?

a) to coming b) to come c) coming d) come

▶ Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Gold is a rare metal with a lovely, bright colour. It is easy to shape, and it is not affected by air or water. As gold is so soft, it can be beaten into very thin sheets, and it can be also drawn out into very fine wires. Gold is, therefore, an excellent material for making beautiful objects such as jewellery. Moreover, the ancient Egyptians loved gold so much that they believed that gold belonged only to their kings, so they buried many precious gold objects in their pharaohs' tombs, and we can see many of them in museums today.

The Egyptians were very clever goldsmiths as they could beat the gold into sheets. The gold which is used to make jewellery is usually mixed with other metals. This makes the gold jewellery not only cheaper, but also harder. Because it was scarce and therefore valuable, gold was formerly used as money. Many countries keep bars of gold in banks. They can change this gold into money by selling it to other countries. About two thirds of all the gold in the world is kept in this way. Gold is usually buried deep underground. It can be also found in rivers and seas, but it would cost far more money to be extracted than gold is worth.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17. Many countries keep bars of gold in banks so as to ....

a) keep them away from thieves
b) change them into money
c) buy jewellery
d) beat them

18. The pharaohs .... gold in their tombs.

a) buried
b) bullied
c) purified
d) disappeared

19. Gold can be beaten into sheets due to its ....

a) rareness
b) beauty
c) shape
d) softness

20. Why is gold considered an excellent material for making beautiful objects?

a) Because it is a hard and expensive metal.
b) Because it's rare and lovely with bright colour.
c) Because it was buried by the ancient Egyptians.
d) Because countries can change it into money.

21. What did the ancient Egyptians do with gold? Why?

a) They destroyed it to make harpoons.
b) They avoided using it because it is harmful.
c) They buried it because it belonged to the kings.
d) They found it in their tombs to sell it.

22. Where is gold usually found?

a) Deep underground.
b) Overseas and lakes.
c) In all tombs.
d) In art museums.

23. What sentence can summarise the passage?

a) Gold is used for marriage and decorations.
b) Gold was appreciated only by the pharaohs.
c) Gold is a valuable metal over ages.
d) The advantages and disadvantages of gold.

24. Choose the correct English translation:

– يعد التعليم إحدى أهم الركائز التى تقوم عليها نهضة الأمم، لذا لابد من تطويره ليواكب العصر الحالى.

a) Education is one of the most important pillars on which the renaissance of nations is based, so it must be developing to keep pace with the current age.

b) Education is one of the most important pillars which the renaissance of nations is based, so it must be developed to keep peace with the current age.

c) Education is one of the most important pillars on which the renaissance of nations is based, so it's must be developed to keep pace with the currant age.

d) Education is one of the most important pillars which the renaissance of nations is based on, so it must be developed to keep pace with the current age.

25. Choose the correct Arabic translation:

- Global trade leads to a big economic growth in different regions all over the world. So, all the world countries aim to develop it greatly.

a) التجارة المحلية تؤدى إلى نمو اقتصادى كبير فى أقاليم مختلفة فى كل أنحاء العالم. لذلك تهدف دول العالم لتنميتها بشكل كبير.

b) التجارة العالمية تؤدى إلى نمو استهلاكى ضخم فى أقاليم مختلفة فى كل أنحاء العالم. لذلك تهدف دول العالم لتنميتها بشكل كبير.

c) التجارة العالمية تؤدى إلى نمو اقتصادى كبير فى أقاليم مختلفة فى كل أنحاء البلد. لذلك تهدف دول العالم لتنميتها بشكل كبير.

d) التجارة العالمية تؤدى إلى نمو اقتصادى كبير فى أقاليم مختلفة فى كل أنحاء العالم. لذلك تهدف دول العالم لتنميتها بشكل كبير.

26. Answer the following questions:

1. Do you think that the narrator and his mother would be safe after the Captain's death? Why?

....

....

2. The men on the ship proved to be all wicked persons أشرار. Do you agree? Illustrate.

....

....

3. Why do you think Silver's men on the ship didn't try to contact him?

....

....

27. Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on the following:

"The role of great scientists in society"

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....



Choose the TWO (2) correct answers out of the FIVE (5) options given:

1. When our team won the cup, we were over the moon. We were ....

a) late b) happy c) delighted d) miserable e) depressed

2. The Egyptians are so generous. They are not ....

a) mean b) irregular c) long-term d) kind e) selfish

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

3. We .... our success to our parents and teachers.

a) own b) owe c) belong d) occur

4. The police are looking for a clue to solve the .... of the crime.

a) mysterious b) master c) maestro d) mystery

5. Our team .... to win; they played very well.

a) reserved b) denied c) observed d) deserved

6. The girl and her mother look ....

a) alike b) same c) the similar d) like

7. The referee blew his .... to declare the end of the match.

a) waste b) wait c) whistle d) wasteful

8. .... is trying to trick someone into giving information over the internet.

a) Fishing b) Phishing c) App d) Cyberbullying

9. Those who .... others must be punished severely.

a) reward b) award c) bully d) advise

10. The writer .... his new novel last month.

a) published b) has published c) is publishing d) was published

11. I have been ill .... the last week.

a) since b) for c) while d) on

12. We have arranged everything; we .... a party next week.

a) have b) having c) are having d) were having

13. I have .... read a good book like this before.

a) ever b) never c) yet d) before

14. England is .... European country.

a) an b) a c) the d) no article

15. Don't worry, I'm sure you .... the test.

a) will pass b) going to pass c) pass d) passing

16. Most teachers .... a lot of training every year to be able to use new systems and technology.

a) give b) were giving c) were being given d) are given

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Robinson Crusoe's real desire was to be a sailor. His parents wouldn't want him to go to the sea because they believed he was still young and there were many dangers at sea. Crusoe was tired of waiting and decided to run away with some friends on a big ship. One afternoon, high waves crashed on the ship. Crusoe remembered all the dangers his parents had talked about. Suddenly, a big wave came up and pulled him off the ship into the water. He swam on and on until he came to an island.

When the sun came up the next day, Crusoe looked on the beach, but no one was there. He knew that he had to stay on the island alone. He cut down some trees so as to make a house to protect himself against wild animals.

Years went by. His clothes became more and more ragged. He made some new clothes from goat skins. After that, he made an umbrella to keep the rain and sun off him. By this time, Crusoe had been on the island for many years.

At last, Crusoe saw a ship coming towards the island. He lit a fire to signal the ship. The captain of the ship saw the fire and carried Crusoe back to England.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17. Crusoe wanted to become a/an ....

a) teacher b) sailor
c) doctor d) engineer

18. Crusoe stayed on the island ....

a) with his friends b) with his family
c) alone d) with his wife

19. Crusoe's parents were .... his desire.

a) for b) against
c) supporting d) encouraging

20. The word "...................." is an antonym of the word "wild".

a) dangerous b) unwind
c) tame d) diswild

21. The pronoun "they" refers to ....

a) the dangers at sea b) wild animals
c) Crusoe's parents d) Crusoe's friends

22. According to the passage, Robinson Crusoe is a/an .... man.

a) adventurous b) good
c) dangerous d) polite

23. The .... helped to save Crusoe.

a) animals b) fire
c) sun d) rain

24. Choose the correct English translation:

- إن تشجيع المنتجات المصرية وتدعيم شعار «صنع فى مصر» واجب وطنى يجب علينا جميعًا أن نقوم به.

a) Discouraging Egyptian products and strengthening the slogan "Made in Egypt" is a national duty that we all must do.

b) Encouraging Egyptian products and strengthening the slogan "Made in Egypt" is a national duty that we all must do.

c) Encouraging Egyptian production and strengthening the slogan "Made by Egypt" is a national duty that we all must do.

d) Encouraging Egyptian products and strengthening the slogan "Made in Egypt" is an international duty that we all must do.

25. Choose the correct Arabic translation:

- Living in a big city becomes an unhealthy and harmful life. There's nothing except a street full of fumes and noise which affect people's health and nerves.

a) أصبحت الحياة فى مدينة كبيرة حياة غير صحية وضارة فلا يوجد شىء باستثناء شوارع مليئة بعوادم السيارات والضوضاء التى تؤثر على صحة الناس وأعصابهم.

b) أصبحت الحياة فى مدينة كبيرة حياة صاخبة وضارة. فلا يوجد شىء باستثناء شوارع مليئة بعوادم السيارات والضوضاء التى تؤثر على صحة الناس وأعصابهم.

c) أصبحت الحياة فى مدينة كبيرة حياة غير صحية وغير مفيدة فلا يوجد شىء باستثناء شوارع مليئة بالسيارات والضوضاء التى تؤثر على صحة الناس وعصبهم.

d) أصبحت الحياة فى مدينة كبيرة حياة غير صحية وضارة فلا يوجد شىء باستثناء شوارع مليئة بعوادم السيارات والضوضاء التى تؤثر على صحة الناس وأعضائهم.

26. Answer the following questions:

1. Why do you think Jim was surprised when Mr Trelawney messaged him about Long Silver and the crew?

....

....

2. Why do you think Ben returned to the island on another ship?

....

....

3. In your opinion, why was it important for Dr Livesy and his men to reach the fort before Silver's men?

....

....

27. Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on the following:

"The advantages and disadvantages of modern inventions"

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....



▶ Choose the TWO (2) correct answers out of the FIVE (5) options given:

1. My friend has been so miserable since his mother's death. The synonyms of the word "miserable" are ....
   a) sad b) lively c) trustful d) fatigued e) depressed

2. My sons have been working in the field all day. They are nearly so tired. The antonyms of the word "tired" are ....
   a) free b) exhausted c) lively d) weary e) active

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

3. I'm searching for a .... nowadays. I'm experienced in teaching.
   a) career b) job c) profession d) work

4. Most football players .... a lot of money when they play for famous clubs.
   a) win b) earn c) beat d) gain

5. I asked my wife to .... a good dinner for our guests.
   a) repair b) arrange c) prepare d) look

6. .... on "next" when you have finished filling out the form.
   a) Download b) Load c) Select d) Click

7. Farmers can .... good use of the land as they can grow different kinds of plants.
   a) do b) make c) give d) take

8. The special word you need before you can use a computer is called a ....
   a) key b) secret c) passport d) password

9. I have been looking everywhere .... my keys! Finally, I found them in my jacket.
   a) at b) for c) forward d) up

10. Just as I was watching the match, my sister .... our room.
    a) tidy b) was tidied c) is tidying d) was tidying

11. Scientists predict that people .... on the moon in the future.
    a) live b) will live c) are going to live d) are living

12. I would rather .... than climb mountains.
    a) to walk b) walking c) walk d) to walking

13. .... any of these trees destroyed in the storm last night?
    a) Did b) Had c) Were d) Was

14. Many people used to live in this isolated area, but now they ....
    a) aren't b) didn't c) don't d) weren't

15. It seldom .... in Africa.
    a) snows b) snow c) is snowing d) has snowed

16. I wish she .... with us today.
    a) is b) were c) has been d) will be

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

The Pyramids with their greatness, elegance and stability tell us of the great organising ability. The ancient Egyptians did not wait for anyone else to set them examples, they just used their imagination and then got on with the job, making their dreams come true. They were pioneers, and inventors, leading the entire world.

We are not suggesting that we should be building pyramids now, but we should have the same spirit of enthusiasm and originality. The Egyptian people have not changed down the generations; they have the same intelligence and abilities as their forefathers. Somehow, somewhere along the line, they have lost their initiative and self-confidence. We should not isolate ourselves from others, but we should not always wait for others to make the first move. Egypt began its modern industrial development when Mohamed Ali obtained the help of leading European industrialists to develop once he ruled Egypt in 1805. A barrage on the line was built, steam pumping stations were set up, and textile and printing factories were built. Today, the process goes on to modernise Egyptian industry by importing the most up-to-date machinery. The trouble is that by the time we have brought and worked on someone else's machinery it has already become out-of-date in the country of origin. Our technologists must depend on their own judgement and design the machinery that is best suited for Egyptian conditions. In this way, we can once again become the leaders of the world of technology, not those who always lag behind. What was possible in the past can be possible again today.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17. The passage suggests that we should ....

a) be building pyramids now
b) isolate ourselves from others
c) take the first move toward industrial development
d) catch up with the old lines of technology

18. The Ancient Egyptians achieved success with their pyramids because ....

a) they followed others' examples
b) of their dreams and imagination
c) others helped them a lot
d) they made full use of their past

19. The process goes on to modernise Egyptian industry by importing the .... machinery.

a) unfashionable
b) old style
c) ancient
d) modern

20. The lack of .... is one main barrier to our industrial development.

a) intelligence
b) enthusiasm
c) skill
d) manpower

21. According to the passage, the disadvantage of importing machinery from abroad is that ....

a) it is too expensive
b) it is hard to catch up with modern technology
c) it is hard to run
d) it has got no spare parts

22. The Ancient Egyptians built the great Pyramids by ....

a) using the modern industrial development
b) isolating themselves from others
c) depending on their technologies
d) not waiting for anyone else to set them an example and using their imagination

23. Mohammed Ali developed industry during ....

a) the eighteenth century
b) the nineteenth century
c) the seventeenth century
d) the twentieth century

24. Choose the correct English translation:

- يجب إصدار قوانين جديدة لتنظيم العملية الاقتصادية وكيفية استثمار رءوس الأموال بشكل آمن.

a) New laws should be exported to organise the economic operation and to invest capitals safely.

b) New rules should be published to organise the economical process and to invest capitals safely.

c) New laws should be issued to organise the economic process and to invest capitals safely.

d) New laws should be issued to magnetise the economic process and to invest money heads safely.

25. Choose the correct Arabic translation:

- Take advice from the wise and experienced, not from the funny company around you. Your parents, grandparents and teachers are the best reference for sincere advice.

a) خذ النصيحة من الحكمة وذوى الخبرة وليس من الصحبة المرحة من حولك، والداك وأجدادك ومعلموك هم أفضل مرجع للنصائح الصادقة.

b) خذ النصيحة من الحكماء وذوى الخبرة وليس من الشركة المرحة من حولك، والداك وأجدادك ومعلموك هم أفضل مرجع للنصائح الصادقة.

c) خذ النصيحة من الحكماء وذوى الخبرة وليس من الصحبة المرحة من حولك، والداك وأجدادك ومعلموك هم أفضل مرجع للنصائح الصادقة.

d) خذ النصيحة من الحكماء وأصحاب التجارب وليس من الصحبة المرحة من حولك، والداك وأجدادك ومعلموك هم أفضل مرجع للنصائح الجادة.

26. Answer the following questions:

1. How do you think the blind man reacted to the Captain's death? Why?

....

....

2. Why do you think the crew were happy when Captain Smollett let them go on the island?

....

....

3. Why do you think Dr Livesy and his men chose the fort to be a shelter for them?

....

....

27. Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on the following:

"The advantages and disadvantages of learning and using modern technology"

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Choose the TWO (2) correct answers out of the FIVE (5) options given:

1. Science fiction films are boring. The antonyms of "boring" are ....

a) interesting b) terrifying c) exciting d) tiring e) annoying

2. My friend's house is in an isolated area. The word "isolated" is the synonym of .... and ....

a) remote b) near c) distant d) funny e) interesting

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

3. There are many .... areas in the world, which we can't easily visit.

a) phishing b) isolated c) insulated d) popular

4. Cycling is a very .... friendly sport. I like it very much.

a) environments b) environmentalist c) environmental d) environmentally

5. Pollution has a bad impact .... people and the environment.

a) on b) at c) in d) with

6. .... photographs is my only hobby and I really dream of being a great photographer.

a) Making b) Taking c) Having d) Doing

7. We should encourage water ....

a) conversion b) conscience c) conversation d) conservation

8. Does your grandmother have any long-term .... problems?

a) health b) healthy c) healthier d) healthily

9. A .... is a person who speaks for people in courts.

a) partner b) gardener c) porter d) lawyer

10. What .... while I was taking photos of the crocodiles?

a) did you do b) were you doing c) you were doing d) have you done

11. When I went on holiday, I always .... a lot of photographs.

a) take b) takes c) took d) taking

12. Maths .... my favourite subject when I was in school.

a) was b) were c) has d) are

13. Fatin is .... university student who wants to do research into orangutans.

a) a b) an c) the d) no article

14. Ahmed .... London. He is going to return to Cairo next week.

a) has gone b) has been c) has gone to d) has been to

15. I remember .... a TV programme about this topic. I learnt a lot about it.

a) watch b) to watch c) watching d) watches

16. Unfortunately, the problem .... yet.

a) hasn't been solved b) hasn't solved c) hadn't been solved d) is solving

▶ **Read the following passage, then answer the questions:**

I'm going to tell you a meaningful story, once upon a time, two friends were travelling through a forest on foot. A bear appeared out of the blue and started to run after them. One of the two friends rushed to the forest tree and climbed as fast as he could to its top branches. The other threw himself to the ground and pretended he was dead, as he had information about bears that they never eat dead bodies. He stayed very still when the bear came close to him. He didn't move when the bear's nose touched his ear. Then it went away.

He waited for a while and then he called his friend who was on the tree. "It's all right now, the bear has gone, and you can come down." His frightened friend came down slowly. "The bear was close to your ear," he said. "What did it say?" His friend laughed and said, "It told me to look for another friend because a friend who runs away when there is danger is not a real friend."

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17. The bear didn't eat the friend who pretended to be dead because ....

a) he was brave
b) he smelt bad
c) he was thin
d) it doesn't eat dead creatures

18. A bear appeared "out of the blue". It means that it appeared ....

a) slowly
b) quickly
c) suddenly
d) regularly

19. One of the two friends climbed the tree when he saw ....

a) a dog
b) a lion
c) a bear
d) a donkey

20. We knew from the passage that a friend in .... is a friend indeed.

a) order
b) detail
c) harmony
d) need

21. Which one of the following means "escaped"?

a) Rushed.
b) Climbed.
c) Ran away.
d) Laughed.

22. A/An .... is a place covered with trees.

a) oasis
b) forest
c) desert
d) valley

23. The pronoun "it" refers to ....

a) the dog
b) the lion
c) the bear
d) the donkey

24. Choose the correct English translation:

- تهتم الدولة بالشباب لذا تحرص على تأهيلهم بشكل مناسب، فشباب اليوم هم قادة الغد.

a) The country is careful about young boys, so it is keen to qualify them appropriately. Today's youth are tomorrow's leaders.

b) The state cares for young people, so it is keen to employ them appropriately. Today's youth is today's leaders.

c) The state cares about young people, so it is keen to ready them appropriately. Today's youth are tomorrow's leaders.

d) The state cares for young people, so it is keen to qualify them appropriately. Today's youth are tomorrow's leaders.

25. Choose the correct Arabic translation:

- Terroristic attacks are always headlines because they attract people's attention and affect people's lives badly.

a) الهجمات الإرهابية دائما ما تكون العناوين الرئيسية لأنها تجذب انتباه الناس وتؤثر فى حياتهم بشدة.

b) الهجمات الإرهابية دائما ما تكون العناوين الرئيسية لأنهم يرسمون انتباه الناس ويؤثرون فى حياة الناس بشدة.

c) الهجمات الإرهابية دائما لا تكون العناوين الرئيسية لأنهم يجذبون انتباه الناس ويؤثرون فى حياة الناس بشدة.

d) الهجمات الإرهابية دائما ما تكون العناوين الرئيسية لأنهم يجذبون انتباه الناس ولا يؤثرون فى حياة الناس بشدة.

26. Answer the following questions:

1. Do you think Captain Smollett trust the men on the ship? Why?

....

....

2. "I've not spoken to anyone for three years." If you were Jim, would you believe these words?

....

....

3. Why do you think it was difficult for Dr Livesy and his men to move towards the beach near the fort?

....

....

27. Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on the following:

"The job you would like to do in the future"

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....



Choose the TWO (2) correct answers out of the FIVE (5) options given:

1. We should reduce pollution to help conserve the environment. "Conserve" is a synonym for ....
   a) bully b) hike c) protect d) scam e) save
2. Alaa is .... reading adventure stories. He always buys them.
   a) keen on b) angry with c) interested in d) interesting in e) jealous of

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

3. .... is all the animals and plants that exist in a place.
   a) Ecosystem b) Economics c) Biology d) Population
4. The poor man was taken to hospital, and he needed blood ....
   a) transport b) transmit c) transform d) transfusion
5. Doctors think that there is a/an .... between smoking and cancer.
   a) agreement b) connection c) diversity d) noticeboard
6. .... is sending messages online to frighten or worry people.
   a) Security b) Anti-virus c) Cyberbullying d) Shoplifting
7. The word "woken" .... with "broken".
   a) hops b) plots c) narrates d) rhymes
8. My father always advises me to .... mixing with bad people.
   a) enjoy b) decide c) avoid d) practise
9. You must take this medicine on a/an .... stomach before having any food.
   a) full b) empty c) crowded d) busy
10. They .... their chemistry lesson yesterday due to the heavy rain.
    a) hadn't b) didn't have c) haven't had d) had
11. The sun .... rises from the west.
    a) doesn't b) always c) never d) no longer
12. Aya has learned English .... more than eleven years.
    a) since b) for c) ago d) when
13. When I visited Malaysia, I met .... honest locals who helped me without taking any money.
    a) a b) an c) the d) no article
14. The sky is cloudy. I think it .... very soon.
    a) will rain b) is going to rain c) rains d) is raining
15. While .... home, I saw an accident.
    a) was driving b) were driving c) driven d) driving
16. The baby is crying loudly as he .... nothing since the morning.
    a) hasn't eaten b) hadn't eaten c) has eaten d) had eaten

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

John and Sue have a baby alarm, an electronic device with a microphone and a speaker. They put the microphone in the baby's room and the speaker in the living room. When the microphone is switched on, they can hear the baby crying even if they are watching television.

Last week, John invited his boss, Tom, to dinner. Sue wasn't very pleased. She didn't like him very much. All through the meal, Tom talked about his skiing trips, his foreign holidays, his expensive cars and his holiday home in the mountains. John and Sue didn't have much money and these were things they wouldn't be able to afford for many years. What annoyed Sue most was that Tom neither thanked her nor praised the food. After the meal, they all went into the living room to have coffee. Sue went upstairs to check that the baby was all right.

The baby was awake; he was OK. Sue picked him up and talked softly to him, trying to get him back to sleep. She started to talk about how much she disliked Tom, and how he had spent the whole dinner talking about how wealthy he was. The baby didn't understand what she was saying, but gradually the sound of Sue's voice sent him back to sleep. Sue went back to the living room. John's face was very red and Tom looked furious. "More coffee, anyone?" asked Sue.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17. What is a baby alarm?

a) A type of clock for waking up a baby.
b) A machine which enables parents to hear a baby crying.
c) A device which enables parents to punish their babies.
d) A machine to enable babies to hear the television in the living room.

18. Which one of these statements is WRONG?

a) The baby alarm was switched on.
b) Tom and John could hear everything Sue said to the baby.
c) The baby was too young to understand what Sue was saying.
d) Sue went upstairs because she heard the baby crying.

19. Why didn't Sue enjoy Tom's conversation at dinner?

a) She isn't interested in skiing, foreign holidays and expensive cars.
b) Tom didn't talk about babies.
c) She would like to have the things he talked about, but she doesn't have enough money.
d) Tom didn't say anything about how good the meal was or how much he was enjoying it.

20. John's face was red because ....

a) Tom didn't like Sue's coffee
b) his baby was crying
c) Tom wanted to see the baby, but Sue refused
d) Tom heard Sue talking badly about him

21. Tom seems to be ....

a) a good manager
b) an exciting person
c) an arrogant character
d) a kind-hearted man

22. Sue talked .... to her baby, trying to get him back to sleep.

a) kindly
b) cruelly
c) nervously
d) violently

23. .... could hear Sue complaining to her baby.

a) Only Tom
b) Only John
c) Neither John nor Tom
d) Both Tom and John

24. Choose the correct English translation:

- العمل الجماعى هو وسيلة لتحقيق الأهداف وإنجاز الأعمال، كما أنه طريقة لتبادل الخبرات.

a) Teamwork is a means to achieve goals and accomplish work. In addition, it is a way to exchange experience.
b) Individual work is a means to achieve goals and accomplish work. Also, it is a way to replace experience.
c) Teamwork is a means to achieve goals and accomplish work as it is a way to replace experience.
d) Collective work is a means to achieve goals and finish work while it is a way to exchange experiences.

25. Choose the correct Arabic translation:

- When you make friends, you must be aware that so many friends are only for fun, but when you need some advice, you should only ask wise people.

a) عندما تعمل صداقات، يجب أن تكون على علم بأن الكثير من الأصدقاء ستجدهم فقط فى الفرح ولكنك عندما تحتاج لنصيحة يجب أن تسأل فقط الحكماء.
b) عندما تكون صداقات، يجب أن تكون على علم بأن القليل من الأصدقاء ستجدهم فقط فى المرح ولكنك عندما تحتاج لنصيحة يجب أن تسأل فقط الحكماء.
c) عندما تكون صداقات، يجب أن تكون على علم بأن الكثير من الأصدقاء ستجدهم فقط فى المرح ولكنك عندما تحتاج لنصيحة يجب أن تسأل فقط الكبار.
d) عندما تكون صداقات، يجب أن تكون على علم بأن الكثير من الأصدقاء ستجدهم فقط فى المرح ولكنك عندما تحتاج لنصيحة يجب أن تسأل الحكماء فقط.

26. Answer the following questions:

1. Captain Smollett thought that they wouldn't be safe on the ship. Was he right? Why do you think so?

....

....

2. What would have happened if the map with Smollett had been the map of the treasure?

....

....

3. Why do you think Silver chose to be a pirate although he was a good cook?

....

....

27. Write an email of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words to your friend Basim:

"You want him to recommend you some courses to improve yourself in order to have a good job."
Your email address is Hazim2020@yahoo.com Your friend's email address is basim @gmail.com.

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....



(A) Language Functions

1 Listen and choose the correct word:

نص الاستماع موجود نهاية الملحق

1. Cars can be .... to the internet using smart phones.
   a) corrected b) connected c) contacted d) congested
2. Can you imagine a .... car to collect you using an app?
   a) diver less b) moneyless c) parentless d) driverless

2 Choose the correct word(s) to complete the sentences:

1. Most football players .... a lot of money.
   a) win b) beat
   c) earn d) fill
2. Village people build their houses with local ....
   a) tourists b) environments
   c) animals d) materials
3. While Eman .... food, she burnt her hand.
   a) was preparing b) preparing
   c) is preparing d) prepared
4. It's cloudy. I think it ....
   a) will rain b) is going to rain
   c) is raining d) rains
5. .... match, played yesterday, was exciting.
   a) A b) And
   c) The d) No article
6. Before you plant a tree, you will need to .... a hole.
   a) dig b) get
   c) take d) want

(B) Usage

3 Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue:

Ahmed : Your shirt is very nice, Ali, is it new?
Ali : (1).. .
Ahmed : (2)..?
Ali : It's only L.E. 150
Ahmed : (3)..?
Ali : I bought it yesterday.
Ahmed : Where did you buy it?
Ali : (4).. .

(C) Reading Comprehension

4 **Read the passage, then answer the questions:**

I'm always careful when I do my shopping online. I use a different password for each site and my passwords are usually quite complicated. This is because I had a bad experience: once I was buying a pair of shoes online, I got a strange email from a website and I didn't know what to do with it. In the end, I opened the email and my computer turned off and on again. Some criminals started attacking my computer.

(A) Answer the following questions:

1. Why does the writer use different passwords?
2. What was the writer's experience?
3. What do you think is the writer's advice for his readers?

(B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The writer was doing his shopping ....
   a) online   b) on life   c) offline   d) outline
5. Some .... were attacking the writer's computer.
   a) thieves   b) robbers   c) bullies   d) hackers

(D) A Glimpse of Revelation

5 **(A) Answer the following:**

What is monotheism?

....

(B) Choose the correct word(s) between brackets:

1. There is only one God worthy of ....
   a) partnership   b) workshop   c) worship   d) friendship
2. Every Muslim .... observe the five pillars of Islam.
   a) can   b) must   c) may   d) might

(E) Writing

6 **Write a paragraph of about 80 words on:**

"The person you admire most"

....

(F) Translation

7 **(A) Translate the following into Arabic:**

- Young people are able to share in doing voluntary work in different fields.

....

(B) Translate the following into English:

– علينا أن نستغل أوقات الفراغ فى ممارسة أنشطة مفيدة.

....



(A) Language Functions

1 Listen nod complete the gaps with the correct answer:

نص الاستماع موجود نهاية الملحق

Ecotourism is about providing (1)........................... to places which are often (2)........................... and isolated. The holidays are designed to have a limited (3)........................... on the local environment and to educate (4)........................... about conservation.

2 Choose the correct word(s) to complete the sentences:

1. Don't .... over the balcony. You might fall.
   a) trek b) lean c) swell d) learn
2. While I was doing my homework, my mother .... dinner.
   a) was prepared b) preparing c) is preparing d) was preparing
3. My baby sister never stops eating. She is .... and happy.
   a) plum b) slim c) plump d) merchant
4. Our uncle gave us money to buy ice cream. He is very ....
   a) generous b) desired c) mean d) miserable
5. The lions .... by the Lion Guardians.
   a) protected b) are protected c) are protecting d) have protected
6. .... poem I read yesterday was really interesting.
   a) A b) An c) The d) no article

(B) Usage

3 Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue:

Ali is talking to a tourist.

Ali : (1)...?

Tourist : I come from England.

Ali : (2)...?

Tourist : No, this is my second visit.

Ali : How do you like Egypt?

Tourist : (3)... .

Ali : I wish you good luck.

Tourist : (4)... .

(C) Reading Comprehension

4 Read the passage, then answer the questions:

In today's modern society, the internet is a very educational and productive tool in order to become knowledgeable and stay well connected. Without technology, some individuals cannot function throughout their days. Many people use it for business purposes while others use technology in order to communicate on social networking sites such as Twitter or Facebook. Despite the beneficial uses, predators often abuse its powers. This tool puts consumers at risk for

identity theft through scamming, phishing and even hacking. Cyber-crime is any illegal activity committed on the internet that uses a computer as its primary means of theft. Through identity theft, a predator without someone's knowledge acquires a piece of their personal information such as their social security number or even their bank account data and uses it to commit fraud. It is often difficult to catch cyber criminals because the internet makes it easier for people to do things from any location on the globe. Predators use methods such as spam advertisements and even phoney programs that have viruses.

(A) Answer the following questions:

1. What is the writer mainly talking about?
2. How can a predator steal someone online?
3. Why is it not easy to arrest cyber criminals?

(B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. People use the internet for ....
   a) business b) communication c) business and communication d) nothing
5. The underlined word "predator" means ....
   a) hacker b) baker c) teacher d) undertaker

(D) Novel

5 (A) Answer the following:

1. Why did the Captain want to stay in a quiet inn?
2. Why were eight men searching for the paper?
3. What was Smollett's advice to Jim and Dr Livesy at the beginning of the journey?

(B) Choose the correct word(s) between brackets:

4. The blind man was looking for the ....
   a) ship b) sword c) map d) food
5. .... is the narrator of the story.
   a) Jim b) Hawkins c) Admiral d) Dr Livesy Flint
6. Mr Trelawney and Dr Livesy decide to search for ....
   a) the treasure b) the prisoner c) the men d) nothing

(E) Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about 80 words on:

"Education"

....

(F) Translation

7 (A) Translate the following into Arabic:

- The pharaohs made a great civilisation thousands of years ago.

....

(B) Translate the following into English:

- أيهما تفضل قراءة قصة قصيرة أم قراءة قصيدة؟

....

Topics Dictionary

قاموس بأهم موضوعات الترجمة

Literature — الأدب

artistic value	قيمة أدبية	imitation	التقليد	poet	شاعر
author	كاتب/مؤلف	innovation	تجديد/إبداع	poetry	الشعر
autobiography	السيرة الذاتية	innovator	مجدد/مبدع	point of view	وجهة نظر
biography	سيرة حياة شخص	irony	السخرية	publish	ينشر
children literature	أدب الأطفال	literary	أدبى	quotation	اقتباس
dialogue	الحوار	literary creativity	إبداعات أدبية	romance	رومانسية
elements	عناصر	literate	متعلم	science fiction	خيال علمى
entertainment	التسلية	metaphor	استعارة (فى اللغة الأدبية)	storyteller	كاتب القصة
epic	ملحمة	modernism	الحداثة	theory	نظرية
escapism	الهروب من الواقع	moral	المغزى	thoughts	الأفكار/المعتقدات
fictional	خيالى	non-fiction	غير خيالى/واقعى	thriller	قصص وأفلام التشويق
genre	نوع أدبى	novella	قصة قصيرة	tragedy	مأساة
historical events	أحداث تاريخية	plays	مسرحيات	verse	بيت الشعر
imagination	الخيال	playwright	كاتب مسرحى		
imaginative	مبدع	poems	قصائد		

New Technology — التكنولوجيا الحديثة

artificial intelligence (AI)	الذكاء الاصطناعى	code	شفرة	miracle	معجزة
a means to	وسيلة لـ	comforts	وسائل الراحة	modern devices	الأجهزة الحديثة
a waste of time	مضيعة للوقت	communication	الاتصال	network	شبكة
access	يحصل على/إذن	database	قاعدة بيانات	propaganda	حملة دعائية
accomplish	ينجز	double-edged weapon/sword	سلاح ذو حدين	pros and cons	مزايا وعيوب
addiction	إدمان	download	يحمل ملفات من الإنترنت	reliable	موثوق فيه
administration	إدارة	effective	مؤثر/فعال	remarkable	ملحوظ
administrative	إدارى	facilitate	يسهل	skills	مهارات
advanced	متقدم	flourish	يزدهر	smartphone	التليفون الذكى
alienation	عزلة/نفور	folder	مجلد (إلكترونى)	upload	يرفع ملفات
application (app)	تطبيق	Information Technology (IT)	تكنولوجيا المعلومات	website	موقع إنترنت
browser	متصفح الإنترنت	inventions	اختراعات		

Medicine, Health and Diseases — الطب والصحة والأمراض

allergy	حساسية	heatstroke	ضربة شمس	prescription	روشتة
anaesthetic	مخدر	hygiene	النظافة الشخصية	prevention	مناعة
antibiotics	مضادات حيوية	infected	مصاب بالعدوى	preventive medicine	الطب الوقائى
balanced diet	وجبة متوازنة	infection	العدوى	pulse	النبض
bandage	ضمادة	infectious	معدى	quarantine	حجر صحى
bleeding	النزيف	injection	الحقن/حقنة	remedy	علاج
blood donation	التبرع بالدم	insomnia	الأرق	respiratory system	الجهاز التنفسى
blood pressure	ضغط الدم	measures	إجراءات	sanitation	النظافة العامة
blood transfusion	نقل الدم	medical	طبى	sterilisation	التعقيم
central nervous system	الجهاز العصبى المركزى	medical assistance	المساعدات الطبية	stress	التوتر
chemotherapy	علاج كيميائى	medical care	رعاية طبية	surgeon	طبيب جراح
concussion	ارتجاج فى المخ	medical insurance	التأمين الطبى	symptoms	الأعراض
consultant	مستشار/استشارى	medical research	البحث الطبى	syrup	شراب (دواء)
contagious	ناقل العدوى	medicine	طب/دواء	tablet	شريط حبوب
cure	علاج/يشفى	natural remedy	العلاج الطبيعى	the Ministry of Health	وزارة الصحة
death rate	معدل الوفيات	obesity	السمنة	treatment	العلاج
dental paste	معجون أسنان	operation	عملية جراحية	unconscious	فاقد الوعى
diabetes	مرض السكر	outbreak	انتشار	vaccination	تلقيح/تطعيم
drugs	العقاقير الطبية	pandemic	وباء	vaccine	المصل/اللقاح
dyslexia	مرض صعوبة القراءة	physiotherapy	علاج طبيعى	virus	فيروس
food poisoning	تسمم الغذاء	pills	حبوب الدواء	ward	جناح/عنبر فى المستشفى
genetics	علم الوراثة	precautionary measures	إجراءات احترازية		
health sector	قطاع الصحة	precautions	احتياطات/تحذيرات		

Education — التعليم

activities	أنشطة	creative	مبدع	educational resources	مصادر تعليمية
aspects	جوانب	debate	مناظرة	literacy	محو الأمية
aspiration	طموح	degree	درجة علمية	enlightenment	تنوير
boarding school	مدرسة داخلية	discipline	النظام	enrich	يثرى
certificate	شهادة	distance learning	التعليم عن بعد	free education	التعليم بالمجان
civilised society	مجتمع متحضر	educational	تعليمى	future generations	أجيال مستقبلية
college	كلية	educational platform	منصة تعليمية	grade	تقدير/صف

graduate	يتخرج	literate	متعلم	qualifications	مؤهلات
graduation	التخرج	maintain	يحافظ على	raise awareness	يزيد الوعى
have the right to	لديه الحق فى	Master's degree	درجة الماجستير	scientific research	البحث العلمى
ignorance	الجهل	mobile learning	التعليم المتنقل	secondary school	مدرسة ثانوى
illiteracy	الأمية	motivation	دافع/حافز	state school	مدرسة حكومية
illiterate	أمى (لا يقرأ ولا يكتب)	online education	التعليم عبر الإنترنت	talented	موهوب
inspiration	الإلهام	phenomenon	ظاهرة	talents	مواهب
intelligence	الذكاء	pioneering country	دولة رائدة	term	فصل دراسى
kindergarten	حضانة/روضة	postgraduate studies	دراسات عليا	the Ministry of Education	وزارة التربية والتعليم
learning process	عملية التعلم	poverty	الفقر	virtual	افتراضى/وهمى
lecture	محاضرة	preparatory school	مدرسة إعدادى	vocational	حرفى
lecturer	محاضر	primary school	مدرسة ابتدائى		
lifelong learning	التعليم مدى الحياة	private school	مدرسة خاصة		

Jobs الوظائف

accountant	محاسب	dustman	عامل النظافة	optician	أخصائى بصريات
air hostess	مضيفة جوية	electrician	كهربائى	painter	نقاش/رسام
architect	مهندس معمارى	engineer	مهندس	paramedic	مسعف
assistant	معاون/مساعد	fireman	رجل الإطفاء	photographer	مصور
blacksmith	حداد	florist	بائع الزهور	pilot	طيار
business	عمل	gardener	بستانى (جناينى)	plumber	سباك
businessman	رجل أعمال	headmaster	ناظر	position	مكانة/وظيفة
career	حياة مهنية	headmistress	ناظرة المدرسة	postman	رجل البريد
carpenter	نجار	housekeeper	ربة منزل	priest	قس
civil engineer	مهندس مدنى	journalist	صحفى	profession	مهنة
clown	مهرج	judge	قاضٍ	professor	أستاذ جامعى
co-pilot	مساعد طيار	labourer	عامل	reporter	مراسل
conductor	محصل (كمسارى)	lawyer	محامٍ	salesman	مندوب مبيعات/بائع
correspondent	مراسل صحفى	librarian	أمين المكتبة	senior teacher	مدرس أول
dentist	طبيب أسنان	magician	ساحر	soldier	جندى
detective	محقق	mechanic	ميكانيكى	teacher	مدرس
diver	غواص	nun	راهبة	vet	طبيب بيطرى
doctor	طبيب	oculist	طبيب عيون	waiter	نادل (جرسون)
doorman	بواب	officer	ضابط		

Politics السياسة

abolish	يقضى على	independence	الاستقلال	polls	استطلاعات رأى
administrative capital	عاصمة إدارية	instability	عدم الاستقرار	presidential	رئاسى
adverse opinion	رأى معارض	the judiciary	السلطة القضائية	Prime Minister	رئيس الوزراء
aggression	عدوان	the Arab League	جامعة الدول العربية	prosperity	الرخاء
Arab Gulf	الخليج العربى	liberty	الحرية السياسية	protest	يحتج
Arab leaders	قادة العرب	martyrs	شهداء	public opinion	الرأى العام
authority	السلطة	military aids	مساعدات عسكرية	regime	النظام/نظام الحكم
ballot	اقتراع	negotiate	يتفاوض	regular army	جيش نظامى
ballot box	صندوق الاقتراع	negotiations	مفاوضات	reject	يرفض/ينبذ
circumstances	الظروف	nominee	مرشح	restore	يسترد/يستعيد
civil war	الحرب الأهلية	nongovernmental	غير حكومى	rights	الحقوق
constitution	دستور	one tissue	نسيج واحد	security and safety	الأمن والأمان
cooperation	التعاون	opponent	معارض/خصم	security council	مجلس الأمن
crisis	أزمة	oppose	يعارض	self-reliance	الاعتماد على النفس
curfew	حظر التجوال	opposition	معارضة	self-sufficiency	الاكتفاء الذاتى
declare	يعلن	oppression	اضطهاد	social affairs	الشئون الاجتماعية
delegations	الوفود	peace	السلام	sovereignty	سيادة
democracy	الديمقراطية	peace talks	محادثات السلام	stability	الاستقرار
dictatorship	الديكتاتورية	peace treaty	معاهدة السلام	suicidal actions	أعمال انتحارية
duties	الواجبات	peace–loving countries	دول محبة للسلام	summit conference	مؤتمر قمة
elected	منتخب (صفة)	peaceful co-existence	التعايش السلمى	terrorism	الإرهاب
election campaign	حملة انتخابية	peaceful means	الوسائل السلمية	terrorist	إرهابى
elections	الانتخابات	peaceful solutions	حلول سلمية	the Arab League summit	القمة العربية
embassy	سفارة	policy	سياسة	the Arab unity	الوحدة العربية
fair	عادل	political	سياسى	uprising	انتفاضة
foreign policy	السياسة الخارجية	political party	حزب سياسى	uproot	يستأصل
fraud	غش/احتيال	political reforms	تعديلات سياسية	violence	العنف
freedom	حرية	political science	علوم سياسية	vote	صوت فى الانتخابات/يدلى بصوته
global system	النظام العالمى	political settlement	استقرار سياسى	welfare	رفاهية
governmental	حكومى	politician	شخص سياسى	withdraw	ينسحب
hostages	رهائن	politics	السياسة		
impose	يفرض	polling station	مكتب التصويت		

Tourism السياحة

accommodation	الإقامة/المبيت	guide book	كتاب الإرشاد	pharaohs	الفراعنة
ancient sites	مواقع أثرية	hard currency	العملة الصعبة	religious tourism	سياحة دينية
antiques/monuments	آثار	heritage	التراث	reservation	حجز
architecture	فن المعمار	historical sites	مواقع تاريخية	scenery	مناظر طبيعية
bazaar	سوق شرقى	holy places	أماكن مقدسة	sightseeing	مشاهدة الأماكن السياحية
brochure	كتيب للدعاية	illegal immigration	الهجرة غير الشرعية	souvenirs	هدايا تذكارية
civilisation	حضارة	landmarks	علامات بارزة	tombs	مقابر
civilised behaviour	سلوك متحضر	luggage/baggage	أمتعة السفر	tourism revenue	الدخل من السياحة
cultural tourism	سياحة ثقافية	manuscripts	مخطوطات	tourist attractions	عوامل جذب سياحى
curative tourism	سياحة علاجية	the Ministry of Tourism	وزارة السياحة	tourist awareness	الوعى السياحى
destination	جهة الوصول	monastery	دير	tourist industry	صناعة السياحة
dome	قبة	museum	متحف	tourist villages	قرى سياحية
ecotourism	سياحة بيئية	national income	الدخل القومى	tourists	سائحون
Egyptology	علم المصريات	natural reserves	محميات طبيعية	traditional tourism	سياحة تقليدية
excavation	التنقيب	obelisk	مسلة	travel agency	وكالة سياحية
feasts	أعياد	package tour	رحلة سياحية مدفوعة الأجر مقدما	youth hostel	نُزل الشباب

Sports الرياضات

activities	أنشطة	introvert	شخص انطوائى	sports facilities	تسهيلات رياضية
amateurs	الهواة	jogging	الجرى ببطء	summer camps	معسكرات صيفية
audience	متفرجون	loss	خسارة/هزيمة	supporters	مؤيدون/مشجعون
compete with	يتنافس مع	martial arts	فنون قتالية	teamwork	عمل جماعى
competition	منافسة	opponent	خصم/منافس	the beaten	المهزومون
competitor	متنافس	optimism	التفاؤل	the Olympic Games	الألعاب الأوليمبية
defeat	هزيمة/يهزم	pessimism	التشاؤم	the World Cup	كأس العالم
depression	ركود/كساد	physical fitness	لياقة بدنية	trainee	متدرب
draw	تعادل	playground	ملعب	trainer	مدرب
encourage	يشجع	professionals	المحترفون	training	تدريب
exercises	تمرينات/تدريبات	referee	الحكم	scout	معسكر كشافة/كشاف لاعبين
extrovert	شخص انبساطى (اجتماعى)	spectators	مشاهدون	victory	النصر
finals	نهائيات	sportsmanship	الروح الرياضية	youth organisations	منظمات الشباب
handball	كرة اليد	sports day	يوم رياضى	youth services	خدمات الشباب

Mass Media وسائل الإعلام

broadcast media	أجهزة الإعلام المذاعة
censorship	رقابة
civil society organisations	منظمات المجتمع المدنى
comics	أفلام هزلية/فكاهية
critical	نقدى
criticism	النقد
director	مخرج
editor	رئيس تحرير
ensure	يضمن
exclusive	حصرى
fictional	خيالى
foreign press	الصحافة الأجنبية
free press	صحافة حرة
government spokesman	المتحدث الرسمى
handout	تصريح/بيان
humour	فكاهى
journalism	صحافة
journalist	صحفى
local media	إعلام محلى
local press	الصحافة المحلية
means of communication	وسائل الاتصالات
media coverage	تغطية إعلامية
media diversity	التنوع الإعلامى
media institutions	مؤسسات إعلامية
monitor	يراقب
multiplicity	تنوع
news agency	وكالة الأخبار
press conference	مؤتمر صحفى
press release	بيان صحفى
producer	منتج
promoting culture	ترويج الثقافة
reliable sources	مصادر موثوق فيها
rumour	إشاعة
satellite channels	قنوات القمر الصناعى
scoop	سبق صحفى
social media	وسائل تواصل اجتماعى
Supreme Council of Information	المجلس الأعلى للإعلام
talk shows	عروض حوارية
variety	تنوع
yellow journalism	الصحافة الصفراء

Economy الاقتصاد

basic goods	سلع أساسية
boost	يعزز/يزيد
budget	ميزانية
capital	رأس المال
capitalism	الرأس مالية
commerce	تجارة
common market	سوق مشتركة
consumer goods	سلع استهلاكية
consumption	استهلاك
cost of living	تكاليف المعيشة
distribution	توزيع
economic	اقتصادى
economic conditions	أحوال اقتصادية
economic conference	مؤتمر اقتصادى
economic crisis	أزمة اقتصادية
economic depression	ركود اقتصادى
economic goals	أهداف اقتصادية
economic influence	نفوذ اقتصادى
economic reforms	إصلاحات اقتصادية
economic sanctions	عقوبات اقتصادية
economic union	وحدة اقتصادية
economical	مقتصد
economise	يقتصد/يوفر
economist	رجل اقتصاد
embargo/boycott	حظر تجارى/مقاطعة
federation	اتحاد
finance	يمول/تمويل
global economy	اقتصاد عالمى
imports and exports	واردات وصادرات
income tax	ضريبة دخل
industrial revolution	ثورة صناعية
industry	الصناعة
inflation	تضخم
inflow	تدفق
insurance	تأمين
investment	استثمار
investor	مستثمر
labour market	سوق العمل
losses	خسائر
marketing	تسويق
money laundry	غسيل أموال
monopolise	يحتكر

monopoly	احتكار	profits	مكاسب/أرباح	standard of living	مستوى المعيشة
national income	الدخل القومى	prosperous	مزدهر	tax	ضريبة
nationalisation	تأميم	rationalisation	ترشيد الاستهلاك	the Treasury	خزانة الدولة
privatisation	خصخصة	recession/stagnation	ركود	unemployment	بطالة
production	إنتاج	reserve	احتياطى		

Problems

المشكلات

addiction	الإدمان	extremism	التطرف	pollution	التلوث
ageing	كبر السن/الشيخوخة	floods	فيضانات	poverty	الفقر
air pollution	تلوث الهواء	food shortage	نقص الطعام	pressing problems	مشاكل ملحة
atomic energy	الطاقة الذرية	gender equality	المساواة بين الرجل والمرأة	racism	العنصرية
bullying	التنمر	global warming	الاحتباس الحرارى	refugees	اللاجئون
child labour	عمالة الأطفال	hatred	الكراهية	restrictions	قيود
citizenship	المواطنة	health problems	المشاكل الصحية	slavery	العبودية
civil wars	الحروب الأهلية	housing problem	مشكلة الإسكان	solar power	الطاقة الشمسية
climate change	التغير المناخى	human rights	حقوق الإنسان	starvation = famine	المجاعة
conflict	الصراع	hunger	الجوع	strife	فتنة
corruption	الفساد	hurricanes	أعاصير	traffic jams	اختناقات مرورية
COVID-19 pandemic	وباء فيروس كورونا	ignorance	الجهل	tyranny	الطغيان
deforestation	إزالة الغابات	illegal immigration	الهجرة غير الشرعية	tyrant	طاغية
desert reclamation	استصلاح الصحراء	injustice	الظلم	unemployment	البطالة
desertification	التصحر	labour force	القوى العاملة	unusual weather	الطقس غير المعتاد
deviation	الانحراف	national unity	الوحدة الوطنية	volcanoes	البراكين
discrimination	التمييز	natural disasters	الكوارث الطبيعية	water pollution	تلوث المياه
disloyalty	عدم الإخلاص/الخيانة	noise pollution	التلوث الضوضائى	water shortage	نقص المياه
drought	القحط/الجفاف	nuclear energy	الطاقة النووية	women's rights	حقوق المرأة
earthquakes	الزلازل	occupation	احتلال		
economic crisis	الأزمة الاقتصادية	overpopulation	الزيادة السكانية		

Al-Azhar Listening Texts

Al-Azhar Test (1)

Technology affected everything around us, especially means of transport. There are different kinds of vehicles which are made to be comfortable. Now cars have computers, and they can be connected to the internet using smart phones. You can make a call to your car to move it from the parking lot to your location automatically. Can you imagine a driverless car to collect you using an app? That's amazing.

Al-Azhar Test (2)

Ecotourism is about providing holidays to places which are often endangered and isolated. The holidays are designed to have a limited impact on the local environment and to educate tourists about conservation.